

ASIAN STUDIES RESEARCH INSTITUTE  
DENIS SINOR, DIRECTOR  
ORIENTAL SERIES NO. 4

SYNTAX OF  
**Modern Arabic Prose**  
THE COMPOUND SENTENCE

[VOLUME THREE]

by Vicente Cantarino

INDIANA UNIVERSITY PRESS  
BLOOMINGTON / LONDON

This book was brought to publication with support from Ford Foundation funds made available by the International Publications Advisory Committee through the Office of Research and Advanced Studies, Indiana University.

Copyright © 1975 by Indiana University Press

ALL RIGHTS RESERVED

No part of this book may be reproduced or utilized in any form or by any means, electronic or mechanical, including photocopying and recording, or by any information storage and retrieval system, without permission in writing from the publisher. The Association of American University Presses Resolution on Permissions constitutes the only exception to this prohibition.

Published in Canada by Fitzhenry & Whiteside Limited, Don Mills, Ontario

Manufactured in the United States of America

Library of Congress Cataloging in Publication Data  
Canterino, Vicente, 1925-  
Syntax of modern Arabic prose.  
(Asian Studies Research Institute. Oriental series,  
no. 4)

CONTENTS: v. 1. The simple sentence. —v. 2.  
Expanded sentences. —v. 3. The compound sentence.  
I. Arabic language—Syntax. I. Title. II. Series.  
RJ615L.C35 492'.7'5 69-16996

ISBN 0-253-39507-0 (complete set)  
ISBN 0-253-39504-6 (v. 1)  
ISBN 0-253-39505-4 (v. 2)  
ISBN 0-253-39506-2 (v. 3) 1 2 3 4 5 79 78 77 76 75

## CONTENTS

<b>Abbreviations</b>		ix
<b>191 — The Compound Sentence</b>		2
XVI COORDINATE CLAUSES		
<b>192 — Asyndetical</b>		7
<b>193 — Syndetical</b>		11
194 — Conjunctive Conjunctions		11
195 — وَ		11
196 — فَ		20
197 — ثُمَّ		35
198 — Adversative Constructions		39
199 — لَكِنَّ		40
200 — لَكِنْ		43
201 — بَلْ		46
202 — Disjunctive Conjunctions		48
203 — أَوْ		49
204 — أَمْ		50
205 — أَمْ		53
<b>206 — Elliptical Coordinate Sentences</b>		54



## XVII SUBORDINATE CLAUSES

207 — Subordinate Clauses	63
208 — Noun Clauses	64
209 — The Asyndetical Noun Clause	64
210 — The Asyndetical Noun Clause after a Preposition	77
211 — مِّنْذُ	78
212 — لِ	80
213 — حَتَّى	84
214 — Indirect Questions	97
215 — Syndetical Noun Clauses	105
216 — General Remarks on the Use of أَنَّ and اَنَّ	106
217 — اَنَّ	107
218 — اَنَّ	116
219 — Coordinated Noun Clauses	122
220 — The Function of a Noun Clause	130
221 — Syndetical Noun Clauses after Prepositions	138
222 — Ellipsis of the Preposition	145
223 — Adjectival Clauses	147
224 — The Asyndetical Relative Clause	148
225 — The Resumptive Personal Pronoun	154
226 — Omission of the Resumptive Pro- noun	158
227 — Attraction of the Antecedent on the Relative Clause	160
228 — Pronominal Use of the Asyndetical Relative Clause	161
229 — The Syndetical Relative Clause	162

230 — The Resumptive Personal Pronoun	165
231 — Pronominal Use of the Relative Adjective	168
232 — The Pronominal Clause	170
233 — مَنْ	173
234 — مَا	177
235 — مَنْ / مَا — مِنْ	179
236 — The Resumptive Personal Pronoun	182
237 — Function of the Pronominal Rela- tive Clause	186
238 — Formular Expressions with مَا	192
239 — مَا as Indefinite Particle	207
240 — Paronomasia in a Pronominal Rela- tive Clause	209
241 — Adverbial Uses of مَا	210
242 — The Adverbial Relative Clause Functioning as a Nominative	211
243 — The Adverbial Relative Clause Functioning as a Genitive	218
244 — The Adverbial Relative Clause Functioning as an Accusative	229
245 — The Adverbial مَا after Prepo- sitions	231
246 — Adverbial Clauses	242
247 — Circumstantial Clauses	242
248 — The Asyndetical Circumstantial Clause	244
249 — Verbs in an Auxiliary Function	255
250 — Word Order with Auxiliary Verbs	263
251 — The Syndetical Circumstantial Clause	266

252 —	حَيْثُ	279
253 —	إِذَا	284
254 —	إِذَا	291
255 —	لَمَّا	307
256 —	The Particle كَيْ and its Derivatives	309
257 —	Conditional Clauses	311
258 —	إِنْ	312
259 —	لَوْ	320
260 —	لَوْلَا	326
261 —	The Concessive Clause	330
262 —	Incomplete Conditional Clauses	334
263 —	Exceptive Constructions	338
264 —	The Indefinite-Conditional Clause	353
265 —	Nullification of a Subordinate's Influence on its Main Clause	360
266 —	Use of the Particle فَ	361
267 —	The Omission of فَ	368
268 —	Use of the Particle لَ	369

## XVIII PARENTHETICAL CONSTRUCTIONS

269 —	Parenthetical Constructions	375
-------	-----------------------------	-----

## XIX EXPANDED COMPOUNDS

270 —	Expanded Compounds	385
-------	--------------------	-----

Index	389
-------	-----

## ABBREVIATIONS

- |             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Amin duh.   | Aḥmed Amin, <i>Ḍuḥā l-Islām</i> , 3 vol. Cairo 1952, 5th edition.  |
| Amin zuh.   | _____, <i>Ḍuḥr al-Islām</i> , 4 vol. Cairo 1952-55, 3rd edition.   |
| Djir. tar.  | Jirjī Zaidān, <i>Ta'riḫ adab al-lughā l-'arabiya</i> , 4 vol. revised edition. Cairo 1957.                   |
| Gibr.       | Gibrān Khalīl Gibrān, <i>Al-majmū'a l-kamīla li-mu'allafāt Jibrān Khalīl Jibrān</i> , 3 vol. Beirut 1949-50. |
| Hai. sir.   | Muḥammed Husain Haikal, <i>Ḥayat Muḥammad</i> , Cairo 1952, 5th edition.                                     |
| Hak. ahl.   | Taufīq al-Ḥakīm, <i>Ahl al-kaḥf</i> , no year, 5th edition.  |
| Hak. sheh.  | _____, <i>Sheḥrazād</i> , Cairo 1934.  |
| Hak. sul.   | _____, <i>Sulaimān al-Ḥakīm</i> , Cairo, no year, 2nd edition (?).   |
| Hak. yaum.  | _____, <i>Yawmiyāt nā'ib fī l-aryāf</i> , Cairo, no year.  |
| Hus. ayy.   | Ṭaha Ḥusain, <i>Al-ayyām</i> , Cairo, 1st vol. no year, 2nd vol. 1958.                                       |
| Hus. 'ala.  | _____, <i>'Alā ḥamīsh al-sīra</i> , Cairo, 1st vol. 1952, 2nd vol. 1953, 3rd vol. 1951.                      |
| Mah qah.    | Nagīb Maḥfūz, <i>Al-Qāhira l-jadīda</i> , Cairo 1958, 3rd edition (?).                                       |
| Mah. zuq.   | _____, <i>Zuqāq al-midaqq</i> , Cairo 1961 4th edition (?).  |
| Manf. sha'. | Muṣṭafā Luṭfī al-Manfalūṭī, <i>Al-Shā'ir</i> , Cairo 1952, 7th edition.                                      |

Manf. mag.	_____, "Majdūlīn," Cairo 1954, 13th edition.
Musa adab.	Salāma Mūsā, <i>Adab lil-sha'b</i> , Bagdad 1961.
Nu'. kan.	Mikhā'il Nu'aima (Naimy), <i>Kān mā kān</i> , Beirut 1960, 5th edition.
Nu'. liq.	_____, <i>Liqā'</i> , Beirut 1952.
Raf. wah.	Muṣṭafā Ṣādiq al-Rāfi 'ī, <i>Waḥy al-qalam</i> , Cairo 1951, 1st and 2nd vol. 4th edition, 3rd vol. 3rd edition.
Raih. mul.	Amīn al-Raiḥānī, <i>Mulūk al-'arab</i> , Beirut 1951, 3rd edition.
.....(Br.).....	e.g. Mand. (Br.) 17,5, Muḥammad Mandūr, page 17, line 5 in <i>Advanced Arabic Readers I</i> by W. M. Brinner and M. A. Khouri, University of California at Berkeley, 1961.
....(Br.II)....	2nd vol. of Brinner's Reader, 1962.
.....(Zy.).....	e.g. Tai. (Zy.) 34,25, Maḥmud Taimur selection 34, paragraph 25 in <i>A Reader in Modern Literary Arabic</i> by Farhat J. Ziadeh, Princeton University, 1964.

Names of authors in both readers are abbreviated as follows:

Af.	Michel Aflaq
al-Hus.	Ishāq Mūsā al-Ḥusainī
Amin	Aḥmed Amīn
Q. Amin	Qāsim Amīn
'Aqq.	'Abbās Maḥmud al-'Aqqād
'A. Raf.	'Abd al-Raḥmān al-Rāfi 'ī
'Aww	Taufiq Yusuf 'Awwād
Ayy.	Dhū al-Nūn Ayyūb
Bakd.	Khalīd Bakdāsh
Batt.	Rufa'il Baṭṭī
Din	Khalīl Taqīy al-Dīn
S. Din	Sa'id Taqīy al-Dīn
Far.	Nabīh Amīn Fāris
Fur.	Anīs Furaiḥa
Ghur.	Rose Ghurayyib
Gibr.	Gibrān Khalīl Gibrān

Hai.	Muḥammad Ḥusain Haikal
Hak.	Taufiq al-Ḥakīm
Hind.	Khalīl al-Hindāwī
Hus.	Ṭaha Ḥusain
Idr.	Suhail Idrīs
Jabr.	Jabrā Ibrāhīm Jabrā
Kam.	Maḥmūd Kāmīl
Kay.	Sāmī al-Kayyālī
Khal.	Muḥammad Khalaf Allāh
Khalid	Khālīd Muḥammad Khālīd
Kurd	Muḥammad Kurd 'Alī
Mand.	Muḥammad Mandūr
Manf.	Muṣṭafā Luṭfī al-Manfalūṭī
Maz.	Ibrāhīm 'Abd al-Qādir al-Māzinī
Mub.	Zakī Mubārak
Musa	Sālāma Mūsā
Nu'.	Mikhā'il Nu'aima
Qal.	Suhair al-Qalamāwī
Qud.	Iḥsān 'Abd al-Quddūs
Qutb	Sayyid Quṭb
Raih.	Amīn al-Raiḥānī
Razz.	Munīf al-Razzāz
Sa'.	Amīna al-Sa'id
Sak.	Khalīl al-Sakākīnī
Sat.	Sāṭī' al-Ḥuṣārī
Sib.	Yūsuf al-Sibā'ī
Tai.	Maḥmūd Taimur
Zayy.	Aḥmad Ḥasan al-Zayyāt
Zur.	Qusṭanṭīn Zuraiq

Books frequently quoted<sup>1</sup>

'Aqīl	Ibn 'Aqīl, <i>Sharḥ al-alfiyya</i> , ed. Fr. Dieterich. Leipzig, 1851.
Ashmāwī	Ibn al-Fāḍil al-Ashmāwī, <i>Hāshiya 'alā matni l-Ajurrumiyya fi qawā'id al-'arabiyya</i> , Cairo, 1341 (Hegira).
Blachère	R. Blachère and M. Gaudefroy-Demombynes, <i>Grammaire de l'Arabe Classique</i> , 3rd ed., Paris, 1952.

<sup>1</sup> Bibliographical information on the books which are less often mentioned is given at the point of quotation.

- Bravman, *Studies* M. M. Bravman, *Studies in Arabic and General Syntax*, Cairo, 1953.
- Brock. *Grund.* Carl Bockmann, *Grundriss der vergleichenden Grammatik der Semitischen Sprachen*, Berlin, 1913.
- Farhat, *Bah.* Germanus Farhat, *Kitāb baḥṭh al-maṭālib*, Beirut, 1882.
- Mainz, *Zur.* Ernst Mainz, *Zur Grammatik des modernen*  
*Gram.* *Schriftarabisch*, Diss. Hamburg, 1931.
- Mufasssal* Zamakhshari, *al-Mufaṣṣal fī l-naḥw*, ed. J. P. Broch Christianiae, 1879.
- Munjid* *al-Munjid fī l-luḡha wa-l-ādāb wa-l-'ulūm*, new edition. Beirut, 1956.
- Noeldeke, *Zur.* Theodor Noeldeke, *Zur Grammatik des*  
*Gram.* *klassischen Arabisch*, Denkschr. d. kais. Akad. d. Wiss. Phil.-His. Klasse. vol. 25. Wien, 1897.
- Qawwā'id* Ḥifnī Bey Nāṣif, *Kitāb qawwā'id al-luḡha al-'arabiya*, 2nd ed. Cairo, 1909.
- Reck. *Synt.* H. Reckendorf, *Arabische Syntax*, Heidelberg, 1921.
- Reck. *Verh.* H. Reckendorf, *Die syntaktischen Verhältnisse des Arabischen*, Leiden, 1895.
- Wehr, *Dictionary* Hans Wehr, *A Dictionary of Modern Written Arabic*, tr. by J. Milton Cowan. Ithaca, 1961.
- Wright W. Wright, *A Grammar of the Arabic Language*, 3rd. ed., 2 vols. Cambridge, 1896-98.
- Ya'ish Ya'ish 'Alī Ibn Ya'ish, *Sharḥ al-mufaṣṣal*, Cairo, no year.
- Zajjaji Abu l-Qāsim Abd al-Raḥmān al-Zajjājī, *al-Jumal*, Paris, 1957.
- ZDMG *Zeitschrift der deutschen morgenlaendischen Gesellschaft*.

SYNTAX OF  
**Modern Arabic Prose**

THE COMPOUND SENTENCE



## § 191 THE COMPOUND SENTENCE

The main distinction between expanded and compound sentences is that in the former one or more components have been "expanded" through the addition of new grammatical elements which modify the idea stated by the more basic components of the sentence.

In the latter, the compound sentence, the new elements used are syntactically sentences in themselves.

The most elementary division to be made between these compounds is based on the mutual relationship of the elements involved. If it is one of equality, then we have a coordination. If some elements are intended as parts which modify or complete others considered as basic, then we have a subordination.

In Arabic, syntactical subordination is thus based on the fact that a given statement, a sentence, may be used within another more elaborate statement to function as any nominal part of speech; that is to say, it may assume a role equivalent to that of a substantive, an adjective, a pronoun or even an adverbial modifier.

Therefore, the main distinction to be made between coordination and subordination is seen in that two coordinated sentences, while building one single idea or converging to form a more complex expression, are structurally independent of each other and have only a logical relationship which may or may not be expressed by a conjunction.

It cannot be denied that subordination in Arabic has developed from syntactical coordination, which explains the fact that the language, even in modern times, has not attained the same degree of development in all aspects of syntactical subordination. Some types, such as noun clauses, have been developed rather extensively (see Vol. III, p. 64f); others, such as adverbials, are even today at times difficult to recognize as being subordinated without the help

of their logical relationship and, in many cases, are completely equivalent to a syntactical coordination (see Vol. III, p. 242ff.).

In the following chapters we shall try to make a division, not only according to the syntactical function of the subordinate clause within the compound, but also according to the way it is connected to or introduced into the compound. Thus, we shall call *asyndetical* those that do not have a special conjunction or particle that expresses the syntactical ties. Not all *asyndetical* constructions, however, are of the same syntactical quality; some, as in the case of sentences functioning as genitives, are very closely connected to the main clause by the presence of a noun in the construct state; others, such as *adjectival-relative* ones, are apparently equivalent to a *juxtaposition*.

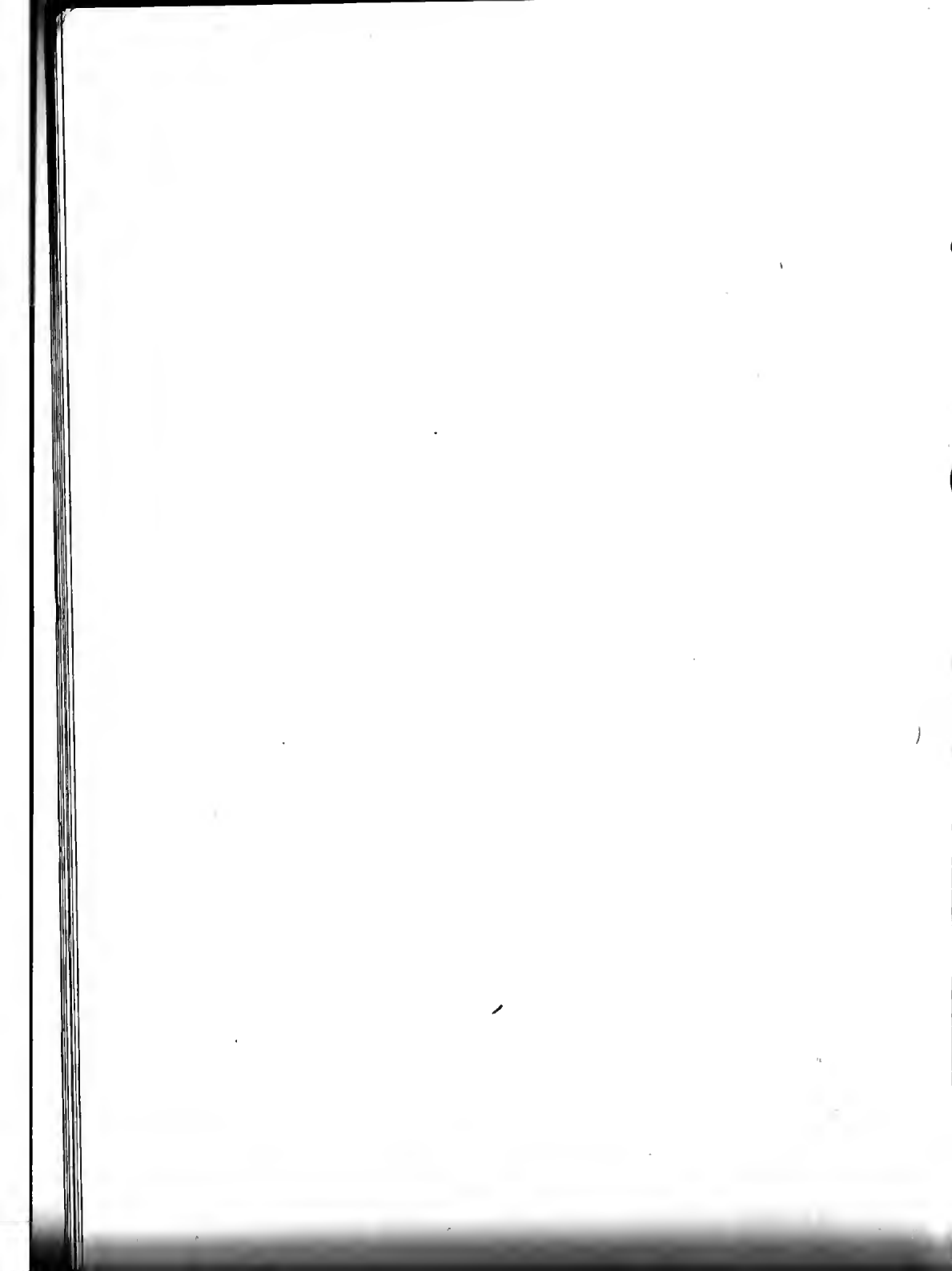
We consider *syndetical* those that have a particle which is the exponent of the syntactical relationship between both components. The nature of these subordinating ties is very complex, as we shall later show.

Through the centuries, Arabic has remained very poor in true conjunctions. This lack has been compensated for, especially in the modern language, by the development of expressions of adverbial character that give it the necessary flexibility to express the more complex constructions, thus enabling Arabic to fully reflect modern thought.

This, however, has not changed the situation from the syntactical point of view, as we shall try to indicate in the pertinent sections that follow.

For the abovementioned reasons, we shall not utilize the generally accepted division of compound vs. complex clause to designate coordination or subordination of sentence components.

We shall speak instead of compounds in which a coordination may be included as well as a subordination, the actual nature of the mutual relationship of the components being left to further analysis.



## XVI COORDINATE CLAUSES



## § 192 ASYNDETICAL

In Arabic, two or more complete sentences, structurally independent of each other, can be used without any connecting particle to express:

a) independent but complementary statements, as in a description or in the development of an idea<sup>2</sup>:

زَوَاجُهُ تَزْوِيرٌ حَيَاتُهُ تَزْوِيرٌ الدُّنْيَا  
كُلُّهَا تَزْوِيرٌ !

His marriage was a fake;  
so was his life and [his]  
whole world.  
Mah. qah. 120,23

إِنَّمَا هُوَ ابْنُ أَخِي قَدِمْتُ بِهِ  
مِنْ يَثْرِبَ

He is Hashim's nephew; I  
brought him from Yathrib.  
Hai. sir. 98,18

أَنَا الْقَلْبُ الْبَشَرِيُّ قَدْ حَبِسْتُ فِي  
ظُلْمَةِ سُنَنِ الْجَامِعَةِ

I am the human heart, [I  
am] imprisoned in the  
darkness of man's dictates.  
Gibr. II, 115,1

وَلَكِنْ مَحْجُوبٌ لَمْ يَسْمَعْ شَيْئًا كَانَ  
يَرْتَدِي ثِيَابَهُ بِسُرْعَةٍ

But Mahjub did not hear  
a thing; he was getting  
dressed in a hurry.  
Mah. qah. 171,3

قَضَى مُحَمَّدٌ لَيْلَهُ هَادِئًا مُطْمَئِنًّا  
نَزَلَتْ مِنْهُ الْحُمَّى

Mohammed spent a tranquil  
and peaceful night; the  
fever had abated.  
Hai. sir. 502,16

2. The use of قَالَ in the following example can hardly be considered as an independent sentence but rather a graphic way to introduce direct speech:

حَدَّثَنِي ذَاتَ يَوْمٍ قَالَ —

He once told me....  
Raih. mul. 29,14

b) an appositive statement in order to explain or to determine the preceding statement:

هَـنَا تَبْدَأُ صَحْفَةً جَدِيدَةً مِنْ حَيَاةِ  
مُحَمَّدٍ تَبْدَأُ حَيَاةَ الزَّوْجِيَّةِ وَالْأَبَوَةِ

Here begins a new page in the life of Mohammed, his married life and his life as a father.

Hai. sir. 122,17

مُؤَلِّفٌ آخَرُ حَبِيبٌ إِلَى قَلْبِي هُوَ  
أَنَا طُولُ فَرَانْسِ

There is another author I dearly love, Anatole France. Musa adab. 177,16

c) the reason for the preceding statement:

ذَاكَ أَخِي كَانَ نَبِيًّا أَنَا نَبِيٌّ

He is my brother; he was a prophet and so am I.

Hai. sir. 187,19

إِنَّ رَبَّكَ ظَالِمٌ لَا يَعْرِفُ الْعَدْلَ

Your God is an oppressor; he does not know justice. Zayy. (Br.II) 155,27

هُوَ سَارِقٌ قَدْ دَخَلَ الدَّيْرَ لَيْلاً

He is a thief; he broke into the convent at night. Gibr. I,129,18

d) a result or a logical consequence:

هُوَ مَكَانِي أَصْنَعُ فِيهِ مَا شِئْتُ

That is my place; I shall do in it as I please.

Raf. wah. 6,5

e) an emphatic repetition or modification:

إِذَا هِيَ خَلَاءٌ لَيْسَ فِيهَا  
طَالِبٌ وَاحِدٌ

It was empty; there was not a single student there. Hai. (Zy.) 14,4

هُمْ كَثِيرُو الطَّمَعِ فِي الْأَمْوَالِ لَا  
يَشْبَعُونَ

They were extremely greedy; they never could be satisfied. Amin zuh. 10,4

إِنَّ اللَّهَ حَيٌّ لَا يَمُوتُ

God is the Living One; He never dies!

Hak. (Br.) 43,14

كَانَتِ الْمَقَاصِيرُ فِي ذَلِكَ التَّارِيخِ  
خَاصَّةً بِالنِّسَاءِ لَا يَجْلِسُ فِيهَا  
غَيْرُهُنَّ

The loges at this time  
were reserved for women;  
nobody could sit there  
but they.

Manf. sha'. 21,13

النَّاسُ طَرَشٌ لَا يَسْمَعُونَ

People are deaf; they do  
not hear.

Gibr. III,20,13

أَلْعِلْمُ شَيْءٌ وَاحِدٌ لَيْسَ ذَا فُرُوعٍ

Knowledge is one single  
entity; there are no  
divisions.

Amin duh. II,9,10

إِنَّ الْمَجْلِسَ لَخَالٍ مَا فِيهِ  
غَيْرِي وَغَيْرِي

The assembly room was  
empty; there was nobody  
there but both of us.

Raf. wah. I,124,10

f) an explanation of the preceding statement:

مَا أَجْمَلَ ذُوقَهُمْ لَوْنُ لِبَاسِهِمْ  
كَلَوْنِ سَمَائِهِمْ

How fine is their taste!  
The color of their clothing  
is like the color of the  
sky. Hak. (Zy.) 11,14

كَانَ هَذَا السَّلَمُ مَتَوَسِّطًا لَيْسَ  
بَشَدِيدِ السَّعَةِ وَلَا بِشَدِيدِ الضِّيقِ

The staircase was average;  
it was not very wide or  
very narrow.

Hus. ayy. II,5,4

كَانَ طَعَامُهُ خَافًا مَا جَلَسَ عَلَى  
الْمَائِدَةِ

His food was dry; he did  
not sit at the table.

Hus. ayy. I,23,12

هُوَ عِرَاقِيٌّ صَيِّمٌ يَعْلَمُ كَيْفَ  
يُضَيِّحُ الْمُسْتَحِيلَ سَهْلًا

He was a genuine Iraqi;  
he knew how the impossible  
could become easy.

Ayy. (Br.) 32,4

g) after a command, the reason for the command:

دَعَهُ يَلْعَبُ إِنَّهُ صَغِيرٌ

Let him play, he is [so]  
young! Hus. ayy. I,35,14



h) also after certain imperatives or interjectional commands:

تَعَالَوْا نَعِيدُ أَرْضِي الدَّيْرَ  
الْوَسِيعَةَ إِلَى سَكَّانِ هَذِهِ الْقَرْيَ  
الْمَحْتَجِّينَ  
تَعَالِ نَمْشِ الْآنَ

Come then, let's return  
the monastery's spacious  
lands to the needy vil-  
lagers. Gibr. I, 166, 16

Come on, let's go now.  
Gibr. I, 144, 9

Usually the verb in the sentence that follows an imperative will be in the short form of the imperfect —the jussive— as an expression of emphasis (see Vol. I, § 26)<sup>3</sup>:

سَلِّهِ يَنْبُتَكَ

Ask him, he will tell you.  
Hus. ayy. I, 151, 16

قَارِنْ بَيْنَهُ وَبَيْنَ وَالِدَتِهِ  
تَجِدْ أَنْ —

Compare him with his mother,  
and you will find....  
Q. Amin (Zy.) 5, 35

أَحْرِمِ الْأَرْوَى الدَّرْسَةَ يَصْبِحْ  
أَجْهَلُ مِنْ أَجْهَلِ

Deny schools to the Euro-  
pean and he will be most  
ignorant.  
Hak. (Zy.) 11, 37

اُنْظُرْ كُتُبَ الْكَلَامِ تَرَهُمْ يَقْرَءُونَ أَنْ —

Look in the theology books  
and you will find that  
they affirm....  
Hai. sir. J, 5

3. Arab grammarians and Western scholars also frequently consider these constructions as conditional.

Although the meaning in some of them could perhaps tolerate such a conditional interpretation, in the majority of cases its real meaning would change if the interpretation were conditional:

إِذَا كُنْتُ مَرِيضًا فَالْحَسَنُ السَّيِّدُ  
الْحُسَيْنِ يَا تَكَ الشِّفَاءُ

If you are ill, ask our Lord  
Husain and he will bring you  
a remedy. Mah. zuq. 14, 8

دَعُونِي أَنَمْ فَقَدْ سَكِرَتْ نَفْسِي  
بِالْمَحَبَّةِ

Let me sleep, for my spirit  
is intoxicated with love.  
Gibr. II, 215, 3

and also after certain interjectional expressions:

هَلِّىْ مَحْبُوتِي نَمَشِ بَيْنَ الطُّلُولِ      Come, my Beloved, let's  
walk through the ruins.  
Gibr. II, 96, 3

هَلِّىْ نَجِّنِ ثَمَارَ الْأَرْضِ      Let us tend the fruit of  
the earth.  
Gibr. II, 97, 1

هَلِّىْ نَسِرْ يَا سَلَى بِقَدَمِ ثَابِتَةٍ      Oh Salma, let us follow  
this rough path with  
steady step.  
Gibr. II, 61, 21

### § 193 SYNDETICAL

Two or more sentences in syndetical construction are complete and structurally independent of each other. Their mutual relationship is expressed by a conjunction which unites them without changing the structural independence of the individual sentences. The nature of this relationship and the meaning of the compound will vary according to the conjunction used.

### § 194 CONJUNCTIVE CONJUNCTIONS

The function of the conjunctive conjunctions consists in bringing together independent sentences that are understood as necessary parts in the complete exposition of an idea. It simply indicates, through its connective role, the actual validity of all the parts connected. The semantic relationship between the connected sentences is only given through their logical relation to each other.

### § 195 و

و is the most generally used conjunctive particle. It connects sentences without implying any closer, more logical relationship.

The frequency of its use, as well as the manifold meanings that can be expressed with this conjunction, cannot be reproduced in English. Hence, many of the simplest constructions in Arabic require more elaborate ones in their translation, e.g.,

A و may connect sentences

a) intended as equally important in the exposition or the narrative:

إِذْ ذَاكَ بَنَى مُحَمَّدٌ بِعَاشِشَةَ بِنْتَ  
أَبِي بَكْرٍ وَكَانَتْ فِي الْعَاشِرَةِ أَوْ  
الْحَادِيَةِ عَشْرَةَ مِنْ عُمْرِهَا وَكَانَتْ فَتَاةً  
رَقِيقَةً حُلْوَةً الْقَسَمَاتِ مُحِبَّةً الْعِشْرَةَ  
وَكَانَتْ تَخْطُو بِرَأَاكَ مِنَ الطَّفُولَةِ إِلَى  
الْبُصَا وَكَانَتْ ذَاتَ وَلَعٍ بِاللَّعِبِ  
وَالرَّحِّ وَكَانَتْ نَامِيَةً نُمُوًا حَسَنًا

At that time, when she was ten or eleven years of age, Mohammed consummated his marriage with A'isha, Abu Bakr's daughter. She was a gentle, pleasant-looking girl who could converse amiably. Still in her adolescence, she was very playful and gay. Her body, however, had fully developed.  
Hai. sir. 228,6-9

وَكَانَ تَيَّارُ الْقَادِمِينَ لَا يَنْقَطِعُ  
وَكَانَ فِي اسْتِقْبَالِهِمْ جَمَاعَةٌ مِنْ  
الْأَوَانِسِ الْحُمْرِ وَبَعْدَ ثَلَاثِ سَاعَةٍ  
مِنْ جُلُوسِهِ تَكَثَّرَ عَدَدُهُمْ وَتَزَاحَمُوا  
نِسَاءً وَرِجَالًا

The flow of the newcomers had no end. They were received by young ladies with beautiful dark eyes. Less than half an hour after he had been seated, the number of the invited had grown to such an extent that they were all packed together, both men and women.  
Mah. qah. 91,17

أَنَا غَرِيبٌ فِي هَذِهِ الْمَدِينَةِ وَأَنَا  
غَرِيبٌ فِي كُلِّ مَدِينَةٍ أُخْرَى  
لَقَدْ سَمِعْتُ وَقَرَأْتُ وَلَا أَزَالُ  
أَسْمَعُ وَأَقْرَأُ

I am a stranger in this town and also in any other town. Gibr. III,81,9

I have heard and read it and still do.  
al-Hus. (Br.II) 14,23

b) happening simultaneously:

قَالَتْ ذَلِكَ وَالتَّغَتْ بِرِدَاءٍ طَوِيلٍ

While speaking, she wrapped a long cloak around herself. Gibr. I, 157, 12

قَالَ وَقَهَّهَ —

He said, laughing....  
Din (Zy.) 3, 17

قَاطَعَهَا وَصَاحَ —

He interrupted her, shouting....  
Manf. sha'. 236, 16

لَأَنْتَى لَا أَلْتَمِسُ السَّبِيلَ إِلَى  
الْتَّعَرُّفِ بِهِ وَلَا أُحِبُّ أَنْ يَلْتَمِسَهُ

because I am not looking for a way to get acquainted with him nor do I want him to look for a way.  
Manf. mag. 4, 1

لِمَاذَا تَهْتَمُّ بِالْوَحْدَةِ الْعَرَبِيَّةِ  
وَتَهْمِلُ الْوَحْدَةَ الْإِسْلَامِيَّةَ؟

Why be concerned with Arabic unity and [at the same time] neglect Moslem unity?  
al-Hus. (Br. II) 74, 6

Thus, و connecting two sentences with the same verb, emphasizes the simultaneous but independent occurrence of an action realized by two different subjects:

جَلَسَتْ وَجَلَسَتِ السَّيِّدَةُ مَرَّةً

Mrs. Warde [al-Hani] and I sat down. Gibr. I, 112, 14

— إِنْ تَرَكُوهُ هَلَكَ وَهَلَكُوا

If they leave him, he will perish and so will they.  
Raf. wah. III, 6, 5

or its effect on different objects:

يَسْمِيهِ قَوْمُهُ مُحَمَّدًا وَيَسْمِيهِ أَحْمَدَ

His people call him Mohammed and also Ahmed.  
Hus. 'ala. I, 199, 8

أَلَا تَقْتُلُهُ وَتَقْتُلُنِي؟

Aren't you going to kill me and him?  
Hak. sheh. 158, 6

كَانَتْ أُمُّهُ كَمَا دَتَيْهَا تُشْرِفُ الْخَادِمَ  
وَتُشْرِفُ أَخَوَاتِ —

His mother was, as usual, directing the servant and also his sisters who....  
Hus. ayy. I, 19, 5

Hence, the repetition of the verb is used to express a reciprocal idea:

أَحَبَّيْتَهَا وَأَحَبَّتَنِي

We loved each other.  
Gibr. I, 135, 7

أَحَدْتُ رُوكْسَانَ وَتَحَدَّثُنِي

Roxane and I were talking  
to each other.  
Manf. sha'. 188, 6

أَنَّهُ يُحِبُّهَا وَتُحِبُّهُ

that they loved each other.  
Hak. ahl. 128, 5

أَنْتَ تَعْرِفُنِي وَأَنَا أَعْرِفُكَ

We know each other.  
Gibr. III, 116, 4

أَحَبَّيْتَهَا وَأَحَبَّتَهُ

They loved each other.  
Manf. sha'. 69, 15

c) occurring in immediate sequence:

فِي اللَّيْلِ أَرَكْتُ أَمَامَ نَفْسِي  
وَأَعْبَدُهَا

At night, I kneel before  
myself and worship my-  
self. Gibr. III, 14, 4

امْتَلَلْتُ لِأَمْرِ الْوَالِدَةِ وَتَقَدَّمْتُ مِنْ  
السَّرِيرِ وَأَخَذْتُ بِيَدِ بَهَاءَ وَنَادَيْتُهَا  
بِاسْمِهَا

I surrendered to the wish  
of her mother, approached  
the bed, took Baha's hand  
and called her by her name.  
Nu'. liq. 37, 9

قَالَ هَذِهِ الْكَلِمَاتِ وَقَامَ مِنْ  
مَكَانِهِ وَخَرَجَ إِلَى الْحَدِيقَةِ

Saying this, he rose from  
his seat and went out to  
the garden.  
Gibr. I, 143, 6

شَكَرْتَهُ وَأَنْصَرَفَ

I thanked him and he left.  
S. Din (Br.) 61, 4

ذَهَبَ فِي ذَلِكَ الْيَوْمِ وَصَعِدَ فِي  
الْمِنَارَةِ وَاشْتَرَكَ فِي الْأَذَانِ وَصَلَّى  
وَأَرَادَ أَنْ يَعُودَ إِلَى الْبَيْتِ

He left that day and went  
up to the minaret, took  
part in the call to prayer,  
prayed and wanted to go  
back home.  
Hus. ayy. I, 56, 8

كُلَّ يَوْمٍ يَلْحَقُونَ بِي وَيَضْرِبُونَنِي  
وَيَأْكُلُونَ الْحَلِيبَاتِ

Every day they attack and beat me and eat the candy.  
'Aww. (Br.) 14,20

مَا هِيَ إِلَّا فِتْرَةٌ حَتَّى صَلَّى  
الْسلطانُ وَرِجَالَهُ وَشَرِبُوا الْقَهْوَةَ  
وَارْتَحَلُوا

A moment later, the Sultan and his escort recited the prayer, [then] drank coffee and departed.  
Raih. mul. 45,6

or understood as a natural succession of events:

فِي الصَّبَاحِ أَحَدَفُ عَلَى الشَّمْسِ  
وَعِنْدَ الظَّهِيرِ أَلَعَنَ الْبَشَرَ وَفِي  
الْمَسَاءِ أَسْخَرَ بِالطَّبِيعَةِ وَفِي اللَّيْلِ  
أَرَكِعَ أَمَامَ نَفْسِي وَأَعْبَدَهَا

In the morning I damn the sun, at noontide I curse humanity, at eventide, I scoff at nature, and at night I kneel before myself and worship myself.  
Gibr. III,14,4

أَنْتَ الْيَوْمَ حَبِيبِي وَغَدًا تَكُونُ زَوْجِي

Today you are my sweetheart and tomorrow you will be my husband.  
Manf. mag. 43,8

فَهَلَّا قَبِلْتَ دَعْوَتِي وَذَهَبْتَ مَعِي؟

Why don't you accept my invitation and come with me? Gibr. III,82,19

بَايَعَ أَبَا بَكْرٍ وَتَبِعَهُ النَّاسُ

He acknowledged Abu Bakr as Caliph and the people followed him.  
Amin duh. III,4,10

B Two imperatives are usually connected by the conjunction وَ when the second, rather than being a new command, is understood as giving the content, reason, or result of the first one:

تَمَالَ وَانْظُرْ

Come, have a look.  
Hak. sheh. 9,9

تَمَالَ وَعَدِّثْنِي عَنْ شَهْرَزَادِ  
الْجَمِيلَةِ

Come on, tell me about the beautiful Shehrazade.  
Hak. sheh. 7,12

تَعَالَ إِلَيَّ وَقَبِّلْنِي فَإِنِّي أَخُوهَا

Come on, kiss me, for I  
am her brother.  
Manf. sha'. 132,14

طَلِّقْ أَمْرَأَتَكَ وَعِشْ خَالِيًا

Forsake your wife and you  
will be free.  
Gibr. III,11,15

أَسْكُتْ وَلَا تَزِدْ

Don't say another word.  
Manf. sha'. 186,3

C After interrogative sentences, **وَ** may connect the question with its content:

كَيْفَ تَجَرَّأْتَ يَا أَخِي وَتَرَكْتَ  
الَّذِي فِي هَذِهِ اللَّيْلَةِ؟

My brother, how did you  
dare leave the monastery  
on such a night?  
Gibr. I,160,12

D In addition, after verbs of command and related meaning, the content of the command may be given in a coordinated expression if the action was actually accomplished:

تَكَلَّفَ أَبُو الْعَلَاءِ وَأَرْسَلَ إِلَى  
حَلَبَ مَنْ أَشْتَرَى لَهُمْ مِنْهُ شَيْئًا

Abu l-Ala decided to send  
somebody to Aleppo to buy  
some for them.  
Hus. ayy. I,21,8

E Very frequently, **وَ** is used to introduce a sentence that should be understood as a parenthetical explanation of the preceding one:

إِنَّ اللَّهَ إِذَا يَمْنَحُنَا ذَلِكَ الْآثَانَ  
الْكَبِيرَ وَهُوَ الْجَسَدُ —

When God gives us this big  
vessel that is our body,...  
Hak. sul. 36,11

كُنْتُ فِي الثَّامِنَةِ عَشْرَةَ مِنْ عَمْرِي  
عِنْدَمَا قَادَنِي الْقَدَرُ إِلَى رَشِيدٍ —  
وَكَانَ هُوَ إِذْ ذَاكَ قَرِيبًا مِنَ الْأَرْبَعِينَ

I was eighteen years of  
age when destiny led me  
to Rashid...; he was then  
nearly forty years old.  
Gibr. I,113,4

ذَلِكَ الْحَقُّ هُوَ الزَّكَاةُ وَهِيَ  
الرُّكْنُ الثَّلَاثُ مِنَ الْأَرْكَانِ الْخَمْسَةِ  
الَّتِي —

This duty is the *zaka*  
[which] is the third of  
the five pillars....  
Zayy. (Br.II) 154,24

قَالَ مُحَمَّدٌ لِعَمِّهِ الْعَبَّاسِ وَكَانَ مِنْ  
أَكْثَرِ بَنِي هَاشِمٍ يَسَارًا —

Mohammed said to his Uncle Abbas, who was one of the wealthiest among the Banu Hashim....

Hai. sir. 139,17

إِذَا عَلِمَ أَبُو طَالِبٍ أَنَّ — نَادَى  
أَبْنَ أَخِيهِ وَكَانَ يَوْمَئِذٍ فِي الْخَامِسَةِ  
وَالْعِشْرِينَ مِنْ سِنِهِ  
فَهَذِهِ الْمَصَادِيرُ وَفِي مَقَدِّمَتِهَا  
الْقُرْآنُ هِيَ أَوَّلُ مَنْ تَحَدَّثَ عَنْ  
حَيَاةِ النَّبِيِّ الْعَرَبِيِّ

When Abu Talib learned... he called his nephew. He was then twenty-five years old. Hai. sir. 120,22

For these sources —the Koran foremost— are the first ones that tell us about the life of the Arab Prophet.

Hai. sir. 29,1

(كَانَ يُحِبُّ) الْإِشْتِرَاكَ مَعَ الْمُؤَذِّنِ  
فِي التَّسْلِيمِ وَهُوَ الْبِدَاءُ الَّذِي —

(He loved) to accompany the muezzin with the *taslim* —that is, the summons which....

Hus. ayy. I,56,6

The explanation may be to add or stress a new aspect of the sentence:

ثُمَّ مَضَى أَمَامَهُمَا وَتَبِعَاهُ

He went first, with the others following.

Hus. 'ala. II,40,7

فَكَثَّرَ وَأَطَالَ التَّفَكُّيرَ

He remained, thinking a long while.

Hus. 'ala. I,3,9

The parenthetical explanation may give the reason for the preceding statement:

وَأَنَّ لَمْ يَكُنْ أَكْبَرَ إِخْوَتِهِ سِنًا وَقَدْ  
كَانَ الْهَارِثُ أَكْبَرَهُمْ

although he was not the eldest among the brothers, since al-Harith was the eldest. Hai. sir. 114,12

F After certain verbs of general meaning, و introduces what is actually the main idea, which should be understood as modified by the preceding verb:



أَجَابَ وَقَالَ لَهُمْ —

In reply, he said to them  
[he replied and said to  
them].... Gibr. I,169,12

ثُمَّ عَادَتْ وَقَالَتْ —

Then she continued....  
Gibr. I,115,15;  
Gibr. III,116,6

أَزِيدُ عَلَى ذَلِكَ وَأَقُولُ —

In addition to this, I'd  
add.... Musa adab. 15,10

يَتَكْرَمُ وَيَزِيدُ عَلَيْهِ —

He is generous enough to  
add.... Kurd. (Zy.) 28,25

تَفَضَّلَ رَئِيسُ مَجْمَعِ فُؤَادِ الْأَوَّلِ  
لِللُّغَةِ الْعَرَبِيَّةِ بِالنِّيبَةِ زَيْلِي  
الدَّكْتُورُ فَارِسُ نَمِرَ بَاشَا يَوْمَ  
افْتِتَاحِ مُؤْتَمَرِ الدَّوْرَةِ الثَّالِثَةِ  
عَشْرَةَ وَسَالَنِي —

On the inaugural day of  
the convening of the thir-  
teenth session, the acting  
president of the Fuad I  
Arabic Language Academy,  
my colleague, Dr. Faris  
Namr Bey, deigned to ask  
me.... Kurd (Zy.) 28,1

G The basic meaning of the conjunction **وَ**, that of simultaneity of two actions, causes its use after certain temporal expressions of duration:

مَنْذُ الْبَدْءِ وَأَنْتُمْ تَصَارِعُونَ قَوَانَا  
الَلَّيْنَةَ بِضَعْفِكُمُ الْخَشِنِ

Since the beginning of the  
world, you have been  
fighting our gentle power  
with your coarse weakness.  
Gibr. III,48,5

مَنْذُ الْبَدْءِ وَالْإِنْسَانُ يَعْبُدُ نَفْسَهُ

From the beginning of time,  
man has been serving him-  
self. Gibr. III,12,19

مَنْذُ تِسْعَةِ عَشَرَ جِيلًا وَالْبَشَرُ  
يَعْبُدُ وَنَ الضَّعْفَ بِشَخْصِ يَسُوعَ

For nineteen centuries,  
Humanity has been wor-  
shipping weakness in the  
person of Jesus.  
Gibr. III,25,3

H In addition to the above, the connective signi-  
ficance of this conjunction has made common its use  
to join sentences which are actually very loosely re-  
lated to preceding statements or situations as, e.g.,  
in questions:

تَطْلِبِينَ رَأْيِي أَيْضًا فِي هَذَا؟ —  
وَلَمْ لَا؟

"Are you also asking my opinion on this?"... "Why not?" Hak. sul. 43,6

and at the beginning of chapters, with the natural exception of the first one of the book, when the division into chapters is not intended as a complete break in the narrative; e.g., Nagīb Maḥfūz uses this conjunction at the beginning of thirty-five chapters out of forty-six in his book *al-Qāhira al-jadīda*.

I The two sentences connected by the conjunction و may be, and in fact frequently are, in an adversative relationship, such as "but," "yet," especially when one of the statements is negative:

لَا تَعِيشُ بِنَفْسِهَا وَلِنَفْسِهَا  
وَإِنَّمَا تَعِيشُ بِالرَّجُلِ وَلِلرَّجُلِ

For she [woman] does not live through herself and for herself, but only through and for her man. Q. Amin (Zy.) 5,30

كَأَنَّهَا فِي الْمَدِينَةِ وَلَيْسَتْ مِنْهَا

as if in the city, yet out of it. Nu'. liq. 35,5

أَسْمَعُ صَوْتِكَ الْمَتَرَمَ وَلَا أَرَاكَ

I can hear your tormented voice, but I cannot see you. Hak. ahl. 9,7

قَدْ طَرَقْتُ بَابَكَ أَلْفَ مَرَّةٍ وَلَمْ  
يُفْتَحْ لِي

I have knocked at your door a thousand times, but nobody opened it for me. Gibr. III,82,20

but it is also used with two affirmative statements:

إِنَّكَ الْيَوْمَ تَجْهَلِينَ وَغَدًا تَعْلَمِينَ

You don't know today, but you will tomorrow. Manf. mag. 46,3

ظَانًّا أَنَّ إِسْتَيْفَنَ حَاضِرٌ مَعَهُ  
وَإِسْتَيْفَنَ عَنْهُ فِي شُغْلٍ

thinking that Stephen was with him, yet he was [too] busy to pay any attention to him. Manf. mag. 17,13

جَارٌ وَتَفْعَلُ كَالْغَرِيبِ!

You are a neighbor, yet  
you act like a stranger!  
Mah. zuq. 54,18

كُنْتُ بِالْأَمْسِ وَحِيدًا فِي هَذَا الْعَالَمِ  
يَا حَبِيبَتِي — وَالْيَوْمَ اسْتَيْقَظْتُ  
نَفْسِي وَأَتَكَ مُتَّصِبَةً بِقُرْبِهَا

My Beloved, yesterday I  
was alone in the world...  
but today my soul has  
awakened and found you  
standing close to her.  
Gibr. II,199,3

قُلْ إِنْ دَنْ وَأَوْجِزْ فِي الْكَلَامِ

Say it, then, but be brief.  
Hak. sul. 9,10

Hence we derive the fact that وَ is frequently  
used before the adversative particles لَكِنَّ and لَكِنْ  
(see Vol. II, §113):

أَنَا لَا أَخَافُ عَلَى نَفْسِي —  
وَلَكِنِّي أَخَافُ عَلَيْكَ

I am not afraid for my-  
self..., but I do fear  
for you. Gibr. II,78,19

*Note* that since the main effect of this conjunction is  
that of simultaneity, the application of this idea of  
simultaneity to circumstances accompanying an action  
introduces the use of وَ to connect the main clause(s)  
with subordinate ones, e.g., before circumstantial  
clauses (Vol. III, p. 266), in conditional construc-  
tions (see Vol. III, p. 330), and in temporal con-  
structions (see Vol. III, p. 291).

## § 196 فِ

A فِ is the so-called "particle of classifi-  
cation." It indicates coordination together with the  
idea of development in the narrative.

The main difference between فِ and the connective  
particle وَ is that the latter only joins equally im-  
portant sentences, stating their simultaneous validity,  
but without any attempt at internal arrangement or  
logical classification; فِ, however, implies an ar-  
rangement in the narrative. As a consequence of this,  
and in order to indicate fully its actual meaning and  
function, فِ should almost always be translated with

the connective conjunction "and" plus any of the English adverbs used to express a similar progression and arrangement in sequence, e.g., "so," "then," "thus," etc.<sup>4</sup>

The difference between the two conjunctions can be seen in the following examples:

امْتَلَتْ لِأَمْرِ الْوَالِدَةِ وَتَقَدَّمَتْ مِنْ  
السَّرِيرِ وَأَخَذَتْ بِيَدِ بَهَاءٍ وَنَادَيْتَهَا  
بِاسْمِهَا فَلَمَحَتْ خَلْجَةً خَفِيفَةً فِي  
حَاجِبَيْهَا وَمِثْلَهَا عِنْدَ أَطْرَافِ  
شَفَتَيْهَا

I surrendered to her mother's wish, approached her bed, took Baha's hand, called her name, and it seemed to me I noticed a slight twitch in her eyebrows and also about the corners of her mouth. Nu'. liq. 37,9

اسْتَمَرَ يُحَادِثُهَا سَاعَةً حَتَّى حَانَ  
وَقْتُ رَجُوعِهَا فَوَدَعَتْ وَأَنْصَرَفَتْ

He went on talking to her for a while until it was time for her to go back. Then, she took leave and departed. Manf. mag. 24,19

كُنْتُ مُنْفَرِدًا كَالزَّهْرَةِ الثَّابِتَةِ فِي  
ظِلِّ الصَّخَرِ الْمَتَالِيَةِ فَلَا تَشْعُرُ  
الْحَيَاةُ بِوُجُودِي وَلَا أَنَا أَشْعُرُ  
بِكَيَانِ الْحَيَاةِ وَالْيَوْمَ قَدْ اسْتَيْقَظَتْ  
نَفْسِي وَرَأَيْتُكَ مُنْتَصِبَةً فَتَهَيَّيْتُ  
وَتَهَلَّلْتُ

I was as alone as a flower growing under the shadow of towering rocks. Thus, Life did not touch me nor was I aware of it. But today, my soul awakened, saw you by her and stood up in joyful awe. Gibr. II,199,4

4. It will be of interest to mention here the formular expression *فَحَسْبُ*, "and that's all and no more" (hence also "only"), in which *حَسْبُ*, as previously mentioned (Vol. I, Section 10), should also be considered as an elliptical nominal sentence used with an adverbial function:

لَمْ يَكُنْ ذَلِكَ نَتِيجَةَ لِكَلَامِ حُسَيْنِ  
الرَّاهِنِ فَحَسْبُ

That was not only an effect of Husain al-Rahin's words. Mah. zuq. 46,15

إِثْنَانِ فَحَسْبُ  
الْمَوْخِ لَيْسَ نَاقِلًا فَحَسْبُ

Only two. Mah zuq. 30,11

An historian is not simply a translator. Hai. sir. 39,24

كَانَ قَدْ خِيلَ إِلَيْهِ أَنَّ الْأَمْرَ قَدْ  
 أَنْتَبَهَ بَيْنَهُ وَبَيْنَ الْكِتَابِ وَمَنْ فِيهِ  
 فَلَنْ يَعُودَ إِلَيْهِ وَلَنْ يَوِيَ الْغَفِيَّةَ  
 وَلَا الْعَرِيفَ فَأُطْلِقَ لِسَانَهُ فِي  
 الرَّجُلَيْنِ إِطْلَاقًا شَنِيعًا

He believed that his ties with the school and those who were there had been definitely severed, and thus he never would go back again, nor would he again see either the teacher or the monitor, so he loosened his tongue atrociously about the two men. Hus. ayy. I,63,8

B Since **فَ** coordinates independent statements, the sentence it follows may only be introduced by **إِن**, contrary to **و**, which also may introduce subordinate noun clauses:

فَإِنَّ الْأَرَبَ الْإِنجِلِيزِيَّ يَتَّصِلُ  
 بِالْحَيَاةِ

English writers are in touch with life.  
 Musa adab. 2,1

إِنْتَظِرِي يَا رُوكْسَانَ فَإِنِّي أُرِيدُ  
 أَنْ أَقُولَ لَكَ

"Wait, Roxane, I want to talk to you."  
 Manf. sha'. 166,6

Note that the statements coordinated with **فَ** may also be subordinated to a preceding one; see below p. 33.

The progression indicated by **فَ** may be understood as subsequent in time to the preceding action or situation:

إِذَا فَرَعُوا مِنَ الْغَدَاءِ أَنْصَرَفُوا  
 عَنْهُ فَنَامَ حَيْثُ هُوَ

When they were through with eating, they departed and he slept where he was. Hus. ayy. I,90,6

سَارَ حَتَّى أَتَى قَيْصَرَ الرُّومِ  
 جُوشْتِنِيَانَ فَاسْتَنْصَرَ عَلَى نَبِيِّ نُوَاسٍ

He went to the Emperor of Byzantium and asked him for help against Du Nuwas. Hai. sir. 75,15

It may also imply a change of subject:

آخَرُ نَادَى الرَّئِيسَ فَبَاءَ مُسْرِعًا

Another [priest] called the Superior and he came hurriedly. Gibr. I,170,2

C ق implies an internal —and logical— relationship between the two coordinate sentences, e.g,

a) It may refer back to the preceding statement as a necessary premise for the action of the second:

إِذَا أَنَا سَافَرْتُ فَخِئْتُ إِلَى الْبَحْرِ  
— شَعَرْتُ —  
When I take a trip to go to the sea... I feel....  
Raf. wah. I, 51, 12

أَحَرْتُ الْأَرْضَ الَّتِي رَوَتْهَا الْأَمْطَارُ  
فَأَصْبَحَتْ لَيِّنَةً  
I would till the soft soil after the rains.  
Sak. (Zy.) 13, 37

b) It may also unite two sentences that have a causal relationship pointing toward the effect, or fact, and its consequences:

فِي هَذِهِ اللَّيْلَةِ الَّتِي تَخَافُهَا  
الدِّثَّابُ فَتَنْزَوِي بِالْكَهُوفِ  
on such a night that wolves are afraid enough to hide in their caves.  
Gibr. I, 160, 12

لَعَلَّهَا تَسْمَعُ صَوْتَكَ فَتَغِيقُ  
Perhaps she will hear your voice and so wake up.  
Nu'. liq. 37, 8

بَلَّغْنَا الْبَيْتَ فَأَنْقَطَعْنَا عَنِ  
الْحَدِيثِ  
We had arrived at the house, so we stopped our conversation.  
Nu'. liq. 34, 17

خِفْتُ أَنْ يَطُولَ الْأَمْرُ فَوَدِدْتُ  
عَلَيْهِ بِالْأَنْجَلِيْزِيَّةِ  
I was afraid that the matter would become too long, therefore I answered in English.  
Maz. (Zy.) 1, 19

قَضَمَتْ حَبْلَ الْكَتَّانِ بِأَسْنَانِهَا  
فَسَقَطَ الْجَمِيْتُ عَلَى الْأَرْضِ  
She gnawed at the rope with her teeth so that the body fell to the ground.  
Gibr. I, 136, 8

أَنَا أَفَكِّرُ فَأَنَا مَوْجُودٌ  
Cogito ergo sum.  
Mah. qah. 25, 16

سَأَلْتُ الْخُبْزَ بِأَسْمِ الْمَحَبَّةِ فَلَمْ  
يَسْمَعْنِي الْإِنْسَانُ فَسَأَطْلُبُهُ بِأَسْمِ  
الشَّرِّ

I have asked for bread  
in the name of love, but  
humanity did not heed.  
So now I shall ask for  
it in the name of evil.  
Gibr. II,164,18

فَلَمْ يَرِ بِدَا مِنْ أَنْ يَحْيِيَهُ فَحَيَّاهُ

He could not avoid greeting  
him, so he did.  
Manf. mag. 11,10

اعْتَقَدْتُ أَنَّهَا سَمِعَتْنِي فَثَانِيَةً  
ثَانِيَةً وَثَالِثَةً

I thought she had heard  
me, so I called her a  
second and a third time.  
Nu'. liq. 37,11

لَكِنَّهُ يَقُولُ مَا لَا يَفْهَمُهُ الْأَغْيَاءُ  
فَيُظَنُّونَهُ كَاذِبًا

But he says what the  
ignorant cannot under-  
stand, so they think he  
is a liar.  
Manf. sha'. 56,3

فَ After a question, the sentence introduced by frequently expresses the reason for the question:

هَلْ كَانَ مَعْصُومًا عَنْ هَذِهِ  
الْمَحْرَمَاتِ فَجَازَ لَهُ إِعْدَامُ الْقَاتِلِ  
وَشَنْقُ السَّارِقِ؟

Is he so innocent of such  
wrongdoings that he can  
condemn the killer to  
death and the thief to  
be hanged?  
Gibr. I,132,16

مَاذَا فَعَلَتِ الرَّأَةُ يَا رَبِّ  
فَاسْتَحَقَّتْ غَضَبَكَ؟

What have women done, Oh  
Lord, to merit your anger?  
Gibr. II,52,2

Note the following:

أَلَا أَعَاوَنُكَ فَأَبْكِي مَعَكَ؟

Couldn't I help you by  
weeping with you?  
Hak. sul. 138,10

c) The sentence following the conjunction may also express the reason for or the cause of a preceding statement:

هُوَ قَوَّامُ الْحَيَاةِ فَهُوَ الَّذِي يُمِدُّ  
الْمَدْنَ بِمَا يُقِيمُ حَيَاتَهَا

He is the sustainer of life, for he is the one who provides the cities with sustenance.  
Sak. (Zy.) 13,12

أَحْسَ بَبُؤْسِ الْفُقَرَاءِ فَقَدْ نَشَأَ  
فَقِيرًا

He felt sympathetic toward the lot of the poor, for he had been raised in poverty.  
Amin duh. 409,11

أَحْمَدُ اللَّهِ فَقَدْ وَجَدْتُ صَدِيقِي

I praise God, for I have found my friend.  
Manf. (Zy.) 30,16

مَا أَجْمَلَ الْحَيَاةَ هَهُنَا يَا حَبِيبِي  
فَبِهَا مِثْلُ قَلْبِ الشَّاعِرِ الْمَلُوءِ  
نُورًا رِقَّةً

How beautiful life is here, my Beloved, for it is like a poet's heart, full of light and gentleness. Gibr. II,206,13

وَلَكِنْ ذَلِكَ لَمْ يَرْعَهُ فَكَبَّرُوا مَا  
مَشَى حَافِيًا

But that did not bother him, for he had often walked barefooted.  
Hus. ayy. 58,1

d) After an imperative, or an interjectional expression, it gives the reason for the command:

هَلُمَّ يَا وَلَدَيَّ إِلَى الْعَشَاءِ  
فَالطَّعَامُ يَنْتَظِرُنَا

Come on, my sons, to the meal, for food awaits us.  
Gibr. II,29,1

قَبِّلْنِي فَإِنِّي أَخُوهَا

Kiss me, for I am her brother.  
Manf. sha'. 132,14

انْظُرِي مَلَابِسَهُ فَهِيَ شَبِيهَةٌ  
بِأَثْوَابِ الرُّهْبَانِ

Look at his clothes; they are similar to the habit of the monks.  
Gibr. I,158,16

تَعَالَ فَأُرِيكَ خَفَايَا هَؤُلَاءِ النَّاسِ

Come, I'll show you the secret of these people.  
Gibr. I,118,16



تَعَالَ إِلَيَّ صَدِيقِي فَأَنَا أُرِيدُ  
— أَنْ —

Come to me, my friend.  
I want....  
Gibr. II, 140, 4

دَعُونِي أَنَّمْ فَقَدْ سَكِرَتْ نَفْسِي  
بِالْمَحَبَّةِ<sup>5</sup>

Let me sleep for my spirit  
is intoxicated with love.  
Gibr. II, 215, 3

After verbs of command, the command's content may be given as a coordinate sentence introduced by **فَ**, which expresses the command as having been executed. This also applies to verbs expressing a wish or a desire when their content actually is fulfilled:

أَمَرَنِي فَتَوَضَّأْتُ لِصَلَاةِ الْفَجْرِ

He told me to perform the  
ablution for the dawn  
prayer. Raf. (Zy.) 20, 10

السَّمَاءُ الَّتِي شَاءَتْ فَأَخَذَتْ  
وَالِدَيَّ —

Heaven, whose will it was  
to take my parents away....  
Gibr. I, 164, 9

أَمَرَ بِي فَحَمَلُونِي وَالْقَوْنِي فِي الْبَحْرِ

He condemned me to be  
carried and thrown into  
the sea [He condemned me  
and they carried and  
threw me into the sea].  
Hak. sul. 10, 9

Compare with the following:

أَمَرَتْهُ أَنْ يَشِيَّ أَمَامَهُمَا بِصُبَاغِهِ  
فَفَعَلَ

She ordered him to pre-  
cede them with the lan-  
tern, which he did.  
Manf. sha'. 196, 4

e) The sentence after **فَ** may express a mere modality of the preceding statement:

بَيْنَمَا يَقُولُ الْعُلَمَاءُ فَيَكْثُرُونَ  
فِي الْقَوْلِ

while the learned men talked  
at length. Hus. ayy. I, 79, 6

قَدْ أَدَّبَهُ رَبُّهُ فَأَحْسَنَ تَأْدِيبَهُ

His Lord instructed him  
very well. Hal. sir. 132, 14

5. On this use of the jussive see Vol. I, Section 26,  
and Vol. III, p. 10.

ثُمَّ أَطْرَقَ صَامِتًا فَأَطَالَ الْإِطْرَاقَ

Then he bowed his head a long while in silence.  
Hus. 'ala. II, 17, 11

f) After verbs of general meaning, ف introduces the main idea as modified by the preceding statement:

أَعُودُ فَأَقُولُ —

I shall repeat.... (not I shall come back and say.) Musa adab. 21, 12

بَعْدَ هُنَيْهَةٍ عَادَ فَقَالَ

After a little while he went on, saying....  
Gibr. I, 164, 9

أَوْجِزُ فَأَقُولُ —

In brief [I shall say in short]....  
Maz. (Zy.) 1, 20

أَسْرَعْتُ فَأَقْلَعْتُ بِأَبِ الْمَوْضُوعِ

I closed the subject hastily.  
Hak. yaum. 94, 2

أَسْرَعْتُ فَخَلَعْتُ ثِيَابِي الْعَمِيْقَةَ

I took off my old clothing in a hurry.  
Hak. ahl. 75, 16

وَلَكِنَّهُ عَادَ فَفَكَّرَ بَعْدَهُ إِبْرَاهِيمَ

But he thought again of his Uncle Ibrahim.  
'Aww. (Br.) 17, 24

Note that in this construction, the tense (and mood) of the two connected verbs seems to be necessarily the same:

هَؤُلَاءِ الْأَطْفَالُ يَتَضَرَّوْنَ شَهْوَةً  
كَمَا أَكَلُوا لِيَعُودُوا فَيَأْكُلُوا

These children suffer longing each time they eat, to eat again.  
Raf. wah. I, 90, 3

g) ف, like the conjunction وَ, may also connect two sentences that are in an adversative relationship; in such cases, one statement is usually affirmative while the other is negative:

سَمِعَ الصَّبِيُّ هَذَا الْكَلَامَ فَلَمْ  
يُصَدِّقْ وَلَمْ يُكْذِبْ

The boy heard this but  
he did not believe nor  
disbelieve.

Hus. ayy. I,138,6

أَفْتَيْتُ عَنْ كَلِمَةٍ أَقُولُهَا فَمَا أَجِدُهَا

I searched for a word to  
say, but I did not find  
any. Nu'. liq. 25,12

أَقَامَ عَلَى ذَلِكَ زَمْنَا كَانَتْ خَدِيجَةُ  
قَدْ بَعَثَتْ أَثْنَاءَهُ مَنْ يَلْتَمِسُهُ فِي  
الْغَارِ فَلَا يَجِدُهُ

He remained that way for  
some time, during which  
Hadija sent somebody to  
look for him in the cave,  
but he could not be found.  
Hai. sir. 134,4

سَأَلْتُ الْخَبَرَ بِاسْمِ الْمَحَبَّةِ فَلَمْ  
يَسْمَعْني الْإِنْسَانُ

I asked for bread in the  
name of love, but humanity  
did not heed.

Gibr. II,164,18

تَلَفَّتْ يَمَنَةً وَيَسْرَةً فَلَمْ يَرَ شَيْئًا

He turned around but did  
not see anything.  
Hai. sir. 133,11

إِنَّ مَجْدُولِينَ لَمْ تَنْزِلِ الْيَوْمَ  
كَعَادَتِهَا فَلَعَلَّهَا بِخَيْرٍ

Magdalene did not come  
down today as usual, but  
I hope she is well.  
Manf. mag. 12,11

but it is also found with two affirmative statements:

خَرَجَ قَوْمُكَ فَبَقِيتَ فِي الدَّارِ

Your people went away,  
but you remained at home.  
Hai. sir. 295,19

قَدْ هَمَّ خَلِيلٌ ثَلَاثَ مَرَّاتٍ أَنْ —  
فَكَانَتْ رَاحِلٌ تَصُدُّهُ بِلُطْفٍ

Three times Khalil had  
decided to...but Rachel  
had dissuaded him gently.  
Gibr. I,173,1

كَانَ الْعِيدُ فِي الْإِسْلَامِ هُوَ عِيدُ  
الْفِكْرَةِ الْعَابِدَةِ فَاصْبَحَ عِيدُ الْفِكْرَةِ  
الْعَابِثَةِ

The holiday in Islam  
used to be a holy day  
for meditation and wor-  
ship, but it has become  
a day of frivolous thoughts  
Raf. wah. I,35,7

h) *فَ* , like *وَ* , may precede a direct question when it is logically related to a preceding situation or statement; it will either precede or follow the interrogative particle as seen in Vol. I, § 41ff.:

فَمَاذَا تَعْمَلُ إِذَا ذَاكَ أَيُّهَا الرَّجُلُ؟ And what will you do then,  
O Man? Gibr. I,110,2

فَلَمَّاذَا يَمْنَعُ النَّاسُ الْخُبْزَ مِنِّي؟ Why did people refuse to  
give me bread?  
Gibr. II,164,13

*Note* the following construction:

أَلَا فَانْظُرْهَا مُتَّكِئَةً عَلَى سَاعِدِهِ Why, look at her leaning  
on his arm. Gibr. I,211,2

أَلَا فَاعْلَمْ يَا هَذَا أَنَّ — Hey you! Don't you know  
that....  
Hak. sul. 16,10

*Note* also:

طَفِقَ — يُفَكِّرُ فِيمَا يَصْنَعُ بِهِمْ He began...thinking about  
أَفَيَقْتُلُهُمْ أَمْ يَأْخُذُ مِنْهُمْ الْفِدَاءَ؟ what to do with them:  
whether to kill them or  
to ask ransom from them.  
Hai. sir. 271,12

i) *فَ* may also introduce the jussive of the imperfect, preceded by the particle *لِ* , as an expression of an indirect command.

In this combination, *لِ* always loses its final vowel according to Arabic grammarians (see Vol. I, § 26):

أَوَّلًا فَلْيَأْتُوا بِالْقِطَاطَيْنِ First, let them bring the  
two cats!  
Raf. wah. I,58,5

فَلْنَذْهَبْ إِلَى عَالَمِنَا Let's go [back] to our  
world. Hak. ahl. 72,10

فَلْيَكُنْ مَا أَرَادَ اللَّهُ God's will be done.  
Manf. sha'. 162,14

j) As a consequence of the progression stated by **فَ**, this conjunction may focus attention on, and even emphasize, the main idea when it occupies a secondary position following another statement. In many of these cases, its function seems to be at times more that of an adverb than of a real conjunction. We see this, for example, when the first sentence in a coordinate construction is intended as a mere statement which introduces or presents circumstances surrounding the sentence following:

سَمِعَتْ مَرْيَمُ هَذِهِ الْكَلِمَاتِ  
فَاهْتَرَتْ قَامَتَهَا

When Mary heard these words,  
her body trembled.  
Gibr. I, 177, 17

(اللُّغَةُ) هِيَ الْفُصْحَى الَّتِي ظَهَرَ  
الْإِسْلَامُ فَوَجَدَهَا كَامِلَةً النَّمُو

It is the classical (language) which Islam, at its appearance, found fully developed.  
Khal. (Br. II) 6, 4

It may also introduce a sentence after a noun has been mentioned as an anacoluthon (see Vol. II, § 180). This is frequently the case after mention of the subject has been made:

أَنَا فَلَسْتُ أَدْرِي —

I, I do not know....  
Raf. wah. I, 11, 17

أَنَا فَقَدْ كُنْتُ أَجْرُ عَرَبَةِ الْقَمَامَةِ  
وَالْأَقْدَارِ

I, I was pulling the cart of garbage and dirt.  
Raf. wah. I, 346, 13

كُلُّ مَا عَدَا ذَلِكَ فَخَرَاةٌ يَعْرِفُهَا  
الْجَمِيعُ

[All beside this] Everything else is a fable everybody knows.  
Hak. sheh. 75, 7

but also with nouns other than the subject:

أَنْعَمَ اللَّهُ سَاءَكَ — وَأَنْتَ  
فَأَنْعَمَ اللَّهُ سَاءَكَ

"Good afternoon [to you]."  
"[To you, too] Good afternoon."  
Raf. wah. I, 161, 12

(On the use of **فَ** as a correlative particle after **أَمَّا**, see Vol. III, p. 196.)

The use of ف to introduce the main part of the sentence is especially frequent after an adverbial modification—whether adversative, temporal, or circumstantial—which is expressed at the beginning of the sentence. In these instances, ف emphasizes the main aspect of the sentence:

فَوَقَّ ذَلِكَ فَدَشَقُ بَعِيدَةً جِدًّا  
عَنْ خُرَاسَانَ

Besides that, Damascus was very far from Khurasan. Amin duh. I, 180, 13

وَإِذَنْ فَهُوَ يَذْهَبُ إِلَى الْكِتَابِ  
لَا لِيَقْرَأَ وَلَا لِيَحْفَظَ

Then he goes to school neither to read nor to learn. Hus. ayy. I, 61, 1

وَالآنَ فَإِلَى أَيْنَ نَحْنُ نَسِيرُ؟

Now, where are we going? Qutb (Br. II) 161, 3

وَمَعَ ذَلِكَ فَالتَّارِيخُ يُعِيدُ نَفْسَهُ  
فِي الْقَلْبِ

In spite of that, history repeats itself in the hearts [of men]. Raf. wah. I, 38, 8

وَمَعَ ذَلِكَ فَإِنَّ أَبَاكَ يَبْذُلُ —

However, your father would take any pains.... Hus. ayy. I, 145, 13

وَلِذَلِكَ فَإِنَّهُ يَذْهَبُنِي أَنْ —

For this reason, it surprises me that.... Mah. qah. 166, 9

فَضْلًا عَنْ ذَلِكَ فَقَلْبُهَا كَانَ  
يُحَدِّثُهَا دَائِمًا —

Besides that, her heart was still telling her.... Mah. qah. 163, 1

وَعَلَى ذَلِكَ فَقَدْ قُمْنَا بِتَطْهِيرِ  
أَنْفُسِنَا

Accordingly, we had purified ourselves. al-Raf. (Zy.) 19, 9

وَعَلَى الرَّغْمِ مِنَ الْعَذَابِ الَّذِي  
يُلَاقِيهِ فَهُوَ يَتَمَنَّى أَنْ تَدُومَ الْحَالُ  
عَلَى مَا هِيَ

In spite of the punishment that he met at home, he wanted things to remain as they were. 'Aww. (Br.) 12, 17

مِنْ شَمَ ف —

Therefore [From there].... al-Raf. (Zy.) 19, 2

Note the formular phrase:

— بَعْدُ وَ — Now, then, now to our topic....  
Raih. mul. 30,14;  
Manf. mag. 10,12

وَبَعْدُ فَأَنَا فِي هَذِهِ الصَّفَحَاتِ  
لَا أَصْنَعُ — Now, in these pages I shall not do....  
Raf. wah. III,4,9

Hence, *فَ* is also frequently used to introduce a main clause after statements intended as modifications (temporal, modal, etc.) of the main clause:

وَلَكِنْ مِذْ جِئْنَا الْكَهْفَ فَتَحْنُ لَا  
نَفْكُرُ فِي غَيْرِ — But, since we came to the cave, we have only been thinking about....  
Hak. ahl. 25,1

مَا دَامَ الْمَسْتَقْبَلُ يُغْرِينَا فَمِنْ  
الْمَسْتَقْبَلِ أَنْ تَتَحَدَّثَ — As long as the future interests us, then it is of the future that we speak....  
Hind. (Zy.) 32,15

أَنَّهُ حِينَ يَصْدُرُ الْأَرِيبُ كِتَابًا  
لِلشَّعْبِ فَإِنَّمَا يَصْدُرُ نَفْسَهُ that when a writer publishes a book for the people, he expresses his [own] spirit.  
Musa adab. 10,6 .

يَتَمَنَّى أَنْ لَوْ أَنْفَجَرَتِ الْأَرْضُ  
تَحْتَ قَدَمَيْهِ فَهَوَى فِي أَعْمَاقِهَا  
أَبَدَ الْآبِدِينَ wishing that the earth would open under him and that he would drop into its bottom forever.  
Manf. sha'. 115,3

It is also used after adversative statements:

وَمَعَ أَنَّ ثَوْبَةَ لَمْ تَرْضَعَهُ إِلَّا  
أَيَّامًا فَقَدْ ظَلَّ يَحْفَظُ لَهَا  
حَبَرَ الْوَدِّ Although Thuwaiba only nursed him for a few days, he always retained a great affection for her. Hal.\*sir. 109,20

(On the uses of *فَ* before the main clause after *إِذَا* and in conditional constructions, see Vol. III, p. 361f.)

Since ف aids in expressing development in the narrative, as stated above, it may introduce the subordinate clause when this precedes the main clause:

مَعَ ذَلِكَ فَإِنْ شِئْتَ صَنَعْتُ لَكَ  
أَقْرَاصًا عَجِيَّةً

But if you wish, I can  
make some wonderful loaves  
for you. Mah. zuq. 215,19

It may also coordinate series of clauses:

أَتَيْتُ مِنْذُ عَامٍ كَانَ قَدْ أَوْفَدَنِي  
دَاقِيَانُوسُ فَفَعَيْتُ عَنْ بَيْتِي أَرْبَعَةَ  
أَيَّامٍ فَلَمَّا عُدْتُ حَمَلْتُ مَعِيَ إِلَى  
وَلَدِي مِنَ الْهَدَايَا مَا سَرَّ بِهِ  
سُرُورًا حَتَّى إِنَّهُ قَالَ —

The year when Dacianus  
sent me as his delegate  
to the provinces, I was  
absent from home four  
days; when I came back,  
I had brought some gifts  
with me for my son that  
pleased him so very much  
that he exclaimed....  
Hak. ahl. 62,5

ف may also coordinate a series of subordinate verbs, e.g., a sequence of verbs following the particle أَنْ:

إِنِّي لَأَخْشَى لَوْ حَدَّثْتُكَ بِمَا  
عَرَفْتُ مِنْ أَمْرِ أَبِيكَ حِينَئِذٍ أَنْ  
يَمْلِكَكَ الْإِسْفَاقُ وَيَأْخُذَكَ الرَّأْفَةُ  
فَتَجْهَشِي بِالْبَكَاءِ

I am afraid that if I  
tell you what I know  
about the condition of  
your father at that  
time, pity and compassion  
will overwhelm you and  
you will start crying.  
Hus. ayy. I,146,14

D ف may also be used to introduce an action which is intended as the aim of a previous action, or which is the logical result of an action designed to achieve such a consequence. In this case, ف is always followed immediately by a verb in the subjunctive, to which ف is prefixed. The meaning of this construction is only to some extent equivalent to an English final clause:

وَلَيْتَ جَمِيعَ الْأَمِّهِمْ تَنْتَقِلَ مِنْ  
أَمْعَائِهِمْ إِلَى قُلُوبِهِمْ فَيَسْتَرِيحُوا

I wish all their pains  
would migrate from their  
stomachs to their hearts  
so that they could find  
some rest. Manf. sha'. 209,



أَلَا يَسْمَعَا نَزْعَ الشَّيْطَانِ فَيَاكُلَا  
مِنَ الشَّجَرَةِ

not to listen to the insinuations of the devil [urging] them to eat from the tree. Hai. sir. 5,4

لِمَ لَا تَذْهَبُ إِلَى الْغَارِ فَتَأْتِي  
بِهَؤُلَاءِ الْقِدِّيسِينَ ضُيُوفًا كِرَامًا  
عَلَى قَصْرِنَا ؟  
عَسَى أَنْ اللَّهُ يَعْلِمَنَا فَتَعْقِلَ  
وَيُؤَدِّبَهُمْ فَيَعْدِلُوا

Why don't you go to the cave to bring these saints as honored guests to the palace? Hak. ahl. 52,11

May God instruct us so that we understand and teach them to become just. Raih. mul. 65,15

أَنَا أَبْكِيهِمْ فَيَبْلُغُ مُحَمَّدًا وَأَصْحَابَهُ  
فَيَشْهَتُوا بِنَا ؟

Should I cry for them so that Mohammed and his friends learn of it and he rejoices at our misfortune? Hai. sir. 276,14

أَنْ يُعْطُوا كُلَّ فِتْيٍ سَيْفًا صَارِمًا  
بَتَارًا فَيَضْرِبُوهُ جَمِيعًا ضَرْبَةً رَجُلٍ  
وَاحِدٍ — وَلَا يَقْدِرُ بَنُو عَبْدِ مَنَافٍ  
عَلَى قِتَالِهِمْ جَمِيعًا فَيَرْضَوْا فِيهِ  
بِالدِّيَةِ

that they should give every youth a very sharp sword so that they could slay him as a single man... and the Banu Abd al-Manaf would not be able to fight against them all and so they would have to accept the blood money. Hai. sir. 209,9

أَنْ يَذْهَبَ إِلَى الْمَحْكَمَةِ فِي كُلِّ  
صَبَاحٍ فَيَقْرَأَ عَلَى الْقَاضِي بَابًا مِنْ  
أَبْوَابِ الْأَلْفِيَّةِ

to go to the court house every morning to recite a chapter of the *Alfiyya* to the judge. Hus. ayy. I,74,1

وَلَا تَأْخُذْ هَذَا الْوَجْهَ الْحَزِينَ  
فَتَحْزَنَ أَخَاكَ

Don't show such a sad face, for you will make your brother unhappy. Hus. ayy. I,140,4

أَشْطَرُّوهُ فَلَا يَكُونُ لِي وَلَا لِغَيْرِي

Do divide him up, so that he will not be mine nor anybody else's. Hak. sul. 29,5

§ 197

ثُمَّ

A ثُمَّ emphasizes the sequence existing between two structurally independent statements as an interval, contrary to فَ, which stresses the connected series; thus, before ثُمَّ, a pause or an interval in the narrative is to be understood.

The following examples will clarify the differences among the three coordinate conjunctions وَ, فَ, and ثُمَّ (also see the section above on فَ):

وَكَانَ عَيَّ الْحَاجَّ عَلَى يَتَكَلَّفُ  
الْتَّقَوَى وَالْمَرْعَ وَيُظْهِرُ ذَلِكَ إِلَى  
أَقْصَى مَا يَظْهِرُ النَّاسُ تَكْلَفَهُمْ  
وَتَصْنَعَهُمْ يَبْدَأُ بِهَذِهِ الْغَزْوَةِ الَّتِي  
يَجِدُّهَا فِي الثَّلَاثِ الْأَخِيرِ مِنْ كُلِّ  
لَيْلَةٍ فَيَخْرُجُ مِنْ غُرْفَتِهِ صَاحِبًا صَاحِبًا  
يَذْكُرُ اللَّهَ وَالتَّسْبِيحَ بِحَمْدِهِ ضَارِبًا  
الْأَرْضَ بِعَصَاهُ حَتَّى يَبْلُغَ مَسْجِدَ  
سَيِّدِنَا الْحَسَنِ فَيَقْرَأُ فِيهِ رُودَ  
السَّحَرِ وَيَشْهَدُ فِيهِ صَلَاةَ الْفَجْرِ  
ثُمَّ يَعُودُ مَمْتِنًا مَهْمَبًا مَدَاعِبًا  
الْأَرْضَ بِعَصَاهُ فَيَسْتَرْجِعُ فِي غُرْفَتِهِ

Uncle Ali al-Hajj used to affect devoutness and piety and show this to the greatest extreme in affectation and mannerism. It began with this "raid," which he would renew toward the end of every night, for he would leave his room, roaring his prayer and praise to God, beating the ground with his stick until he reached the mosque of our Lord Husain. There he would recite his private dawn prayer and attend the public one. Then he would return, mumbling and grumbling, playfully stroking the ground with his stick, and would retire to his room.

Hus. ayy. II, 46, 8

فَإِذَا فَرَّغُوا مِنَ الْغَدَاءِ انْصَرَفُوا  
عَنْهُ فَنَامَ حَيْثُ هُوَ ثُمَّ نَهَضَ  
فَتَوَضَّأَ

When they had finished eating, they departed and he slept where he was; later he would wake up and perform his ablutions.

Hus. ayy. I, 90, 6

هُنَا دَقَّ الْجَرَسُ ثَلَاثَ دَقَّاتٍ  
ثُمَّ ارْتَفَعَ السِّتَارُ فَظَهَرَ مُؤَنِّفُهُ  
عَلَى الْمَسْرَحِ

At that moment, the bell sounded three times; then the curtain rose and Monfleury appeared on the stage. Manf. sha'. 36, 14

رَفَعَتْ الْوَالِدَةُ رَأْسَهَا وَأَصْفَتْ  
هَنْيْهَةً ثُمَّ أَجَابَتْ —

[Her] mother lifted her head and listened, then she replied....  
Gibr. I, 157, 4

ثُمَّ مَدَّ يَدَهُ فَصَبَّ الْخَارِمُ الْقَهْوَةَ  
ثُمَّ صَبَّ لِي ثُمَّ لِلْحَضُرِ

Then he stretched out his hand and the servant poured the coffee; he poured then some for me and then for the others who were present.  
Raih. mul. 63, 7

B As a consequence of its temporal meaning, ثُمَّ usually implies that the action of the preceding sentence has been completed, thus introducing a new event or situation:

اِشْتَرَيْتُ الْكِتَابَ بِثَمَنٍ غَالٍ ثُمَّ  
اَنْتَعَيْتُ رُكْنًا فِي قَهْوَةٍ

I bought the book at a high price, then I went to a corner of a coffee house. Maz. (Zy.) 1, 4

إِنَّهُ وُلِدَ فِي لُبْنَانَ وَقَضَى فِيهِ  
صِبَاهَهُ وَقَسَمًا مِنْ شَبَابِهِ ثُمَّ عَادَ  
إِلَى بِلَادِهِ وَرَأَى الْبَحْرَ

that he had been born in Lebanon and spent his childhood there and a part of his youth; then he went back to his country beyond the sea.  
Nu'. kan. 10, 15

وَأَعْطَى كُلَّ وَاحِدٍ رَفْشًا ثُمَّ دَعَاهُمْ  
وَشَأْنَهُمْ

Give each of them a shovel and let them alone.  
Gibr. III, 11, 18

أَنْتَكَ دَرَسْتَ الْكَمْبِجَةَ فِي إِطَالِيَا  
ثُمَّ عُدْتَ إِلَى بِلَادِكَ

that you studied violin in Italy and afterward returned to your own country. Nu'. liq. 14, 3

هَذَا بِالْفَرَنْسِيَّةِ مِنْ رَجُلٍ كُنْتُ  
أَجْهَلُهُ ثُمَّ قِيلَ لِي إِنَّهُ خَطِيبُ  
بَهَاءَ

This was said in French by a man I didn't know; later I was told that he was Baha's fiancé.  
Nu'. liq. 38, 6

C It is frequently used in repetitions to achieve an emphatic effect:

يُصَحِّبُهُمْ صَبَاحَهُمْ ثُمَّ يَفَارِقُهُمْ  
لِيُصَلِّيَ الْجُمُعَةَ ثُمَّ يَصَحِّبُهُمْ حَتَّى  
وَجَّهَتْ الْعَصْرُ فَارْقَهُمْ لَحْظَةً ثُمَّ  
يَعُودُ إِلَيْهِمْ فَيُشَارِكُهُمْ فِي عَشَائِهِمْ

He would visit with them in the morning, then would leave them to say his [Friday] prayers, then visit them [again] until the afternoon prayer was due, when he would leave them for a while; afterward, he would return [once more] to dine in their company.

Hus. ayy. II, 46, 2

كَثُرَ الطَّاحُونُ عَلَى عَيْنَيْهِ غَطَاءٌ يَدُرُّ  
ثُمَّ يَدُرُّ ثُمَّ يَدُرُّ وَهُوَ يَحْسَبُ أَنَّ —

as a miller's ox which, blind-folded, turns and turns around thinking that....

Hak. sheh. 144, 16

كَانَتْ وَهِيَ الْقَائِضَةُ عَلَى زَمَانِ الْحَدِيثِ  
تَدَخِّنُ السِّيكَارَةَ تَلَوُ السِّيكَارَةَ ثُمَّ  
تَنْهَضُ عَنِ الدِّيْوَانِ فَتَتَخَطَّرُ فِي الْقَاعَةِ  
ثُمَّ تَجْلِسُ وَتَرْقَعُ رِجْلًا عَلَى رِجْلِ وَهِيَ  
تَتَكَلَّمُ ثُمَّ تَتَكَلَّمُ بِدُونِ انْقِطَاعٍ

Since she was completely emancipated, she was smoking one cigarette after another. She would get up from the sofa and stride back and forth in the room, then sit down again, cross her legs, talking without interruption.

Raih. mul. 19, 4

D ثُمَّ may also introduce a logical sequence; in this case, it always has an emphatic character:

عَجِبْتُ لِي كَيْفَ أَتْنِي أَسْتَسَلِّمَتْ  
لَا رَادَّ لِي بِمِثْلِ تِلْكَ السَّهُولَةِ —  
ثُمَّ مَا أَبْطَلَنِي بَلْ مَا أَجْهَلَنِي أَعَاهِدُهُ  
أَلَّا أَبْحَ لِإِنْسَانٍ بِزِيَارَتِهِ

I was amazed at myself for having surrendered so easily to his will; furthermore, how naïve and how stupid of me to have promised not to say a word about his visit.

Nu'. liq. 21, 4

هِيَ دِينِيَّةٌ مِنْ حَيْثُ أَنَّهَا تُلْفَى  
الْغَيْبَاتِ الَّتِي يَتَكَزَّرُ عَلَيْهَا الدِّينُ  
ثُمَّ أَيْضًا تَأْخُذُ مَكَانَ الدِّينِ فِي  
تَعْيِينِ الْأَخْلَاقِ وَالْقِيَمِ الْإِنْسَانِيَّةِ  
ثُمَّ هِيَ فِلْسَفِيَّةٌ —

It is religious, for it does away with the secrets on which religion is based, and then, [because] it also takes the place of religion in determining virtues and human values, it is also philosophical....  
Musa adab. 107,16

Thus the sentence following ثُمَّ is frequently introduced by إِنْ :

ثُمَّ إِنْ قُرَيْشًا اقْتَسَمَتْ جَوَانِبَ  
الْبَيْتِ أَرْبَعَةً

Then the Koreish divided the sides of the Ka'aba into four.  
Hai. sir. 125,10

ثُمَّ إِنَّهَا مَرَضَتْ مِنْ بَعْدِ ذَلِكَ  
مَرَضًا شَدِيدًا

Afterward, she became seriously ill.  
Hai. sir. 358,22

It may also connect a series of subordinate clauses with the same effect:

مَا زَالَ يَتَخَبَّطُ وَيَتَشَبَّثُ وَيُظْهِرُ  
ثُمَّ يَخْتَفِي وَيَتَعَرَّكُ ثُمَّ يَسْكُنُ  
حَتَّى —

He went on struggling and clinging, appearing and disappearing, moving and [at times] standing still until.... Hus. ayy. I,25,7

كَانَ يَأْمُرُ خَادِمَهُ أَنْ يَعِدَّ لَهُ  
طَعَامَهُ فِي هَذَا النَّفَقِ ثُمَّ يَخْرُجُ

He used to order his servant to prepare his meal for him in this room [underground] and then to get out.  
Hus. ayy. I,21,6

E Since ثُمَّ introduces development in the narrative, it will precede the dependent clause when this precedes the main clause:

ثُمَّ لَمَّا وَقَعْتُ مَرِيضًا أَكْتَفَوْا بِأَنْ —

Then, when I became sick, they were satisfied with....  
Qud. (Br.) 48,4

ثُمَّ إِذَا وَجِبَتِ الْمَغْرِبُ أَهَمُّ فِي صَلَاتِهِمْ	Then, when the sunset prayer was due, he would lead them in it. Hus. ayy. II, 46, 5
---	--

## § 198 ADVERSATIVE CONSTRUCTIONS

A In Arabic, adversative constructions are very frequently coordinated by the conjunctive particle **وَ**; only the adversative meaning of the two propositions will reveal the actual nature of the construction:

إِنَّكَ الْيَوْمَ تَجْهَلِينَ وَغَدًا تَعْلَمِينَ	You do not know today, but you will tomorrow. Manf. mag. 46, 3
جَارٌ وَتَعْمَلُ كَالْغَرِيبِ!	You are a neighbor, yet you act like a stranger! Mah. zuq. 54, 18

(For additional examples, see Vol. III, p. 19.)

Similarly, two sentences connected by the conjunction **فَ** may also have an adversative meaning:

سَمِعَ الصَّبِيَّ هَذَا الْكَلَامَ فَلَمْ يُصَدِّقْ وَلَمْ يَكْذِبْ	The boy heard it but he did not believe nor dis- believe. Hus. ayy. I, 138, 6
--	---

(For further examples, see Vol. III, p. 29.)

B Usually, however, an adversative sentence will be introduced by one of the adversative particles **لَكِنْ** or **لَكِن**. Their function is actually only to present an adversative proposition, without having any connecting value; hence, they are also very frequently preceded by the connective conjunction **وَ**.

Arab grammarians, in explaining these two particles, present **لَكِنْ** as the basic form governing a noun in the accusative. From it, **لَكِن** has been derived as its "lightened" form. However, they do not go into the details of any differences in their use and meaning.

Reading unvocalized texts, it is not always possible to determine which one is meant, and while only **لَكِن** may be used immediately preceding a verb, it cannot be stated that the opposite is the rule, that

is to say, that only **لَكِنَّ** should be used preceding a noun. Moreover, as we have already seen (see Vol. II, § 109), the noun in the accusative governed by the particle does not necessarily follow immediately after the particle. Very frequently, only the style seems to be the determining reason for using either one.

In general, we may say that **لَكِنَّ** presents a statement in adversative coordination to one which is precedent. **لَكِنْ**, on the other hand, stresses the function of one part within a sentence in an adversative relationship to another sentence. Hence, the most important structural differences between both particles are:

- a) **لَكِنَّ** must introduce a complete sentence to which the particle belongs.
- b) **لَكِنْ** may or may not introduce a complete sentence.
- c) **لَكِنَّ** does not belong structurally to the following sentence, as one can see, for example, when the particle introduces interrogative sentences (see below).

Their meaning, however, seems to be very much the same and, in most cases, the use of either one appears to be determined by the structure of the sentence to follow, which, as we have stated in the introduction above, can at times be based on stylistic reasons only.

#### § 199 **لَكِنَّ**

As we have mentioned, **لَكِنَّ** emphasizes the adversative function of a noun (which is in the accusative case) in relation to a precedent statement or situation. The noun governed by **لَكِنَّ** does not have to follow immediately after the particle; however, a verb cannot be placed between the particle and the noun it governs (see Vol. II, § 113):

<p>كَانَ مِنْ أَوَّلِ أَمْرِهُ طَلْعَةً — وَلَكِنَّ حَابِثَةً وَاجِدَةً حَدَّتْ مَيْلَهُ إِلَى الْإِسْتِطْلَاحِ</p>	<p>He had always been very curious..., but something [happened that] set bounds to his inquisitiveness. Hus. ay. I, 19, 1</p>
---	---

(وَحَفِظَ إِلَى ذَلِكَ كُلِّهِ الْقُرْآنَ)  
وَلَكِنَّهُ لَا يَعْرِفُ كَيْفَ حَفِظَ الْقُرْآنَ

[And beside this he  
memorized the whole Koran]  
But he does not know how  
he memorized the Koran.  
Hus. ayy. I, 28, 1

كَانَ مُقْتَنِعًا أَنَّ أَبَاهُ مُحَقِّقٌ وَأَنَّ  
سَيِّدَنَا كَاذِبٌ وَلَكِنَّهُ لَمْ يَقُلْ شَيْئًا

He was convinced that his  
father was right and that  
the schoolteacher was lying,  
but he did not say a word.  
Hus. ayy. I, 44, 3

إِنَّ الشَّاعِرَ لَا يَكْذِبُ وَلَكِنَّهُ يَقُولُ  
مَا لَا يَعْقِلُهُ الْغَافِلُونَ فَيُظَنُّونَهُ كَاذِبًا

A poet never lies, but he  
says what the ignorant  
cannot understand so they  
think he is a liar.  
Manf. sha'. 56, 3

إِنَّهُنَّ سَفِيرَاتُ الْعِلْمِ لَا الْهَوَى  
— وَلَكِنَّ اللَّهَ خَلَقَهُنَّ لِيَكُنَّ سَفِيرَاتِ  
الْهَوَى

"They are ambassadresses  
of knowledge not of love...  
Yet God created them to  
be ministers of love."  
Mah. qah. 5, 18

ظَهَرَ أَدَبٌ يَكَادُ يَكُونُ شُعْبِيًّا فِي  
تَضَيُّعِ الرِّحَالِ بَلْ صَارَ شُعْبِيًّا  
خَالِصًا فِي كِتَابِ أَلْفِ لَيْلَةٍ وَلَيْلَةٍ  
مَثَلًا وَلَكِنَّ الشُّعُوبَ كَانَتْ لَا تَزَالُ  
فِي التُّرَابِ

Then there appeared a  
[type of] literature  
about travel stories that  
was almost popular; it  
really did become popular  
literature with the *Arabian  
Nights*, for example. But  
the masses remained unen-  
lightened. Musa adab. 6, 12

لَسْتُ أَذْكُرُ شَيْئًا مِمَّا قَالَ لَيْكِنِ  
لَنْ أَنْسَى —

I don't remember anything  
of what he said, but I  
will never forget....  
Hak. ahl. 21, 5

لَمْ يَكُنْ شَيْءٌ مِمَّا سَمِعَ بِالْجَدِيدِ  
عَلَيْهِ وَلَكِنَّهُ أَحْنَقَهُ كَأَنَّمَا سَمِعَهُ  
أَوَّلَ مَرَّةٍ

What he heard was not  
news to him; however, it  
embittered him as though  
he were hearing it for  
the first time.  
Mah. qah. 81, 19



أَرَادَ أَنْ يَتَكَلَّمَ وَلَكِنَّهُ لَمْ يَدْرِ مَاذَا  
يَقُولُ

He wanted to speak, but  
he did not know what to  
say. Mah. qah. 133,7

لَكِنَّ عَمَّهُ أَبَا طَالِبٍ كَانَ كَمَا قَدَّمْنَا  
حَلِيفَ فَقَرَّ كَثِيرَ عِيَالٍ

but his uncle, Abu Talib,  
was, as we have mentioned,  
poor and had a large  
family. Hai. sir. 120,14

لَكِنِّي لَمْ أَكُنْ أَعْرِفُ أَنْ —

But I did not know that....  
Din (Zy.) 3,19

لَكِنَّ لِلْأَرْضِ وَالْحَيَاةِ سُنَنًا ثَابِتَةً —

But Earth and Life have  
firm laws which....  
Hai. sir. 131,8

لَكِنَّ always introduces a complete sentence; thus  
when an adversative relationship is to be established  
between two objects or circumstances of the same  
action, the sentence must be repeated:

أَنَا لَا أَخَافُ عَلَى نَفْسِي مِنْ  
الْطَّوْرَانِ لِأَنَّ الْفَرِيقَ لَا يَخْشَى  
الْبَلَلَ وَلَكِنِّي أَخَافُ عَلَيْكَ

I am not afraid of the  
bishop for my own sake,  
for when one has drowned,  
one is not afraid of  
getting wet, but I do  
fear for you.  
Gibr. II, 78,19

Note the following:

لَكِنَّمَا شَقَّ عَلَى مُحَمَّدٍ أَنْ يَعُودَ  
أَنْدَرَاغَهُ دُونَ أَنْ يَصِيبَ مِنْ  
ثَقِيفٍ شَيْئًا

But [what] grieved  
Mohammed [was] to return  
without getting anything  
from Thaqif.  
Hai. sir. 435,9

Note also that the accusative introduced by لَكِنَّ may  
be a pronoun of general reference ( ضَمِيرُ الشَّانِ )  
(See Vol. II, § 113 for a discussion of this.)

وَلَكِنَّهُ الْحُبُّ يَمْلَأُ الْقَلْبَ رَحْمَةً  
وَحَيْنًا

but love fills the heart  
with compassion and ten-  
derness. Manf. mag. 34,14

## § 200 لَكِنْ

لَكِنْ must be used in any other case when the grammatical structure of the sentence does not allow the use of لَكِنْ, e.g., when the particle is followed by a verb:

لَكِنَّ كُلَّ هَذَا وَلَكِنْ لَيْسَ لَكِنْ

— أَنْ

You can do all this, but you cannot....

Manf. sha'. 44,16

وَلَكِنْ سَوْفَ يَظْهَرُونَ

but they will appear.

Hak. ahl. 48,14

لَمْ أَتَبَيَّنْكُمْ أَوَّلَ الْأَمْرِ لَكِنْ سَمِعْتُ

أَحَدَكُمْ —

I did not pay much attention to you at first, but I heard one of you....

Hak. ahl. 12,9

The use of لَكِنْ is usually preferred whenever the adversative relationship of the construction is based on the statement of the new sentence as a whole or on the situation it introduces rather than on a particular part:

أَنَا أَعْفِيكَ الْيَوْمَ مِنَ الْقِرَاءَةِ وَلَكِنْ

أُرِيدُ أَنْ آخِذَ عَلَيْكَ عَهْدًا

I will excuse you today from reciting, but I want you to make a vow to me.

Hus. ayy. I,45,7

الْفُؤْسُ فِي الْعَصْرِ الْعَبَّاسِيِّ الْأَوَّلِ

كَانَ لَهُمْ نَفُوذٌ كَبِيرٌ وَلَكِنْ لَيْسَ

مَعْنَى هَذَا أَنْعِدَامُ نَفُوذِ الْعَرَبِ

كَانَتْ أَعْظَمُ الْمَنَاصِبِ كَالْوِزَارَةِ فِي

يَدِ الْفُؤْسِ وَلَكِنْ كَانَ الْخَلِيفَةُ

عَرَبِيًّا هَاشِمِيًّا

During the first Abbasid period, the Persians had great influence, but it did not mean the destruction of Arabic authority.

The most important post, [as] that of Vezir, was in Persian hands, but the Caliph was an Hashimi Arab. Amin duh. I,37,1

إِنَّا نَعْرِفُ أَيْنَ بَيْتُكَ .. لَكِنْ

نَسْأَلُكَ ضَارِعِينَ أَلَّا تَفَارِقَنَا إِلَهَ

السَّاعَةِ

We do know where your house is, but we beg of you humbly not to leave us now. Hak. ahl. 65,6

Thus, **لَكِنْ** is very frequently used before an interrogative sentence to express its adversative relationship to a preceding statement or situation:

لَكِنْ هَلِ اسْتَطَاعَ رَجُلٌ حَتَّى الْآنَ  
أَنْ يَقْتُلَ عَبْدًا؟ But has any man been able  
till now to kill a ser-  
vant? Hak. sheh. 109,12

هُوَ الْمَسِيحُ شَاءَ لَكُمْ النِّجَاةَ —  
نَعَمْ وَلَكِنْ أَيَّةَ نَجَاةٍ هَذِهِ الَّتِي  
تَفْصِلُ بَيْنِي وَبَيْنَ امْرَأَتِي وَوَلَدِي؟  
"Christ wanted to save  
both of you."... "Yes, of  
course. But what kind  
of salvation is this which  
separates me from my wife  
and child?"  
Hak. ahl. 17,12

وَلَكِنْ مَا الْإِثِيرُ؟ But what is space?  
Hai. sir. 131,7

وَلَكِنْ أَحَقًّا أَنْ — But is it true that...?  
Hai. sir. 174,10

*Note* that **لَكِنْ** may be used, when the situation requires it, before a noun or a nominal sentence:

(كُلُّ هَذَا حَسَنٌ —) وَلَكِنْ هِيَ  
لِمَاذَا يُجِيبُهُ إِلَى طَلْبِهِ؟ [All this is all right....]  
But, she, why did she ac-  
cede to his request?  
Hak. ahl. 88,2

مَا أَحْسَنَ مَلَابِسَ النَّاسِ الْآنَ  
وَلَكِنْ أَعْجَبٌ مِنْ ذَلِكَ أَنْ يَتِمَّ لَكَ  
هَذَا كُلُّهُ فِي بَضْعَةِ أَيَّامٍ<sup>6</sup>  
How beautiful people's  
clothing is now, but more  
astonishing is that you  
could accomplish all this  
in only a few days.  
Hak. ahl. 63,4

وَلَكِنْ هُوَذَا نَفْسِي تَهَمِسُ الْآنَ  
أَسْمَاءَ ذَلِكَ الْثَامُوسِ Yet my soul now whispers  
the names of this Law.  
Gibr. II,193,11

Unlike **لَكِنْ**, **لَكِنْ** may introduce a member of a sentence in adversative relation to one mentioned in the preceding sentence:

6. The vowels are indicated in the original printed text.

فِي الرَّبِيعِ لَا يُضِيءُ النُّورُ فِي الْأَعْيُنِ  
وَحَدَهَا لَكِنْ فِي الْقُلُوبِ أَيْضًا

In spring, light not only illuminates the eyes, but hearts also; and air not only enters the breast but emotions as well.  
Raf. wah. I, 40, 1

لَيْسَ تَفَاضُلُ النَّاسِ فِيمَا بَيْنَهُمْ  
بِأَبَائِهِمْ وَأَحْسَابِهِمْ وَلَكِنْ بِأَفْعَالِهِمْ  
وَأَخْلَاقِهِمْ

Comparison of individuals should not be based on their ancestors or noble descent, but on their actions and virtues.  
Amin duh. I, 53, 9

*Note* that the adversative part introduced by لَكِنْ may be presented, even before its counterpart in the sentence, as a parenthetical expression:

هَنَا أَشْتَدَّ غَضَبُ الشَّيْخِ وَلَكِنْ عَلَى  
سَيِّدَنَا لَا عَلَى الصَّبِيِّ

There the old man became increasingly angry, but with the schoolteacher, not with the boy.  
Hus. ayy. I, 61, 1

As we have seen in the above examples, لَكِنْ actually precedes the sentence without having any ties which might structurally connect the particle with the sentence. Hence, Arabic may use this particle to introduce clauses in adversative relationship to the preceding situation or statement, even in cases when the subordinate precedes the main clause. In this instance, the main clause is introduced by the conjunction *و* or, at times, also by *وَ*:

وَلَكِنْ مَدْ جِئْنَا الْكَهْفَ فَتَحْنُ لَا  
تَقُولُ فِي غَيْرِ مَنْ —

But since we came to the cave, we haven't thought of anyone else except....  
Hak. ahl. 25, 1

وَلَكِنْ مَا دَامَ الْأَدَبُ فِي خِدْمَةِ  
الْمَجْتَمَعِ فَإِنَّهُ يَجِبُ أَنْ يَتَدَخَّلَ فِي  
شُكْلَاتِ الْمَجْتَمَعِ

But as long as literature is at the service of human society, it must be incorporated into its problems. Musa adab. 4, 8

وَلَكِنْ إِذَا فَاتَنِي حَظِّي مِنَ النَّسَبِ  
فَلَا يَفُوتُنِي حَظِّي مِنَ الْمَعْرِفَةِ

But if my share of kinship was denied to me, my share of knowledge was not. Amin duh. I, 52, 5

# § 201 بَلْ

بَلْ as an adversative particle introduces an element which implies (a) the negation of the preceding statement, e.g., "I think, rather, I believe"; (b) after a negative statement, an affirmative counterpart, e.g., "not because...but because"; (c) after an affirmative or negative statement, the range of the meaning may also be amplified: "this, even this." With any of the three meanings (a, b, or c), the particle may introduce a complete sentence —verbal or nominal:

لَمْ يَعْرِفْ أَحَدٌ لِهَذِهِ الْأُسْرَةِ  
زَعِيمًا بَلْ لَمْ يَعْرِفْ أَحَدٌ كَيْفَ  
هَبَطَتِ الْأُسْرَةُ مِنْ —

Nobody knew if this family had a head, nor even how it had come down from.... Hus. (Br.) 101, 1

الْمَوْحُ لَيْسَ نَاقِلًا فَحَسَبَ بَلْ هُوَ  
أَيْضًا نَاقِدٌ لِمَا يَنْقُلُ سَجَسَ إِيَّاهُ  
لِمَعْرِفَةٍ مَا يَنْطَوِي مِنَ الْحَقِّ

An historian is not simply a translator, he also examines the translations in order to ascertain the truth contained therein. Hai. sir. 39, 24

(أَنْتِ لَسْتِ أَمْرَأَةً كَكُلِّ النِّسَاءِ)  
بَلْ قَدْ لَا تَكُونِينَ أَمْرَأَةً

(You are not a woman like others) perhaps you are not [even] a woman. Hak. sheh. 57, 15

لَمْ يَكُنْ زَوْجِي لِصًّا بَلْ كَانَ  
زَارِعًا —

My husband was not a thief; he was a farmer who.... Gibr. I, 136, 17

عَلِمْتُ مِنْهُ أَنَّهَا لَا تُحِبُّنِي بَلْ مَا  
أَحْبَبْتَنِي قَطُّ فِي يَوْمٍ مِنْ أَيَّامِ  
حَيَاتِي

from which I have learned that she does not love me; moreover, she never loved me all her life. Manf. sha'. 238, 7

بَلْ also introduces any part of a sentence which could be considered as an elliptical construction and in which members common to both have been omitted. Since the particle does not have a governing function, the members it precedes, if nominal, will take the case required by the function they perform. Along with the elements it introduces, بَلْ may either follow the main clause, or be inserted in it parenthetically:

وَالَّذِي أَظُنُّه بَلْ أَعْتَقِدُهُ هُوَ أَنَّ  
ذَلِكَ الشَّيْطَانَ عَلِقَ بِحَبِّهَا

What I think, rather, what I'm sure of, is that this devil loves her.  
Nu'. liq. 33,17

مَتَى كَانَ النَّبِيُّ قِسْمًا مِنَ الْحَيَاةِ  
بَلْ مَادَّةً لِمَعَانِيهَا الْجَدِيدَةِ —

Whenever the Prophet becomes a part of Life, or rather an element of its new meaning....  
Raf. wah. III,22,3

وَلَكِنَّ حَيَاتَهُ قِصَّةٌ بَلْ عَلَيْهِ تَسْمُو  
عَلَى كُلِّ مَا كَتَبَ

But his life is a legend, rather [it is] a culmination which excels everything he wrote.  
Musa adab. 177,11

ضِدَّ هَذِهِ الْأَرَاءِ الْمُتَعَسِّفَةِ بَلْ  
الْهَدَامَةِ

against these arbitrary, rather, most destructive, opinions.  
Mand. (Br.) 2,14

وَكَانَ مَا يَكْتُبُهُ لِلْخَاصَّةِ بَلْ  
أَخَصَّ الْخَاصَّةِ

What he wrote was for the elite, and then only for the upper elite.  
Musa (Zy.) 2,16

وَالرَّاحَةُ لَا تَكُونُ لَنَا فِي السَّكُونِ  
وَالْإِنْفِرَادِ بَلْ فِي الْاجْتِمَاعِ وَالتَّبَدُّلِ

We shall not find rest in silence and solitude but, rather, in social exchange.  
Raf. wah. I,328,3

إِنَّمَا لَيْسَتْ لَيْلَةً وَاحِدَةً —  
بَلْ أَعْوَامًا

It has not been just one night...but years!  
Hak. ahl. 83,4

إِنِّي فِي هَذِهِ اللَّيْلَةِ بَلِّ فِي هَذِهِ  
السَّاعَةِ عَلَى الْأَخْصَى لَا يَجْمَلُ بِي أَنْ  
أَقَاتِلَ أَقَلَّ مِنْ هَذَا الْعَدُوِّ

Tonight, especially at this moment, it is not fitting for me to fight a smaller number than this! Manf. sha'. 73,10

بَلِّ may also introduce a subordinate clause:

كَانَ قَلِيلَ الْأَكْلِ لَا لِأَنَّهُ كَانَ  
قَلِيلَ التَّمِيلِ إِلَى الطَّعَامِ بَلِّ لِأَنَّهُ  
كَانَ يَخْشَى أَنْ —

He did not eat much, not because he did not like food, but because he was afraid to....  
Hus. ayy. I,23,3

## § 202 DISJUNCTIVE CONJUNCTIONS

In the same manner in which two or more elements within a sentence may be presented as excluding each other (see Vol. II, § 187), two sentences may also be related disjunctively.

Among the disjunctive constructions, the ones following an interrogative sentence deserve special attention.

Structurally they are simple interrogatives to which another interrogative member has been added. This disjunctive member has the function either of adding another possibility to the question asked — a simple disjunction — or of presenting a statement which excludes the preceding one completely — a dilemma.

The first part of an alternative interrogative construction is usually introduced by one of the interrogative particles used for questions concerning validity, هَلْ or أَمْ. The second part is introduced by a disjunctive conjunction, either أَوْ, usually for a simple disjunction, or أَمْ, generally signifying a dilemma.

In the modern press, an alternative interrogative question is frequently presented as two independent interrogatives separated by independent question marks; this, however, does not seem to influence either the meaning or the structure of the sentence.

## § 203 أَوْ

أَوْ is the general and most frequently used disjunctive conjunction. It can be found in any position when a disjunction is to be expressed; however, it can only be used in affirmative or interrogative sentences. In a series of more than two, the particle is repeated before each part, excluding the first:

إِذَا أَنَا سَافَرْتُ فَجِئْتُ إِلَى الْبَحْرِ  
أَوْ نَزَلْتُ بِالصَّخْرَاءِ أَوْ حَلَلْتُ بِالْجَبَلِ  
شَعَرْتُ —

Whenever I go on a journey to the seashore or to the desert or stop in the mountains, I feel....  
Raf. wah. I, 51, 12

هَلْ أَتَاهَا كِتَابٌ أَوْ سَأَلَ عَنْهَا  
أَحَدٌ؟

Have any letters come for her or has anybody asked for her?  
Manf. mag. 248, 7

ثُمَّ انْفَلَتَ مِنْ مَكَانِهِ وَانْسَابَ بَيْنَ  
الْأَشْجَارِ أَوْ صَعَدَ إِلَى غُرْفَتِهِ

Then he would go away from where he was and slip in amongst the trees or go up to his room.  
Manf. mag. 3, 16

فَلَمَّا تَقَدَّمَ بِهِ السِّنُّ أَعْرَضَ عَنِ  
التِّجَارَةِ أَوْ أَعْرَضَ التِّجَارَةُ عَنْهُ

When he grew older, he abandoned his trade, or, rather, his trade abandoned him.  
Hus. ayy. II, 44, 16

كَانَ أَتْبَاعُ أَبِي حَنِيفَةَ فِي الْمَدِينَةِ  
قَلِيلِينَ أَوْ لَمْ يَكُنْ لِأَبِي حَنِيفَةَ  
فِي الْمَدِينَةِ أَتْبَاعٌ

Abu Hanifa's followers in the city were few, or, rather, he had no followers in the city.  
Hus. ayy. I, 80, 14

عِلِمَتْ أَوْ لَمْ تَعْلَمْ؟

Does she know, or doesn't she? Hak. sheh. 21, 5

In a negative series of disjunctive sentences, all the members of the disjunction, except the first one, are introduced by **وَلَا** (see Vol. I, § 32).

أَوْ may also connect a sequence of two or more dependent clauses with a disjunctive meaning; the subordinating element may or may not be repeated in this case:



إِنْ أَرْتَفَعَتِ السَّفِينَةُ أَوْ انْخَفَضَتْ  
أَوْ مَادَتْ فَلَيْسَ ذَلِكَ مِنْهَا وَحَدَهَا

When the ship [at sea] floats up and down or sways, it is not only because of her [buoyancy]. Raf. wah. I, 50, 12

كَانَ أَوْلَئِكَ الشَّبَابُ يُحِبُّونَهُ عَلَى  
ذَلِكَ أَوْ يُحِبُّونَهُ مِنْ أَجْلِ ذَلِكَ  
أَوْ قُلْ إِنَّهُمْ يُحِبُّونَ ذَلِكَ مِنْهُ أَشَدَّ  
الْحُبِّ

These boys loved him in spite of that, or perhaps because of that, or better say that they loved that most in him. Hus. ayy. II, 47, 3

مَخَافَةَ أَنْ يَضْطَرِبَ الْقَدْحُ مِنْ يَدِهِ  
أَوْ أَلَّا يُحْسِنَ تَنَاوُلَهُ حِينَ يُقَدَّمُ إِلَيْهِ

for fear that he would upset the cup with his hand or that he would not reach properly for it when it was offered to him. Hus. ayy. I, 23, 11

بَلْ لِأَنَّهُ كَانَ يَخْشَى أَنْ يَوْصَفَ  
بِالشَّرِّ أَوْ أَنْ يَتَغَامَزَ عَلَيْهِ إِخْوَتُهُ

but because he was afraid to be viewed as gluttonous or to have his brothers make fun of him by winking at one another. Hus. ayy. I, 23, 4

كَانَ يَكْرَهُ أَنْ يَضْحَكَ إِخْوَتُهُ أَوْ تَبْكِي  
أُمُّهُ أَوْ يَعْلَمَهُ أَبُوهُ فِي هُدُوهِ  
حَزِينٍ

He loathed to have his brothers laugh or his mother cry or his father teach him with sad restraint. Hus. ayy. I, 20, 9

§ 204 أَمْ

أَمْ generally introduces the second of two interrogative sentences presenting an alternative. Contrary to أَوْ, it frequently implies the condition of exclusion in one of the two sentences.

أَوَلِدْتَ مَسِيحِيًّا أَمْ اعْتَنَقْتَ الدِّينَ  
عَلَى كِبَرٍ

Were you born a Christian, or did you embrace the religion as an adult? Hak. ahl. 20, 5

أَمْرَكَ أَنْ تَضِيَّ أَمْ أَمْرَكَ أَنْ تُكَفَّ؟

Should I tell you to go,  
or to give it up?  
Hak. ahl. 30,7

In alternative questions, the verb is mentioned only in the first part of the construction and it may follow the alternative element:

أَنَادِبَةٌ كُنْتَ أَيَّامَ الْخَرِيفِ أَمْ  
ضَاحِكَةٌ —؟ أَغَاضِبَةٌ كُنْتَ أَيَّامَ الشِّتَاءِ  
أَمْ رَاقِصَةٌ —؟ أَعْلِيلَةٌ كُنْتَ أَيَّامَ  
الرَّبِيعِ أَمْ حَبِيبَةٌ أَضَاهَا الْبَعَادُ —؟  
أَمِيتَةٌ كُنْتَ أَيَّامَ الصَّيْفِ أَمْ هَاجِعَةٌ  
فِي قُلُوبِ الْأَشْجَارِ وَبَيْنَ جَفَنَاتِ  
الْكُرُومِ —؟

Were you mourning in the  
autumn, or rejoicing...?  
Were you angry in the  
winter, or dancing...?  
Were you ailing during  
the spring, or were you  
a lover whom distance  
has emancipated...? Were  
you dead during the sum-  
mer days, or were you  
resting among the fruits  
and the grapevines...?  
Gibr. II, 207, 13

Compare with:

مِنْ نَاحِيَةٍ مَنْ أَتْبَعَ عَلِيًّا أَكَافِرٌ  
أَمْ مُؤْمِنٌ

from the point of view  
of the one who succeeded  
Ali, whether an unbeliever  
or a believer.  
Amin duh. III, 6, 9

أَمْ is also used in indirect alternative questions:

وَلَا أَعْلَمُ هَلْ أَرَاهُ بَعْدَ الْيَوْمِ أَمْ  
هَذَا آخِرُ الْعَهْدِ بِهِ

and I don't know whether  
I shall see him after  
today or if this is my  
last contact with him.  
Manf. sha'. 153, 3

(For more examples, see Vol. III, p. 100.)

A noun clause introduced by أَمْ may follow after  
أَمْ:

أَتَسَخَّرُ مِنْهُ الشَّيْطَانَةُ أَمْ أَتَهَا  
تَجْهَلُ هَذِهِ الْأُمُورَ؟

Was the devil laughing  
at him, or did she know  
nothing of these things?  
Mah. qah. 72, 10

هَلْ تُحِبُّ بَهَا خَطِيبَهَا أَمْ أَنْتَهَا  
قَبِلْتَ بِهِ إِرْضَاءَ لِخَاطِرِكَ وَخَاطِرِ  
أُمِّهَا لَا غَيْرَ؟  
Does Baha love her fiancé,  
or did she accept him  
simply to please you and  
her mother?  
Nu'. liq. 33,1

أَهْمَا عَيْنَايَ تَخْدَعَانِي أَمْ أَنَّ مَا  
أَرَاهُ هُوَ حَقِيقَةٌ لَا رُفْيَا؟  
Were my eyes deceiving  
me, or was what I saw  
reality and not fancy?  
Nu'. liq. 108,9

(For alternative constructions after *سَوَاءٌ*, see Vol. III, p. 103f.)

In disjunctive constructions with *أَوْ* and alternative constructions with *أَمْ*, the opposition of parts may not be understood in the usual way as "either-or," but with an effect of amplification in the range of meaning, i.e., "so and even so." The verb is in the perfect tense, with or without preterital meaning.

a) In disjunctive constructions:

لَمْ — قَلَّ أَوْ كَثُرَ  
Not much nor little.  
(Sp.: *ni poco, ni mucho*)  
Hai. (Zy.) 14,26

هَمْ يَقْبَلُونَ كُلَّ حَالٍ حَسَنَتْ  
أَوْ سَاءَتْ  
They accept any circumstances, be they good or bad. Raih. mul. 73,16

b) In alternative constructions, the verb *كَانَ* is frequently used, but only in the first part, and it always follows its predicate. In this case, no interrogative particle is given to introduce the first part of the alternative:

لَا أَظُنُّ أَحَدًا مِنَ الْعَرَبِ مُوَحِّدًا  
كَانَ أَوْ مُشْرِكًا يَسْتَطِيعُ —  
I do not believe that any  
Arab, whether monotheist  
or polytheist, could....  
Raih. mul. 86,18

رَاهِبًا كَانَ أَمْ مُجْرِمًا  
Be he monk or criminal!  
Gibr. II,159,2

فَقِيرًا كُنْتُ أَمْ غَنِيًّا  
poor or rich..  
Gibr. I,93,18

إِنَّ الْأَخْبَارَ كَبِيرَةً كَانَتْ أَمْ تَافِهَةً  
تَنْتَقِلُ بِسُرْعَةِ الْفِكْرِ بَيْنَ الْغُلَّاحِينَ  
فِي الْقَرْىِ الصَّغِيرَةِ

In the small villages  
news, be it of great im-  
portance or little, travels  
through the peasants with  
the quickness of thought.  
Gibr. I, 183, 1

سَلِمًا كَانَ أَمْ غَيْرَ سَلِمٍ

Be he Muslim or non-  
Muslim. Far. (Zy.) 17, 16

## § 205 إِمَّا

إِمَّا as a particle introducing a disjunctive construction is used before both parts. The second part is always coordinated with the first by the conjunction وَ:

إِمَّا يَأْتِيَنَّ يَوْمَ تَفْهَمُ فِيهِ كُلَّ شَيْءٍ  
وَأَمَّا يَبْقَى كُلُّ شَيْءٍ مُّغْلَقًا عَلَيْكَ  
إِلَى الْأَبَدِ

Either a day will come  
when you will understand  
it all, or everything  
will remain sealed to you  
unto eternity.  
Nu'. liq. 18, 13

أَدَبَاءُ إِمَّا يَعِيشُونَ فِي بِلَاطِ أَحَدٍ  
وَالْأَمْرَاءُ وَإِمَّا يَسْتَنْدُونَ فِي حَيَاتِهِمْ  
الْذَّهْنِيَّةَ إِلَى —

authors either living in  
a prince's palace or  
adopting in their intel-  
lectual life....  
Musa adab. 25, 15

The second part of the construction may be introduced by the disjunctive particle أَوْ:

ثُمَّ أَضَعُ حَيَاتِي بَيْنَ يَدَيْكَ فَإِمَّا  
أَحْيَيْتَنِي أَوْ قَتَلْتَنِي

Then, I will put my life  
in your hands so you will  
either let me live or  
kill me.  
Manf. mag. 171, 3

إِمَّا frequently establishes a disjunction between two noun clauses introduced by أَوْ or أُنْ:

إِمَّا أَنْ تَصَدِّقَ كُلَّهَا وَإِمَّا أَنْ  
تُكَذِّبَ كُلَّهَا

Either you believe it  
wholly, or you reject it.  
Musa adab. 61, 13

فِي أَحَدِ أُمَرَيْنِ إِمَّا أَنْ الْفِينِيقِيِّينَ  
مِنْ أَصْلِ عَرَبِيٍّ — وَإِمَّا أَنْ الْعَرَبُ  
مِنْ أَصْلِ فِينِيقِيٍّ

In either case, the  
Phoenicians are either  
Arabs..., or the Arabs  
are Phoenicians.  
Raih. mul. 213,4

أَنْ قَدْ حَانَ الْوَقْتُ لِوَاحِدٍ مِنْ  
أُمَرَيْنِ إِمَّا أَنْ — وَإِمَّا أَنْ —

that the time has arrived  
for one of two things:  
either to..., or to....  
Raih. mul. 64,19

أَنْ الْمَصِيرَ لَا يَعْدُو حَالَةً مِنْ  
حَالَتَيْنِ إِمَّا أَنْ تُسَيِّطَرَ إِسْرَائِيلُ  
عَلَى أُمَمِ الْعَرَبِ وَنَهْضَتَهَا وَإِمَّا أَنْ  
تَنْخِذَلَ دُونَ هَذَا الْمَطْلَبِ الْعَصَى

that the outcome can be  
only one of two alterna-  
tives: either Israel  
will gain power over the  
Arab nations and their  
progress, or it will fall  
short of this difficult  
objective.  
'Aqq. (Br.II) 139,16

*Note the following:*

إِمَّا أَحْيَيْتَهُ فَعَادَ إِلَى أَلَمِهِ وَسَعِيهِ  
أَوْ قَتَلْتَهُ فَانْكَفَى مُؤُونَةَ قَتْلِ نَفْسِهِ  
بِنَفْسِهِ

Either she restored him  
to life so he could re-  
gain hope and his will,  
or she would kill him  
and [so] the burden of  
suicide would be enough.  
Manf. mag. 147,3

## § 206 ELLIPTICAL COORDINATE SENTENCES

When two or more sentences in coordination, whether asyndetical or syndetical, conjunctive or disjunctive, contain certain elements in common, these elements are frequently mentioned in the first but omitted in the sentences following.

A In instances of ellipsis in asyndetical constructions, the elliptical sentences can usually be understood as one single sentence with a multiple component. Although there is often no clear distinction between cases of word union and elliptical coordinate sentences, still there are frequent cases

in which the ellipsis is still clear enough to justify a division between simple sentences with a multiple component and elliptical coordinate sentences:

أَيْنَ أَنْتِ يَا جَمِيلَتِي؟ أَفِي تِلْكَ  
الْجَنَّةِ الصَّغِيرَةِ تَسْقِينَ الْأَزْهَارَ —؟

Where are you, my Beautiful One? [Are you] in this small garden watering the flowers...?  
Gibr. II, 162, 2

B Coordinate sentences in syndetical constructions also often contain one or more elliptical elements:

كَانَ الْوَقْتُ أَصِيلًا وَالْجَوُّ بَارِدًا

It was late in the afternoon, and cold.  
Mah. qah. 73, 14

عَادَ مُحَمَّدٌ وَالْمُسْلِمُونَ مَعَهُ

Mohammed went back, and the Muslims with him.  
Hai. sir. 380, 6

رَأَيْتُ الْعَامِلَ عَبْدًا لِلتَّاجِرِ وَالتَّاجِرَ  
عَبْدًا لِلْجُنْدِيِّ وَالْجُنْدِيَّ عَبْدًا  
لِلْحَاكِمِ

I saw the worker slaving for the businessman, and the businessman for the soldier, and the soldier for the ruler.  
Gibr. III, 16, 14

إِنَّ رَبَّكَ ظَالِمٌ لَا يَعْرِفُ الْعَدْلَ  
جَائِرٌ لَا يَعْرِفُ السَّوَادَةَ سَتِيدٌ  
لَا يَعْرِفُ الْحَرِيَّةَ

Your Lord is an oppressor, He does not know justice; He is a despot, He does not know equality; He is a tyrant, He does not know liberty.  
Zay. (Br. II) 155, 27

كَانَ السَّكُونُ شَامِلًا الظُّلْمَةُ ثَقِيلَةً  
وَالطَّرِيقُ وَالْدُرُوبُ خَالِيَةً مَقْفُورَةً

It was completely quiet and oppressively dark, the roads and paths empty and deserted.  
Mah. zuq. 18, 9

C An elliptical construction is found quite often in coordinated alternative interrogative sentences. In this case, either the first member of the alternative presents a part which will be omitted in the second:

أَيَكُونُ لِي أَمْ لَا يَكُونُ؟

Will it be mine, or not?  
Hak. sul. 30,1

وَلَا أَعْلَمُ هَلْ سَقَطْتُ فِي كَوْكَبِ  
الْأَرْضِ أَمْ فِي كَوْكَبِ آخَرَ غَيْرِهِ

I do not know whether I  
fell on the planet Earth,  
or on another one.  
Manf. sha'. 193,12

وَلَا نَدْرِي أُنْصَدِّقُ الْكِتَابَ أَمْ  
الْجَرِيدَةَ

and we don't know whether  
we should believe the let-  
ter, or the newspaper.  
Raih. mul. 63,15

أَنْتَ صَدِيقِي أَمْ عَدُوٌّ؟

Are you a friend, or a  
foe? Hak. sul. 78,4

or both will be elliptical, presenting only the al-  
ternative member not common to both:

أَسْتَذْكُرُ أَيْنَ رَأَيْتَ هَذِهِ الصُّمَّةَ  
مِنْ قَبْلُ؟ أَمْ فِي الطُّفُولَةِ؟ أَمْ فِي  
الْأَحْلَامِ؟ أَمْ قَبْلَ أَنْ أُولَدَ؟

trying to remember where  
I have seen this before:  
[Was it] in my childhood,  
or in a dream, or [even]  
before I was born?  
Hak. ahl. 21,9

لَا أَدْرِي كَمْ طَالَ وَقُوفِي هُنَاكَ  
الْحِظَةَ أَمْ سَاعَةً

I don't know how long I  
have been standing here:  
whether [it has been] a  
moment, or an hour.  
S. Din (Br.) 64,26

مِنْ نَاحِيَةٍ مَنْ أَتْبَعَ عَلِيًّا أَكَافِرٌ  
أَمْ مُؤْمِنٌ

from the point of view of  
the one who succeeded  
Ali, whether he was an  
infidel or a believer.  
Amin duh. III,6,9

(For more on direct alternative interrogative sen-  
tences, see Vol. III, p. 48f, and also for indirect  
alternative interrogative sentences, see Vol. III,  
p. 101.)

D An elliptical construction is especially fre-  
quent with syndetical or asyndetical coordination  
of a sentence in which the second member of the co-  
ordination is the negative counterpart of the first.  
In such cases, the negative adverb is usually لَا ,

and it introduces the part or parts of the sentence that are not common to both:

شَارَكَهُمْ فِي اللَّعْبِ بِعَقْلِهِ لَا بِيَدِهِ  
He took part in their games intellectually, but not physically.  
Hus. ayy. I, 24, 8

الْعِيدُ إِنَّمَا هُوَ الْمَعْنَى الَّذِي يَكُونُ فِي الْيَوْمِ لَا الْيَوْمَ نَفْسَهُ  
The holiday is the meaning of the day, not the day itself. Raf. wah. I, 35, 6

كَانَ النَّهَارُ كَأَنَّهُ يُضِيءُ بِالْقَمَرِ لَا بِالشَّمْسِ  
The day appeared to be illuminated by the moon, not by the sun.  
Raf. wah. 40, 9

فِي ضَيْعَتِنَا لَا يَعْجِدُونَ فِي الصَّيْفِ وَلَا فِي الْخَرِيفِ  
In our village, people did not celebrate a feast either in summer or in autumn.  
Fur. (Zy.) 24, 4

لِيَحْكُمُوا بِقَانُونِ الْفَقْرِ وَالرَّحْمَةِ لَا بِقَانُونِ الْغِنَى وَالْقَسْوَةِ  
to judge by the law of poverty and mercy, not by that of wealth and severity.  
Raf. wah. I, 91, 5

مَا كَانَ إِبْرَاهِيمَ يَهُودِيًّا وَلَا نَصْرَانِيًّا  
Abraham was neither a Jew nor a Christian.  
Hai. sir. 423, 4

Note the following construction:

لَا أَعْتَقِدُ لَا بِهَا وَلَا بِكَ  
I do not believe in it or in you.  
Raih. mul. 106, 2

(For more on cases of double negation, see Vol. I, § 30.)

The second member of the coordination may be omitted when it is only a negative repetition of the first statement; in this case, the coordinate construction is indicated by the negative particle لا, which is always mentioned:



- إِنَّ الْقَدِيْسَةَ بِرِيْسَكَ كَانَتْ عَمِيْقَةً  
 الْقَلْبِ أَمَّا أَنَا فَلَا وَإِنِّهَا كَانَتْ ذَاتَ  
 صَوْتٍ مَلَأَ عِيْكَ لَا يَكَادُ يَسْمَعُ أَمَّا أَنَا  
 فَلَا وَإِنِّهَا كَانَتْ ذَاتَ وَدَاعَةٍ وَصَفَاءٍ  
 وَحَيَاءٍ جَمِيْلٍ أَمَّا أَنَا فَلَا  
 أَمَّا إِذَا عَنَيْنَا بِهِ — فَلَا
- Saint Prisca possessed  
 depth of heart; I do not.  
 She had an angel's voice  
 seldom heard; I do not.  
 She was gentle, pure [in  
 her] noble life; I am not.  
 Hak. ahl. 127,15
- But if we mean by that...,  
 then, no.  
 Zur. (Zy.) 18,19;  
 Zur. (Zy.) 18,22

E Any given part of a sentence may also be omitted when it can easily be understood from the context or has already been mentioned:

- كَانُوا مِائَةً أَوْ يَزِيدُونَ  
 الْقِيَمُ الْإِنْسَانِيَّةِ الَّتِي نَسِينَاهَا  
 أَوْ كِدْنَا  
 سُمُكُهُ فِي بَعْضِ الْأَمَاكِنِ مِثْرَ وَيْزِيدٍ
- They were one hundred or  
 more. Manf. sha'. 90,2
- human values which we  
 have forgotten or almost  
 forgotten.  
 Musa adab. 44,9
- Its thickness is in some  
 places a meter or more.  
 Raih. mul. 162,8

Note the following case of ellipsis:

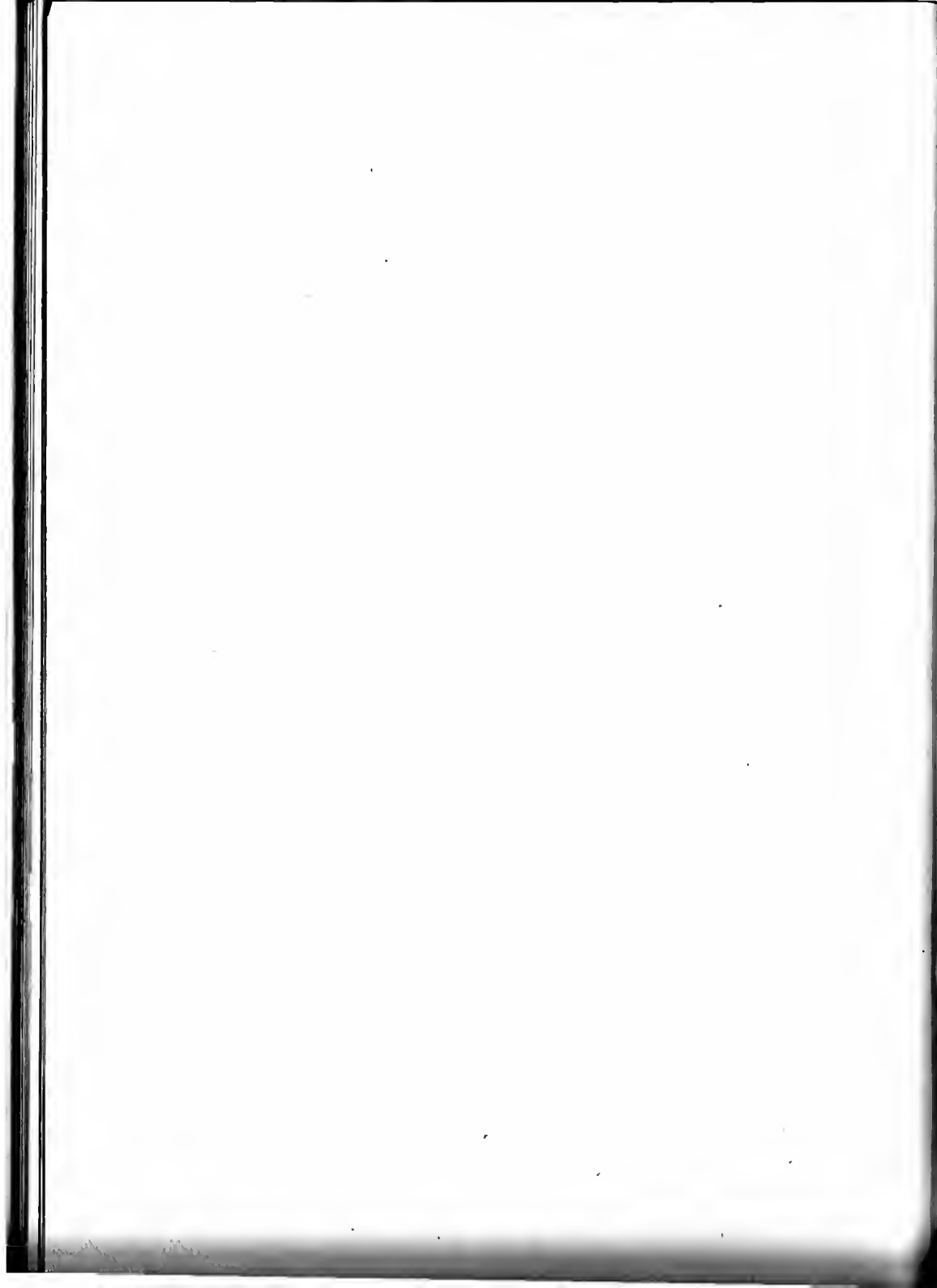
- أَلَمْ تَكُنْ تُحِبُّ عَلِيَّ طَه؟  
 بَلَى كَانَتْ
- Didn't she love Ali Taha?  
 Indeed, she did.  
 Mah. qah. 116,8

Therefore, certain elliptical expressions are often used in a function which is equivalent, at least in meaning, to that of an adverb or an adjective (see Vol. II, § 108):

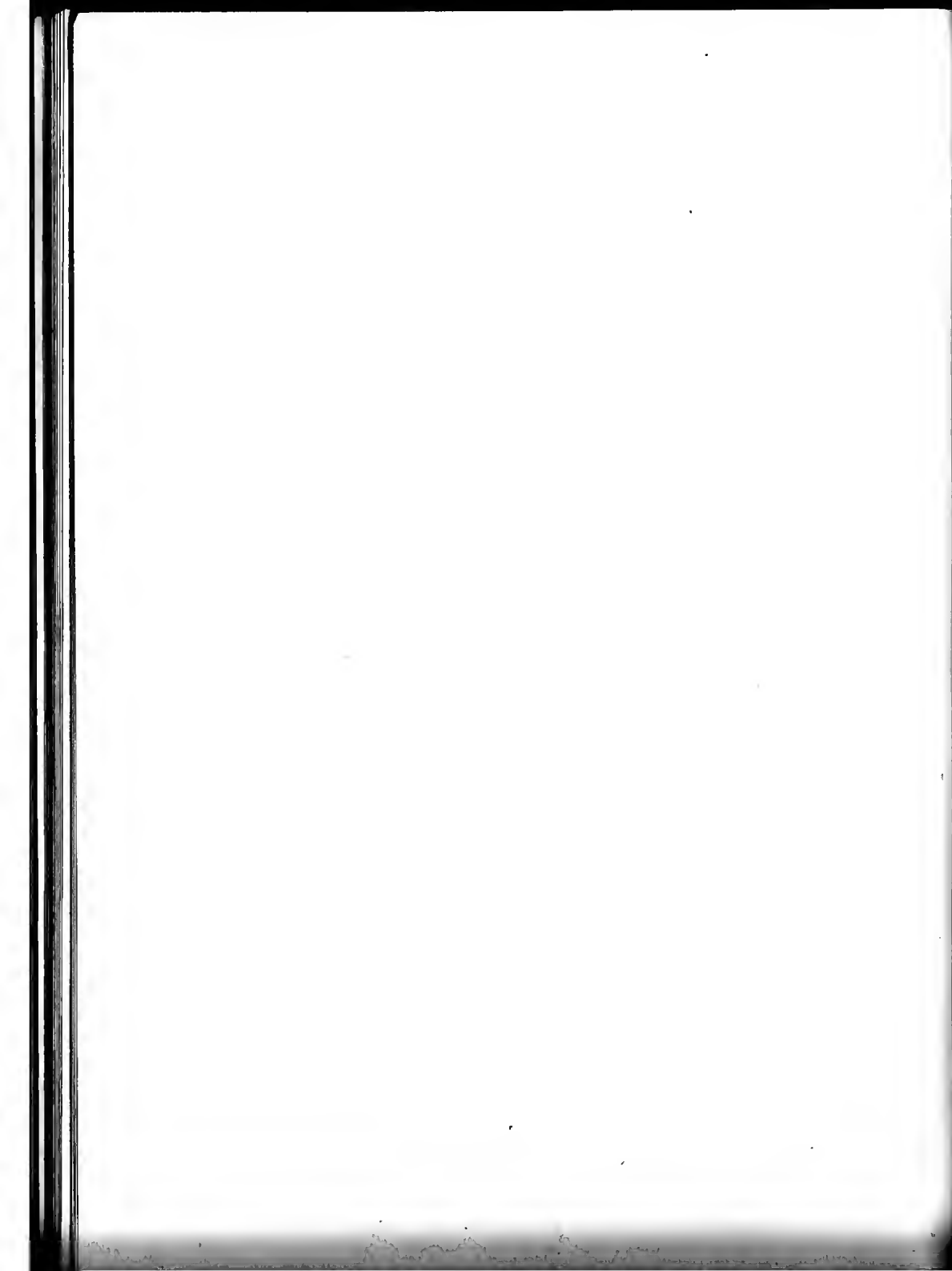
- إِنَّ هَذَا الرَّجُلَ أَحْمَقُ وَلَا شَكَّ
- That this man is stupid,  
 [there is] no doubt [about  
 it]. Hak. ahl. 83,9

F The common part can, at times, be mentioned in the second sentence. In this case, the latter may appear, or even actually develop into, a parenthetical elliptical sentence:

- كُلَّ سَاءٍ عِشْرِينَ عَامًا أَوْ يَزِيدُ  
مِنْ حَيَاتِهِ every evening for twenty  
years of his life, and  
perhaps even longer.  
Mah. zuq. 9,17
- دُونَ أَنْ يَرَى أَوْ يَكَادَ يَرَى شَيْئًا without having seen any-  
thing, or almost any-  
thing. Hus. ayy. I,31,5
- سَلَّمَ وَسَلَّمُوا بِحَرَارَةٍ They greeted each other  
warmly. Mah. qah. 131,5
- سَوَاءٌ أَصَحَّتِ الْأُولَى أَمْ الْآخَرَى  
مِنْ هَاتَيْنِ It doesn't matter to me  
whether the first or the  
second of these two ac-  
counts is correct.  
Hai. sir. 126,13



## XVII SUBORDINATE CLAUSES



## § 207 SUBORDINATE CLAUSES

According to the function of a sentence in a compound, subordination in Arabic can be divided as follows:

### A Functioning as a substantive:

Noun clauses

- (relative) a) asyndetical
- b) syndetical

### B Functioning as an adjective:

Adjectival clauses

- (relative) a) asyndetical
- b) syndetical

### C Functioning as a pronoun:

Pronominal clauses

- (relative) syndetical

### D Functioning as an adverb:

(modal, temporal)

- a) asyndetical
- b) syndetical, with the coordinate conjunction
- c) syndetical, with other adverbial particles

### E Conditional and Hypothetical Statements:

Conditional clauses:

- a) real condition
- b) condition contrary to fact

Indefinite-conditional clauses:

- a) pronominal
- b) adverbial

## § 208 NOUN CLAUSES

As we have mentioned above in the introduction, any sentence can be used in Arabic in the same way and with the same function as a substantive: as subject, object, in predicative and attributive apposition, and even as an adverbial modification.

However, from the standpoint of the genitive relationship of substantives, a sentence cannot be in the construct state; that is to say, it cannot be the first part of the genitive construction. It can, however, function as the second part—that of nouns in the genitive—which is dependent upon a noun in the construct state (without article or nunnation); thus the sentence is considered as being virtually in the genitive case. The noun in the *status constructus* is always to be understood as defined.

We can further distinguish between those sentences having a particle which introduces them and those that are connected to the main clause without any subordinating particle; thence is derived the distinction of asyndetical and syndetical.

## § 209 THE ASYNDECTICAL NOUN CLAUSE

Noun clauses without any connecting particle (and thus in an asyndetical construction) can be found in almost any nominal function, although not all with equal frequency.

A As subject, a noun clause is very seldom found and only then, it seems, as subject of a verb in the passive voice:

قِيلَ كَانَ ابْنُ خَمْسِ عَشْرَةَ سَنَةً	They say that he was
وَقِيلَ كَانَ ابْنُ عَشْرِينَ	fifteen years old; others
	also say that he was
	twenty. Hai. sir. 117,5

B As predicate, it is equivalent to a predicate in a nominal sentence:

وَهَذَا الْحَقُّ هُوَ اللَّهُ خَالِقُ الْكَوْنِ and this truth is that  
God is the Creator of  
all existing things.  
Hai. sir. 132,9

وَهِيَ هَلْ هُمَا مُؤَلَّفَانِ أَوْ مَرْجَمَانِ؟ The [question] is: are  
they both original works  
or translations?  
Amin duh. I, 209,9

C As an attribute, equivalent to a substantival apposition, it is called *الْجُملَةُ التفسيرية* by Arab grammarians. This attributive apposition can be

a) an explanatory apposition, in which the clause expresses the content:

فَأَخَذَ عَلَيْهِ عَهْدًا مِثْلَهُ لَيَسْمَعَنَّ  
لِلصَّبِيِّ فِي كُلِّ يَوْمٍ سِتَّةَ أَجْزَاءٍ مِنَ  
الْقُرْآنِ and he made him swear the  
same oath, that he would  
listen daily to six parts  
of the Koran recited by  
the boy.  
Hus. ayy. I, 47,1

أَنْتَ لَا تَرَى الْحَقِيقَةَ ابْنِي مَا تَ  
فِي سِنِّ السِّتِّينَ You don't realize the  
truth; my son died when  
he was sixty years old.  
Hak. ahl. 94,4

(قَدْ كَانَ) تَدَلُّهُ عَلَى الْحَقِّ  
أَيْنَ هُوَ indicated to him where the  
truth was. Hai. sir. 133,15

كَانَ ذَلِكَ شَأْنُ الْمُشْرِكِينَ مِنْ أَهْلِ  
شِبْهِ الْجَزِيرَةِ سَارَعُوا إِلَى الدُّخُولِ  
فِي الْإِسْلَامِ وَتَرَكُوا عِبَادَةَ الْأَوْثَانِ Thus reacted the idolaters  
of the Arabic peninsula:  
they rapidly embraced  
Islam and abandoned the  
worship of images.  
Hai. sir. 480,14



الْحَقِيقَةُ هِيَ مِثْلُ جَمِيعِ الْأَشْيَاءِ  
الْجَمِيلَةِ فِي هَذَا الْعَالَمِ لَا تُظْهِرُ  
مَنَافِعَهَا السَّعْتَةَ إِلَّا لِمَنْ

Truth is like all beautiful things in this world, it does not reveal its commendable effects but to.... Gibr. I, 164, 20

or which is frequently found after indirect questions and pronominal relative clauses:

لَا أَدْرِي مِنْ أَيْنَ جَاءَ أَنْجَمٌ مِنَ  
الْأَرْضِ أَمْ هَبَطَ مِنَ السَّمَاءِ

I don't know where he came from, whether he rose from the earth or descended from heaven.  
Hus. 'ala. II, 199, 6

أَسْتَذْكُرُ أَيْنَ رَأَيْتُ هَذِهِ الصُّورَةَ  
مِنْ قَبْلِ أَنْ تُطْفَلْتِي؟ أَمْ فِي الْأَحْلَامِ؟  
أَمْ قَبْلَ أَنْ أُولَدَ؟

trying to remember where I have seen this before: [was it] in my childhood? or in a dream? or [even] before I was born?  
Hak. ahl. 21, 9

ذَكَرْتُ مَا قِيلَ فِي الْحِجَازِ وَفِي  
الْعِرَاقِ ابْنُ سَعُودٍ بَدَوِيٌّ جَاهِلٌ  
إِبْنُ سَعُودٍ جَلْفٌ

I remembered what was said in Hijaz and Iraq: Ibn Sa'ud is an ignorant Badouin, Ibn Sa'ud is uncivil. Raih. mul. 28, 3

b) an emphatic apposition:

الْأَمْثَلَةُ عَلَى ذَلِكَ كَثِيرَةٌ لَا  
حَصْرَ لَهَا

Examples of this are numerous, they are countless. Amin duh. I, 22, 15

c) a determinative apposition:

دَخَلَ فِي الْمَنَافَسَةِ بَلَدٌ جَدِيدٌ  
هُوَ بَغْدَادُ

A new city, Bagdad, entered into this rivalry. Amin duh. II, 78, 6

مِنْهُمْ اثْنَانِ مِنْ أَصْحَابِ الْمَعَلَّاتِ  
هَما آمَرُو الْقَيْسِ وَعَمَرُو بَنِ كَلْثُومِ

Of them, two belong to the authors of the *mu'allaqāt*; they are Imru l-Qais and Amar ibn Kalthum.  
Djir. tar. I, 134, 2

أَلَسْنَا نَعْلَمُ أَنَّهُ سَيُولَدُ يَتِيمًا يَمُوتُ  
عَنْهُ أَبُوهُ وَهُوَ جَنِينٌ؟

Don't we know that he  
will be born an orphan,  
[that] his father will  
die when he is still  
unborn?

Hus. 'ala. II, 73, 21

d) a restrictive apposition:

اِخْتَلَفَ مُؤَرِّخُو السِّيَرَةِ فِي تَرْحِيمِ  
الْخَمْرِ مَتَى كَانَ

The biographers disagree  
about when wine was pro-  
hibited.

Hai. sir. 380, 21

وَلَمْ يَكُنِ الْعَرَبُ لِيَكْتَفُوا بِهَذِهِ  
الْأَصْنَامِ الْكُبْرَى يَقْدَمُونَ إِلَيْهَا  
صَلَوَاتِهِمْ وَقَرَابِنَهُمْ

but the Arabs could not  
be satisfied with these  
great idols, [with] praying  
and bringing offerings to  
them. Hai. sir. 84, 1

قَدْ رَأَيْتَ الْيَهُودَ كَيْفَ أَحْسَنُوا  
أَسْتِقْبَالَهٗ

You have seen how well  
the Jews received him.  
Hai. sir. 224, 13

ثُمَّ رَأَى قَوْمَهُ مِنْ بَعْدِ ذَلِكَ كَيْفَ  
يَعْبُدُونَهَا

Then he saw how his people  
afterward were worshipping  
it. Hai. sir. 86, 1

As an apposition to an adverb or adverbial expression, the appositive noun clause becomes very much like a circumstantial clause and, at times, can also be equivalent to one (see Vol. III, p. 242ff.).

اسْتَمَرَّ عَلَى ذَلِكَ أَيَّامًا طَوِيلًا لَا  
يَمْشِي فِي الْحَدِيقَةِ

He remained that way for  
many days, without walking  
through the garden.  
Manf. mag. 23, 9

بَقِيَ كَذَلِكَ زَمَنًا لَا يَتَحَرَّكُ وَلَا  
يَتَكَلَّمُ

He remained this way a  
long while, not moving  
or talking.  
Nu'. liq. 74, 15

لَبِثَا بَعْدَ ذَلِكَ سَاعَةً صَامَتَيْنِ  
لَا يَنْطَقَانِ

They remained silent a  
while without saying a  
word. Manf. mag. 30, 4

Note the following instance of a circumstantial clause equivalent to an appositive:

تَذَكَّرْتُ ذَلِكَ الْوَقْفَ الْجَمِيلَ وَأَنْتَ  
تَخْرُجُ كَيْسًا مِنْ جَنِيكَ وَتَرِي بِهِ  
I remember this beautiful deed — your taking your purse out of your pocket and throwing it [to him].  
Manf. sha'. 60,11

D As accusative object, in place of a noun, it functions as the direct object of a verb:

شَهِدَ اللَّهُ مَا كَانَ الصَّبِيُّ حَزِينًا  
لِفِرَاقِ أُمِّهِ  
God is a witness that the boy was not sad because of leaving his mother.  
Hus. ayy. I,140,8

أَلَمْ يَكُنِ الشَّيْخُ قَدْ أَقْسَمَ لَا  
يَعُودُ الصَّبِيُّ إِلَى الْكُتَّابِ؟  
Had not the sheikh sworn the boy would never go back to school?  
Hus. ayy. I,65,12

The noun clause may be introduced by the particle *لَ*. If the particle is prefixed to the verb, the verb is then in the energetic (see Vol. I, § 27):

وَقَدْ وَاللَّهِ عَلِمْتُ لَا مَرَّ رَسُولِ اللَّهِ  
صَلَّمَ أَعْظَمَ بَرَكَاةٍ مِنْ أَمْرِي  
By God, I know that the mission of God's apostle is more highly blessed than mine.  
Hai. sir. 355,17

فَرَضَ الصَّبِيُّ عَلَى نَفْسِهِ لِيَصَلِّيَنَّ  
الْخَمْسَ فِي كُلِّ يَوْمٍ مَرَّتَيْنِ —  
وَلِيَصُومَ مِنْ السَّنَةِ شَهْرَيْنِ —  
وَلِيَكْتُمَنَّ ذَلِكَ عَنْ أَهْلِهِ جَمِيعًا  
وَلِيَجْعَلَنَّ ذَلِكَ عَهْدًا بَيْنَهُ وَبَيْنَ  
اللَّهِ خَاصَّةً وَلِيُطْعِمَنَّ فَقِيرًا أَوْ  
يَتِيمًا مِنْ —  
The boy imposed upon himself [the duty] to perform the ritual prayers twice every day,...and fast for two months every year...; to keep it secret from his family and to make this a special vow with God; to feed the poor and orphaned with....  
Hus. ayy. I,136,6-10

إِنِّي أَقْسَمُ لَقَدْ رَأَيْتُهُ!  
I swear that I have seen [it]! Hus. 'ala. II,73,3

فَتَقْسِمُ لَتَتْلُوْنَ عَلَى الْعَرِيفِ سِتَّةَ أَجْزَاءٍ  
 مِنَ الْقُرْآنِ فِي كُلِّ يَوْمٍ مِنْ أَيَّامِ  
 الْعَمَلِ وَلَتَكُونَنَّ هَذِهِ التَّلَاوَةُ أَوَّلَ  
 مَا — So swear that you will  
 recite to the monitor  
 six parts of the Koran  
 every working day and  
 that this recitation  
 will be the first thing....  
 Hus. ayy. I, 46, 10

A noun clause in the function of an accusative used as a direct or an indirect quotation is generally found with the verb قَالَ, "to say":

قُلْتُ لَكَ هَذَا مَكَانِي I have told you that this  
 is my place.  
 Tai. (Br.) 131, 25

قُلْتُ لَكَ آذْهَبْ I told you to leave.  
 Hak. sheh. 17, 12

قُلْتُ لَكَ لَا أَسْتَطِيعُ الْبَقَاءَ هُنَا  
 يَوْمًا آخَرَ I told you I cannot re-  
 main here another day.  
 Hak. ahl. 14, 14

قَالُوا كُلُّهَا تَسَعَى خَمْرًا وَكُلُّهَا  
 حَرَمَةٌ Some say that all of  
 them are wine and all  
 forbidden.  
 Amin duh. I, 124, 1

قُلْتُ لَقَدْ تَغَيَّرَ كُلُّ شَيْءٍ! I told [you], everything  
 has changed!  
 Mah. zuq. 11, 20

(For indirect questions in the function of an accusative, see Vol. III, p. 102.)

Of special interest is the case of a noun clause functioning as an accusative object after verbs with meanings related to the idea of "to begin," "to start," etc.

In this construction, both verbs in the main and in the dependent clause have the same subject. The verb in the main clause is usually in the perfect and that of the subordinate noun clause always in the imperfect.<sup>7</sup>

7. This construction should not be considered as being the same as an imperfect after an auxiliary verb. Here the verbs are always transitive and the imperfect fulfills, in the main clause, the function of an accusative object.

بَدَأْتُ أَكْتُبُ سِلْسِلَةَ مَقَالَاتٍ

I began to write a series of articles.

Kam. (Zy.) 4,34

طَفَقَ — يَفْكُرُ

He began...thinking.

Hai. sir. 271,12

أَخَذَ الصَّيْفُ يَطْوِي بِسَاطَهُ الرَّحْبِ

Summer had started rolling up its broad carpet.

Nu'. liq. 50,2

طَفَقَ يَضْرِبُ بِهَا الصَّبِيَّ

He began beating the boy with it.

'Aww. (Br.) 11,24

حَتَّى جَعَلْتُ لَا أَفْرُقُ بَيْنَ  
الْكِتَابِ وَالْحَيَاةِ

so that I began not to distinguish between books and reality.

Jabr. (Br.) 72,3

One verb in the main clause may take two or more subordinated clauses:

أَنْشَأَ يَخَاطِبُهُمْ بِهَدْوٍ وَسَكُونٍ  
وَيَقُولُ —

He began talking to them, saying calmly and quietly....

Manf. sha'. 39,11

أَخَذُوا يَصِيحُونَ فِي وَجْهِهِ وَيُولُولُونَ  
وَيَقْلِدُونَ أَصْوَاتَ الْحَيَوَانِ

They began shouting in his face, howling and imitating the cries of animals.

Manf. sha'. 39,16

أَخَذُوا يَتَفَامَزُونَ وَيَضْحَكُونَ  
وَيُشِيرُونَ نَحْوِي

They began to wink at one another and to laugh and to point at me.

Gibr. I, 169,1

The main verb could be considered as having only an auxiliary function; thus, the subject of the two —main and dependent— may follow both:

شَرَعَ يُوقِظُ النَّاسَ مِنْ غَفْلَتِهِمْ

People began to awake from their unawareness.

al-Hus. (Br.II) 1,14

And the use of the dependent verb in the passive voice gives a passive meaning to the complete construction:

عَلَىٰ أَنَّمَا بَدَأَ يَقَالُ يَوْمَئِذٍ  
عَنْ نَّبِيِّ — But what did people then  
begin to say [began to  
be said] about a prophet  
who.... Hai. sir. 105,1

E As second accusative of the verb, it is very frequently found in direct questions:

سَأَلَهُ كَمِ السَّاعَةِ الْآنَ؟ He asked him, "What time  
is it now?"  
Manf. sha'. 90,15

(On the use of indirect questions as second accusatives, see Vol. III, p. 102.)

When the word order of the subject of the dependent clause is inverted, thus preceding the verb, the subject usually becomes, by governing attraction of the main verb, this verb's object followed by the dependent clause itself. If the subject of the dependent clause is a personal pronoun, this will be used as a suffix to the main verb. This is the usual construction when the main verb expresses the idea of "to let," "to make":

دَعَا يَلْعَبُ Let him play.  
Hus. ayy. I, 35,14

دَعْنِي أَقْدِمُ لَكَ رَفِيقِي الْأَمِينِ Let me introduce you to  
my two loyal friends.  
Nu'. liq. 75,17

فَإِنِّي أَمَرْتُ جَعَلَكَ تَتْرُكُ جَمِيعَ  
هَذِهِ الْأَشْيَاءِ؟ What made you leave all  
these things?  
Gibr. I, 161,4

لَقَدْ جَعَلَنَا بُو مَعْرُوفٌ نَحِبُّ قَرْيَتَنَا Bu Ma'ruf made us love  
our village.  
Nu'. kan. 13,2

كُلُّ هَذَا يَجْعَلُنَا نَقُولُ — All this makes us say....  
Amin duh. I, 37,11

كَيْفَ تَدْعِينِ الْقَلْبَ يَرْعَىٰ هَذَا  
الشَّعْرَ الْجَمِيلَ! How can you permit a louse  
to graze in such beautiful  
hair?! Mah. zuq. 31,10

and also after verbs expressing will:

لِمَنْ تُرِيدُهُ يَلْبَسُ وَيَتَزَيَّنُ For whose sake do you  
want him to dress and  
adorn himself?  
Hak. ahl. 76,15

This type of construction is also quite common  
after verbs of intellectual or physical perception:

لَا أَظُنُّ بِصَرِيًّا غَيْرِي حَلَمَ بِهَا I do not believe that  
any other Egyptian ever  
thought of it.  
Maz. (Zy.) 1,7

فَأَمَّا الَّذِينَ ظَنُّوا مُحَمَّدًا قَدْ  
مَاتَ — Those who believed that  
Mohammed had died....  
Hai. sir. 299,14

أُظُنُّكَ تَفْضِّلِينَ رَجُلًا مَتَقَدِّمًا I think you would prefer  
a mature man!  
Mah. zuq. 29,11

أُظَنُّهُ كَانَ يَجْهَلُ أَنَّ — I believe he did not know  
that.... Raih. mul. 63,8

لَا أَحْسِبُنِي أَجِدُ مُجِيبًا I don't believe that I  
could find anyone who  
would answer me.  
Hak. ahl. 80,7

أُظُنُّنِي أَعْرِفُهُ I think I know him.  
Manf. sha'. 90,11

مَنْذُ أَيَّامٍ حَسَبْتَنِي 'أَدْرَكْتُ سِرَّ  
ذَلِكَ التَّغْيِيرِ A few days ago I thought  
that I had found the se-  
cret of that change.  
Nu'. (Zy.) 33,16

أَنَا أَيْضًا لَا أَحْسِبُنِي جِئْتُ الْكَهْفِ I don't think I came into  
the cave with all this  
hair on my head and in  
my beard. Hak. ahl. 36,7

مَتَى تَظُنُّنَ الْعَرَبَ تَنْتَهِي؟ When do you think the  
war will come to an end?  
Mah. zuq. 43,19

سَمِعَ وَالِدَهُ يَقُولُ لَهُ — He heard his father telling him.... Mah. qah. 41,2

أَتَرَاهَا حَقِيقَةً تَرَكَّتْ دِينَهَا  
لِهَذَا السَّبَبِ؟ Do you really believe that she abandoned her religion for this reason?  
Hak. ahl. 30,15

and also with a negative statement:

أَظَنُّهُ لَا يَسْتَطِيعُ أَنْ يَكُونَ غَيْرَ ذَلِكَ I believe that it cannot be otherwise.  
Manf. sha'. 203,9

When the dependent clause is a nominal sentence, the predicate, if it is a noun (whether substantive or adjective), always seems to be attracted in case; thus it is in the accusative:

وَجَدَهَا دَارًا كَبِيرَةً أُنِيقَةً He found it to be a large, elegant house.  
Mah. qah. 91,11

وَجَدَهُ رَجُلًا فِي الْأَرْبَعِينَ He found him to be a man in his forties.  
Mah. qah. 61,19

بِاسْمِ أَظَنُّهُ اسْمَكَ with a name I thought was yours.  
Manf. mag. 28,10

ظَنَنْتُ الْبَحْرَيْنَ جَزِيرَةً صَغِيرَةً  
حَقِيرَةً I had believed that Bahrein was a small, poor island.  
Raih. mul. 198,16

However, the use of a pronoun to emphasize the subject of the nominal sentence (see Vol. I, § 11) will prevent this attraction :

وَهَلْ تَحْسَبُ هَذَا هُوَ السَّبِيلُ Do you think that this is the way to get what you are looking for?  
إِلَى مَا تَطْلُبُ؟ Hak. sheh. 54,2

Special constructions with *عَسَى*, *لَيْتَ*, and *تَرَى*, which are equivalent to the above (see Vol. II, § 114-6) should also be included in this category:



مَاذَا تَرَاهُ يَصْنَعُ؟	What could he do? Hai. sir. 430,19
مَاذَا عَسَاهُمْ بَعْدَ ذَلِكَ يَصْنَعُونَ؟	What could they do after this? Hai. sir. 435,21
مَنْ عَسَاهُ يَكُونُ؟	Who might he be? Mah. zuq. 175,7
فَلَيْتَ اللَّهُ — لَمْ يَخْلُقْنِي لِي قَلْبًا خَفَاقًا	Would that God...had not given me a tender heart! Manf. sha'. 68,1

F In the genitive case, the governing noun is always in the construct state and thus without a definite article. It is generally given in the singular but can also be plural, and the meaning of the construction is usually definite.

The function of the noun with its dependent clause is that of a temporal determination or of an apposition to a temporal adverb. As a result, the noun is usually either in the adverbial accusative:

لَيْلَةً كَانَتْ فِي ثِيَابٍ بَيْضَاءَ	the night when she was dressed in white. Hak. ahl. 31,5
أَعْرِفْتَنَا إِذَنْ سَاعَةً جِئْنَاكَ؟	Did you recognize us then, at the moment we came to you? Hak. ahl. 12,8
لَقَدْ خَدَعْتُ نَفْسِي يَوْمَ أَشَرْتُ عَلَيْكَ بِالسَّفَرِ	I deceived myself the day I advised you to depart. Manf. mag. 54,11
حَتَّى لَيَصُورَ بَعْضُهُمْ زَيْنَبَ سَاعَةً رَأَاهَا النَّبِيُّ	so that some of them de- scribe Zainab when the Prophet saw her. Hai. sir. 316,10

or in the genitive in a prepositional adverbial expression:

مِنْ يَوْمِ عَرَفْتُكَ لَمْ أَعْرِفِ الرَّاحَةَ	Since I have known you, I have found no rest. Hak. sul. 74,3
---	--

مِنْ يَوْمِ أَنْتَشَرَ الْإِسْلَامُ فِي صَوْلَتِهِ  
الْأُولَى إِلَى يَوْمِنَا —

From the day when Islam started its expansion up to the present time....  
Hai. sir. 2,9

إِلَّا مِنْ يَوْمِ سَمِعْتُ ذَلِكَ الرَّاهِبِ  
يَتَكَلَّمُ —

except after the day I heard that monk speaking....  
Hak. ahl. 20,9

إِنِّي مِنْذُ عَامٍ كَانَ قَدْ أَوْفَدَنِي  
دَقْيَانُوسَ إِلَى الْأَقَالِيمِ —

that I, since the year when Dacianus sent me as his delegate to the provinces....  
Hak. ahl. 62,5

فِي لَحْظَةٍ قَامُوا كَانَ قَدْ اجْتَمَعَ  
حَوْلَهُمْ مِنَ الْمُسْلِمِينَ مَنْ —

as soon as they stood up, the Muslims who..., gathered around them.  
Hai. sir. 351,15

Although the meaning of the construction always remains temporal, the governing noun may function differently from that of the adverbial accusative:

لَقَدْ قَرَأْتُ كِتَابًا قَدِيمَةً تَتَنَبَأُ بِيَوْمٍ  
يُظْهِرُونَ

I have read old books prophesying the day when they would appear.  
Hak. ahl. 48,6

حَتَّى كَانَ يَوْمٌ ذَهَبْتُ إِلَى مَدِينَةِ  
طَرَسُوسَ فِي بَعْضِ شَأْنِي

until the day came when I went to the city of Tarsus on an errand.  
Hak. ahl. 20,15

أَنْسَيْتَ يَوْمَ سَشَطْتُكَ مِنْ أَسْبُوعَيْنِ؟

Have you forgotten the day two weeks ago when I combed your hair?  
Mah. zuq. 31,14

At times, the governing noun seems to be used as equivalent to a mere particle to introduce a temporal clause:

مِنْذُ أَجْيَالٍ يَوْمَ كُنْتُ أَرْعَى غَنَمَ  
وَالِدِهَا

Ages ago, when I used to take her father's sheep to pasture.  
Nu'. liq. 80,10

In such instances, the temporal clause may also have an indefinite meaning, so that it is to be understood not as "the day when" but simply "a day when":

زَارَنِي يَوْمَ كُنْتُ وَالْحَقُّ يَقَالُ فِي  
حَاجَةٍ شَدِيدَةٍ إِلَى زِيَارَةِ مِثْلِهِ

He called on me, to tell  
the truth, on a day when  
I greatly needed a visit  
like his.

Raih. mul. 25,23

Hence the frequent use of حِينَ, "time," as a particle to introduce temporal clauses:

فِي هَذِهِ اللَّحْظَةِ حِينَ يَنْفَعِلُ  
الْمُصَلُّونَ مِنْ صَلَاةِ الْفَجْرِ —

At this moment, when the  
worshippers were leaving  
after their dawn prayer....

Hus. (Zy.) 25,32

حِينَ هُوَ يَخْرُجُ مِنَ الْحَبْرَةِ سَمِعَ  
وَالِدَهُ يَقُولُ لَهُ —

When he was leaving the  
room, he heard his father  
telling him....

Mah. qah. 41,2

وَلَتَكُونَ هَذِهِ التَّلَاوَةُ أَوَّلَ مَا  
تَأْتِي بِهِ حِينَ تَصِلُ إِلَى الْكُتَابِ

and that this recitation  
will be the first thing  
you do when you arrive  
at school.

Hus. ayy. I,46,12

(أَنْ) وَيَمْلَأُهُ تَوَاضَعًا حِينَ قَرَأَ  
هَذِهِ الْأَبْيَاتِ

and to fill him with  
humility when he read  
these verses.

Hus. ayy. I,74,7

يَجِبُ حِينَ نَقْرَأُ الْأَدَبَ أَنْ  
نُطْرِبَ

It is necessary that we  
be moved when we read  
literature.

Musa adab. 3,18

حِينَ أَقْرَأُ هَذِهِ الصَّفَحَاتِ —

When I read these pages....

Musa adab. 31,18

حِينَ is also frequently used in the genitive case after a preposition:

فِي حِينَ لَيْسَ هُنَاكَ أَهْتَامٌ  
أَصْلًا بِأَسْلُوبِ الْعَيْشِ

while there is not the  
least interest in the ways  
of life. Musa adab. 2,4

رَكِبَ مُحَمَّدٌ بَغْلَتَهُ الْبَيْضَاءِ فِي  
مَوْخَرَتِهِ عَلَى حِمِينَ سَارَ خَالِدُ بْنُ  
الْوَلِيدِ عَلَى رَأْسِ بَنِي سُلَيْمٍ فِي  
الْمَقَدِّمَةِ

Mohammed rode his white mule at the rear of the troop, while Khalid ibn al-Walid went to the vanguard at the head of the Banu Sulaim.  
Hai. sir. 429,23

لَبِثَ هَذَانِ الشَّخْصَانِ فِي دُكَّانَيْهِمَا  
فِي حِمِينَ أَخَذَتِ الْوَكَّالَةُ الْكَبِيرَةُ  
الْمَجَاوِرَةُ لِلصَّالُونِ تَغْلِقُ أَبْوَابَهَا

These two individuals remained in their shops when the large *wikala* near the saloon began to close its door.  
Mah. zuq. 7,5

Note that حِمِينَ after a preposition used as a particle may introduce temporal clauses preceded by أَنْ:

فِي حِمِينَ أَنَّنَا لَا نَزَالُ نَحْلُمُ  
أَحْلَامَ الْماضِي

while we are still dreaming of the past.  
Zur. (Zy.) 18,11

عَلَى حِمِينَ أَنَّ الْكَلَامَ كَانَ قَدْ  
نَدَجَ قَبْلَ ذَلِكَ

before this [at a time when] the *kalam* had already ripened.  
Amin duh. III,11,1

## § 210 THE ASYNDETIICAL NOUN CLAUSE AFTER A PREPOSITION

Only a few prepositions can be used to introduce a sentence without the help of a particle such as أَنْ or حَتَّى. Of these, only حَتَّى has remained independent of the part of the sentence it introduces; thus it may govern either a nominal or a verbal sentence or, to express it more clearly, it may be followed either by a noun or a verb upon which it does not have any governing function. All other prepositions govern the verb, which thus follows immediately afterward and is in the subjunctive.

## § 211 مُنْذُ

مُنْذُ and its shortened form مِّنْ introduce a temporal modification to the main clause in the form of a point of departure from which the statement of the main clause is valid; hence its usual meaning "from the time when," "since."

It is followed by a verbal sentence with the verb in the perfect tense immediately following the particle:

كَانَتْ جَدَّتِي شُغْلِي الشَّاعِلَ مُنْذُ  
عَدْتُ مِنَ الْمَدْرَسَةِ

My grandmother was my only concern since I had returned from school.  
Qal. (Zy.) 21,9

أَحَبَبْتَهَا وَأَحَبَّتَنِي مِّنْ كُنَّا صَغِيرَيْنِ  
نَلْعَبُ بَيْنَ الْعَنَازِلِ

We had loved each other since our childhood, when we used to play among the houses. Gibr. I,135,7

أَلَمْ يَأْتِ مِنْ مَرْنُوشَ خَبْرٌ مُنْذُ  
ذَهَبَ إِلَى بَيْتِهِ أَمْسَ؟

Has no news come from Marnush since he went home yesterday?  
Hak. ahl. 84,10

كَانَ سَيْرَانُو وَاقِفًا مِّنْ رَأَاهَا

Cyrano remained motionless from the moment he saw her. Manf. sha'. 221,11

قَدْ كَانَ مِنَ الْوَاجِبِ أَنْ أَعْرِفَكَ  
مُنْذُ عَرَفْتُ أَخَاكَ سَلِيمَ

It was necessary for me to meet you, since I know your brother, Selim.  
Nu'. liq. 42,15

وَصَفَ لَهُ حَيَاتَهَا الْغَرِيبَةَ الَّتِي  
تَحْيَاهَا مُنْذُ عَادَتْ إِلَى الْقَرْيَةِ

He described to him her strange life since she had returned to the village. Manf. mag. 250,2

Since it is a prepositional construction, مُنْذُ and the sentence it governs may be a part of a prepositional correlation:

اِحْتَفَظْتُ بِهَذِهِ الرِّسَالَةِ مُنْذُ  
تَسَلَّمْتُهَا حَتَّى الْيَوْمِ

I kept this letter from the day I received it till now.  
Hak. ahl. 84,10

As a particle introducing a dependent clause, مَنْذُ with the sentence it governs may precede the main clause which, under certain circumstances, will be introduced by the conjunction وَ or فَ .

However, the use of either conjunction is not optional. وَ emphasizes the continuous simultaneity of both actions; فَ the consequence or result of the action of the subordinate:

لَكِنْ مَنْذُ جِئْنَا الْكَهْفَ فَفَنَعْنُ لَا  
نَفَكِّرُ فِي غَيْرِ مَنْ — But, since we came to the  
cave, we haven't thought  
of anyone but....  
Hak. ahl. 25,1

مَنْذُ قَدْتَنَا إِلَى هَذَا الْكَهْفِ  
وَأَنْتَ صَامِتٌ Since you brought us here  
to this cave, you have  
been silent.  
Hak. ahl. 11,10

مَنْذُ وَجَدَ الْإِنْسَانَ عَلَى الْأَرْضِ وَهُوَ  
مَشْغُوقٌ إِلَى تَعَرُّفِ مَا فِي الْكَوْنِ  
الْمَحِيطِ بِهِ مِنْ سُنَنِ وَخَصَائِصِ Since humanity has been  
on earth, man has been  
longing to learn the laws  
and characteristic features  
of the things existing  
around him.  
Hai. sir. ط , 4

The dependent clause governed by مَنْذُ may also be introduced by the particle أَنْ :

أَعْنِي مَنْذُ أَنْ وَلِدْتُ I mean since I was born.  
Nu'. liq. 71,1

إِنِّي حَسَدْتُ مَنْذُ أَنْ وَصَفَ  
الصَّيَّادُ هَذَا الرَّجُلَ الْغَرِيبَ I have felt envious ever  
since the hunter described  
this strange man.  
Hak. ahl. 49,15

هُوَ مَوْجُودٌ بِلا شَكٍّ مَنْذُ أَنْ نَزَلَ  
الْعَرَبُ بِأَيَّارِهِمُ الْحَاضِرَةَ There undoubtedly has been  
one [Arabic fatherland]  
since the Arabs settled  
in their present countries.  
Zur. (Zy.) 18,18

## § 212 ل

A ل, introducing a dependent clause, can govern a verbal sentence only with the verb in the subjunctive; the Arab grammarians call it **الْأَلَامُ النَّاصِبَةُ**, "the ل that governs the subjunctive," (see Vol. I, § 25).

The preposition must precede the verb as its prefix; in cases of two or more coordinated dependent clauses all governed by the preposition, it may be repeated before each verb:

وَوَطَاهِمِهِمْ يَخْطَفُ نَفْسَهُ بَيْنَ حِينٍ  
وَحِينٍ لِيَلْقَى نَظْرَةً عَلَى هَذَا  
الطَّعَامِ مَخَافَةَ أَنْ يَحْتَرِقَ أَوْ  
يَفْسَدَ وَلِيَلْقَى عَلَيْهِ بَيْنَ حِينٍ  
وَحِينٍ قَطْرَاتٍ مِنْ مَاءٍ

The one who was doing the cooking would disappear from time to time to have a look at the food to keep it from burning or spoiling and to occasionally pour in immense quantities of water.  
Hus. ayy. II, 50, 1

but this repetition is not necessary:

وَلَوْ سَعَوْا سَعْيًا أَكِيدًا لِيَجْمَعُوا  
أُمَرَاءَ الْعَرَبِ وَيُوَفَّقُوا بَيْنَ الْمُتَعَادِلِينَ  
مِنْهُمْ لَا يَفْلَحُونَ

If they firmly attempt to unite the Arab princes and reconcile the enemies, they won't succeed.  
Raih. mul. 65, 1

أَنْ عَلِمَهُمْ دَعَاةَ النَّاسِ كَافَّةً  
لِيَتَخَلَّوْا عَنْ دِيَانَتِهِمُ السَّابِقَةِ  
وَيَدْخُلُوا فِيهِ

that it was their responsibility to invite everyone to abandon his previous religion and embrace this one [Islam].  
Amin duh. I, 23, 1

B ل usually introduces the intention of the agent; thus the dependent clause it governs becomes a final clause:

مَدَّتْ يَدَهَا لِتُصَافِعَنِي

She stretched out her hand to greet me.  
Nu'. liq. 36, 7

وَعُدُّ إِلَيَّ فِي الْمَسَاءِ لِنَدْهَبَ مَعًا  
لِعِنْدِ بَهَاءَ

and do come back tonight  
so we can go together to  
Baha's. Nu'. liq. 96,5

فَارْقَهُمْ لِعِدِّوا الدُّرُوسَ

He left them so that they  
might prepare their lessons.  
Hus. ayy. II,46,6

أَنَّ قَرِيْشًا قَدْ خَرَجُوا مِنْ مَكَّةَ  
لِيَمْنَعُوا عِيْرَهُمْ

that the Koreish had left  
Mecca to protect their  
caravan. Hai. sir. 258,8

الْكَاتِبُ الْحَقُّ لَا يَكْتُبُ لِيَكْتُبَ

The true author does not  
write just to write.  
Raf. wah. I,12,14

Note the following construction:

تَحَرَّكَتْ شَفَتَاهَا كَأَنَّمَا لِيَتَكَلَّمَ

Her lips moved as if to  
speak. Mah. qah. 135,14

However, it frequently introduces a subordinate clause that is not an intention of the agent, but rather a consequence either of the action or of the circumstances created by the action in the sentence or, at times, even of some unexpected event:

فِي ذَاتِ صَبَاحٍ اسْتَيْقِظَ النَّاسُ  
لِيَجِدُوا فِي الصُّحُفِ نَبَأًا خَطِيرًا —

One morning, people woke  
up to find important news  
in the newspaper....  
Sib. (Br.) 119,2

بَقِيَتْ آمِنَةً مِنْ بَعْدِ لِدِّدِ مُحَمَّدًا  
وَلِتَمُوتَ وَمُحَمَّدٌ مَا زَالَ طِفْلًا

Amina lived long enough  
to give birth to Mohammed  
and then she died when  
Mohammed was still a  
child. Hai. sir. 105,15

قَدْ عُدْتُ لِأَجِدَهَا نَائِمَةً تَشْكُو  
شَيْئًا مِنَ الصَّدَاعِ

I returned only to find  
her asleep, complaining  
of a headache.  
Qal. (Zy.) 21,10

نَامَ لِيَسْتَيْقِظَ مِنْ بَعْدِ لِحَيَاةِ  
رُوحِيَّةٍ قَوِيَّةٍ غِيَاةِ الْقُوَّةِ

and he slept, only to  
awaken afterward to an  
exceedingly strong spir-  
itual life.  
Hai. sir. 134,17



C Similarly, after كَانَ introducing a dependent clause with the same subject, لَ expresses the possibility, capability, or tendency of the subject to perform an action. This, however, occurs only in negative statements:

مَا كَانُوا لَيَعْرِفُوا وَقَدْ أَذِنَ لِأَصْحَابِهِ  
فِي الْهَجْرَةِ إِلَى الْحَبَشَةِ مِنْ قَبْلُ  
وَوَلَّ هُوَ بِمَكَّةَ

They could not know, since he had allowed his friends to emigrate to Abyssinia previously; he, however, had remained in Mecca.  
Hai. sir. 208,11

وَلَكِنْ هَذِهِ الْوُطَيْفَةُ لَمْ تَكُنْ  
لِتَنْسِيَهَا ذَلِكَ الْبَدَاءَ

But this job could not let her forget that calling. Hind. (Zy.) 32,25

الَّتِي لَمْ تَكُنْ لِيَخْضَعَ

which would not surrender.  
Hai. sir. 79,19

لَمْ أَكُنْ لِأَصْدَقَ لَوْلَا أَنَّهُ حَادَثَنِي  
بِنَفْسِهِ

I cannot believe it unless he himself tells me.  
Mah. zuq. 175,19

هُوَ مَرَّتَبٌ لَمْ يَكُنْ لِيَحْلُمَ أَيَّامَ  
الْجُوعِ

It was a salary he never could have dreamed of in [his] lean days.  
Mah. qah. 164,12

The same construction can be found after an interrogative nominal sentence and will be translated in a like manner:

مَنْ هُوَ ابْنُ الْهَذَّالِ لِيَجْرَأَ عَلَيْنَا؟

[Who is he to...?] How can Ibn Hadhdhal oppose us? Raih. mul. 52,2

فَمَنْ هُوَ الرَّيْحَانِيُّ لِيُعَايِي  
سُلْطَانَ تَجِدِ إِلَّا تَكْلِيزَ مِنْ أَجْلِهِ؟

Who is al-Raihani that the Sultan of Nejed should show enmity against the British for his sake?  
Raih. mul. 22,14

D The dependent clause after لَ may also be introduced by أَنْ; in this case, it introduces a final clause, "in order to":

مَحَمَّدٌ — أَعَدَّ لِأَن يَخْبِلَ الرِّسَالَةَ  
لِلْعَالَمِ أَجْمَعِهِ

Mohammed...had been prepared in order to bring the Message to the entire world. Hai. sir. ط, 12

لِ , لَفْلًا E As the negative compound particle may also introduce a final dependent clause:

لَا تَدِينُوا لِفَلَا تَدَانُوا

Judge not lest ye be judged. Gibr. I, 193, 3

أَشَارَ عَلَى أَبِي بَكْرٍ بِجَمْعِ الْقُرْآنِ  
لِفَلَا يَذْهَبَ مِنْهُ شَيْءٌ

He advised Abu Bakr to compile the Koran so that nothing would be lost. Djir. tar. I, 225, 4

(كَانَ) يَحْوِلُ وَجْهَهُ عَنْهَا لِفَلَا  
يُذَكِّرُ الْعَمَّ إِبْرَاهِيمَ أَنَّهَا هُنَا

He kept his face turned away from it lest he remind Uncle Ibrahim that it was there. 'Aww. (Br.) 13, 2

F However, a dependent clause after لِ and introduced by أَنْ is always causal, e.g., "because," "for":

ذَلِكَ لِأَنَّ الْمُسْلِمِينَ لَيْسُوا  
وَحْدَةً —

that is because the Muslims form not a unity.... Sa'. (Zy.) 6, 2

لِأَنَّهُمْ رَأَوْا الْحَضَرَ قَدْ فَسَدَ  
بِالْإِخْتِلَاطِ

for they observed that the [speech of the] city dwellers was corrupted through racial mixing. Amin duh. I, 312, 10

مُسْتَحِيلٌ لِأَنَّكَ لَا تَحْسِنُ الْكَلَامَ

[That is] impossible, for you don't speak elegantly. Hak. sheh. 169, 3

لَا لِسَبَبٍ إِلَّا لِأَنَّ —

For no reason, except [because] that.... Ayy. (Br.) 27, 6

## § 213 حَتَّى

A حَتَّى, introducing a dependent clause, presents an action that, in a more or less direct way, represents a termination of the action expressed by the main clause. Its meaning is usually a temporal one, but it frequently has different modalities according to the various ways the end introduced by the preposition affects the main action.

Generally, حَتَّى will introduce a verbal sentence with normal word order; that is to say, it will immediately precede the verb. As for the accompanying tenses and for the use of the preposition in the compound sentence, حَتَّى has always had a greater flexibility than ل, as we shall see in the following paragraphs.

In its temporal meaning, حَتَّى frequently presents the verbal action as having taken place, e.g., "till that happened," and thus it usually governs the perfect tense:

إِنْتَظَرَ حَتَّى أَنْعَرَفَ الشَّيْخُ      He waited until the sheikh  
had departed.  
Hus. ayy. I, 73, 10

إِنْهَمَكْتُ فِي فَتْحِ الْمَحْضَرِ وَسُؤَالِ  
الشُّهُودِ حَتَّى فَرَغْتُ مِنْهُمْ جَمِيعًا      I busied myself with  
opening the summary of  
evidence and questioning  
the witnesses until I  
had finished with them  
all. Hak. yaum. 46, 15

بَقَيْنَا كَذَلِكَ حَتَّى دَخَلْنَا الْمَدِينَةَ      So we remained until we  
entered the city.  
Nu'. liq. 32, 5

أَخَذَ الْأَعْرَجُ يُوسِعُهُ ضَرْبًا بِيَدِهِ  
حَتَّى آسَوَدَتَا وَكَلَّتَا      The lame boy began to  
beat it soundly until his  
hands were black and be-  
came tired.  
'Aww. (Br.) 15, 23

سَارَ الْمُسْلِمُونَ مَعَ الصَّبْحِ حَتَّى  
بَلَغُوا أُحُدًا      In the morning the Mus-  
lims journeyed until they  
reached Uhud.  
Hai. sir. 292, 21

سَارَ حَتَّى أَتَى قَيْصَرَ الرُّومِ

He travelled until he came to the Emperor of Byzantium.

Hai. sir. 75,15

B The action of the dependent clause can also be presented as being in the future in relation to the action of the main clause. In this case, the subjunctive is used, which, contrary to usage in medieval Arabic, does not necessarily express the action of the dependent clause as something wanted or striven for:

كَذَلِكَ كَانَ يُطْعِمُ الْحَاجَّ حَتَّى  
يَصْدُرُوا عَنْ مَكَّةَ

Thus he used to feed the pilgrims until they would leave Mecca.

Hai. sir. 87,7

يَسْكُتُ الشَّاعِرُ حَتَّى يَفْرَغُوا مِنْ  
لَفْظِهِمْ بَعْدَ وَقْتٍ قَصِيرٍ أَوْ طَوِيلٍ

The poet would remain silent until after a while they would stop making noise. Hus. ayy. I,5,11

يُوتَدَانِ حَتَّى يَبْلُغَا أَقْرَبَ بَابٍ

Both move backward until they reach the nearest door. Hak. ahl. 67,5

إِذْهَبْ حَتَّى نَدْعُوكَ

Go until we call you. Hak. sul. 93,16

إِنَّ كَلَامَ نِسَائِكُمْ مَرَجَالِكُمْ عَلَيَّ  
حَرَامٌ حَتَّى تُؤْمِنُوا بِاللَّهِ رَسُولِهِ

It is forbidden for your men and women to talk about me until you believe in God and in His Messenger.

Hai. sir. 216,16

وَهُوَ يَنْصَرِفُ حَتَّى يَخْتَفِيَ

while he walks off [the stage] until he disappears. Hak. ahl. 137,9

حَتَّى أَتَسَطِّيعَ أَنْ أَكُونَ خِطْمِيكَ  
أَمَامَ اللَّهِ

in order to be able to be your betrothed before God. Hak. ahl. 31,12

لَسْتُ أَسْأَلُكَ حَتَّى تُجِيبَنِي بِهَذِهِ  
السَّخَافَاتِ

I am not asking you [just] to hear such nonsense. Mah. zuq. 208,7

Its negation is expressed by **لَا**, which has no effect on the governing function of **حَتَّى** :

أَنَا أَكْبَحَ عَيْنَيَّ حَتَّى لَا أَنْظَرَ إِلَيْهَا  
I lowered my eyes in order not to see her.  
Hak. yaum. 22,8

أَغْمَضْتُ عَيْنَيَّ حَتَّى لَا يَنْتَظِرَ مِنِّي جَوَابًا  
I closed my eyes so that he would not expect an answer from me.  
Hak. yaum. 44,18

حَتَّى لَا يُشِيرُوا نَائِرَةَ قُرَيْشٍ عَلَيْهِمْ  
so that the Koreish would not start a revolt against them. Hai. sir. 208,3

حَتَّى لَا يَذْهَبَ بِهِ الْآوَلَادُ مِنْ مَكَانٍ إِلَى مَكَانٍ  
so that the children would not take it from place to place.  
Amin (Br.) 85,11

C **حَتَّى** also introduces a modification that amplifies the range of meaning of the main clause. The dependent clause it precedes means, in this case, "the limit" in the sense of "to the point of," "to such an extent," "so that."

In this construction, **حَتَّى** governs a verb in the past tense:

قَدْ بَرَحَ الْعَوَزُ بِنَا حَتَّى صَارَ أَطْفَالُنَا يَتَلَوْنَ جُوعًا عَلَى التَّرَابِ  
Need had possessed us so that our children lay prostrate with hunger.  
Gibr. I, 137,9

أَخَذَ بِيَدِي فَشَدَّ عَلَيْهَا حَتَّى كِدْتُ أَصْرَخُ مِنَ الْوَجَعِ  
He took my hand and pressed it so hard that I almost screamed because of the pain.  
Nu'. liq. 23,13

أَحَبَّهُ حَتَّى كَانَ يُقَدِّمُهُ عَلَى أَبْنَائِهِ  
He loved him to the point that he preferred him to his own children.  
Hai. sir. 114,17

حَتَّى مَا كَانَا يَسْتَطِيعَانِ الْإِفْتِرَاقَ سَاعَةً وَاحِدَةً  
to the point that they could not bear to be parted a single hour.  
Manf. sha'. 15,11

لَكِنَّ أَحَدًا مِنَ النَّاسِ لَا يَعْرِفُهُ  
بِهَذَا الْأَسْمِ — حَتَّى كَأَنَّ هُوَ  
نَفْسَهُ يَنْسَى أَسْمَهُ الْحَقِيقِيَّ

but nobody knew him by  
this name...so that he  
himself almost forgot  
his real name.  
'Aww. (Br.) 9,5

ابْتَسَمَ الْمُعَلِّمُ ابْتِسَامَةً آلَايَةً حَتَّى  
لَمَعَتْ أَسْنَانُهُ الدَّهَبِيَّةُ فِي الظُّلْمَةِ

The teacher smiled  
mechanically so that  
his golden teeth gleamed  
in the darkness.  
Mah. zuq. 63,16

Note the following:

وَمَنْ أَنْتَ حَتَّى تَطْلُبَ إِلَيَّ  
أَنْ — ؟

And who are you to ask  
me that...?  
Tai. (Br.) 131,27

أَمَّا كَفَاكَ أَنْ تَهْجُرَنِي فِي مِحْنَتِي  
حَتَّى جِئْتَ تَنْكُأُ جُرْحِي فَوْقَ ذَلِكَ؟

Isn't it enough for you  
to have deserted me in  
my distress that you  
should now rub [salt in-  
to] my wounds?  
Nu'. liq. 23,15

D The negation of the sentence presents the action of the dependent clause as having been introduced before that of the main clause was completed: "he had not...when," usually to be translated as "he had hardly...":

مَا تَوَسَّطْتُ حَتَّى سَمِعْتُ —

I had hardly reached its  
middle when I heard....  
Manf. (Zy.) 30,9

لَمْ يَنْقُضْ شَهْرُ الْعَسَلِ حَتَّى مَلَّهَا  
مُتَّضِعًا

Their honeymoon had hardly  
ended when he tired of her.  
Gibr. I, 119,1

وَمَا آتَتْ نَفْسُ النَّهَارِ حَتَّى دُفِنَ  
الْمَيِّتُ

The day had hardly ended  
when the dead were buried.  
Manf. mag. 132,19

In this type of construction, the indicative of the imperfect may be used to emphasize the future meaning:

وَلَكِنْ لَا تُسَدُّ سَتَائِرُ اللَّيْلِ عَلَى  
سَارِحِ هَذَا النَّهَارِ حَتَّى يَعُودَ  
الْمَسِيحِيُّونَ وَيَضْطَجِعُونَ —

But hardly will the curtains of night be drawn on the stage of this day when the Christians will return and lie down....  
Gibr. III, 23, 11

وَلَكِنْ لَا مَرَّ يَوْمٌ وَلَيْلَةٌ حَتَّى تَشْعُرَ  
بِعَلَامِيسِ أَصَابِعِ الْحَيَاةِ فَتَبْتَئِمَ  
وَتَفْرَحَ

But hardly a day and a night will pass before you will feel the caresses of Life's fingers and so you will laugh and rejoice. Gibr. I, 109, 12

In order to achieve a greater emphasis on the idea of incompletion expressed by the construction above, the auxiliary verb **كَانَ** may be used to modify the verb of the main clause:

مَا كَانَ الرَّجُلُ يَسْمَعُهَا حَتَّى  
أَهْتَزَّ وَأَنْتَفَضَّ

The man had scarcely heard her when he began to shake and shiver.  
Tai. (Zy.) 34, 5

لَا يَكَادُ الْمُؤَدِّبُ يَفْتَحُ فَاهَ عَجَبًا  
حَتَّى تُسْمَعَ صِيَاحَاتُ هَلَعِ نِسْوَةٍ

The preceptor had hardly opened his mouth in surprise when the women's cries of fear are heard.  
Hak. ahl. 61, 11

(For more on **كَانَ**, see Vol. III, p. 258f.)

The negative particle **مَا** in the sentence may be emphasized by the particle **إِنْ** (see Vol. I, § 36):

وَمَا إِنْ مَدَّ يَدَهُ إِلَى الْبَابِ وَهُمْ  
يَفْتَحِهِ حَتَّى آتَتْهُ إِلَى وَقَالَ —

He had hardly stretched out his hand to the door and tried to open it when he turned around and said.... Nu'. liq. 19, 10

إِنْطَعْتُ لِخَشِيئَةِ صَاحِبِي الَّذِي  
مَا إِنْ دَخَلْنَا السَّيَّارَةَ حَتَّى  
أَمَرَ السَّائِقَ —

I obeyed my friend who, as soon as we climbed into the car, ordered the driver to....  
Nu'. liq. 26, 12

- مَا إِنْ وَقَعَتْ عَيْنَاهُ عَلَى مُعْجَمٍ  
لَا لَأَنْدَ حَتَّى لَا حَتَّ عَلَى شَفْتَيْهِ  
أَبْتِسَامَةً خَفِيفَةً Mah. qah. 11,19
- مَا إِنْ أَقُولُ لَهُ — حَتَّى تَدِبَ  
فِي عَيْنَيْهِ الْيَقَظَةُ As soon as I tell him...,  
a wariness appears in his  
eyes. Mah. zuq. 28,9

E The verb of the dependent clause following حَتَّى may be emphasized with the particle ل; the tense of the verb may be either the perfect, which is usually preceded by the particle قَدْ :

- حَتَّى لَقَدْ تَحَدَّثَ بَعْضُهُمْ بِذَلِكَ  
إِلَى بَعْضٍ وَجَعَلُوا يَقُولُونَ — to the point that they  
commented to each other  
about this and began  
saying....  
Hai. sir. 429,21
- لَقَدْ يَشْتَدُّ بِهِ التَّأَمُّلُ ابْتِغَاءً  
الْحَقِيقَةِ حَتَّى لَكَانَ يَنْسَى نَفْسَهُ  
وَيَنْسَى طَعَامَهُ وَيَنْسَى كُلَّ مَا فِي  
الْحَيَاةِ His meditation for the  
sake of the Truth grew  
so strong that he forgot  
himself, his food, and  
everything in life.  
Hai. sir. 130,11
- حَتَّى لَقَدْ كَانَتْ بَعْضُ الْقَوَائِلِ تَسِيرُ  
فِي الْفُجْيِ بِعِيرٍ so that some tribes  
travelled with 2,000  
camels. Hai. sir. 245,16

or the indicative of the imperfect, with either a present or a preterital meaning:

- حَتَّى لَنَرَى أَبَا سَلِيمٍ الْخُرَاسَانِيَّ  
يَمْطِنِعُ لِنَفْسِهِ نِسْبًا عَرَبِيًّا so that we see that Abu  
Muslim al-Khurasani assumed  
an Arabic nisba.  
Amin duh. I,37,15
- حَتَّى لَيَقَاتِلُونَ فِي سَبِيلِهِ وَيُقْتَلُونَ so that they would fight  
and be killed for His  
sake. Hai. sir. 137,5
- يُحِبُّهَا مُحَمَّدٌ وَحَرَّصَ عَلَيْهَا حَتَّى  
لَيَقُولَ — Mohammed loved and wanted  
it so much that he would  
say.... Hai. sir. 495,12



حَتَّى لَمَّا رَأَى النَّبِيَّ رَأَاهَا النَّبِيَّ  
 حَتَّى لَمَّا رَأَى النَّبِيَّ رَأَاهَا النَّبِيَّ  
 to the point that some describe Zainab when Mohammed saw her.  
 Hai. sir. 316,10

Note that also the imperfect may be used after the particle **قَدْ** :

هُمْ أَكْثَرُ النَّاسِ بِهَا حَتَّى لَقَدْ يَعْرِفُ أَحَدُهُمُ الْإِنْسَانَ مِنْ أَثَرِهِ  
 They are the most skillful people in this; [to the point that] some of them could even recognize individuals from their tracks.  
 Djir. tar. I,213,5

F As a particle that introduces a progress of an action, **حَتَّى** may precede a whole compound clause even in cases when the subordinate precedes the main clause. In this case, the latter is at times introduced by **ف** :

حَتَّى أَتَتْكَ اللَّيْلُ فَلَمْ يَبْقَ بِالنَّهْوَةِ إِلَّا ثَلَاثَةٌ  
 When midnight arrived, only three persons were left in the coffee house.  
 Mah. zuq. 17,18

Note the following:

سَيَظَلُّ مُتَحِيرًا حَتَّى يَعْرِفَ الْحَقِيقَةَ  
 He will be at a loss until he knows the truth.  
 Mah. qah. 125,23

G The special meaning of **حَتَّى** , "until," naturally leads to the insertion of a temporal clause usually introduced by **إِذَا** ; its purpose is a closer determination of the temporal limit presented only generally by **حَتَّى** . The verb following **إِذَا** in such constructions has preterital meaning:

كَانُوا يَتَحَاوَرُونَ طَوْلَ النَّهَارِ حَتَّى إِذَا أَقْبَلَ اللَّيْلُ وَصَلَتْ الْمَغْرِبُ اجْتَمَعُوا حَلَقًا فِي الْمَسْجِدِ  
 They chatted all day long [until], when night drew near and the evening prayer was performed they gathered, forming circles in the mosque.  
 Hus. ayy. I,108,11

خَرَجَ فِي ثَلَاثِيَةِ رَجُلٍ فَأَعَدَّوَا السَّيْرَ  
حَتَّى إِذَا كَانُوا دُونَ بَجْرَانَ بَلِيلَةَ  
لَقِيَهُمْ رَجُلٌ مِنْ بَنِي سُلَيْمٍ —

He went off with three hundred men and hastened until, when they were one night short of Bajran, a man from the Banu Sulaim met them....

Hai. sir. 283,22

هَرَعْتُ إِلَيْهِ لِأَدْرِكُهُ حَتَّى إِذَا لَمْ  
يَبْقَ بَيْنِي وَبَيْنَهُ إِلَّا بَضْعُ خُطَوَاتٍ  
إِذْ سَقَطَ عَلَى رَأْسِهِ مِنْ نَافِذَةٍ  
أَحَدِ الْمَنَازِلِ الْمَهْجُورَةِ جَذْعٌ عَظِيمٌ

I hastened toward him to catch up with him; when only a few steps were between us, a huge tree stump fell on his head from a window of one deserted house.

Manf. sha'. 262,6

يَصْحَبُهُمْ صَبَاحَهُمْ ثُمَّ يَفَارِقُهُمْ لِيُصَلِّيَ  
الْجُمُعَةَ ثُمَّ يَصْحَبُهُمْ حَتَّى إِذَا وَجَبَتْ  
الْعَصْرُ فَارْقَهُمْ لَحْظَةً

He would visit with them in the morning, then would leave them to perform his [Friday] prayers, then visit with them [again] until, when the afternoon prayer was due, he would leave them for a while.

Hus. ayy. II,46,2

It is of interest to point out that very frequently this double construction develops into a simple temporal one introduced by the compound particle **حَتَّى إِذَا**, with or without the basic meaning of temporal progression originally expressed by **حَتَّى**. In such instances, the clause governed by **حَتَّى** becomes the main clause of the temporal construction and is structurally equivalent to a main clause which follows its subordinate and may, under certain circumstances, be introduced by **إِذْ** or **فَ** (see Vol. III, p. 285 and p. 361). The construction most often takes the perfect in both the main and subordinate clauses with a preterital meaning:

أَخَذَتْ الْفَتَاةُ تَنْتَظِرُهُ حَتَّى إِذَا  
أَقْبَلَ أَخَذَتْهُ إِلَى غُرْفَتِهَا

The girl began to wait for him and, when he arrived, she took him to her room.

Hus. ayy. I,117,7

(يَبْتَدِئُ بِتَعْلِيمِ حُرُوفِ الْهَجَاءِ)  
حَتَّى إِذَا عَرَفَ الْوَلَدُ شَيْئًا مِنْ  
الْقِرَاءَةِ وَالْكِتَابَةِ بَدَأَ بِكِتَابَةِ جُزْءٍ  
مِنَ الْقُرْآنِ

(He would begin with the letters of the alphabet) when the boy knew how to read and write a little, he began copying a part of the Koran.

Hus. (Br.) 86,28

حَتَّى إِذَا كَانَ الْعَمَلُ قَبْلَ عَلَيْهِ  
أَصْحَابُهُ رُفِقُوا مَنُصَرِّفَهُمْ مِنَ الْكُتَابِ

In the afternoon his friends and comrades went to [see] him on their departure from school.

Hus. ayy. I,63,5

The perfect may also be nonpreterital:

فَسَيَعُودُ أَخُوهُ الْأَزْهَرِيُّ مِنْ  
الْقَاهِرَةِ بَعْدَ أَيَّامٍ حَتَّى إِذَا قَضَى  
إِجَازَتَهُ اسْتَضَحَّهْ إِلَى الْأَزْهَرِ

For his brother, the Azhari, was coming back from Cairo in a few days and, when he ended his vacation, he would take him along to al-Azhar.

Hus. ayy. I,64,5

سَتَحْضُرُ دَرْسًا لَيْسَ لَكَ وَإِنَّمَا هُوَ  
لِي حَتَّى إِذَا فَوَّعْنَا مِنْ هَذَا الدَّرْسِ  
نَهَبْتُ بِكَ إِلَى الْأَزْهَرِ

You will attend a lesson that is not meant for you but just for me; then, when we shall have finished the lesson, I shall take you to al-Azhar. Hus. ayy. I,142,1

Some authors expand these compound particles by adding an adverbial مَا with the resulting form حَتَّى إِذَا مَا which has the same meaning as that above:

كَأَنَّهُمْ لَمْ يَصَدِّقُوا أَنَّ قَتَى مِثْلِي  
يَقِفُ بَيْنَهُمْ وَيَتَكَلَّمُ مَجَاسِرًا بِمِثْلِ  
هَذَا الْكَلَامِ حَتَّى إِذَا مَا أَنْتَهَيْتُ  
اقْتَرَبَ أَحَدُهُمْ وَقَالَ —

as if they could not believe that a young man such as I could stand before them and dare to speak as I did; when I had finished, one of them approached me and said.... Gibr. I,167,10

خَرَجَتْ مَرْيَمَ مِنَ الْبَيْتِ مُتَّبِعَةً أَثَرَ  
أَقْدَامِ وَالِدَتِهَا مَرْتَعِشَةً مِنَ الْبَرْدِ  
وَالْخَوْفِ حَتَّى إِذَا مَا بَلَغَتْ الْمَكَانَ  
رَأَتْ الشَّابَّ الْمَلْقَى بِلا حَرَكَ عَلَى  
الْتَلْجِ تَاهَتْ وَهَرَجَتْ

Miryam went out of the house following her mother's tracks, shivering from cold and fear; when she reached the spot and saw the youth stretched out on the snow, motionless, she moaned and cried out. Gibr. I, 158, 5

حَمَلَتِ الرَّائِيانِ الْفَتَى وَالْأَرْيَاحُ  
الشَّدِيدَةُ تَصُدُّهُمَا وَالتَّلُوجُ تَتَسَكُّ  
بِأَقْدَامِهِمَا حَتَّى إِذَا مَا بَلَغْنَا بِهِ  
الْكُفَّ الْقَتَاةَ بِجَانِبِ الْمَوْقِدِ

The two women carried the youth, while the strong winds fought and the snow clung to their feet; when they reached the hut with him, they laid him down by the fireplace. Gibr. I, 158, 10

H The frequent use of حَتَّى before different conjunctions or adverbial expressions developed from its meaning as an emphatic particle used to amplify the validity of the verbal action in the main clause: "to the point of....", "to such an extent that....", "so that....". It is especially common when the subordinate clause it introduces is presented as a progression or the effect of a progression of the verbal action expressed by the main clause. In such constructions, حَتَّى has an adverbial function (also see Vol. II, § 125):

لَا بَدَّ مِنْ أَنْ أَقْبِضَ عَلَيْهِ وَلَوْ فِي  
آخِرِ الْمَعْمُورَةِ حَتَّى وَإِنْ كَلَّفَنِي الْأَمْرُ  
كُلَّ مَا أَمْلِكُ

I must get hold of him, even if I have to go to the ends of the world and even if I have to spend everything I own. Nu'. liq. 34, 14

حَتَّى كَأَنَّ الْغُرْفَةَ دُكَّانُ زَهَارٍ  
مِنَ الطَّبَقَةِ الْأُولَى

as if the room were an exclusive florist's shop. Nu'. liq. 36, 4

ظَلَّ عَلَى صَدَائِقِهِمَا حَتَّى بَعْدَ أَنْ  
فَرَّقَ بَيْنَهُمَا الْعَمَلُ

They remained good friends even after work caused them to separate. Mah. zuq. 41, 9

وَأَيُّ وَالِدٍ لَا يَشُقُّ عَلَيْهِ فِرَاقُ ابْنَتِهِ  
حَتَّى لَوْ كَانَتْ ذَاهِبَةً إِلَى بَيْتِ  
جَارِهِ أَوْ إِلَى قَصْرِ مَلِكٍ؟

What parent will not  
grieve when his daughter  
leaves, even if she should  
only be going to his  
neighbor's house or to  
a king's palace?  
Gibr. II, 41, 8

نَزَلَتْ عَنْهُ الْحُمَّى لَكَانَ الدَّوَاءُ الَّذِي  
سَقَاهُ أَهْلُهُ قَدْ فَعَلَ فَعْلَهُ

The fever abated, as if  
the medicine which his  
family had let him drink  
had had its effect.  
Hai. sir. 502, 16

I When used adverbially to express the progression and limit of the validity of the verb in the main clause, *حَتَّى* may introduce any part of the sentence, usually a nominal one, without any governing function:

أَوَلَمْ يَعُدْ حَتَّى الْعَبْدِ الَّذِي  
رَافَقَهُ؟

Hasn't even the slave who  
went with him returned  
yet? Hak. ahl. 84, 13

وَلَا يَعْرِفُ حَتَّى مِنْ أَيْنَ يَأْتِي  
هَذَا الصَّوْتُ

He did not even know where  
this voice came from.  
Hus. ayy. II, 36, 17

سَمِعْتُ حَتَّى الْعَبِيدَ يَشْكُونَ

I heard even the servants  
complaining.  
Raih. mul. 66, 17

*Note* the following construction:

إِنَّهُ شَابٌّ فَقِيرٌ حَتَّى السَّجَائِرُ لَا  
يَذْخُنُهَا

He is poor; he doesn't  
even smoke cigarettes.  
Mah. qah. 21, 20

and may also introduce a complete sentence:

حَتَّى أَبُو بَكْرٍ الَّذِي — قَدْ بَقِيَ لَا  
يَعْرِفُ مِنَ الْأَمْرِ إِلَّا قَلِيلًا

even Abu Bakr, who...,  
knew only very little  
of this matter.  
Hai. sir. 210, 9

حَتَّى الشُّيُوعِيَّةِ نَفْسَهَا لَمْ تَكُنْ  
دَوْلَةً جَدِيدَةً

Even the Communist State  
itself was not a new one.  
Hus. (Br. II) 77, 11

and a subordinate clause:

لَمْ يَكُنِ الْوَسْطُ الرَّبْعِيُّ الَّذِي  
أَجْبَرْنَا الْإِنْكِلِيزَ عَلَى أَنْ نَعِيشَ فِيهِ  
— وَالَّذِي أَخَذْنَا بِقِيَمِهِ حَتَّى حِينٍ  
كُنَّا نَعِيشُ فِي الْمَدِينَةِ —

the rural milieu where  
the British forced us to  
live...and whose values  
we accepted even when  
living in the city....  
Musa adab. 182,2

حَتَّى إِذَا كَانَ شَوْقِي وَالْجَارِمُ  
مُتَافِقَيْنِ فَمَا شَأْنُ هَذَا بِالْأَرَبِ؟

so that if Shauqi and  
al-Jarim were hypocritical,  
what would that have to  
do with literature?  
Musa adab. 48,3

هَذَا اقْتِرَاحٌ جَمِيلٌ وَأَنَا أَقْبِدُهُ حَتَّى  
وَلَوْ كُنَّا نَجْهَلُ هَذَا الْكَاتِبَ الَّذِي  
سَنَقْرَأُ تَرْجَمَتَهُ

This is a good suggestion  
and I support it even if  
we do not know the writer  
whose translation we will  
be reading.  
Musa adab. 48,15

J Usually, however, a complete sentence after حَتَّى in this type of adverbial-connective function is used as a noun clause introduced by إِنَّ or أَنَّ.<sup>8</sup>

Since حَتَّى, as connective adverb, has no governing function on either the noun or the sentence following it, the use of إِنَّ and أَنَّ should actually be determined by the relationship of the noun clause to the preceding sentence; if it is a subordinating one, then أَنَّ should be used; إِنَّ should be employed only when there is a coordination. In modern Arabic, however, there seems to be no clear distinction between either case, and both particles are used indiscriminately. Thus, the following are found with أَنَّ:<sup>9</sup>

إِنَّ الْقُبْلَةَ شَرِيفَةٌ يَا سَيِّدَتِي حَتَّى  
أَنْ مَلِكَةً قَرْنَسًا لَمْ تَبْخُلْ بِهَا عَلَى  
نَبِيلٍ مِنْ نُبَلَاءِ الْإِنْكِلِيزِ

A kiss is a noble thing,  
My Lady! Even the Queen  
of France has not denied  
them to some English noble-  
men. Manf. sha'. 185,16

8. On the use of حَتَّى in classical Arabic to introduce a noun clause, see Reck., *Synt. Verh.*, p. 672.

9. We are only taking into consideration those cases in which the printed text includes the hamza.

لَقَدْ قَضَيْتُ حَيَاتِي كُلَّهَا مَحْرُومًا  
لَذَّةِ عَطْفِ الرَّأْفَةِ وَحَنَانِهَا حَتَّى  
أَنَّ أُمَّي كَمَا حَدَّثُونِي لَمْ تَكُنْ  
تَسْتَطِيعُ أَنْ تَرَانِي جَمِيلًا

All my life I was forbidden the bliss of woman's affection and tenderness. Even my mother, as I have been told, could not find me handsome.  
Manf. sha'. 281,11

بَعْضُ مِنَ الْقُرَّاءِ كَانُوا مُسْرِفِينَ فِي  
إِطْرَائِهِمْ وَإِعْجَابِهِمْ حَتَّى أَنَّهُمْ لَمْ  
يَقْنَعُوا بِالْبَرِيدِ فَأَخْتَارُوا التِّلْغْرَافَ

Some readers have been so exaggerated in their praise and acclaim that they were not satisfied with [writing by] mail but preferred to send a telegram.  
Musa adab. 46,3

(أَنَّ) ائْتِشَارَ الدِّينِ الْإِسْلَامِيِّ فِي  
بَعْضِ الْأَقْطَارِ قَدْ تَمَّ بَعْدَ أَنْ —  
حَتَّى أَنَّ هَذَا الْاِئْتِشَارَ جَرَى فِي  
بَعْضِ الْأَقْطَارِ بِصُورَةٍ سَتَقَلَّةٍ عَنْ تَأْثِيرِ  
الْأَسْلَاطِ السِّيَاسِيَّةِ

[That the spread of the Muslim religion in several countries was completed after...] [Its] diffusion even occurred in some countries in a form independent of political influence.  
Hus. (Br.II) 78,9

and with إِنَّ :

كُنْتُ أَقُولُ إِنَّ الظَّلَامَ فِي تِلْكَ  
السَّاعَةِ كَانَ جَدًّا حَتَّى إِنَّ الرَّءْءَا لَا  
يَسْتَطِيعُ أَنْ يَنْظُرَ إِلَى أَعْدَا مَا  
تَحْتَ قَدَمَيْهِ

I was telling [them] that now it is pitch-black, so much so that no one can see any farther than under his own feet.  
Manf. sha'. 129,1

فَاتَلَّ قِتَالًا شَدِيدًا وَأَبْلَى بَلَاءً  
مَنْقَطَعَ النَّظِيرَ حَتَّى إِنَّهُ لَمْ يَقْتُلْ  
إِلَّا بَعْدَ أَنْ ضُرِبَ سِتْعِينَ ضَرْبَةً  
وَحَتَّى إِنَّهُ لَمْ يَعْرِفْهُ أَحَدٌ إِلَّا أُخْتُهُ  
عَرَفَتْهُ مِنْ بَنَانِهِ

He fought courageously and proved himself matchless brave, so much so that he was killed only after having received sixty blows and his sister alone could recognize him from the tips of his fingers. Hai. sir. 299,16

كَانُوا يَسْمَعُونَ ذَلِكَ مِنْهُ وَيَضْحَكُونَ  
لَهُ حَتَّى إِنَّ جُنُوسَهُمْ لَتَكَادُ تَنفَقُ  
مِنَ الضَّحِكِ

They listened to this from him and laughed so much that they almost burst with laughter.

Hus. ayy. II, 47, 9

حَمَلْتُ مَعِيَ إِلَى وَلَدِي مِنَ الْهَدَايَا  
مَا سُرَّ بِهِ سُرُورًا حَتَّى إِنَّهُ قَالَ —

I brought with me some gifts for my son which made him so happy that he exclaimed....

Hak. ahl. 62, 9

## § 214 INDIRECT QUESTIONS

A A question is most often expressed as an independent (interrogative) proposition following verbs of oral communication such as "to say," "to ask," and the like. Very frequently, however, the question is not considered as actually being independent, but becomes incorporated into the preceding statement. The content of the interrogative proposition is not directed at any person in particular but is only given as the content of the oral expression and is thus found primarily after the same verbs used for the direct question: *قَالَ*, "to say," *سَأَلَ*, "to ask," etc. but also with other verbs related in meaning such as "to wish to know if (whether)," "not to know if (whether)," etc., and even with verbs expressing doubt "to be uncertain if (whether)."

English, along with other European languages, has developed special constructions that essentially differentiate between both types of questions, either in word order (e.g., *He asked me, "Where have you been?"* for the direct question, and *He asked me where I had been* for the indirect) or, with particles that introduce the indirect question (*He asked me, "Has he come back?"* as the direct question and *He asked me if (whether) he had come back,* for the indirect).

Arabic has not developed special constructions for this second kind of question, the only definite distinction between both being the use of the second person for the direct question and the third for the indirect, e.g., *سَأَلَ إِلَى أَيْنَ تَذْهَبُ؟*, *He asked him, "Where are you going?"* for the direct question, but



سَأَلَهُ إِلَى أَيْنَ يَذْهَبُ , He asked him where he was going, for the indirect.

There is, consequently, no special distinction between both in the frequent cases of narrative dealing with a third person:

قُلْ لِي مَنْ هِيَ؟ Tell me who she is [or, "Who is she?"].  
Manf. sha'. 29,7

قُلْ لِي فِي أَيِّ مَكَانٍ هُوَ؟ Tell me where it is [or, "Where is it?"].  
Manf. sha'. 55,12

أَنْظُرْ يَا غَالِيَانِسَ مَا الْخَبَرُ؟ Ghalyas, [go to] see what is happening [or, "What is happening?"].  
Hak. ahl. 53,8

The presence of a question mark is not a reliable indication of the nature of the question, since many authors (or editors) use it for both kinds indiscriminately:

تَلَقَّاهُ صَاحِبُهُ الصَّبِيُّ يَسْأَلُهُ هَلْ لَقِيَ الْخَادِمَ؟ وَهَلْ طَلَبَ إِلَيْهِ الْغَصَا؟ His friend, the boy, went to him asking him whether he had met the servant and whether he had asked him for his staff.  
Hus. ayy. I,103,6

وَلَا أَدْرِي مَا اللَّهُ صَانِعٌ بِي بَعْدَ الْيَوْمِ؟ I don't know what God will do with me after today.  
Manf. sha'. 151,17

while others, at times, avoid the use of the question mark with indirect questions:

يَسْأَلُونَهُ مَا الَّذِي جَاءَ بِهِ asking him what had brought him [there].  
Hai. sir. 369,9

بَدَأُوا يَتَسَاءَلُونَ فِي الْغَنِيْفَةِ لِمَنْ تَكُونُ They began asking each other to whom the booty should go.  
Hai. sir. 268,14

وَقَفَّ يَفْكُرُ مَاذَا عَسَاهُ يَصْنَعُ      He stopped to think what  
he could do.  
Hai. sir. 367,18

B Thus, an indirect question may be introduced without any structural change in the interrogative construction (see Vol. I, § 39):

a) by any interrogative particle:

سَأَلَهُ هَلْ قَدْ رَأَى أَحَدًا؟      He asked him whether he  
had seen anyone.  
Hai. sir. 260,5

أَنْتَ تَسْأَلُ عَنْ حَمَاكَ وَهَلْ مَائُهُ  
سَاخِنٌ؟      You ask about your bath,  
whether its water is warm.  
Hai. sir. 69,23

سَأَلَهَا أَعِنْدَهَا ضِيَاةٌ مِنْ طَعَامٍ  
أَوْ شَرَابٍ؟      He asked her whether she  
had some food to offer  
him. Hai. sir. 89,21

b) or by an interrogative adverb or adverbial particle:

أَلَا تَعْرِفُ كَمْ عَمْرُهُ؟      Don't you know how old  
he is? Hak. ahl. 136,9

لَسْتُ أَدْرِي كَيْفَ كَانَ يَسْتَى      I don't know what its  
title was.  
Hus. ayy. I,97,7

لَا أَدْرِي مِنْ أَيْنَ جَاءَ      not knowing where he had  
come from.  
Hus. 'ala. II,198,6

لَا يَدْرِي مَتَى يَعْلَمَانِ      He did not know when they  
would learn [about it].  
Mah. qah. 112,7

أُرِيدُ آلَانَ أَنْ أَعْرِفَ مِنْكَ  
أَيْنَ بَيْتِي؟      I want you to tell me now  
where my house is.  
Hak. ahl. 66,7

لَا أَدْرِي كَمْ طَالَ وَقُوفِي هُنَاكَ      I don't know how long I  
have been standing here.  
S. Din (Br.) 64,26

اللَّهُ وَحْدَهُ يَعْلَمُ كَمْ تَعَدَّيْتُ

God only knows how much I suffered.

Mah. zuq. 258,5

c) or by an interrogative pronoun:

مَا أَعْلَمُ أَيُّنَا الْأَسْنُ

I don't know which one of us is the oldest.

Nu'. liq. 70,17

يَسْأَلُ نَفْسَهُ أَيَّ شَيْءٍ رَأَى؟

asking himself what [it was that] he had seen.

Hai. sir. 133,10

سَأَلُوهُ لِمَ رَغِبَ عَنْ أَسْمَاءِ آبَائِهِ؟

They asked him why he had preferred [it] to the name of his ancestors.

Hai. sir. 109,12

سَأَلَهُمْ مَا عَسَاءُ يَفْعَلُ لِتَرْضَى  
الْآلِهَةَ؟

He asked them what he could do to please the deities.

Hai. sir. 100,11

سَأَلَهَا مَا بَالُهَا؟

He asked her what the matter was with her.

Manf.. sha'. 152,17

لَسْتُ أَدْرِي فِيْمَ كُلِّ هَذَا  
الْإِهْتِمَامِ؟

I don't know why he is so anxious.

Hak. sul. 59,9

Of special interest are some indirect questions introduced by the interrogative pronouns مَنْ and مَا, which frequently become equivalent to pronominal relative construction (see Vol. III, p. 170ff.):

لَكِنَّهُ لَمْ يَدْرِ مَاذَا يَقُولُ

but he did not know what to say.

Mah. qah. 133,7

لَمْ تَدْرِ الْآخَرَى بِمَاذَا تُجِيبُ

The other did not know what to answer.

Mah. zuq. 29,12

وَلَا يَعْلَمُ مَا آلَذَى أَضْحَكَهَا وَلَا  
مَا آلَذَى أَبْكَاهَا

without knowing what [it was that] made her laugh and cry. Manf. mag. 18,10

صَمَتَتْ لَا تَدْرِي مَاذَا تَقُولُ She kept silent, not  
knowing what to say.  
Mah. qah. 144,9

أَتَدْرِي مَاذَا أَصْنَعُ؟ You know what I'll do?  
Raf. wah. I, 92, 10

*Note* the use of the interrogative in the following:

أَتَدْرِي لِمَاذَا؟ Don't you know why?  
Hak. sul. 20, 24

لَسْتُ أَدْرِي لِمَاذَا؟ I don't know why.  
Hak. ahl. 110, 12

C Correlative and alternative interrogative constructions are also often used as indirect questions:

لَا أَعْلَمُ هَلْ سَقَطْتُ فِي كَوْكَبٍ  
الْأَرْضِ أَمْ فِي كَوْكَبٍ آخَرَ غَيْرِهِ I do not know whether I  
fell on the planet Earth  
or on another one.  
Manf. sha'. 193, 12

مَا يَدْرِي أَيُّصَدِّقُ أَمْ يَكْذِبُ without knowing whether  
to believe or disbelieve.  
Hai. sir. 358, 19

لَا يَعْلَمُ أَخْيَالًا يَرَى أَمْ حَقِيقَةً؟ without knowing whether  
he was seeing an illusion  
or reality.  
Manf. mag. 153, 9

وَلَا نَدْرِي أُنْصَدِّقُ الْكِتَابَ أَمْ  
الْجَرِيدَةَ And we don't know whether  
we should believe the  
letter or the newspaper.  
Raih. mul. 63, 15

وَلَكِنْ أَتَدْرِي أَيُّنَا السَّاحِرُ أَهْوَا  
أَنَا أَمْ الشَّابَّابَةُ أَمْ شَهْلَبَةُ أَمْ  
مَهْلَبَةُ But, do you know which  
one of us is the magician  
—I, myself, the flute,  
or Shahlaba and Mahlaba?  
Nu'. liq. 76, 16

D The conditional particle *إِنْ*, "if," may at times be used to introduce a simple or a correlative indirect question (see Vol. III, p. 319f.):

قُولِي إِنَّ هَذَا صَحِيحٌ

Tell me whether this is true. Hak. sheh. 67,15

وَلَمْ يَكُنْ مَأْمُونٌ رِضْوَانٌ يَذَرِي إِنْ  
كَانَ يَبْعَثُ إِلَى فَرَنْسَا أَمْ يَبْقَى فِي  
مِصْرَ

Ma'mun Ridwan did not know whether he would be sent to France or would remain in Egypt. Mah. qah. 79,15

E The (simple or correlative) indirect question quite often assumes, in the main clause, the syntactical function of an accusative:

أَنْظُرْ هَلْ يَسْتَطِيعُ صَاحِبُ مِثْلِ هَذَا  
الْوَجْهِ الْبَشِيعِ الدَّمِيمِ أَنْ يَحْيَا

Think whether the owner of such an ugly, hideous face can live. Manf. sha'. 66,6

وَلَكِنْ أَتَدْرِي أَيُّنَا السَّاحِرُ

But do you know which one of us is the magician? Nu'. liq. 76,16

لَسْتُ أَتَدْرِي كَيْفَ كَانَ يُسَمَّى

I don't know what its title was. Hus. ayy. I,97,7

and also as the second accusative:

سَأَلَهَا مَا بَالُهَا؟

They asked her how she was. Manf. mag. 109,11

يَسْأَلُ نَفْسَهُ أَيَّ شَيْءٍ رَأَى؟

asking himself what [it was that] he had seen. Hai. sir. 133,10

سَأَلَهُ هَلْ قَدْ رَأَى أَحَدًا؟

He asked him whether he had seen anyone. Hai. sir. 260,5

or as a determinative apposition (see Vol. III, p. 65):

اِخْتَلَفَ مُؤَرِّخُو السَّيْرَةِ فِي تَحْرِيمِ  
الْخَمْرِ مَتَى كَانَ

[Mohammed's] biographers disagree about when wine was prohibited. Hai. sir. 380,21

يُفْتَشُونَ عَنْ صَاحِبِ الصَّوْتِ أَيْنَ  
مَكَانُهُ؟

looking for the place where the owner of this voice could be. Manf. sha'. 37,9

لَا أَدْرِي كَمْ طَالَ وَقُوفِي هُنَاكَ  
الْحَظَّةُ أَمْ سَاعَةٌ

I don't know how long I have been standing here, whether [it has been] a moment or an hour.

S. Din (Br.) 64,26

وَكَذَلِكَ اخْتَلَفَ فِي الْوَقْتِ الَّذِي  
وُلِدَ فِيهِ أَنْهَارًا كَانَ أَمْ لَيْلًا

Likewise, there is a disagreement over the time when he was born, whether it was during the day or at night.

Hai. sir. 109,8

لَا أَدْرِي مِنْ أَيْنَ جَاءَ أَنْجَمٌ مِنَ  
الْأَرْضِ أَمْ هَبَطَ مِنَ السَّمَاءِ

I do not know from whence he came, whether he rose from the earth or descended from heaven.

Hus. 'ala. II,198,6

وَقَدْ رَأَيْتَ الْيَهُودَ كَيْفَ أَحْسَنُوا  
أَسْتَقْبَالَهُ أَمَلًا —

You have seen how well the Jews received him, hoping....

Hai. sir. 224,13

بَدَأُوا يَتَسَاءَلُونَ فِي الْغَنِيمَةِ لِمَنْ  
تَكُونُ

They began asking each other to whom the booty should go.

Hai. sir. 268,14

or in the genitive case after a preposition:

أَخْبِرْنِي بِمَا كَانَ وَمَتَى وَكَيْفَ كَانَ

Tell me what happened and when and how it happened.

Nu'. liq. 26,3

عَجِبْتُ إِلَى كَيْفَ أَتَيْتُ أَسْتَسَلِمْتُ  
لِرَأْدَتِهِ بِمِثْلِ تِلْكَ السَّهُولَةِ

I wondered how I could have submitted myself to his will with such ease.

Nu'. liq. 23,3

F Very frequently, an alternative indirect interrogative construction functions as a subject of a nominal sentence following سَوَاءٌ, "equal," as its predicate:

سَوَاءٌ لَدَيَّ أَقْرَأْتَ كِتَابِي هَذَا أَمْ  
مَزَقْتَهُ

It doesn't matter to me whether you read my letter or tear it up.  
Mah. qah. 3,2

سَوَاءٌ أَكَانَ الْإِيمَانُ كَمَا تَقُولُ  
أَمْ غَيْرَهُ

It makes no difference whether or not faith is as you say [it is].  
Hak. ahl. 66,6

سَوَاءٌ أَكَانَتْ هَذِهِ الْقَوَائِنُ  
الَّتِي تَشْرِيْعِيَّةٌ مَطَابِقَةً لِرُوحِ الدِّينِ أَمْ  
مُخَالِفَةً

It doesn't matter whether these laws were in conformity with or contrary to the spirit of religion.  
Sa'. (Zy.) 6,31

سَوَاءٌ أَصَحَّتِ الْأُولَى أَمْ الْآخَرَى  
مِنْ هَاتَيْنِ الْوَرَوَاتَيْنِ

It makes no difference whether the first or the second of these two accounts is correct.  
Hai. sir. 126,13

سَوَاءٌ أَتَوَقَّعْتَ أَمْ لَمْ تَتَوَقَّعْ

It makes no difference whether or not you expected [it].  
Manf. mag. 153,17

Hence, سَوَاءٌ becomes incorporated into the alternative interrogative, which loses the interrogative particle of the first member. سَوَاءٌ in this construction is in the adverbial accusative:

(جِيلٌ جَدِيدٌ) يَحْمِلُ مَعَ ذَلِكَ  
خَصَائِصَ الْأُمَمِ الْمُخْتَلِفَةِ الَّتِي  
يَتَكُونُ مِنْهَا دَمُهُ سَوَاءٌ كَانَتْ  
خَصَائِصُ جِسْمِيَّةٍ أَوْ عَقْلِيَّةٍ أَوْ خَلْقِيَّةٍ  
أَوْ رُوحِيَّةٍ

[A new generation] possessing, in addition, the characteristics of the different peoples from whose blood it was formed, no matter whether they were physical or intellectual, moral or spiritual characteristics.  
Amin duh. I,2,6

## § 215 SYNDEITICAL NOUN CLAUSES

A subordinate noun clause is very frequently introduced by the particles **أَنَّ** and **إِنَّ**. They belong to the group called **إِنَّ وَأَخَوَاتُهَا**, 'inna and its sisters,' by Arab grammarians who have been aware of their common origin. As we have stated (see Vol. I, § 109),<sup>10</sup> both particles originally had a demonstrative-interjectional character with no function other than that of directing the mind of the listener toward the statement they introduce. The two, however, early lost their interjectional quality completely and are now used exclusively as introductory particles for a noun clause.

On the other hand, both have also been completely incorporated into compounds to such an extent that they can only fulfill their syntactical function within it; that is to say, that they are never used in the very beginning of the compound but must follow a part or parts of it.

The main difference between both particles is seen in the fact that **أَنَّ** governs a noun in the accusative case and therefore has a much closer relationship with the statement it introduces (Vol. II, § 112).

**إِنَّ**, on the contrary, is much freer in its attachment to the statement, and only in the case of introducing the imperfect of a verb will it specifically take on a governing function, namely, that of requiring the verb in the subjunctive (see Vol. I, § 25).

Any attempt to present the different uses of the particles will have to account for two different aspects of their usage. First, the function of the particles in the subordinate noun clause, for the use of one or the other will determine the syntactical structure of the statement it introduces. Second, their function in the compound, for in frequent cases they cannot be used indiscriminately, and the utilization of one of the two may be obligatory or the basic meaning intended by the construction will be affected.

Although modern Arabic has a definite tendency toward a more systematic and consistent employment of these particles, it has by no means reached the point where a simple explanation of their usage is possible.

10. Also see Brock., Grund., II, p. 602.



# § 216 GENERAL REMARKS ON THE USE OF أَنْ AND أَنَّ

It may be of interest to present as an introductory note the fact that among the numerous rules commonly given to determine the use of these particles, only the following can be accepted as having general value:

a) Because of their having been incorporated into a compound, neither of the particles can be used in the very beginning of a sentence but will have to follow a part or parts of the compound.

b) In some cases, the particles have lost their attachment to the compound because of a closer attraction to a particular preposition or adverbial. In such instances, the noun clause with the particles introducing it may be placed in the very beginning, therefore preceding the main clause. Such compounds have always developed with one or the other particle, with which it will always have to be used, influencing accordingly the nature of the sentence following it.

With regard to the use of either one of the particles, the following may be stated:

a) أَنْ cannot be used immediately before an imperfect indicative; the particle, when preceding the imperfect, governs the verb in the subjunctive mood and the subjunctive presents the action as still being future in relation to that of the main clause.

b) أَنَّ cannot be used immediately preceding a verb. Before a nominal sentence, it governs a noun or its equivalent, which will be (either actually or virtually) in the accusative case.

A verbal sentence can only be used after أَنَّ when the governing action of the particle has been satisfied by inverting the word order of the subject, by presenting a noun as an anacoluthon (see Vol. II, § 180), or by adding, after the particle, a suffixed pronoun functioning as a "pronoun of general reference" (ضَمِيرُ الشَّيْءِ, "the pronoun of fact," see Vol. II, § 109 and 112).

As to their function within a compound, we may say that:

a) only when the verb in the noun clause is in the imperfect is there a noticeable influence on the part of the main clause as to the choice of the particle introducing the noun clause.

b) أَنَّ always implies a statement of fact.

c) after verbs that present their objects as something striven for or simply as a possibility or capability of a future action, only اِنْ will be used.

## § 217 اِنْ

A As we have stated above in the introduction, اِنْ has a looser connection with the statement it introduces than أَنَّ and it can be used whenever the other particle is not allowed for structural reasons (see b above) as long as it does not conflict with its own syntactical restriction (as presented in a above). Thus, for example, اِنْ usually introduces a verbal sentence with normal word order, with the verb as a rule, immediately following the particle (see also Vol. I, § 25).

B The verb after اِنْ, when the action is considered as being concluded and thus in the past, will be in the perfect tense:

أَنْتُمَا الْبَقِيَّةُ الْبَاقِيَةُ بَعْدَ أَنْ  
مَضَى كُلُّ شَيْءٍ كَحَلْمٍ

You are the only thing  
left [to me] after every-  
thing has gone like a  
dream. Hak. ahl. 79,14

ثُمَّ لَمْ يَلْبَثْ أَنْ نَسِيَ هَذَا كُلَّهُ

Then it did not take long  
till he had forgotten  
everything.  
Hus. ayy. I, 38,12

لَمْ يَسْبِقْ لَهُ أَنْ دَخَلَ بَيْتًا  
كَهَذَا الْبَيْتِ

He had never before en-  
tered a house like this  
one. Mah. qah. 54,22

كَانَ أَثَرُ ذَلِكَ أَنْ ذَهَبَ سَعْدٌ  
إِلَى قَوْمِهِ

A consequence of this  
was that Sa'd went to  
his people.  
Hai. sir. 216,13

The perfect is frequently preceded by the particle **قَدْ** :

أَنَّ قَدْ سَمِعَ اللَّهُ لَهَا وَلِزَوْجِهَا  
وَأَنَّ قَدْ أَخَذَتِ الْأَظْمَةُ تَنْحَلُّ  
that God had listened to  
her and to her husband,  
and that the crisis had  
begun to pass.  
Hus. ayy. I, 123, 9

حِينَ عَرَفَا أَنَّ قَدْ سَكَنَ النَّاسُ  
عَنْهَا —  
When they knew that the  
people had stopped looking  
for them....  
Hai. sir. 213, 16

عَرَفَ أَنَّ قَدْ بَزَغَ الْفَجْرُ  
He knew that dawn was  
near. Hus. ayy. I, 9, 8

ظَنَّ الْفَيْكُونْتُ أَنَّ قَدْ عَرَضَ لَهُ  
عَارِضٌ  
The Viscount thought that  
something fatal had hap-  
pened to him.  
Manf. sha'. 55, 8

C When the verbal action of the noun clause is presented as something future in relation to the main statement —thus as something still to happen and not as a direct statement of a fact— **أَنَّ** will be used governing the subjunctive, e.g.,

a) after verbs or expressions signifying an activity of will that thus present the noun clause as something intended, wished, or striven for<sup>11</sup>:

وَهُوَ يَنْتَظِرُ أَنَّ تَدُورَ بِهِ الْأَرْضُ  
while he was expecting  
that everything would  
turn around him.  
Hus. ayy. I, 103, 2

شَاءَتْ الْأَقْدَارُ أَنَّ يَكُونَ بَعْدَئِذٍ  
رَفِيقِي فِي السَّفَرِ  
Destiny wanted him to be  
my companion later on in  
the trip. Raih. mul. 25, 18

11. **أَنَّ** with the subjunctive, usually introducing the object, may have a meaning equivalent to a final clause; this is especially true with verbs that are only secondarily transitive:

قَدْ أَتَجَّهُ إِلَى اللَّهِ بِكُلِّ رُوحِهِ أَنْ  
يَهْدِيَ قَوْمَهُ  
He prayed to God with his  
whole heart for Him to guide  
his people. Hai. sir. 132, 16

- مَاذَا تُرِيدُنِي أَنْ أَفْعَلَ؟ What do you want me to do? Mah. zuq. 46,2
- طَلَبَ الصِّدِّيقُ أَنْ يَصْحَبَهُ فِي هِجْرَتِهِ al-Siddiq asked to accompany him in his exodus. Hai. sir. 210,13
- هَلْ لَكَ أَنْ تَهْدِيَنِي؟ Will you lead me? Gibr. I, 77,13
- رَغِبَ فِي أَنْ يَظْفَرَ بِهَا رَغْبَةً شَدِيدَةً He longed so much to get hold of it. Hus. ayy. I, 101,2
- آثَرَ أَنْ يَنْتَظِرَ تَصْدِيقَ الْآيَاتِ He preferred to wait for time to confirm [it]. Hus. ayy. I, 138,7
- أُحِبُّ أَنْ أَسْأَلَ طَهَ حُسَيْنَ I would like to ask Taha Husain. Musa adab 13,3
- أَرْجُو أَنْ تَظَلَّ فِي رَأْسِي طَوِيلًا I hope it [wisdom] remains in my head a long time. Hak. sul. 24,3

b) after verbs expressing a command:

- أَمَرَ أَصْحَابَهُ أَنْ يَلْحَقُوا بِالْأَنْصَارِ He ordered his companions to join the Ansar in Yathrib. Hai. sir. 208,3
- بِشْرَبَ

c) after verbs that express a possibility or capability of accomplishing an action, and also their opposites:

- لَا يَسْتَطِيعُ أَنْ يَذْكُرَ مِنْ هَذَا الْيَوْمِ وَقْتًا بَعِيْنَهُ He could not remember the exact time of the day. Hus. ayy. I, 3,2
- وَلَكِنْ مَاذَا بِيَدِهِ أَنْ يَفْعَلَ؟ But what could he do? Mah. qah. 126,12
- وَلَا يُمْكِنُ أَنْ يَفْهَمُوا مَنْ نَحْنُ It is impossible for them to understand who we are. Hak. ahl. 69,8
- لَمْ يَكُنْ مِنَ الْمُمَكِنِ أَنْ يَظَلَّ زَوَاجُهُ سِرًّا It was not possible for his marriage to be still secret. Mah. qah. 153,2

d) in expressions signifying necessity or obligation:

وَكَانَ لَا بَدَّ أَنْ تُوَضَّعَ تِلْكَ  
السَّائِلُ مَوْضِعَ الدَّرْسِ

It was necessary that these problems be submitted for study.  
Khal. (Br.II) 6,23

كثيراً مما ينبغي أن يعلمه

much of what he needed to know. Hus. ayy. I,50,2

ولكن لك قدراً يحب أن يحفظ  
ومنزلة يحب أن تضاف

But you have a rank and a dignity that must be maintained and upheld.  
Hak. sul. 46,3

e) in expressions signifying the acceptance of a proposed action, as well as its opposite:

خير لها أن تبقى مكانها من أن  
تضرب في الصحراء على غير هدى

It was better for her to remain where she was than to go across the desert without a guide.  
Hai. sir. 356,12

كان طبيعياً بعد ذلك أن —

It was natural, after this, that....  
Amin duh. III,24,12

أن علياً أولى الناس بأن يكون  
خليفة

that 'Ali was the most entitled to become Caliph of the Muslims.  
Amin duh. III,5,12

طاب له أن يخطب في الشوارع

He thought he would stroll through the streets.  
Mah. qah. 149,20

يكره أن يعلم أبواه أن —

He hated to have his parents know that....  
Hus. ayy. I,151,6

وصرت أتردد بين أن أفى لها  
بوعدها أو أقطع حبلى ودها

I was hesitant whether to fulfill my promise to her or to sever the bond of her love.  
Manf. (Zy.) 30,25

f) after verbs or expressions meaning caution or a warning:

حَاشَا لِلَّهِ أَنْ — God forbid that....  
Hak. ahl. 87,10

إِيَّاكَ أَنْ تَوَسَّوسَ لَهُ بِشَيْءٍ Be careful not to tempt  
him with anything.  
Hak. (Br.) 41,10

g) after expressions of fear:

إِنِّي لَأَخَافُ أَنْ — I do fear that....  
Raf. wah. I,114,12

وَلَا تَنْتَظِرْتُ أَنْ تَدْعُوَ الطَّبِيبَ and she would expect to  
have to call the doctor.  
Hus. ayy. I,150,5

أَخْشَى أَنْ يَكُونَ الْكَتَّابُ قَسَا I am afraid the school  
is harsh. Amin (Br.) 89,8

h) after expressions of wonder or surprise:

لَكِنَّ أَعْجَبَ مِنْ ذَلِكَ أَنْ يَتِمَّ لَكَ But more surprising than  
this is the fact that they  
could accomplish all this  
in a few days.  
Hak. ahl. 63,4

لَمْ يَكُنْ مَسْتَفْرِئًا أَنْ يَفْسُدَ كُلُّ شَيْءٍ فِي عَهْدِ فَارُوقَ It was not strange that  
everything became corrupt  
during Farouk's time.  
Musa adab. 40,1

وَلَمْ يَكُنْ عَجِيبًا أَنْ يَكُونَ الشَّاعِرُ Nor was it surprising  
that the first poet in  
Egypt was....  
Musa adab. 40,7

D أَنْ will, in general, be used with any statement or judgement about a future action, as long as it is not presented as a statement of fact:

حَسْبُكَ أَنْ تَعْلَمَ أَنْ — It is enough for you to  
know that....  
Raf. wah. I,26,21

نَعْنِي بِالتَّوَلِيدِ أَنْ يَتَزَوَّجَ رَجُلٌ  
مِنْ أُمَّةٍ وَامْرَأَةٌ مِنْ أُمَّةٍ أُخْرَى

We mean by "generation"  
that a man from one na-  
tionality would marry a  
woman from another one.  
Amin duh. I,9,5

بَطَلَ أَنْ يَكُونُوا مَلَائِكَةً

they would stop being  
angels. Raf. wah. I,14,3

وَلَا تَعُودِي إِلَّا بَعْدَ أَنْ تَشْعَبِي

Don't come back till you  
are satisfied.  
Manf. sha'. 94,5

حَتَّى أَوشَكَ اللَّيْلُ أَنْ يَنْتَصِفَ

until it was almost mid-  
night. Mah. qah. 149,19

خَطَرَ لِي مِنْ سَاعَتِي أَنْ أُبْعَثَ  
رُسُلًا

It occurs to me now that  
I could send some mes-  
sengers. Hak. sul. 38,12

هَآ قَدْ أَوشَكَ أَنْ يَنْسَاهُمْ النَّاسُ  
فِي عَصْرِنَا هَذَا

There, people had almost  
forgotten them in our  
day. Hak. ahl. 98,16

and even in cases in which the action actually has  
occurred, as long as it is not presented as being  
accomplished:

كَيْفَ يُمْكِنُ أَرْبَعَةً مِنَ النَّاسِ أَنْ  
يَخْتَفُوا بِمِثْلِ تِلْكَ السَّهُولَةِ؟

How is it possible for  
four people to disappear  
with such ease?  
Nu'. liq. 60,15

مَكَانَ آدَمَ وَحَوَّاءَ مِنْ جَنَّتِهِمَا قَبْلَ  
أَنْ يَأْكُلَا مِنَ الشَّجَرَةِ وَيَنْهَبَا  
إِلَى الْأَرْضِ

as Adam and Eve in Paradise,  
before they ate from the  
tree and descended to  
earth. Manf. mag. 31,7

غَيْرَ أَنْ الْجَمِيلَ فِي هَذَا أَنْ  
يَكُونَ ظَهْرُكُمْ فِي عَصْرِنَا نَحْنُ

But the wonderful thing  
in this is that you should  
appear in our day.  
Hak. ahl. 64,2

كَأَنَّ تَعَوَّدَ أَنْ يَنْظِمَ لَكَ الْقِصَصَ

as he [also] was used to  
making up stories for you.  
Hus. ayy. I,151,2

E However, after أَنْ, when the action is presented as something that will undoubtedly take place, the indicative of the imperfect may be used preceded by س, "the particle of the future" (see Vol. I, § 23):

لَإِنَّهُ كَانَ يَقْدِرُ أَنْ سَيَقْطَعَ عَلَيْهِ  
أَسْتِمَاعَهُ لِنَشِيدِ الشَّاعِرِ

because he foresaw that he would be interrupted in his listening to the poet's declamation.  
Hus. ayy. I,6,1

فَلِمَ لَا يَبْتَهِجُ الصَّبِيُّ حِينَ يَرَى  
أَنْ سَيَقْرَأَ مِنَ الْعِلْمِ مَا قَرَأَ أَخُوهُ  
وَأَنْ سَيَمْتَازُ مِنْ رِفَاقِهِ وَأَتْرَابِهِ بِحِفْظِ  
الْأَلْفِيَّةِ

Why shouldn't the boy be happy, since he knew that he would study the same things his brother did and that he would be outstanding among his companions and friends through his mastering of the *Alfiyya*.

Hus. ayy. I,71,5

F أَنْ may also be used to introduce direct speech or a question:

فَنَادَاهَا مِنْ تَحْتِهَا أَنْ لَا  
تَحْزَنِي  
ثُمَّ أَهَابَ بِأَصْحَابِهِ أَنْ قَدِمُوا  
أَكْوَابَكُمْ

An interior voice told her, "Don't be sad."  
Hai. sir. 317,11

Then he urged his friends, "Bring your glasses here."  
Hus. ayy. II,27,12

In this instance, أَنْ may also introduce a nominal sentence:

أَهَابَ الْمُؤَذِّنُ بِالنَّاسِ أَنْ  
الْعَلَاةُ خَيْرٌ مِنَ النَّوْمِ

The muezzin calls out to the people that "Prayer is better than sleep."  
Hai. sir. 1,6



G In a negative statement, **أَنْ** is used immediately preceding the negative particle, e.g.,<sup>12</sup>

a) **لَمْ** before the jussive is usually used for the negation of the perfect<sup>13</sup>:

حَتَّى لَقَدْ أَيقَنَ مُحَمَّدٌ أَنْ لَمْ يَبْقَ  
فِي مَصَانَعَتِهِمْ أَوْ فِي الْإِتِّفَاقِ مَعَهُمْ  
رَجَاءٌ

so that Mohammed was sure  
that there was no hope  
for any cooperation or  
understanding with them.  
Hai. sir. 255,15

كَأَنَّ لَمْ يَحْضُرْ بَيْنَهَا وَبَيْنَهُ مِنْ  
الْوَقْتِ شَيْءٌ — كَأَنَّ لَمْ يَكُنْ  
بَيْنَهَا وَبَيْنَهُ عَهْدٌ

As though time had not  
elapsed since then....  
As though there had been  
no connection between  
them both.  
Hus. ayy. I,15,7

b) The negative adverb **لَا** is used with the subjunctive. Note that in this case, **أَنْ لَا** may also be written as **أَلَّا**. This does not seem to have any effect whatsoever on its meaning:

خَطَبَهُمْ — أَنْ لَا يَخَالِفُوا أَمْرَ  
الرَّسُولِ

He exhorted them...not to  
disobey the Apostle's  
order. Hai. sir. 297,22

خَيْرٌ لَكَ أَلَّا تَعْرِفِيهِ

It is better for you not  
to know it.  
Hus. ayy. 150,13

خَيْرٌ أَلَّا نَحَاوِلَ إِلَّا جَابَةً

It is better not to try  
to answer.  
Amin duh. I,238,9

أَطْلُبُ إِلَيْهِمْ أَلَّا يَنْسُوا —

To ask them not to forget....  
al-Hus. (Br.II) 78,25

12. The negation of the main clause may at times refer to the verb in the noun clause:

لَا يَنْبَغِي أَنْ نَعِيشَ فِي عِزْلَةٍ

We must not live isolated.  
Mah. qah. 139,9

13. Since negative sentences in the past tense usually involve a statement of fact, they are more frequently introduced by **أَنْ** (أَنَّهَا أَتَتْهُمُ أَتَتْهُ، etc.) than by **أَنَّ**.

لَكِنْ يَجِبُ أَلَّا نَنْسَى أَيْضًا  
— أَنْ

But we also must not forget that....  
Musa adab. 9,7

يَسْتَعْلِفْنِي أَلَّا أُمَّدَ إِلَى إِسْمَاعِيلَ يَدًا

to request me not to lay my hands on Isma'il.  
Qal. (Zy.) 21,36

أُحِبُّ أَنْ لَا أَنْظِمَ مِنَ الشَّعْرِ  
— إِلَّا مَا

I want to compose only what....  
Manf. sha'. 121,16

c) The subjunctive governed by the negative adverb, لَنْ, is used as the negation of the imperfect preceded by سَ :

(لَمَّا) أَيقَنُوا أَنْ لَنْ تُغْنِيَ عَنْهُمْ  
حُصُونُهُمْ مِنْ آلِهَلِكِ شَيْئًا —

(When) they were convinced that their fortresses would not save them from destruction....  
Hai. sir. 338,13

d) The imperfect after سَوْفَ لَا can also be found:

أَشَعْتُ فِي مَجَالِسِ رَسِيَّةٍ أَنْ سَوْفَ  
لَا أَتَحَرَّكُ مِنْ بَغْدَادَ حَتَّى —

I divulged in official meetings that I would not move from Bagdad until....  
Raih. mul. 23,21

e) The use of the verb لَيْسَ to negate nominal sentences (see Vol. I, § 33) makes possible the use of أَنْ to introduce them in the negative:

عَرَفْتُ أَنْ لَيْسَ أَحَدٌ فِيهِ

I know that nobody is in there. Hai. sir. 211,23

أَحْمَدِي اللَّهَ — أَنْ لَيْسَ عِنْدَكُمْ  
لُغَاتٌ وَأَدْيَانٌ

Praise God...that you do not have [different] languages and religions among you. Raf. wah. I,29,9

كَانَ يَعْتَقِدُ أَنْ لَيْسَ لَهُ حِصْنٌ مِنْ  
كُلِّ هَذِهِ الْأَشْبَاحِ الْخَوْفَةِ

He believed that there was no protection from all these fearful creatures.  
Hus. ayy. I,8,11

أَشْهَدُ أَنَّ لَيْسَ فِي مُلُوكِ الرُّومِ  
الْمَسِيحِيِّينَ مَنْ هُوَ —

I swear that among the Christian kings of Byzantium, there was none who.... Hak. ahl. 52,14

f) أَنْ is also used to introduce noun clauses beginning with لَا نَافِيَةٌ أَلَيْسَ, "the لَا of general denial" (see Vol. II, § 108):

أَعْتَرَفْتُ أَنَّ لَا شَيْءَ يَسْتَطِيعُ —

I recognize [only] that nothing can.... Hak. ahl. 79,2

لَمَّا رَأَى أَنَّ لَا سَبِيلَ لَهُ إِلَيْهَا  
مِنْ طَرِيقِ الْمَخَالَةِ —

When he saw that he could not become a friend of hers.... Manf. sha'. 31,14

أَنَّ لَا شَيْءَ يَسْتَحِقُّ الْخَيْرَ

that there is nothing worth being upset about. Mah. qah. 165,4

H Finally, أَنْ may also introduce a complete compound consisting of a subordinate clause and its main clause; in this instance, the subordinate may precede the main clause:

إِنِّي عَلَى يَقِينٍ أَنَّ لَوْ عَلِمَ الْمَدُوبُ  
السَّامِيُّ أَنَّنِي بِمَا جَالَ فِي خَاطِرِي  
— لَسَوَّفَنِي أَسْبُوعًا آخَرَ

I was sure that if the High Commissioner had known what was in my mind at that time...he would have delayed me another week. Raih. mul. 23,23

يَتَمَنَّى أَنَّ لَوْ أَنْفَجَرَتِ الْأَرْضُ تَحْتَهُ  
قَدَمَيْهِ فَهُوَ فِي أَعْمَاقِهَا أَبَدًا  
الْأَبَدِينَ

wishing that the earth would open under him and that he would drop into its bottom forever. Manf. sha'. 115,3

## § 218 أَنْ

A As we have already mentioned in the introduction above, أَنْ governs a substantive, which is then in the accusative. It may introduce either a nominal sentence:

أَنَّ قَلْبَكَ نَفِيٍّ طَاهِرٌ؟

that your heart is clean  
and pure?

Manf. mag. 35,16

or a verbal sentence, in which case the word order for the subject of the sentence will be inverted:

كَانَ مَطْمَئِنًّا إِلَى أَنْ الدُّنْيَا تَنْتَهِيَ  
عَنْ يَمِينِهِ بِهَذِهِ الْقَنَاقَةِ —

He was convinced that the  
world ended to his right  
with the stream....

Hus. ayy. I,12,1

أَنَّهُ أَكَلَ ذَاتَ يَوْمٍ دِهْنًا

that one day he ate mo-  
lasses. Hai. sir. I,20,12

or will be preceded by a personal pronoun of the third person in general reference to the statement following:

أَنَّهُ لَا يُوجَدُ شَمَةٌ فَرْقٌ بَيْنَ امْرَأَةٍ  
وَامْرَأَةٍ

that there is no difference  
between one woman and an-  
other. Mah. qah. 130,14

B The accusative case is not necessarily immediately subsequent to the particle; e.g., it may follow the predicate in a nominal sentence. A verb, however, may never be placed between a particle and the accusative it governs:

كَانَ يَشْعُرُ بِأَنَّ لَهُ بَيْنَ هَذَا  
الْعَدَدِ الضَّخْمِ مِنَ الشَّبَابِ  
وَالْأَطْفَالِ مَكَانًا خَاصًّا

He felt that he occupied  
a special place among  
this large number of  
youngsters and children.

Hus. ayy. I,17,2

Note that a subordinate clause with a restrictive meaning following immediately after the noun it modifies may precede the accusative:

مَا كُنْتُ أَحْسَبُ أَنَّ فِي الْأَطْفَالِ  
وَلَمَّا يَتَجَاوَزُوا الرَّابِعَةَ قُوَّةَ  
تَعْدِلُ هَذِهِ الْقُوَّةَ

I did not believe that  
children under four [years  
of age] were so strong.

Hus. ayy. I,122,12

(For more information on the accusative after this particle, see Vol. II, § 109 and § 112.)

C The noun in the accusative is only very seldom omitted after **أَنَّ** 14:

عَلِمَ أَنَّ فِي هَذَا السَّرِيرِ كَانَتْ  
مَجْدُولِينَ نَائِمَةً

He knew that Magdalene  
had been sleeping in this  
bed. Manf. mag. 20,17

يَقُولُ ضَبَّاطُنَا أَنَّ هُنَاكَ سَتَكُونُ  
الْوَاقِعَةُ الْكُبْرَى الْهَـ

Our officers tell (us)  
that the great battle  
which...will take place  
here. Manf. mag. 117,7

D **أَنَّ**, followed by a substantive or a pronoun in the accusative case, does not necessarily introduce a structurally complete noun clause, but it may, at times, precede a complete compound when the noun in the accusative governed by **أَنَّ** carries logical importance stressed by the particle:

تَذَكَّرْتُ أَنِّي مِنْذُ عَامٍ كَانَ قَدْ أَوْفَدَنِي  
دَقْيَانُوسٌ إِلَى الْآقَالِيمِ فَغَبِثْتُ عَنْ  
بَيْتِي أَرْبَعَةَ أَيَّامٍ فَلَمَّا عُدْتُ حَمَلْتُ  
مَعِيَ إِلَى وَلَدِي مِنَ الْهَدَايَا مَا  
سَرَّ بِهِ سُرُورًا حَتَّى إِنَّهُ قَالَ —

I remembered [that] the  
year when Dacianus sent  
me as his delegate to the  
province and thus I was  
absent from home four  
days; when I came back,  
I had brought with me  
some gifts for my son  
which pleased him so very  
much that he exclaimed....  
Hak. ahl. 62,7

E The governing function of **أَنَّ** is frequently directed toward a syntactical equivalent of a noun, demonstrative or relative pronoun, noun clause, or pronominal relative clause, without any apparent sign of the accusative:

أَفَتَظُنُّ أَنَّ مَا تَدْفَعُ إِلَيَّ فِي كُلِّ  
شَهْرٍ أَحَبُّ إِلَيَّ مِنْ أَمْرَاتِي؟

Do you think that what  
you pay me every month  
is dearer to me than my  
own wife?  
Hus. ayy. I, 61,13

أَنَّ فِي النَّاسِ مَنْ —

that among the people  
are [those] who....  
Kurd. (Zy.) 28,14

14. It could also perhaps be read as **أَنَّ** .

فَهَلْ مَعْنَى هَذَا أَنَّ مَنْ يَكْتُبُ  
فِي هَذِهِ الشُّعُونِ يُسَمَّى أَدِيبًا ؟

Does that mean that whoever writes about these subjects should be called a *litterateur*?  
Musa adab. 3,15

غَيْرَ أَنَّ عَلَيْهِمْ أَنْ يَسْلِمُوا فِي  
الْوَقْتِ نَفْسِهِ —

But they must become Muslims at the same time....  
al-Hus. (Br.II) 79,2

إِنِّي أَعْرِفُ أَنَّ مَا قَرَرْتَهُ هُنَا  
لَا يَرُوقُ —

I am aware that what I have established here will not please....  
al-Hus. (Br.II) 78,17

*Note* the noun in the accusative in the following example:

مَنْ أَدْرَاكَ أَنَّ مَا تَطْلُبُ مَوْجُودًا ؟

Who told you that what you are looking for exists? Hak. sheh. 54,3

F When a negative statement must follow after أَنْ, the noun governed by the particle in the accusative is precedent in the noun clause immediately subsequent to the particle:

تَفْهَمُ أَتْنَا لَا يَنْبَغِي لَنَا أَنْ —

You realize that we cannot.... Hak. ahl. 69,4

ثُمَّ تَنَبَّهَتْ إِلَى أَنَّهَا لَمْ تَتَمَّ  
تَشْطِيطَ شَعْرِهَا

Then she realized that she was not through with combing her hair.  
Mah. zuq. 178,5

ثُمَّ يَذْكُرُ أَنَّهُ لَا يَخْرُجُ لَيْلَةً إِلَى  
مَوْقِفِهِ مِنَ السِّيَاحِ إِلَّا —

He also remembers that he never would go out to his place by the hedge without....  
Hus. ayy. I,5,14

الْحَقُّ أَنَّهُ لَا يَتَبَيَّنُ ذَلِكَ إِلَّا فِي  
عُمُومِي وَإِبْهَامٍ وَالْحَقُّ أَنَّهُ لَا  
يَسْتَطِيعُ إِلَّا أَنْ —

The truth is that he can only perceive this very vaguely. And that he now cannot....  
Hus. ayy. I,17,4

G A consequence of the function of **أَنَّ** in bringing the listener's attention to a noun as a component of a sentence involved in an action is the fact that **أَنَّ** is especially common after verbs or expressions which intend the noun clause to be a statement of fact.

However, the use of **أَنَّ** in such instances is obligatory only when the statement of fact requires the imperfect tense in the noun clause. Therefore, it is used after verbs and expressions of oral communication. (On the use of a noun clause after **قَالَ** see below.)

أَجَابَ بِأَنَّ وَلَدَكَ قَدْ مَاتَ؟

He answered that your son had died?  
Hak. ahl. 93,3

حَدَّثَنَا أَدِيبٌ ظَرِيفٌ أَنَّ إِحْدَاهُنَّ  
سَأَلَتْ —

An educated, refined person told us that one of them asked....  
Raf. wah. I,138,8

وَقَدْ زَعَمُوا أَنَّ تَلَامِيذَهُ تَذَاكُرُوا  
مَرَّةً بِطِيخٍ حَلَبَ وَجُودَتَهُ

It is told that his students once mentioned the watermelons of Aleppo and how good they were.  
Hus. ayy. I,21,7

It is also used in expressions referring to mental activities, e.g.,

a) to know, to learn, etc.,

أَدْرَكَ أَنَّهَا فِي الشَّرْفَةِ تَسْتَجِمُّ

He realized that she was on the balcony relaxing.  
Mah. qah. 134,16

عِلِمَ أَنَّهُمْ يَرَوْنَ مَا لَا يَرَى

He realized that they could see what he could not. Hus. ayy. I,18,9

إِنَّهُ كَانَ يَجْهَلُ يَا مَوْلَايَ أَنَّ  
الطَّرِيقَ إِلَى قَلْبِ أَنْسَانٍ أَطْوَلَ  
أَحْيَانًا مِنْ طَرِيقِ إِلَى بِلَادِ سَبَا

He did not know, My Lord, that the way to a man's heart is at times longer than the road to Sheba.  
Hak. sul. 121,5

b) to believe, to be sure of, etc.,

كَانَ مُطْمَئِنًّا إِلَى أَنَّ الدُّنْيَا تَنْتَهِي  
عَنْ يَمِينِهِ بِهَذِهِ الْقَنَاةِ —  
He was sure that the world ended to his right with this stream....  
Hus. ayy. I,12,1

ذَقِي — أَنِّي لَا أُرِيدُ أَنْ —  
Be sure...that I do not want to....  
Hak. sul. 78,9

أُظَنَّ أَنِّي كُنْتُ جَمِيلَةً فِي ذَلِكَ  
الْحِينِ  
I believe I was beautiful at that time.  
Manf. sha'. 96,10

لَا شَكَّ أَنَّ —  
There is no doubt that....  
Hak. ahl. 44,16

أَكَادُ أَرَى أَنَّنَا لَا نَتَّقُ بِاللَّهِ كَثِيرًا  
I almost think that we do not confide in God very much.  
Hak. ahl. 24,12

هُوَ وَاثِقٌ بِأَنَّهُ سَيُضِي اللَّهُ  
He was confident that he would please God.  
Hus. ayy. I,100,12

c) to remember, to forget,

ثُمَّ يَذْكُرُ أَنَّهُ لَا يَخْرُجُ لَيْلَةً إِلَى  
مَوْقِعِهِ مِنَ السِّيَاحِ إِلَّا —  
He also remembers that he never would go out to his place by the hedge without....  
Hus. ayy. I,5,14

تَذَكَّرْتُ أَنِّي سَادَخُلْتُ عَلَى امْرَأَتِي  
وَوَلَدِي خَالِي الْوَفَاضِ  
I remembered that I was going back to my wife and child empty-handed.  
Hak. ahl. 62,5

d) to occur (to someone), to imagine,

يَخَيَّلُ إِلَيَّ أَنِّي أَمُوتُ جُوعًا  
قَبْلَ أَنْ —  
I imagine that I could die of hunger before....  
Hak. ahl. 80,8

and also with any verb or expression which implies a statement of fact, e.g.,



- أَحَقًّا يَا سَلِيمَانَ أَلَمْ يَكُنْ لَكَ مِنَ  
النِّسَاءِ أَلْفَ زَوْجَةٍ؟ |  
قَدْ كَانَتْ لَهْجَتُهَا إِذَا تَعَدَّدَتْ  
تَدُلُّ عَلَى أَنَّهَا قَدْ هَبَطَتْ مِنَ  
الصَّعِيدِ  
الْحَقُّ أَنَّهُ لَا يَتَبَيَّنُ ذَلِكَ إِلَّا فِي  
غَمُوضٍ وَإِبْهَامٍ  
ذَلِكَ أَنَّهُ سَمِعَ إِخْوَتَهُ يَصِفُونَ مَا  
لَا عِلْمَ لَهُ بِهِ فَعَلِمَ أَنَّهُمْ يَرَوْنَ  
مَا لَا يَرَى  
فَقَدْ أَحَسَّ أَنَّ لِغَيْرِهِ مِنَ النَّاسِ  
عَلَيْهِ فَضْلًا  
وَسَبَبَ آخَرَ وَهُوَ أَنَّ الْفِرْقَ الْإِسْلَامِيَّةَ  
الْأُولَى —  
"Oh, Solomon, is it true  
that you have one thousand  
wives?" Hak. sul. 107,8  
Her accent when she spoke  
indicated that she came  
from the highlands (Upper  
Egypt). Hus. ayy. II,81,9  
The truth is that he can  
only perceive this very  
vaguely. Hus. ayy. I,17,4  
that because he heard his  
brothers describe what he  
had not the [slightest]  
conception of, he knew  
that they could see what  
he could not.  
Hus. ayy. I,18,8  
for he felt that other  
people had an advantage  
over him.  
Hus. ayy. I,18,3  
There is another reason,  
namely that the first  
Muslim groups....  
Amin duh. III,7,20

## § 219 COORDINATED NOUN CLAUSES

A Coordinated series of noun clauses introduced by either *أَنَّ* or *أَنْ* are often used. In such cases, the particle governing the noun clause may be repeated before each one:

- أَمَرَنِي جِبْرِيلُ أَنْ أُنْذِرَ النَّاسَ  
وَأَنْ أَدْعُوهُمْ إِلَى اللَّهِ وَإِلَى عِبَادَتِهِ  
Gabriel ordered me to  
admonish mankind and to  
summon it back to God  
and His worship.  
Hai. sir. 136,19

وَلَكَ أَنْ تُصَدِّقَ أَوْ أَنْ لَا تُصَدِّقَ

It is up to you to believe [it] or not.

Nu'. liq. 101,10

(ذَكَرَ) أَنَّهَا سَبْعٌ وَأَنَّ بَعْضَهُمْ  
أَضَافَ إِلَيْهَا قَصِيدَتِي النَّابِغَةِ  
وَالْأَعَشَى

(He mentions) that they were seven and that some add to them the two *qasidas* of al-Nabigha and that of al-'Asha.

Djir. tar. 105,12

وَأَسْتَطَاعُوا أَنْ يَلَاحِظُوا وَأَنْ  
يَسْجِلُوا مَا —

and they were capable of observing and writing down whatever....

Mand. (Br.) 5,4

إِنَّمَا كَانَتْ نَفْسُ مُحَمَّدٍ مَشْغُوفَةً  
بِأَنْ تَرَى وَأَنْ تَسْمَعَ وَأَنْ تَعْرِفَ

Mohammed's spirit was enthralled with seeing, hearing, and knowing.

Hai. sir. 118,8

فَقَدْ أَحْسَسَ أَنَّ لِغَيْرِهِ مِنَ النَّاسِ  
عَلَيْهِ فَضْلًا وَأَنَّ إِخْوَتَهُ وَأَخَوَاتِهِ  
يَسْتَطِيعُونَ مَا لَا يَسْتَطِيعُ

For he felt that other people had an advantage over him and that his brothers and sisters could [do] what he could not. Hus. ayy. I,18,3

The particle will be repeated in cases of unusually long statements, such as the following passage from Musa adab. beginning p. 5, 1 ff.

إِذْ نَعْنُ نَطْلُبُ مِنَ الْإِلَهِ  
أَنْ — وَأَنْ — وَأَنْ — وَأَنْ —  
وَأَنْ — وَأَنْ — وَأَنْ — وَأَنْ —

For we ask the writer to... and to...(5,4) and to...(5,6) and to...(5,7) and to...(5,9) and to...(5,10)

B It may also be used before the first noun clause and omitted in the following ones. In this case the particle generally preserves its governing function:

أَحِبُّ أَنْ أَقُولَهَا عَنْ نَفْسِي  
وَأَفْخَرُ بِهَا

I would like to say it about myself and be proud of it.

Musa (Zy.) 2,34

أَسْتَطِيعُ أَنْ أَكَلَ فِيهِ وَأَعُودَ

I could eat there and come back.  
Amin (Br.) 87,9

أُوصِي الْخَدَمَ وَالْعَبِيدَ أَنْ يَعْنُوا  
بِقَضَائِ حَاجَتِهِ وَيَأْتِرُوا بِأَوَامِرِ  
الْمَقْدَسَةِ

I'll tell the slaves and servants to take care of his needs and carry out his holy orders.  
Hak. ahl. 64,10

حَيْثُ يَسْتَطِيعُ النَّاسُ أَنْ يَتَحَدَّثُوا  
وَيَكْتُبُوا عَنْ حَقُوقِ الْإِنْسَانِ

where people can talk and write about human rights. Musa adab. 7,5

خَشَوْا عَلَى أَنْفُسِهِمْ أَنْ يَذْهَبَ  
الْيَثْرِبِيُّونَ مَكَّةَ أَوْ يَقْطَعُوا عَلَيْهَا  
طَرِيقَ تِجَارَتِهِمْ إِلَى الشَّامِ

They were afraid that the people of Yathrib would raid Mecca or cut off their trade routes to Syria. Hai. sir. 208,18

أَمَلًا بِأَنْ يَعُودَ كَاتِبُهَا وَيَذْكُرَنِي  
وَلَوْ بِسَطْرٍ أَوْ سَطْرَيْنِ

hoping that the writer would again remember me, even if just with a few words. Nu'. kan. 7,8

أَنْ يُشِيرُوا عاصِفَةً مِنْ غَيْرِ رِيحٍ  
وَيُفْعَلُوا حَرْبًا مِنْ غَيْرِ جُنْدٍ

to stir up a storm without wind or cause a war without an army.  
Zayy. (Zy.) 16,2

صِرْتُ أَتَرَدُّدُ بَيْنَ أَنْ أَقْبِلَ لَهَا  
بِعَدِّهَا أَوْ أَقْطَعَ حَبْلَ وَدِّهَا

I was hesitant whether to fulfill my promise to her, or to sever the bond of her love.  
Manf. (Zy.) 30,25

This is also the case with the negation of the second member:

أُرِيدُ أَنْ أَمُوتَ شَوْقًا وَلَا أَحْيَا  
مَلَلًا

I wish to die yearning and not to live weary.  
Gibr. II,95,8

أَلَّا يَعْبُدُوا إِلَّا اللَّهَ وَلَا يُشْرِكُوا  
بِهِ شَيْئًا

that they only worship God and not admit any other than Him.  
Hai. sir. 239,10

Occasionally, however, we find instances in which the governing influence of the particle is not retained:

كَانَ طَبِيعِيًّا بَعْدَ ذَلِكَ أَنْ يَقِفُوا  
عِنْدَ الْآيَاتِ الْآخَرَى وَيُؤْوِلُونَهَا

After this, it was natural that they consider other Koranic verses and interpret them.

Amin duh. III, 24, 18

When the particle **أَنَّ** is omitted, it may still govern the following clauses even after the omission:

لَأَنْتَى لَا أَعْتَقِدُ أَنَّ عَهْدًا مِثْلَ  
عَهْدِكَ الْغَادِرِ وَوَدًّا مِثْلَ وَدِّكَ  
الْكَاذِبِ يَسْتَحِقُّ أَنْ —

For I do not believe that a treacherous vow and a deceiving love like yours deserve....

Manf. (Zy.) 30, 29

أَنَّ الْعَبَّ كَالزَّهْرَةِ وَالْمَالُ كَالطَّلِّ  
السَّاقِطِ عَلَيْهَا

that love is like a flower and wealth like dew upon it. Manf. mag. 140, 6

C When **أَنَّ** governs the same noun in the correlative construction, the noun does not have to be repeated. This is especially true with verbal sentences used as correlative noun clauses:

أَلَيْسَ الصُّوفِيُّ يَزْعُمُ لِنَفْسِهِ وَلِلنَّاسِ  
أَنَّهُ يَخْتَرِقُ حُجُبَ الْغَيْبِ وَيَنْبِيءُ  
بِمَا كَانَ وَمَا سَيَكُونُ؟

Doesn't the Sufi say to himself and to the people that he can break the veils of the hidden and see the past and prophesy the future?

Hus. ayy. I, 98, 8

أَدْرَكَ أَنَّهُ يَرَى كَثِيرًا مِنْ قِطَعِ  
الْأَثَاثِ لِأَوَّلِ مَرَّةٍ وَلَمْ يَدْرِ لَهَا  
أَسْمَا

He realized that he was seeing many of the pieces of furniture for the first time and that he did not know what their names were. Mah. qah. 130, 2

D In nominal sentences, **أَنَّ** will govern a noun in the accusative in the first clause with those following having a pronoun in the nominative referring to the noun governed by the particle:

هَذَا الْحَقُّ أَنَّ اللَّهَ رَبُّ الْعَالَمِينَ .  
هُوَ الرَّحْمَنُ الرَّحِيمُ . هُوَ اللَّهُ  
خَالِقُ الْكَوْنِ

That truth is that God is the Lord of the world, [and that] He is merciful and compassionate [and that] He is God, the Creator of all existing things. Hai. sir. 132,9

أَخْبَرَ الشَّيْخَ عَبَّاسَ أَنَّ — وَأَنَّ  
هَذَا الْمَلِيعَ الْكَافِرَ قَدْ جَاءَ  
الْقَرْيَةَ مِنْذُ أُسْبُوعَيْنِ وَهُوَ الْآنَ  
سَاكِنٌ فِي —

He told Sheikh 'Abbas that...and that this heretical renegade had come to the village two weeks before and [that] he was living in.... Gibr. I, 179,8

أَنَّهُ قَدْ حَازَ شَهَادَةَ الدُّكْتُورَةِ  
فِي الْعُلُومِ الْبَرَايَةِ وَهُوَ عَائِدٌ إِلَى  
وَطْنِهِ الْعِرَاقِ

that he had obtained his doctorate in agriculture and [that] he was returning to his [own] country, Iraq. Ayy. (Br.) 27,27

E Finally, it will be of interest to point out that verbs and expressions as well as prepositions introducing a noun clause will generally be used with either one of the two particles **أَنَّ** or **أَنَّ**. However, only in some instances will there be the possibility of making a clear and definite indication of which one should be used (see above). The reason for this is, first, the fact that only **أَنَّ** introducing the subjunctive has a meaning that will be reflected in the construction. Secondly, in any other case, **أَنَّ** may be equivalent to **أَنَّ** and thus introduce a statement of fact, and the actual use of either one will therefore be determined only by the structure of the sentence following; therefore, its determination will be grammatical, as seen in the following examples:

لَمَّا رَأَى أَنَّ لَا سَبِيلَ لَهُ إِلَيْهَا  
مِنْ طَرِيقِ الْمَخَالِفِ —  
مِنْ رَأْيِي أَنَّ تَتْرَكَ هَذَا الْمَجْنُونِ  
وَشَأْنَهُ

When he saw that he could not become a friend of hers.... Manf. sha'. 31,14

I think we should leave this fool alone. Manf. sha'. 53,4

خَيَّلَ إِلَى هَذِهِ الْأُمِّ التَّعَسُّةِ أَنَّ  
قَدْ سَمِعَ اللَّهُ لَهَا وَلِزَوْجِهَا

This unhappy mother thought  
that God had listened to  
her and her husband.  
Hus. ayy. I, 123, 9

يُخَيِّلُ إِلَيْهِمْ أَنَّهُمْ كَانُوا أَثْنَاءَ  
طُفُولَتِهِمْ كَمَا —

They think that during  
their childhood they  
were as....  
Hus. ayy. I, 145, 6

عَرَفَ أَنَّ قَدْ بَرَغَ الْفَجْرُ

He knew that dawn was  
near. Hus. ayy. I, 9, 8

لِأَنَّهُ كَانَ يَعْرِفُ أَنَّهُ لَا يَحْسِنُ  
أَصْطِنَاعَ الْمَلْعَقَةِ

for he knew that he could  
not use the spoon properly.  
Hus. ayy. I, 20, 9

لَمْ يَكُنْ يَقْدِرُ أَنَّ هَذَا الْعَرْضَ ضَمِيلُ

He could not anticipate  
the [very] small width.  
Hus. ayy. I, 12, 3

لِأَنَّهُ كَانَ يَقْدِرُ أَنْ سَيَقْطَعَ عَلَيْهِ  
أَسْتِمَاعَهُ لِنَشِيدِ الشَّاعِرِ

because he foresaw that  
he would be interrupted  
in his listening to the  
poet's declamation.  
Hus. ayy. I, 6, 1

F Consequently, although a coordinated series of noun clauses will usually be introduced by either one of the two particles *أَنَّ* or *أَنْ*, a combination of the two is not infrequent:

يُخَيِّلُ إِلَيْكَ مَعَهُ أَنَّ هُنَاكَ حَدُودًا  
فَاصِلَةً بَيْنَ الدَّوْلَتَيْنِ وَأَنَّ صَفْحَةً  
لِلتَّأْرِيخِ قَدْ خَتَمَتْ بِانْتِهَاءِ الدَّوْلَةِ  
الْأُمَوِيَّةِ وَأَنَّ صَفْحَةً أُخْرَى بَدَأَتْ  
بِقِيَامِ الدَّوْلَةِ الْعَبَّاسِيَّةِ وَأَنَّ لَيْسَ  
هُنَاكَ كَبِيرُ عِلَاقَةٍ بَيْنَ —

which gives you the im-  
pression that there are  
definite boundaries be-  
tween both dynasties,  
that with the end of the  
Umayyad dynasty, a page  
of history was completed  
and that a new page began  
with the establishment  
of the Abbasid dynasty and  
that there was no great  
contact between....  
Amin duh. I, 1, 4

أَيَقْنُوا أَنَّ لَنْ تُغْنِي عَنْهُمْ حصُونُهُمْ  
مِنْ الْهَلَاكِ شَيْئًا وَأَنْتُمْ لَا بَدَّ أَنْ  
يَقَعُوا فِي قَبْضَةِ الْمُسْلِمِينَ

They were convinced that their fortresses would not save them from destruction and that they would necessarily fall in Muslim hands.

Hai. sir. 338,13

G After the verb قَالَ, "to say," إِنَّ is used as if it were introducing a direct speech or quotation:

قَالَ إِنَّكَ مُغَالٍ يَا كِرْسْتِيَان

He said, "You, Christian, exaggerate."

Manf. sha'. 137,13

لَقَدْ قَالَ غَانْدِي إِنَّ وَطَنِي هُوَ  
الْعَالَمُ كُلُّهُ

Gandhi has said, "My fatherland is the whole world."

Razz. (Br.II) 89,24

لِذَلِكَ أَقُولُ إِنَّ دَلَالََةَ أَبِي نُوَاسٍ  
عِنْدِي لَيْسَتْ

For this reason, I say [that] for me Abu Nuwas' meaning is not....

Musa adab. 82,10

قَدْ يَقَالُ إِنَّ هَذَا الْفَسَادَ يُوجَدُ  
أَيْضًا عِنْدَ الْأُمَمِ —

It might be said [that] such corruption is also

to be found in the nations.... Musa adab. 82,15

Hence we find إِنَّ used after verbs equivalent in meaning to the above with the same implication of a direct speech:

أَقْسَمُ إِنَّكَ خَائِفٌ

I swear, You are afraid!

Hak. ahl. 55,6

(also see Hak. ahl. 64,6;

Hak. ahl. 43,4;

Hak. ahl. 66,10)

إِنَّ is also usually found after قَالَ, even in cases of a clear indirect speech:

تُرِيدُ أَنْ يَقُولَ لِي إِنَّكَ تُحِبُّنِي

You want to tell me that you love me.

Manf. sha'. 166,8

حَتَّى جَاءَنِي خَادِمُ صَاحِبِ الدَّارِ  
يَقُولُ إِنَّ سَيِّدَهُ بِالْبَابِ

when the owner's servant came to telling me that his master was at the door. Qal. (Zy.) 21,36

H In indirect speech, however, or whenever قَالَ has a meaning equivalent to other verbs of oral communication such as "to narrate," "to express," "to affirm," etc., أَنْ can also be used:

أَقُولُ أَنَّكَ وَاهِمٌ

I say that you are wrong. Hak. sheh. 77,13

لَا أَسْتَطِيعُ أَنْ أَقُولَ أَنَّ الْمُؤَلِّفِينَ  
قَدْ أَخْرَجُوا قِصَصًا عَالِيَةً

I cannot say that the authors have produced stories of excellence. Musa adab. 182,13

تَرَى أَيَحَقُّ لَنَا أَنْ نَقُولَ أَنَّ  
شَمَّ وَطَنًا عَرَبِيًّا؟

Can we truly say that there is an Arab nation? Zur. (Zy.) 18,17

مَنْ قَالَ لَكَ أَنِّي عَنَيْتُ غَيْرَ هَذَا؟

Who told you that I meant something else? Hak. sheh. 126,11

قُلْ أَنَّكَ تَتَحَرَّقُ شَوْقًا إِلَى رُؤْيَيْهَا

Say that you are overcome by longing to see her. Hak. sheh. 121,11

يَقُولُ ضَبَّاطُنَا أَنَّ هُنَاكَ سَتَكُونُ  
الْوَأَقِعَةُ الْكُبْرَى الَّتِي —

Our officers tell us that the great battle which... will take place there. Manf. mag. 117,7

Note the following:

يَقُولُ الْفَتَى إِنَّهُ سَيَعُودُ بِرُثْوَةٍ  
وَأَنَّهُ سَيَفْتَحُ صَالُونًا

The young man said that he would return wealthy and open a tavern. Mah. zuq. 179,5

When قَالَ has a meaning equivalent to "to order," it will then take a noun clause introduced by أَنْ :

أَقُولُ لَهُ أَنْ يَبْقَى

I'll tell him to stay. Hak. sheh. 89,12



## § 220 THE FUNCTION OF A NOUN CLAUSE

A noun clause introduced by **أَنَّ** or **أَنْ** may have, within the compound, the syntactical function of:

a) a subject:

لَقَدْ سَبَقَ أَنَّ ذَكَرْتُمْ لِي ذَلِكَ  
مَرَّاتٍ

You have told me that  
several times before.  
Hak. sul. 36,5

كَانَ عَلَيَّ أَنْ أَنَاقِشَهُ

I had to argue with him.  
Maz. (Zy.) 1,26

ثُمَّ لَا يَلْبِثُ أَنْ يَعُودَ إِلَيْكَ نَابِئًا  
مُسْتَغْفِرًا

Then it does not take  
long for him to come back  
seeking forgiveness.  
Gibr. I, 109,15

خَطَرَ لِي أَنَّ الْقَادِمَ قَدْ يَكُونُ  
لِصًّا

It occurred to me that  
the one approaching might  
be a thief.  
Maz. (Zy.) 10,12

كَانَ طَبِيعِيًّا إِذَا أَنْ يَكُونُ بَدْوٌ  
شَبَهَ جَزِيرَةِ الْعَرَبِ هُمْ أُمَرَاءُ  
الْصَحْرَاءِ

It was natural, then, that  
the Badouins of the Arabic  
peninsula were the princes  
of the desert.  
Hai. sir. 72,16

يَجِبُ أَنْ تُعِيدَهُ

You must repeat it.  
Hus. ayy. I, 41,12

طَبِيعِيٌّ فِي بِلَادٍ هَذِهِ حَالُهَا  
أَنْ تَكُونَ كَصَحْرَاءِ إِفْرِيقِيَّةِ الْكُبْرَى  
لَا يَقِيمُ بِهَا مَقِيمٌ

It was natural for such  
a country as this to be  
like the great deserts  
of Africa in which nobody  
could live.  
Hai. sir. 72,3

هل يمكن انساني أن —

Is it possible for any  
human being to....  
Musa adab. 174,10

وَلَكِنْ قَلَّ أَنْ تَجِدَ شِعْرًا يَتَغَنَّى  
فِيهِ الْعَرَبِيُّ بِأَنَّهُ عَرَبِيٌّ

But you seldom find a po-  
etic composition in which  
the Arab praises [the fact]  
that he is an Arab.  
Amin duh. I, 18,7

مَنْفُودًا بِصِفَاتٍ قَلَّ أَنْ تَجْتَمَعَ  
لِأَحَدٍ مِنْ مُعَاَصِرِهِ

standing alone because of  
qualities which were sel-  
dom found together in any  
of his contemporaries.  
Manf. sha'. 7,4

Some constructions resulting after the ellipsis of a preposition (see Vol. II, § 70 and also Vol. III, p. 145) should be considered as noun clauses in the function of a subject:

كَانَ لَا بُدَّ أَنْ يَتَكَلَّمَ

He must speak.  
Mah. qah. 146,21

لَا بُدَّ أَنْ يَكُونَ ابْنُ أَحَدِ رَاجَوَاتِ  
الْهِنْدِ

He must be the son of  
an Indian Rajah.  
Ayy. (Br.) 27,21

b) a predicate

It is not always clear what is intended as subject and what as predicate. Nor does a substantive, or pronoun, preceding the clause necessarily have to be the subject:

ذَلِكَ أَنَّهُ سَمِعَ إِخْوَتَهُ يَصِفُونَ مَا  
لَا عِلْمَ لَهُ بِهِ

That is because he heard  
his brothers describing  
some things of which he  
had no conception.  
Hus. ayy. I,18,8

الْحَقُّ أَنَّهُ كَانَ سَعِيدًا فِي هَذِهِ  
الْأَيَّامِ

The truth is that he was  
happy in those days.  
Hus. ayy. I,64,8

مِنْ عَادَتِهِ أَنَّهُ كَانَ يَعْتَكِفُ كُلَّ  
سَنَةٍ فِي أَحَدِ الْمَسَاجِدِ عَشْرَةَ  
الْأَيَّامِ الْأَخِيرَةِ مِنْ شَهْرِ رَمَضَانَ

It was his custom to with-  
draw every year to a mosque  
during the last ten days  
of Ramadan.  
Raf. (Zy.) 20,3

الْجَوَابُ عَنْ سُؤَالِكَ أَنَّ —

The answer to your question  
is that.... Hai. sir. 5,16

جُلَّ مَا كَانَتْ تَعْرِفُهُ عَنْ نَفْسِهَا  
أَنَّهَا تَعْلَمُ بِالْمَالِ

that much she knew about  
herself, that she dreamed  
of wealth. Mah. zuq. 51,13

وَسَبَبٌ آخَرَ وَهُوَ أَنَّ الْفِرَقَ  
الْإِسْلَامِيَّةَ الْأُولَى —

There is another reason,  
namely that the first  
Muslim groups....  
Amin duh. III,7,20

طَابَ لَهُ أَنْ يَخْبِطَ فِي الشَّوَارِعِ

He decided to wander  
through the streets.  
Mah. qah. 149,20

(For a noun clause as a predicative after كَانَ and similar verbs, see below under the section on the adverbial accusative.)

c) an appositive

A noun clause is also frequently used in the function of an attributive apposition either as an explicative apposition to a preceding statement:

إِنَّ الْقَرِيحَةَ لَا يَنْصَرِفُ إِلَى شَيْئَيْنِ  
أَيُّ أَنَّ الْأَرِيْبَ لَا يَسْتَطِيعُ أَنْ —

The genius cannot apply  
himself to two things,  
that is, the writer cannot.... Gibr. III,67,1

لَمَّا وَلَدَتْ سَارَةَ لَمْ يَبْقَ لِإِبْرَاهِيمَ  
أَبْنٌ وَحِيدٌ أَنْ كَانَ لَهُ إِسْمَاعِيلُ  
وَإِسْحَاقُ

When Sarah gave birth,  
Abraham did not have  
only one child, he [then]  
had Isma'il and Isaac.  
Hai. sir. 87,7

قَدْ أَنْكَرَ مُحَمَّدٌ صَوْرَهُمْ أَنْ لَيْسَتْ  
الْمَلَائِكَةُ ذَكَرًا وَلَا إِنَاثًا

Mohammed rejected their  
portrayal, [for] angels  
are neither males nor  
females. Hai. sir. 423,6

or to a preceding noun:

أَنْتِ يَا مَنْ أَخَافُ مِنْ آسِمِهَا أَنْ  
أَدْعُوهَا بِآسِمِهَا  
لَا بِي عَائِشَ الْآنَ فِي حَقِيقَةٍ وَاحِدَةٍ  
أَنْ سَعِيدٌ هُنَا

You, whose name I fear  
to mention. Gibr. II,100,15

I live now in only one  
reality: that I am happy  
here. Hak. ahl. 134,1

لَوْلَا أَنَّنِي خِفْتُ عَلَيْكَ الْجَزَعَ أَنْ  
تَرَانِي بِأَكِيَّةٍ

if I weren't afraid of  
your sorrow on seeing my  
tears. Manf. mag. 55,2

This apposition is very frequently found after a demonstrative or a personal pronoun of the third person<sup>15</sup>:

أَهُوَ سَتَحِيلُ أَنْ تَتَّفِقَ يَوْمًا؟  
Is it impossible for us  
to ever agree?  
Hak. sul. 54,4

هُوَ الْمَعْلُومُ أَنَّ —  
It is known that....  
Raf. wah. III,21,9

إِنَّهُ حَقًّا لَشَرَفٌ عَظِيمٌ أَنَّ —  
That is indeed a great  
honor that....  
Hak. ahl. 57,6

فَأَغْضَبَ ذَلِكَ سَارَةَ أَنَّ رَأَتْ هَذِهِ  
التَّسْوِيَةَ بَيْنَ ابْنِهَا وَابْنِ هَاجَرَ  
But it angered Sarah to  
see this equality between  
her son and Hagar's.  
Hai. sir. 88,22

إِنَّهَا لَسَعَادَةٌ كُبْرَى أَنْ يَكُونَ  
لِذِرَاعِي حَقٌّ بِسَاطِي  
It will be a great pleasure  
for my arms to experience  
the same fate as my rug.  
Hak. sul. 113,1

or after interrogative pronouns:

مَا تُرِيدُ مِنْهُمَا أَنْ يَفْعَلَا؟  
What do you want them to  
do? Sib. (Br.) 112,20

وَمَا تُرِيدُ أَنْ أَصْنَعَ؟  
What do you want me to  
do? Hus. 'ala. III,18,13

d) an accusative

A noun clause may be used as a direct object after a transitive verb:

وَلَكِنَّكَ تَعْلَمُ يَا إِنْذَارَ ابْنِي أُحِبُّهَا  
But you, Edward, know that  
I love her.  
Manf. mag. 158,18

15. The use of the demonstrative or personal pronoun is due to the structure of the main clause in which the noun function fulfilled by the noun clause should be in a precedent position, which is not allowed with أَنْ or أَنَّ.

يَطْلُبُ إِلَيْهِ أَنْ يُعَرِّىَ الْقُرْآنَ بَعْضُ  
الصِّبْيَانِ

He asked him to let some pupils recite the Koran.  
Hus. ayy. I, 53, 6

يَذْكُرُ أَنْ قَصَبَ هَذَا السِّجَاحِ كَانَ  
أَطْوَلَ مِنْ قَامَتِهِ

He remembers that the canes of this hedge were taller than he.  
Hus. ayy. I, 4, 5

(قَرَيْشٍ) بَلَغَتْ مِنْ ذَلِكَ أَنَّهَا كَانَتْ  
تَحُولُ بَيْنَ الزَّوْجِ وَزَوْجِهِ

(The Koreish) went so far as to [the extreme of] interfere between husband and wife.  
Hai. sir. 208, 6

رَغِبَ أَنْ يَفْعَلَ شَيْئًا أَيًّا كَانَ

He wished to do something, no matter what.  
Mah. qah. 127, 1

or may be dependent upon an infinitive or active participle:

وَلَنَا الْأَمَلُ أَنْ —

And we hope that....  
Djir. tar. 10, 28

A noun clause following a verb or following a verbal noun that is usually found with a preposition is also to be considered in the function of an accusative after the ellipsis of the preposition (see Vol. III, p. 146):

كَانَ وَائِقًا أَنْ —

He was sure that....  
Hus. ayy. I, 7, 4

أَنَا مُسْتَقِينٌ أَنْ —

I am sure that....  
Raf. wah. I, 88, 10

يَسْتَحْيِ أَنْ يَسْأَلَ عَنْهُ

He was ashamed to ask about it.  
Hus. (Zy.) 25, 9

وَلَكِنَّهُ عَاجِزٌ كُلُّ الْعَجْزِ أَنْ —

Though he was absolutely unable to....  
Hus. ayy. I, 16, 16

اللَّهُ سَعْدُورٌ أَنْ —

God is responsible for....  
Mah. qah. 40, 21

مَنْ نَشَأَ عَلَىٰ بَرٍّ أَبَوَيْهِ كَانَ  
خَلِيقًا — He who increases in piety  
toward his parents is apt  
to.... Raf. wah. III,12,13

e) a second accusative

after verbs that are usually found with two accusative objects or one accusative object and a prepositional phrase after the ellipsis of the preposition (see Vol. III, p. 146):

مَا مَنَعَهُمْ أَنْ يَتَابِعُوا مُحَمَّدًا؟ What prevented them from  
following Muhammed?  
Hai. sir. 173,18

مَا يَمْنَعُكَ أَنْ تَتَزَوَّجَ؟ What prevents you from  
getting married?  
Hai. sir. 122,7

أَمَرَ أَصْحَابَهُ أَنْ يَلْحَقُوا الْأَنْصَارَ  
بِثَرِبَ He ordered his companions  
to join the Ansar in  
Yathrib. Hai. sir. 208,3  
أَسْأَلُ اللَّهَ أَنْ — I ask God to....  
Raf. wah. I,5,6

Here we should mention the frequent cases in which the subject of the noun clause is brought forward to the main clause to take on the function of an accusative object; cf. the English: "He asks that I go" and "He asks me to go."

أَتُرِيدِينَ النَّاسَ عَلَىٰ أَنْ — Do you want people to...?  
Mah. zuq. 27,2

وَمَاذَا تُرِيدُنِي أَنْ أَفْعَلَ؟ What do you want me to do?  
Mah. zuq. 46,2

A noun clause after the elliptical interjectional expression could also be considered as a second accusative:

إِيَّاكَ أَنْ يُوسَّسَ لَهُ بِشَيْءٍ! Beware lest you tempt him  
in any way!  
Hak. (Br.) 41,10

إِيَّاكَ أَنْ تَلْمِسَنِي ... إِيَّاكَ أَنْ  
تَعْتَرِضَ سَبِيلِي ... Beware of touching me,  
beware of blocking my  
way. Mah. qah. 77,1

f) an adverbial accusative

A noun clause may also assume a function equivalent to a noun in the adverbial accusative:

مَا أَجْمَلَ أَنْ تَمُضِيَ الْحَيَاةَ كُلَّهَا  
مَا بَيْنَ بَرْوكْسَلْ وَكَارِيسْ وَفِيِينَا  
How nice to spend one's  
whole life between Brussels,  
Paris, and Vienna!  
Mah. qah. 72,19

After the copulative verbs *كَانَ* and *لَيْسَ*, a noun clause frequently follows in the function of a predicative adverbial accusative (see Vol. I, § 7):

لَيْسَ مَرَادُنَا أَنْ نَقُولَ — It is not my intention to  
say.... Q. Amin (Zy.) 5,3

كَانَ أَحَبَّ شَيْءٍ إِلَيْهِ أَنْ يَسْمَعَ  
إِنْشَادَ الشَّاعِرِ — What he liked most was to  
listen to the poet reciting.  
Hus. ayy. I, 24, 11

and also after the verb *لَبِثَ*, "to remain":

لِذَلِكَ مَا لَبِثَ بَنُو أُمَيَّةَ أَنْ — For this [reason] it did  
not take long for the  
Umayyads to....  
Hai. sir. 114,10

وَلَكِنْ لَمْ تَلَبَثْ هَذِهِ الْحَفِظَةُ أَنْ  
أَسْتَحَالَتْ إِلَى حُزْنٍ صَامِتٍ عَمِيقٍ — But very soon this resent-  
ment became a silent,  
deep sadness.  
Hus. ayy. I, 18, 7

g) a genitive

In a genitive construction, a noun clause may only be used in place of the noun in the genitive case, never in the function of a noun in the construct state. However, a noun clause may be governed by a noun or its equivalent in the *status constructus*, which therefore never takes the definite article. The construction always has a definite meaning.

مِنْ يَوْمِ أَنْ سَافَرَ مَلِكَ الْمَدِينَةِ

Ever since the time when the king of the city departed. Hak. sheh. 132,2

إِنْتَظَرْتُ عَلَى أَمَلٍ أَنْ تَظْفِرَ  
بِهَذِهِ السَّعَادَةِ

She waited, hoping that she would achieve this great happiness. Mah. zuq. 178,14

أَلَمْ تَعُدْ بِكَ رَغْبَةً أَنْ تَعْرِفَ مَنْ  
أَنَا؟

Hasn't your longing to know who I am brought you back [to me]? Hak. sheh. 150,2

إِنْطَلَقَ الْقَوْمُ مُسْرِعِينَ مِنْ خَوْفِ  
أَنْ يَقْلَتَ أَبُو سَفْيَانَ مِنْهُمْ

The people departed hurriedly fearing that Abu Sufyan would slip away from them. Hai. sir. 258,4

وَقَتَ أَنْ كُنْتُ بِمِثْلِكَ

When I was as you [are]. Hak. sheh. 138,6

لَا مِنْ أَجْلِ أَنَّهُ ابْنُ الْمَدِيرِ  
فَحَسَبَ وَلَكِنْ مِنْ أَجْلِ أَنْ —

Not only because he was the director's son but also because.... Raf. wah. I,82,17

فِي حِينِ أَنَّنَا لَا نَزَالُ نَحْلُمُ  
أَحْلَامَ الْكَاسِي

while we are still dreaming of the past. Zur. (Zy.) 18,11

وَكَانَ قَدْ صَبَّ مَعَ الْحَلِيبِ فِي  
فَنَاجِمِينَ كَبِيرَةٍ بَدَلُ أَنْ يَكُونَ صِرْفًا  
فِي الْأَقْدَاحِ  
حَذَرُ أَنْ يَكُونَ مُحَمَّدٌ قَدْ سَبَقَهُ  
إِلَى الطَّرِيقِ

It had been poured with milk into large cups instead of pure in glasses. Raih. mul. 55,3  
for precaution [in case] that Mohammed had preceded them. Hai. sir. 260,4

The following formular constructions are of special interest:

غَيْرَ أَنْ, "except that...", whose syntactical function has faded to the point that it usually intro-



duces a statement (which is no longer subordinated) in adversative relationship to a preceding one to mean "however," "but," "though":

أَنَا لَا أَذَرِي — غَيْرَ أَنِّي أَرَى  
مِنَ الضَّرُورِي — I do not think...; but I  
do think it necessary  
to....  
Hus. (Br.II) 78,24

لَهُمْ أَنْ يَحَافِظُوا — غَيْرَ أَنْ  
عَلَيْهِمْ أَنْ يَسْلِمُوا فِي الْوَقْتِ نَفْسِهِ  
بِضَرُورَةِ السَّغْيِ إِلَى الْوَحْدَةِ الْعَرَبِيَّةِ  
They may preserve....; but  
they must, at the same  
time, admit the necessity  
of striving for Arabic  
unity. Hus. (Br.II) 79,1

غَيْرَ أَنَّهُ بَدَلًا مِنْ أَنْ — But he, instead of....  
Maz. (Zy.) 1,27

غَيْرَ أَنَّهُ فِي وَسْعِي أَنْ آتِيكَ  
بِشُهُودٍ — But I can bring you some  
witnesses....  
S. Din (Br.) 60,15

غَيْرَ أَنِّي عِنْدَ خُرُوجِي تَذَكَّرْتُ أَنَّ — But, going out, I remembered  
that.... Hak. ahl. 62,5

مِنْ غَيْرِ أَنْ, "without," however, does not express  
a statement of fact; therefore, the noun clause is  
introduced by أَنْ :

دَخَلَ الْبَيْتَ تَوًّا مِنْ غَيْرِ أَنْ  
يَصَافِحَنِي He came into the house im-  
mediately without shaking  
hands. Nu'. liq. 23,3

أَتَيْتُ جَعَلْتُ عُنْوَانَ بَعْثِي "حَيَاةَ  
مُحَمَّدٍ" مِنْ غَيْرِ أَنْ أُرْدِفَ هَذَا  
الْعُنْوَانَ بِالصَّلَاةِ وَالسَّلَامِ عَلَى  
رَسُولِ اللَّهِ that I gave the name  
Mohammed's Life to my study  
without adding to this  
title the eulogy of God's  
Prophet.  
Hai. sir. 45,17

## § 221 THE SYNDETICAL NOUN CLAUSE AFTER A PREPOSITION

Under this heading, we are actually dealing with  
noun clauses in the genitive case, since the noun

clause is used in place of the noun in the genitive governed by a preposition.

We may draw a distinction between the cases in which the preposition depends directly upon a verb or a verbal noun (either an infinitive or verbal adjective) and the very frequent instances in which linguistic intuition emphasizes the unity between the preposition and the following particle with the definite tendency to make up new conjunctive phrases.

In the first category, the noun clause remains in its dependent position, governed by the verb or verbal noun upon which it depends with respect to function and meaning. In this category, the noun clause always follows, usually directly, after the verb or verbal noun requiring the use of the preposition. The use of either *أَنَّ* or *أَنْ* will be determined by the meaning of the expression, as we have stated immediately above; i.e., *أَنَّ* for statement of fact only, *أَنْ* for any other cases or when the emphasis should be directed toward the action and not toward a nominal part of the noun clause unless required by the grammatical structure of the statement following:

إِنَّمَا كَانَتْ نَفْسُ مُحَمَّدٍ شَفُوفَةً  
بِأَنْ تَرَى وَأَنْ تَسْمَعَ وَأَنْ تَعْرِفَ

Mohammed's spirit longed to see, to hear, and to know. Hai. sir. 118,8

(حَتَّى) أَضْطُرَّ آخِرُ الْأَمْرِ إِلَى  
أَنْ يَتَشَاوَرَ مَعَ خُلَصَائِهِ مَاذَا يَصْنَعُ

He was compelled at the end to consult with his loyal comrades about what to do. Hai. sir. 360,8

كُلُّ هَذَا وَأَمْثَالُهُ يَدُلُّنَا عَلَى  
أَنْ —

All this and similar things prove to us that.... Amin duh. I,163,7

ثُمَّ تَنَبَّهَتْ إِلَى أَنَّهَا لَمْ تَتَمَّ  
تَشْطِيطَ شَعْرِهَا

Then she realized that she was not through with combing her hair. Mah. zuq. 178,5

فَالْخَيْرُ فِي أَنْ يَتْلِكَ عَلَى نَفْسِهِ  
أَمْرَهَا

So it would be best for him to control himself. Hus. ayy. II,33,20

هَذِهِ الْحَادِثَةُ أَعَانَتْهُ عَلَى أَنْ يَفْهَمَ  
حَقًّا مَا يَتَحَدَّثُ بِهِ الرَّوَاةُ عَنْ أَبِي  
الْعَلَاءِ مِنْ أَنَّهُ أَكَلَ ذَاتَ يَوْمٍ  
رُبْسًا —

This event helped him to really understand what the narrators said about Abu l-Ala, that he once ate molasses....  
Hus. ayy. I, 20, 11

قَرَّرَ عَزْمَهُ فِي الْحَالِ عَلَى أَنْ يَبْقَى  
مَعَهُمَا

He decided immediately to remain with the two.  
Mah. qah. 57, 14

In the second category, the preposition has lost its attachment to any specific part of the main clause and, together with the particle introducing the subordinate, has become an interjectional phrase. As such, it is often used preceding the main clause.

The use of either *أَنَّ* or *أَنْ* will also be determined by the meaning of the construction, as we have stated in the introduction above.

Such cases are so numerous that we can only present the most characteristic groups.

#### A Adversative Compounds

a) *وَمَعَ أَنَّ* introducing a subordinate noun clause; the main clause, when following the subordinate clause, is usually preceded by the conjunction *فَ*:

وَمَعَ أَنَّ الصَّبِيَّ كَانَ كَلِيفًا بِإِحْصَاءِ  
الدَّرَجِ فَقَدْ أَقَامَ مَا شَاءَ اللَّهُ  
لَهُ أَنْ يُقِيمَ —

Although the boy was very fond of counting the steps of a stairway..., he remained God knows how long.... Hus. ayy. II, 5, 9

وَمَعَ أَنَّ ثَوَيْبَةَ لَمْ تَرْضِعْهُ إِلَّا أَيَّامًا  
فَقَدْ ظَلَّ يَحْفَظُ لَهَا خَيْرَ الْوَدِّ

Although Thuwaiba only nursed him a few days, he always retained great affection for her.  
Hai. sir. 109, 20

وَأَلَّا يَقْتُلُوا بَعْضَ رِجَالٍ مِنْ  
سَادَاتِ قُرَيْشٍ مَعَ أَنَّهُمْ أَشْتَرَكُوا  
فِي قِتَالِ الْمُسْلِمِينَ

nor to kill any of the Koreish chiefs, although they had participated in the fight against the Moslems. Hai. sir. 267, 8

تَجَاهَلَ السُّلْطَانُ مَعَ أَنَّ دُخَانَ  
الْفَلَائِينَ أَكْرَهُ شَيْءٍ لَدَيْهِ

The Sultan pretended not to notice it, although the smoke of pipes was what he detested most.  
Raih. mul. 80,23

b) عَلَى أَنَّ, however, introduces a coordinated adversative construction, generally as an opposition to a preceding situation:

عَلَى أَنَّ حَيَاتَهُ تَغَيَّرَتْ بَعْضَ الشَّيْءِ

His life, however, did change somewhat.  
Hus. ayy. I, 67,7

عَلَى أَنَّهُ لَيْسَ مِنْ وَاجِبِنَا أَنْ —

But it is not necessary for us to....  
Khalid (Br.II) 95,26

عَلَى أَنَّ مُحَمَّدًا لَمْ يَنْتَظِرْ رَسُولَيْهِ  
إِلَى الْحَوْرَاءِ

But Mohammed did not wait for the return of his two emissaries to al-Haura.  
Hai. sir. 255,23

عَلَى أَنَّ لِكُلِّ شَيْءٍ حَدًّا

But everything has its limits.  
Hus. ayy. I, 75,7

Note the following:

أَمَرَ أَصْحَابَهُ أَنْ يَلْحَقُوا بِالْأَنْصَارِ  
بِثَرِبَ عَلَى أَنْ يَتْرَكُوا مَكَّةَ مُتَفَرِّقِينَ

He ordered his companions to join the Ansar in Yathrib but to leave Mecca separately. Hai. sir. 208,3

Note also that عَلَى أَنَّ may introduce a condition and follow the statement it affects:

أَقَرَّهُ النَّبِيُّ فِي إِمَارَتِهِ عَلَى أَنْ يَجْمَعَ  
الْعَشَرَ مِنْ أَهْلِ بِلَادِهِ لِيُؤَدَّ إِلَى  
جَبَاةِ الرَّسُولِ

The Prophet confirmed [him in] his rank with the condition that he gather the tithe from the people of his land to give it to the Messenger's tax collectors.  
Hai. sir. 485,13

c) عَلَى أَنَّهُ also with adversative meaning:

بَيِّدَاتِي كُنْتُ شَاكِرًا لِلشَّيْخِ طَبِيبِهِ

However, I was thankful to the sheikh for his kindness.

Raih. (Zy.) 23,36

بَيِّدَ أَتْنَهَا لَمْ تُثِرْ شَهْوَتَهُ كَمَا  
فَعَلَتْ إِحْسَانُ

But she did not excite his passion as Ihsan did.

Mah. qah. 57,11

بَيِّدَ أَنَّهُ أَدْرَكَ أَنَّهُ لَمْ يَعْدَمِنْ  
الْمُمْكِنِ اسْتِجْدَاءِ حَمْدِيسَ بِكَ —

But he realized that it would no longer be possible to beg Hamdis

Bey.... Mah. qah. 65,1

#### B Temporal Compounds

##### a) بَعْدَ أَنْ , "after"

قَالَ لَهَا بَعْدَ أَنْ رَفَعَ عَيْنَيْهِ  
نَحْوَ السَّمَاءِ —

After raising his eyes to the heavens, he answered her.... Gibr. I,97,5

لِذَلِكَ أَنْصَرَفَ جَمَاعَةٌ مِنْ هَؤُلَاءِ عَنْ  
مَتَابَعَةِ مُحَمَّدٍ بَعْدَ أَنْ اتَّبَعُوهُ  
زَمَنًا طَوِيلًا

For this reason, some of them abandoned Mohammed, after having followed him a long time.

Hai. sir. 197,9

ثَنَيْتَ الْخَطِيئَةَ إِلَى الْبَيْتِ —  
بَعْدَ أَنْ أَخَذْتُ نَصِيْبِي مِنْ شَرَابِ  
وَسَمَاعِ

I returned home..., after drinking and listening to music.

Maz. (Zy.) 10,2

إِذَا بَعْدَ أَنْ خَرَجْنَا مِنْ مِيَاهِ  
الْمَنَامَةِ مَسَاءً سَكَتَ الرِّيحُ

Then, after we had left al-Manama's waters in the afternoon, the wind subsided. Raih. mul. 226,9

##### b) قَبْلَ أَنْ , "before"

جَرَى كُلُّ ذَلِكَ قَبْلَ أَنْ  
تَسْتَقِظَ حَيَاتِي مِنْ سَبَاتِ  
الْحَدَاثَةِ الْعَمِيقِ

All this happened before my life had awakened from the deep lethargy of childhood.

Gibr. I,113,15

أَنْ يَخِيطَ فِي الشَّوَارِعِ عَلَى غَيْرِ هَدًى  
قَبْلَ أَنْ يَعُودَ إِلَى الْبَيْتِ

to wander through the streets before going back home. Mah. qah. 149,20

أَنَا آتِيكَ بِهِ قَبْلَ أَنْ يَرْتَدَّ  
إِلَيْكَ طَرْفُكَ

I'll bring it to you in the twinkling of an eye. Hak. sul. 63,13

لَنْ تَذْهَبَ قَبْلَ أَنْ تَقُولَ لِي ...

You shall not go before telling me.... Hak. ahl. 102,7

## C Comparative Compounds

a) كَانَ is used to introduce a comparison which is contrary to fact, "as if," "as though":

مَضَى فِي عَزْفِهِ وَالنَّاسُ كَأَنَّهُمْ فِي  
حَضْرَةِ سَاحِرٍ عَظِيمٍ

He went on playing while the audience [reacted] as if in the presence of a great magician. Nu'. liq. 30,1

أَنَّ كُلَّ مَنْ نَامَ فِي هَذَا الْكَهْفِ  
يَصْحُو وَكَأَنَّ أَعْضَاءَهُ مَكْسُورَةٌ

that everybody who sleeps in this cave awakens [feeling] as though their bones were broken. Hak. ahl. 23,7

لَكَأَنَّكَ تَجْهَلُ بِهِاءَ

as if you did not know how Baha is. Nu'. liq. 33,3

هُوَ يَذْكُرُ هَذَا السِّجَاجَ كَأَنَّهُ  
رَأَاهُ أَمْسَ

He remembers the fence as though he had seen it yesterday. Hus. ayy. I,4,5

At times, كَانَ introduces a main clause intended as uncertain but likely to have happened:

اِحْتَفَظَ الْخَادِمُ لِسَيِّدِهِ بِشَيْءٍ مِنَ  
الْبَطِيخِ وَضَعَهُ فِي التَّنْفِقِ وَكَأَنَّهُ لَمْ  
يَضَعْهُ فِي الْمَكَانِ الَّذِي تَعُودُ أَنْ  
يَضَعُ فِيهِ طَعَامَ الشَّيْخِ — وَكَرِهَ  
الشَّيْخُ أَنْ يَسْأَلَ — فُ —  
The servant reserved for  
his master a piece of the  
watermelon which he put  
in the cellar. But it  
seemed as if he did not  
put it where he customarily  
placed the sheikh's food...  
and the sheikh hated to  
ask...thus....  
Hus. ayy. I, 21, 10

(For <sup>كان</sup> see Vol. II, § 126 ; and on the use  
of <sup>كاننا</sup> see Vol. III, p. 240f.)

b) <sup>كان</sup> with the same meaning of a comparison  
contrary to fact:

كَأَنَّ لَمْ يَمُضِ بَيْنَهَا وَبَيْنَهُ مِنْ  
الْوَقْتِ شَيْءٌ  
as though time had not  
passed since then.  
Hus. ayy. I, 15, 7

كَأَنَّ لَيْسَ فِي الدُّنْيَا إِلَّا أَشْيَاؤُهَا  
as though there were  
nothing in the world  
but its own prosperity.  
Raf. wah. I, 33, 5

كَأَنَّ لَمْ يَرَّ بِهَا إِلَّا يَوْمٌ وَاحِدٌ  
as if but just a day had  
passed. Manf. sha'. 255, 6

#### D Other Prepositional Compounds

a) <sup>لأن</sup> , "because," "for":

لَأَنَّهَا لَا تَعِيشُ بِنَفْسِهَا  
وَلِنَفْسِهَا  
for she does not live  
through herself or for  
herself.  
Q. Amin (Zy.) 5, 30

لَأَنَّهُمْ يَنَامُونَ مَعَ الْبَهَائِمِ فِي  
حُجْرَةٍ وَاحِدَةٍ؟  
because they sleep to-  
gether with animals in  
only one room?  
Hak. (Zy.) 11, 18

b) <sup>لأن</sup> , "in order to":

مَحَمَّدٌ — أَعَدَّ لِأَنْ يَحْمِلَ الرِّسَالَةَ  
لِلْعَالَمِ أَجْمَعِ

Mohammed...had been prepared in order to bring the Message to the entire world. Hai. sir. ط, 12

c) دُونَ أَنْ, "without":

خَرَجَ سَالِمًا كَمَا دَخَلَ دُونَ أَنْ  
يَشْعُرَ بِالزَّمَنِ

He came out as healthy as when he had entered, without noticing the [passing of] time. Hak. ahl. 37,1

ثُمَّ قَالَتْ لَهَا دُونَ أَنْ تُحَوِّلَ  
عَنْهَا عَيْنَيْهَا —

Then she said to her without taking her eyes from her.... Mah. zuq. 174,12

#### § 222 ELLIPSIS OF THE PREPOSITION

Particularly common constructions consisting of a preposition governing a noun clause are frequently used with the ellipsis of the preposition involved (see Vol. II, § 91). In such cases, without changing the meaning of the construction, the noun clause will modify its syntactical relationship to the noun or verb governing it. Within this new relationship, the noun clause may assume the syntactical function of either

a) a nominative. (subject or predicate in a nominal sentence):

وَأَنَّهُ لَا بُدَّ أَنْ يَكُونَ سَعِيدًا  
بِهَذَا الْوَحْدِ

and that he must be happy with this conversation. Manf. mag. 13,19

لَا بُدَّ أَنْ يَكُونَ ابْنُ أَحَدٍ  
رَاجَاوَاتِ الْهِنْدِ

He must be the son of an Indian Rajah. Ayy. (Br.) 27,21

كَانَ لَا بُدَّ أَنْ يَتَكَلَّمَ

He must speak. Mah. qah. 146,21

لَا رَيْبَ إِذَا أَنْ —

Then there is no doubt that.... Hai. sir. 168,2



لَا شَكَّ أَنَّ — There is no doubt about....  
 Mah. qah. 80,2;  
 Hak. ahl. 44,16

b) a genitive (with the preceding noun thus necessarily in the construct state):

اللَّهُ مَسْئُولٌ أَنْ — God is responsible to....  
 Mah. qah. 40,21

لَسْتُ فِي حَاجَةٍ أَنْ — I don't need to....  
 Hak. sul. 79,14

c) an accusative (object of a verb or verbal noun):

وَلَكِنَّهُ عَاجِزٌ كُلُّ الْعَجِزِ أَنْ — But he was completely  
 unable to....  
 Hus. ayy. I,16,16

إِنَّهُمْ لَأَهْلٌ أَنْ — They indeed deserve to....  
 Hai. sir. 359,11

كَانَ وَاثِقًا أَنَّهُ — He was sure that....  
 Hus. ayy. I,8,14

شَعَرْتُ أَنَّ فِي حَدِيثِهِ رُوحًا  
 جَدِيدَةً — She felt that there was  
 a new spirit in his con-  
 versation.  
 Manf. sha'. 169,13

هَذَا قَدْ أَوْشَكَ أَنْ يَنْسَاهُمْ النَّاسُ  
 فِي عَصْرِنَا هَذَا — There, people have almost  
 forgotten them in our day.  
 Hak. ahl. 48,16

(هُوَ) مُشْفِقٌ — أَنْ يُنْبِئَهُ أَخَاهُ — He was afraid...to awaken  
 his brother.  
 Hus. ayy. II,43,2

كَانَ مُقْتَنِعًا أَنَّ أَبَاهُ مُعَقِّقٌ — He was convinced that his  
 father was right.  
 Hus. ayy. I,44,3

حَتَّى أَوْشَكَ اللَّيْلُ أَنْ يَنْتَصِفَ — until it was almost mid-  
 night. Mah. qah. 149,19

d) or an accusative after a copulative verb:

— لَيْسَ شَكُّ أَنْ — There is no doubt that....  
Musa adab. 111,5

## § 223 ADJECTIVAL CLAUSES

Adjectival clauses, as their name indicates, are those clauses which function in a compound in the same manner as adjectives in an expanded sentence, thus modifying a substantive.

This modification has, as does that of adjectives (see Vol. II, § 62), two different purposes, either that of determining the substantive which the relative clause modifies —thus restricting its meaning as intended by the speaker— or simply that of qualifying the meaning by adding to the substantive new aspects which are actually not necessary to the correct understanding of the statement expressed in the main clause; hence their division into restrictive and nonrestrictive.

A relative clause is always a complete sentence, but not an independent one in the sense that it must include the noun to which it refers, since it is essential for a relative statement to be a modification of a substantive. This latter is called "the antecedent"; its presence in the relative clause is usually taken up by a personal pronoun, which Arab grammarians have named *الضَّمِيرُ الْعَائِدُ*, "the resumptive pronoun."

From the structural point of view, Arabic only makes a distinction between syndetrical and asyndetrical adjectival clauses. Of them, only the syndetrical offer a relative adjective as exponent of their syntactical nature, while the asyndetrical have no specific or distinctive feature.

The basic difference between syndetrical and asyndetrical relative clauses is determined by the nature of the relative adjective. Originally a demonstrative, it still has in common with other demonstratives the fact that it can only modify nouns already determined, either by the definite article or by a genitive.

The relative adjective was originally and still is attached to the substantival antecedent, that is to say, it belongs structurally in the main clause,

not in the relative clause; thus its presence in the construction does not make unnecessary the use of the resumptive pronoun.

Arab grammarians have expressed the real nature of the construction only in the cases of relative clauses used asyndetically, which they call *صفة*, "qualification" (compare with *اسم صفة*, "adjective"); while those in syndetical construction are known as *صلة*, "tie." This name, however, merely points out the presence of a relative adjective, "a tie," without giving any information about the nature of the construction.

It is customary to emphasize the parallelism of syndetical/asyndetical as equivalent to a construction with a defined/undefined substantive. This, however, does not reflect the conditions under which the relative clause is used.

As we have already mentioned, the presence of the relative adjective *صلة*, the "tie," is based upon the grammatical determination of the substantive that functions as an antecedent, which the relative clause modifies and to which it refers. Hence, when this determination is missing, with a resulting grammatically undefined substantive antecedent, no relative adjective is used to connect the clause with its antecedent.

However, the actual function of this adjective in the main clause is to emphasize the grammatical determination of the noun which it modifies, not the statement of this determination in relation to the clause. It is for this reason that we can understand the fact that, while an undefined noun never takes a syndetical relative qualification, a defined one may, and frequently does, take a relative clause asyndetically.

## § 224 THE ASYNDETICAL RELATIVE CLAUSE

A The relative clause is used without a connecting particle

a) in the previously mentioned cases of grammatical indetermination of the substantive antecedent:

هَذِهِ رِسَالَةٌ حَمَلْنِيهَا لِيُونَارْدُو

This is a letter Leonardo gave me. Nu'. liq. 85,5

هَذَا شَرَفٌ عَظِيمٌ مَا كُنْتُ أَحْلَمُ بِهِ يَوْمًا

This is a great honor I had never dreamed of. Hak. ahl. 66,1

أَشَارَ لَهَا إِلَى كُرْسِيِّ قَدْ أَعَدَّ لَهَا

He indicated to her to be seated on a chair he had prepared for her. Manf. sha'. 92,13

بَيْنَ هَذِهِ الْأَخْبَارِ خَبَرٌ مَلَأَ الصَّبِيَّ إِعْجَابًا

In this news there was something that greatly surprised the boy. Hus. ayy. I,101,5

كَانَ لَهُ قَرِيبٌ صَبِيٌّ حِثْلُهُ يَرِافِقُهُ إِلَى الْكُتَّابِ

He had a relative, a boy of his age, who accompanied him to school. Hus. ayy. I,102,3

تَعَلَّمَ الصَّحُفِيُّونَ لُغَةً جَدِيدَةً يَكْتُبُونَ بِهَا

Journalists have learned a new language in which they write. Musa (Zy.) 2,31

b) after an indefinite genitive construction (see Vol. II, § 72):

كَأَشِعَّةٍ قَمَرٍ دَخَلَتْ مِنَ النَّافِذَةِ

as a moonbeam entered through the window. Gibr. II,26,1

فَلْيَقْطَعَنَّ أَيْدِي رِجَالٍ وَأَرْجُلَهُمْ زَعَمُوا أَنَّهُ مَاتَ

Let the hands and feet of those who say he has died be cut off. Hai. sir. 505,20

(كَانَ الْعَامُ) عَامَ جَدَبٍ عَانَتْ الْأُسْرَةُ فِيهِ أَسْبَابَ الْعُسْرَةِ وَالْضِّيقِ

It was a year of drought in which the family suffered destitution and poverty. Tai. (Br.) 123,24

كُلُّ شَيْءٍ أَرَاهُ حَوْلِي

everything I saw around me. Tai. (Zy.) 9,45

كُلَّ كَلِمَةٍ كَتَبَهَا every word he wrote.  
Musa adab. 176,16

Thus, after an elative followed by an indefinite genitive, although the meaning is always defined as "the most...", "the greatest...", the relative clause will refer to the indefinite genitive; thus the construction will be asyndetical:

قَدْ كَانَتْ عِنْدَهَا أَنْفَسَ هَدِيَّةٍ  
جَاءَتْهَا فِي ذَلِكَ النَّهَارِ  
For her it was the loveliest  
gift she received that day.  
Nu'. liq. 29,3

إِنَّكَ أَفْضَلُ مُبَارِزٍ رَأَيْتُ فِي حَيَاتِي !  
You are indeed the best  
duelist I have ever seen.  
Manf. sha'. 58,14

أَمَّا صُورَتُهُ فَبِهِيْ أَجْمَلَ صُورَةٍ خَلَقَهَا  
اللَّهُ فِي الْعَالَمِ  
His appearance was the  
most handsome one God has  
ever created on earth.  
Manf. sha'. 101,6

رَأَى النَّاسُ أَجْمَلَ فَتَاةٍ رَأَوْهَا فِي  
حَيَاتِهِمْ  
The people saw the most  
beautiful girl they had  
ever seen.  
Manf. mag. 181,3

هَذَا أَوَّلُ كِتَابٍ جَاءَنِي مِنْ—  
This is the first letter  
I received from....  
Raih. mul. 31,4

c) after a noun which is defined as a species —and therefore only generally (see Vol. II, § 52)— when followed by a nonrestrictive relative clause; for example, after a comparison:

لَإِنَّ النَّفْسَ كَالزَّهْرَةِ تَضُمُّ أَوَّاقَهَا  
أَمَامَ الظُّلْمَةِ  
for the soul is like a  
flower, that folds its  
petals against darkness.  
Gibr. I, 138,3

أَمَّا الْحَقِيقَةُ فَهِيَ كَالنَّجْمِ لَا تَبْدُو  
إِلَّا مِنْ رَأَى ظُلْمَةَ اللَّيْلِ  
Truth is like the stars,  
which do not appear but  
through the darkness of  
night. Gibr. I, 164,19

السَّمَكُ يَشْتَرَى مَقْلِيًّا مِنَ الدَّكَانِ fish bought from the store, [already] baked.  
Amin (Zy.) 26,44

كَالْمَاءِ يَتَّخِذُ شَكْلَ الْإِنَاءِ as water, that [always] assumes the form of its container.  
Hak. sheh. 149,2

*Note* that after a comparison, when the noun is followed by a restrictive relative clause, the clause is used syndetically:

كَالْكَلْبِ الَّذِي يَتَّبِعُ سَيِّدَهُ إِلَى الصَّيْدِ like a dog following his master to the chase.  
Hak. yaum. 10,10

أَنْ أَكُونَ كَالْتَّلْعَلِ الَّذِي حَاوَلَ أَنْ يُصِيبَ الْعَنْبَ to be like the fox which tried to reach the grapes.  
Hus. (Br.) 94,2

d) rather frequently in modern Arabic after a definite noun, especially when the relative clause is nonrestrictive<sup>16</sup>:

مَا هِيَ الْمَرَّةُ الْأُولَى أَصَافِحُكَ فِيهَا That is not the first time we have shaken hands.  
Nu'. liq. 32,10

أَنَّهُ مَوْضِعُهُ مِنَ الْحَيَاةِ الْاجْتِمَاعِيَةِ that it is his place in social life, where he does as he pleases.  
Raf. wah. III,6,10

النَّاسُ الْآنَ كَالْأَطْفَالِ غَابَتْ أُمُّهُمْ Mankind today is like a child whose mother is absent.  
Raf. wah. III,15,20

هَؤُلَاءِ وَلَا رَيْبَ رِجَالٍ دَقِيَانُوسَ Undoubtedly these are Dacianus' people who have come searching for us.  
Hak. ahl. 38,13

16. Compare with the cases of descriptions using circumstantial clauses explained in Vol. III, p. 247f.

لَيْسَ فِيهِ إِلَّا ظِلُّ الْأَعَجِّ يَلْقِيهِ  
الْمِصْبَاحُ الْكَهْرِبَائِيُّ

There was nothing there but the lame boy's shadow, which the electric lamp projected.

'Aww. (Br.) 21,13

كَصَحَرَاءِ إِفْرِيقِيَّةِ الْكُبْرَى لَا يُقِيمُ  
بِهَا مُقِيمٌ

as the great African deserts in which no one lives. Hai. sir. 72,3

جُعِلَ عَدَدُ أَعْضَائِهِ الْعَالَمِينَ  
عِشْرِينَ يُخْتَارُونَ مِنْ غَيْرِ تَقْوِيمٍ  
بِالْجِنْسِيَّةِ مِنْ بَيْنِ —

The number of its members was set at twenty, who were elected regardless of nationality from among....

Khalid (Br.II) 7,1

كَانَ أَطِبَّاءٌ وَوَسَلُ مَصْلَحَةِ الصِّحَّةِ  
قَدَرِ أَنْبَثُوا فِي الْأَرْضِ وَمَعَهُمْ  
أَدَوَاتُهُمْ وَخِيَامُهُمْ يَحْجِزُونَ فِيهَا  
الْعَرَضَى

The doctors and the representatives of the Health Office had scattered throughout the country, carrying with them their instruments and their tents in which they isolated the ill.

Hus. ayy. I,127,2

e) frequently with temporal expressions, especially when such words as "week," "month," "year," and the like are used as relative clauses in asyndetical construction. The relative clause in these cases is represented only by a verb: "after so many years (which had) passed":

بَعْدَ أَجْيَالٍ مَضَتْ عَلَى مَوْتِ الْأَمِيرِ

after generations had passed since the death of the Emir.

Nu'. liq. 61,2

قَدْ كَانَ ذَلِكَ لِعِشْرِينَ سَنَةً  
خَلَّتْ فِي مَوْتِ الْحَسَنِ

That happened twenty years after Hasan's death. Raf. wah. I,261,4

مُنْذُ أَكْثَرَ مِنْ سِتَّةِ آلَافِ سَنَةٍ مَضَتْ

after more than six thousand years had passed. Hai. sir. 66,8

الطَّعَامَ الَّذِي دَاوَمَ عَلَى تَنَاوُلِهِ  
لثَلَاثَةِ أَسَابِيعَ مَضَتْ  
the food which he had  
been eating for the past  
three weeks.  
Mah. qah. 62,18

أَلَمْ أُنْذِرْكَ مِنْ أَسْبُوعٍ مَضَى ؟  
Didn't I warn you last  
week? Mah. zuq. 10,11

إِلَى قَرْنٍ مَضَى —  
Until a century ago....  
Hai. sir. 42,8

مَدَى أَرْبَعَةَ عَشَرَ قَرْنًا مَضَتْ  
لَا تَنْقَطِعُ  
during the past fourteen  
centuries without inter-  
ruption.  
Hai. sir. 424,7

Note the verbal agreement in the following:

أَلَسْتُ شَاعِرَهَا لِعِشْرِينَ عَامًا  
خَلَوْنَ ؟ !  
Haven't I been poet there  
for the past twenty years?  
Mah. zuq. 10,19

لِثَمَانٍ خَلَوْنَ مِنْ شَهْرِ رَمَضَانَ  
on the eighth day of the  
month of Ramadan.  
Hai. sir. 257,17

B An asyndetical relative clause may be equivalent to a final clause (compare the Spanish *envié quien dijera* and the Latin *missi qui diceret*)<sup>17</sup>

a) often after a grammatically undefined noun:

بَحَثَ سَعْدٌ عَنْ مَنْزِلٍ يَسْتَأْجِرُهُ  
Sa'd searched for a house  
to rent.  
'Aqq. (Zy.) 15,7

أَفْتِشُ عَنْ كَلِمَةٍ أَقُولُهَا  
I looked for a word to  
say. Nu'. liq. 25,12

مَا أَحْسَبُ لَكَ عَمَلًا يُسَارِعُ إِلَيْهِ  
I don't think you have  
anything to which you  
should hurry.  
Hak. sheh. 6,8

17. Most of the instances presented here are brought together by Arab grammarians under the heading *الْحَالُ الْمَقْدَرُ*, "the predestined circumstance"; see, e.g., Reck., *Synt. Verh.*, p. 450.



أَثَارَهُمْ لِلْبَحْثِ عَنْ رَجُلٍ كَبِيرٍ  
يَتَوَسَّلُ بَيْنَهُ وَبَيْنَ هَذَا الدَّكْتُورِ

He let them look for an influential man to mediate between him and this doctor. Ayy. (Br.) 32,6

أَرَادَ إِسْتِيفَانَ نَفْسَهُ عَلَى كَلِمَةٍ  
يَصِلُ بِهَا الْحَدِيثَ بَيْنَهُ وَبَيْنَهُ

Stephen tried [to find] words with which to establish some conversation with him.

Manf. mag. 11,13

b) but also after a defined noun:

لَدُنَا بِسَلَاخِنَا الْوَاضِي الْكَرِيمِ  
الْثَّرَثَةُ نَنْفِي بِهَا عَنْ نَفْسِنَا  
مَلَلًا إِلَى تَنْتَظَارٍ

We took refuge in this sharp and precious weapon of ours, chatter, to stave off the boredom of waiting. Tai. (Zy.) 9,6

#### § 225 THE RESUMPTIVE PERSONAL PRONOUN

A As we have mentioned above, the substantive antecedent of the relative clause is represented by a personal pronoun which assumes the proper syntactical function:

أَشْرَتُ بَعْضًا أَشْتَرَيْتَهَا خَصِيمًا  
لِهَذِهِ الْمُنَاسَبَةِ السَّعِيدَةِ

I made signs with a cane I had bought especially for this memorable event. Maz. (Zy.) 1,10

كَانَتْ شَرًّا لَا بَدَّ مِنْهُ

It was an unavoidable evil. Hus. ayy. I,93,16

وَلَكِنَّهَا سَسْؤُلِيَّةٌ عَظِيمَةٌ تَحْمِلُنِي  
إِيَّاهَا

But this is a heavy responsibility you place on me. Nu'. liq. 17,12

هُوَ عَدُوٌّ مَا مِنْ صَدَاقَتِهِ بَدٌّ

He is an enemy whose friendship is needed. Mah. qah. 62,22

وَجَدَا نَفْسَيْهِمَا فِي بَهْوٍ أَرْضُهُ  
مِنْ الصَّوَّانِ

They found themselves in a hall with a floor of granite. Mah. qah. 74,2

كُلَّ شَيْءٍ أَرَأَاهُ حَوْلِي      everything I saw around  
me. Tai. (Zy.) 9,45

كُلَّ كَلِمَةٍ كَتَبَهَا      every word he wrote.  
Musa adab. 176,16

B When the relative clause is nominal, the resumptive personal pronoun is usually brought forward closer to the substantive to which it refers, thus frequently inverting the normal word order:

قَالَتْ ذَلِكَ بِصَوْتٍ فِيهِ مِنَ الرِّقَّةِ  
وَاللَّطْفِ وَالْعَذْوَةِ      She said that in a pleasant  
and sweet voice with some  
feeling. Nu'. liq. 42,11

كَانَتْ لِأَهْلِ الْرَّيفِ — عَقْلِيَّةٌ  
خَاصَّةٌ فِيهَا سَدَاجَةٌ وَتَصَوُّفٌ  
وَعَقْلَةٌ      The rural people...had a  
special mentality in which  
there was a certain sim-  
plicity, mysticism and  
stupidity.  
Hus. ayy. I,96,9

هُوَ عَدُوٌّ مَا مِنْ صِدَاقَتِهِ هُدًى      He is an enemy whose  
friendship is needed.  
Mah. qah. 62,22

C Inversion does not occur, however, when the subject of the nominal sentence is a demonstrative or a personal pronoun:

طَبِيعِي فِي بِلَادٍ هَذِهِ حَالُهَا  
—      It is natural in a country  
which has such conditions  
that.... Hai. sir. 72,3

صَنَعَتْ فِي ذَلِكَ شِعْرًا هَذِهِ  
تَرْجَمَتُهُ      She composed a verse about  
this, which is translated  
as follows.  
Raf. wah. I,19,7

يَعْيَبُونَنَا بِأَمْرِ نَحْنُ مِنْهَا بِرَاءَةٌ      They condemn us for things  
with which we have nothing  
to do. Din (Br.) 64,4

فَقَرَسَ لَهُمْ أَدَبٌ هُوَ نَتِيجَةُ  
تَارِيخِهِمْ      for the Persians had a  
culture that was a product  
of their history.  
Amin duh. I,8,13

حَتَّى لَا يُضَيِّعَ وَقْتًا هُوَ فِي أَشَدِّ  
الْحَاجَةِ إِلَيْهِ

so that he would not waste  
time which he needed so  
much. Mah. qah. 40,23

nor does inversion occur when the subject is modified  
by "the لَا of general denial" (see Vol. II, § 108):

غَيْرَ أَنَّ هُنَا مَسْأَلَةً هَامَّةً لَا بَدَّ  
مِنْ الْإِشَارَةِ إِلَيْهَا

But here is an important  
matter that we must  
mention.  
Amin duh. I,249,13

إِذَا بَكَتْ بَكَتْ بِدُمُوعٍ لَا دِثْلَ لَهَا

If they cry, it is with  
weightless tears.  
Raf. wah. I,31,5

أَنَّ الْعِلْمَ بَحْرٌ لَا سَاحِلَ لَهُ

that knowledge is a sea  
without a shore.  
Hus. ayy. II,17,7

ذَلِكَ شَيْءٌ لَا شَأْنَ لِي بِهِ

That is something I do  
not care about.  
Hus. ayy. I,61,16

نَحْنُ أُسْرَةٌ لَا رَجُلَ لَهَا

We are a family without  
a man. Mah. qah. 178,2

nor is the inversion of word order found when the  
relative clause is a verbal sentence:

ثَلَاثَةَ أَيَّامٍ مَا تَمَكَّنْتُ فِي خِلَالِهَا  
أَنْ —

three days, during which  
it was not possible for  
me to.... Nu'. liq. 21,1

أَمْثَالَهُمْ كَثِيرُونَ يَطُولُ ذِكْرُهُمْ

and many others like them  
whom it would take too  
long to mention.  
Amin duh. I,126,17

لِأَسْبَابٍ يَطُولُ ذِكْرُهَا

for reasons which would  
take too long to enumerate.  
Amin zuh. I,14,8

فِي زَاوِيَةِ أُخْرَى جَرْنٌ جَفَّ مَائُهُ

In another corner there  
was an empty basin.  
Gibr. II,114,3

D The resumptive personal pronoun frequently appears in a clause governed by the relative:

شَيْءٌ آخَرَ أَحِبُّ أَنْ أَقْصَ عَلَيْكَ  
There is another thing I  
want to tell you.  
Amin (Zy.) 7,30

أَنْ لِلتَّلِيْفُونِ ثَقَاةٌ خَاصَّةٌ يَنْبَغِي  
أَنْ يَعْلَمَهَا  
that the telephone has  
special rules which one  
must learn.  
Mah. qah. 128,7

حَفِظَ سُرًّا مِنَ الْقُرْآنِ لَمْ يَلْبَثْ  
أَنْ نَسِيَهَا  
He memorized some *suras*  
which he soon forgot.  
Hus. ayy. I,48,11

أَحَدَتْهُ أَحَادِيثَ مُخْتَلِفَةً رَجَوْتُ  
أَنْ أُسْرِيَ بِهَا عَنْ نَفْسِهِ  
to tell him various  
stories with which I  
hoped to cheer him up.  
Manf. mag. 255,6

لِي إِلَيْكَ حَاجَةٌ يَا إِسْتَيْفَنَ أَرْجُو  
أَلَّا تَضُنَّ عَلَيَّ بِهَا  
I need you, Stephen. I  
hope you don't let me  
down. Manf. mag. 117,13

مُؤَلِّفٌ آخَرُ يَجِبُ أَنْ نَعْرِفَ جَمِيعَ  
مُؤَلَّفَاتِهِ  
There is another author  
whose works we must know.  
Musa adab. 176,16

E When the predicate of a nominal sentence whose subject is a personal pronoun of the first or second person has a relative modification, the resumptive pronoun may agree in person with the subject of the sentence instead of agreeing with the predicate, which is grammatically the actual antecedent of the relative clause:

إِنَّمَا أَنْتَ أَغْرَابِي لَا عِلْمَ لَكَ  
You are a Bedouin who  
knows nothing.  
Hai. sir. 370,2

أَنَا رَجُلٌ لَا مَالَ لِي  
I am a man without any  
money. Hai. sir. 120,23

أَنَا رَجُلٌ ضَعِيفٌ لَا نَاصِرَ لِي  
I am a weak man without  
any helper.  
Manf. mag. 49,15

أَنَا فَتَى يَافِعٌ لَا أَفَكِّرُ فِي غَيْرِ

I was a growing boy who  
thought only of the  
present. Maz. (Zy.) 10,1

السَّاعَةِ الَّتِي أَكُونُ فِيهَا

أَنَا رَجُلٌ لَا يَنْقُصُنِي أَلَمٌ

I am a man who never lacks  
money. Mah. zuq. 60,18

This attraction in grammatical person, however,  
is not necessary:

نَحْنُ أَسْرَةٌ لَا رَجُلَ لَهَا

We are a family without  
a man. Mah zuq. 178,2

وَلَكِنِّي كُنْتُ أَمْرًا لَيْسَ لَهُ فِي الْقَوْمِ

I am a man without parents  
or relatives in this tribe.

مِنْ أَهْلِ وَلَا عَشِيرَةٍ

Hai. sir. 415,16

#### § 226 OMISSION OF THE RESUMPTIVE PRONOUN

The resumptive personal pronoun may be omitted  
when the context clearly presents the relationship  
between the substantive and its relative modification.

This is generally the case when the personal pro-  
noun is the subject in the relative clause and the  
sentence is verbal, since the subject is implied in  
the verbal form:

مَلَأَتْ قَلْبَهُ حَيَاءٌ لَمْ يُفَارِقْهُ إِلَّا  
الآنَ

It filled his heart with  
a shame that has not  
left him till now.

Hus. ayy. I,19,4

تَعَلَّمَ الصَّحَفِيُّونَ لُغَةً جَدِيدَةً  
يَكْتُبُونَ بِهَا

Journalists have learned  
a new language in which  
they write.

Musa (Zy.) 2,31

The resumptive pronoun as subject is usually omitted  
even in the instances when it fulfills its function in  
a clause subordinated to the relative:

كِتَابٌ آخَرُ لَسْتُ أَدْرِي كَيْفَ كَانَ  
يَسَى

and another book, the  
title of which I do not  
know. Hus. ayy. I,97,7

It is not omitted when it functions as a subject in a nominal sentence:

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| يَدْخُلُ إِلَى غُرْفَةٍ هِيَ أَشْبَهُ<br>بِالدَّهْلِيزِ | He entered into a room<br>very much like a hallway.<br>Hus. (Zy.) 25,13       |
| طَبِيعِي فِي بِلَادِ هَذِهِ حَالُهَا<br>أَنْ —          | It is natural in a country<br>with such conditions<br>that.... Hai. sir. 72,3 |

Note, however, the following:

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| إِنِّي قَدْ تَزَوَّجْتُ رَجُلًا لَا كَالرِّجَالِ              | that I have married a man<br>who is not an ordinary<br>man. Hus. 'ala. I,17,1 |
| يَخَيَّلُ إِلَيَّ أَنَّكَ امْرَأَةٌ لَا كَكُلِّ<br>النِّسَاءِ | I think that you are not<br>a woman like others.<br>Hak. sheh. 106,9          |

When the resumptive personal pronoun assumes the function of an accusative object, it is seldom omitted:

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| كَانَ أَوَّلُ دَمٍ أَرَأَى الْمُسْلِمُونَ | It was the first blood<br>the Moslems shed.<br>Hai. sir. 255,9 |
|---|--|

and it is even less often omitted when it functions as a genitive:

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| هَذِهِ أَوَّلُ مَرَّةٍ رَأَيْتُ جَسَدَيْنِ<br>يُضَمُّهُمَا تَابُوتٌ وَاحِدٌ  | That is the first time I<br>have ever seen one single<br>coffin containing two<br>corpses.<br>Gibr. II,91,8 |
| أَتَيْتُ فِي كُلِّ مَرَّةٍ ذَهَبْتُ إِلَى<br>الْدَّارِ —                     | that every time I went<br>to the library....<br>Hai. sir. 19,12   |
| أَوَّلُ مَرَّةٍ قَابَلْتُ الْوَسْطَوَّ السَّيِّ<br>فِي بَغْدَادَ قَالَ لِي — | The first time I met the<br>Official Commissioner in<br>Bagdad, he told me....<br>Raih. mul. 59,10          |

# § 227 ATTRACTION OF THE ANTECEDENT ON THE RELATIVE CLAUSE

When the relative clause is a nominal sentence with an adjective or participle as predicate, the latter usually precede, causing an inversion of the normal word order in the nominal sentence. As a result, the logical relationship existing between the antecedent and the predicate of the relative clause becomes stronger than its ties to its subject; hence the predicate, while keeping its gender and number agreement with its subject, takes its case from the main clause, usually as an adjectival apposition to the antecedent but it can also be in the adverbial accusative.

The relative clause thus becomes equivalent to an adjectival or adverbial modification followed by a noun-modifier in the nominative case although this is unthinkable in Arabic in the normal sentence structure. It only appears when the noun subject is defined by a personal pronoun:

يَرْتَدِي جِلْبَابًا ذَا بَنْيَقَةٍ مَوْصُولٍ  
بِهَا رِبَاطٌ رَقِيَّةٌ

wearing a garment with a gusset on the chest to which a necktie was attached. Mah. zuq. 7,19

كَمَا حَزَّ فِي قَلْبِهِ هَذَا الْأَلَمُ  
الْحَيِّ مَثَلَةُ صَوْتِهِ فِي زَوْجِهِ  
يَرَاءُ

as the living agony whose reflection he could notice in his wife opened a fresh wound in his heart... Hai. sir. 128,13

(See also Vol. III, p. 161f.)

When the predicate of the relative clause is attracted by a grammatically defined antecedent as its adjectival apposition, the predicate also takes the definite article:

مَحِيطُ الْمَحِيطِ الْمَقْدَمِ ذِكْرُهُ

Muhit al-Muhit, previously mentioned.  
Djir. tar. IV,270,7

رَجُلًا مِنَ الْعَرَبِ النَّاقِمِ عَلَيْهِمُ  
آبَنُ سَعُودٍ

one of the Arabs with whom Ibn Sa'ud was angry.  
Raih. mul. 51,7

هَلِ ابْنُ سَعُودٍ مِنْ أَوْلِيَّكَ الْآفَرَادِ  
الْقَلِيلِ عَدَدُهُمْ فِي الْبِلَادِ الْعَرَبِيَّةِ  
؟\_\_

Was Ibn Sa'ud one of those  
individuals so scarce among  
the Arabs...?  
Raih. mul. 31,14

نَظَرْتُ نَحْوَ الْغُيُومِ الْمُتَلَبِّدَةِ  
الْمُتَلَوِّنَةِ أَطْرَافَهَا بِذَهَبٍ مِنْ أَشْعَةِ  
الشَّمْسِ الْجَمِيلَةِ

I looked toward the clouds,  
with their fringes colored  
with the gold of the  
beautiful rays of the sun.  
Gibr. II,104,20

مَرَّاءَ قَنَدِيلِ الزَّيْتِ الضَّئِيلِ  
الْمُتَمَاجِجَةِ أَظْلَالُهُ عَلَى جُدْرَانِ الْكُوْخِ

behind a feeble oil lamp,  
the shadows of which  
flickered on the walls  
of the hut.  
'Aww. (Br.) 11,9

الَّذِي يُشْرِفُ عَلَى الْبَطْحَاءِ  
الْمَدْفُونِ فِيهِ كَنْزُ الْعَائِلَةِ

that overlooks the valley  
in which our patrimony  
lies buried.  
Raih. (Zy.) 23,25

## § 228 PRONOMINAL USE OF THE ASYNDETIICAL RELATIVE CLAUSE

An asyndetical clause is not very often found in a pronominal function. There are, however, cases of such usage with both the nominal and the verbal sentence.

The nominal relative construction mentioned immediately above may lose its attachment to the antecedent and thus be used in a function equivalent to that of a substantive, whether grammatically defined or undefined:

أَنَّ مَا قَصَدْتَ إِلَيْهِ مَسْتَحِيلٌ  
تَحْقِيقُهُ

that what was intended  
was something which can-  
not be accomplished.  
Hai. sir. 13,10

إِنَّ اللَّهَ مَعَ الْمُنْكَسِرَةِ قُلُوبُهُمْ

God is, indeed, with those  
whose hearts are broken.  
Raf. wah. I,88,11



Arab grammarians, and also occasionally Western grammarians, like to see in these constructions, when they are defined, use of the definite article as a relative pronoun. Because of the grammatical parallelism of defined and undefined cases, we prefer to see in them a pronominal use of the adjective or participial forms in question.

#### § 229 THE SYNDETICAL RELATIVE CLAUSE

A The use of a syndetical relative clause is based on the grammatical determination of the substantive antecedent.

In order to express the connection between the substantive and its relative (or adjectival) clause, Arabic uses the relative adjective **الَّذِي**, "who," "what," which is variable in gender and in number and, in the dual only, also in case.

This relative adjective is actually an old demonstrative particle preceded by the definite article. Its adjectival and demonstrative character allows its use only with grammatically defined substantives, upon which the relative adjective directly depends.<sup>18</sup> This explains the fact that the Arabic relative belongs to the main sentence as the modification of the substantive antecedent and not to the clause as, for example, in English.

This is to say that the relative adjective agrees adjectivally with its antecedent in gender and number. It also should always be considered as agreeing in case with the substantive to which it refers. However, since the relative adjective is invariable in the singular and plural, this agreement can only be ascertained in the dual, in which it still shows case distinction:

18. Note, however, the word **فَلَانٌ**, which in the following example is logically defined and takes a syndetical relative clause:

— **وَفَلَانٌ الَّذِي سَأَلَنِي رَجُلٌ** — and the one who asked me was a man.... Din (Zy.) 3,6

الْفَلَّامَانِ الْمُسِيقِيَانِ اللَّذَانِ كَانَ  
أَرْسَلَهُمَا سِيرَانُو

the two boy musicians  
whom Cyrano had sent.  
Manf. sha'. 167,14

هَذَانِ الْفَارِسِيَانِ اللَّذَانِ ذُكِرَا  
فِي بَعْضِ هَذَا الْحَدِيثِ

these two Persians, who  
have been mentioned some-  
where in this story.  
Hus. ayy. II,44,19

الْصَّبِيُّ يَجْعَبُ لِهَذَيْنِ الصَّوْتَيْنِ  
اللَّذَيْنِ يَعْتَمِنَانِ حِينَ يَسْكُنُ اللَّيْلُ

The boy was astonished  
with these two voices,  
which would become harsh  
in the quietness of  
night. Hus. ayy. II,42,18

رَأَيْتُ الشَّفَتَيْنِ اللَّتَيْنِ كَانَتَا  
كَزْهَرَةٍ أَقَاجٍ تَسِيلُ عَلَيْهَا الْحَلَاوَةُ  
بِعَيْرَيْهِمَا اللَّذَتَيْنِ حَمَلَاهُمَا مِنْ مَكَّةَ

I saw her two lips, which  
were like a daisy full of  
nectar. Gibr. II,44,11

With their two camels,  
which had carried them  
from Mekka.  
Hai. sir. 312,15

B The relative adjective in its gender and number agreement with the substantive to which it refers follows the same rules as any other adjective. Its plural being equivalent to a sound plural or the plural of other pronouns, it is only used when referring to persons:

كُلُّ هَذِهِ الْإِخْتِلَافَاتِ الَّتِي لَمْ  
نَذْكُرْ مِنْهَا إِلَّا أَمِثْلَةَ قَلِيلَةٍ —

All these differences, of  
which we have only men-  
tioned a few examples....  
Amin duh. I,8,19

مَلْعُونَةٌ هِيَ الْأَيْدِي الَّتِي —  
وَمَلْعُونَةٌ هِيَ الْأَعْيُنُ الَّتِي —

Cursed be the hands that...  
and cursed be the eyes  
that.... Gibr. I,150,14

كَانَ مِنْ أَوْلَئِكَ الرِّجَالِ الَّذِينَ  
يَتَسَرَّعُونَ بِإِظْهَارِ مَحَبَّتِهِمْ أَوْ  
مَقْتِهِمْ لِلنَّاسِ

He was one of those men  
who did not hesitate to  
show people his love or  
aversion. Gibr. I,108,8

أَوْلَئِكَ الَّذِينَ يَطْلُبُونَ مِنَّا أَنْ —  
يَنْسَوْنَ —

Those who ask me to...,  
forget....  
Musa adab. 6,17

*Note* that a relative having a substantive sound plural as antecedent may also agree with it in number even in the instances in which the substantive might refer to animals or inanimate objects:

مِنْهَا التَّمَاثِيحُ الَّتِي تَزْدَرِدُ النَّاسَ  
إِزْدِرَادًا وَمِنْهَا السَّحُورُونَ الَّذِينَ  
يَعْمِشُونَ تَحْتَ الْمَاءِ بَيَاضَ النَّهَارِ  
وَسَوَاءَ اللَّيْلِ  
to them belong the crocodiles, which could easily swallow a person; to them [also] belong the enchanted ones, which live under water day and night.  
Hus. ayy. I, 13, 1

When the substantive antecedent is in the dual, there is always agreement in number between the antecedent and the relative (see examples given Vol. III, p. 163).

C Two or more relative clauses in a coordinated construction do not require the repetition of the relative adjective:

مِنْ هَذَا الْعَالَمِ الْمَجْهُولِ الَّذِي  
جِئْنَا مِنْهُ وَسَنَعُودُ إِلَيْهِ  
from this unknown world,  
from which we came and  
to which we shall return.  
Qal. (Zy.) 21, 2

رَبِيبَةُ هَذَا الرَّجُلِ الَّذِي تُحِبُّ  
وَتَقْدِّسُ  
the doubts of this man,  
whom she loved and  
venerated. Hai. sir. 360, 17

It is, however, repeated when the relationship of the coordinated relative clauses would otherwise not be clear, e.g., when the first one is very long or is followed by other clauses:

كَانَ لِلْهَؤُلَاءِ الْفُقَهَاءِ عِلْمٌ مُخَالِفٌ  
كُلَّ الْمُخَالَفَةِ لِعِلْمِ الْعُلَمَاءِ الَّذِينَ  
يَأْخُذُ عِلْمُهُمْ مِنَ الْكِتَابِ وَالَّذِينَ  
بَيْنَهُمْ وَبَيْنَ الْأَزْهَرِ سَبَبٌ قَرِيبٌ  
أَوْ ضَعِيفٌ  
These jurists had a knowledge completely different from that of the *ulemas*, who had learned from books and who had a more or less close connection with al-Azhar.  
Hus. ayy. I, 86, 11

الصَّبِيَّ يَعْجَبُ لِهَذَيْنِ الصَّوْتَيْنِ  
 اللَّذَيْنِ يَعْتَقَانِ حِينَ يَسْكُنُ اللَّيْلُ  
 وَيَنَامُ النَّاسُ وَيَحْسُنُ الرَّفْقُ وَالَّذَيْنِ  
 يَوَقَّانِ وَيَلْطَفَانِ حِينَ يَنْشَطُ النَّهَارُ  
 وَيَسْتَيْقِظُ النَّاسُ —

The boy was astonished with these two voices, which would become harsh in the quietness of night while people were asleep and gentleness is more suitable, and which would become small and delicate with the activity of day when people would wake up and....

Hus. ayy. II,42,18

D The relative clause, as we have seen in the preceding examples, follows directly after the relative adjective except in the case of its omission in correlative constructions as indicated immediately above. However, sometimes a parenthetical construction is placed between the relative adjective and the clause:

تِلْكَ الْحَيَاةَ الَّتِي إِذَا مَا تَأَمَّلْنَاهَا  
 وَجَدْنَاهَا مُبَسِّمَةً فِي الرَّبِيعِ —

That life which we, when we contemplate it, find smiling during the spring....

Gibr. I,76,14

(For more information on parenthetical constructions, see Vol. III, p. 375ff.)

## § 230 THE RESUMPTIVE PERSONAL PRONOUN

A Since, as we have explained above (Vol. III, p. 147), the relative adjective syntactically belongs to the main clause, it is only logical that the substantive antecedent be represented in the relative clause by a resumptive personal pronoun in the appropriate case:

أَمَا وَصَفَ لَكَ الْمَكَانَ الَّذِي  
 هُوَ فِيهِ؟

Didn't he describe to you the place in which it is?

Nu'. liq. 39,4

- يَنَافِي الْحُرِّيَّةَ الَّتِي هِيَ حَقٌّ  
طَبِيعِيٌّ لِلْإِنْسَانِ  
denies the freedom which  
is a natural right of  
mankind.  
Q. Amin (Zy.) 5,18
- يَلْعَنُ هَذَا الرَّجُلَ الَّذِي أَكَلَ  
الْعَسَدَ قَلْبَهُ  
cursing this man, whose  
heart envy was eating up.  
Hus. ayy. I,83,12
- وَصَفَ لَهُ حَيَاتَهَا الْغَرِيبَةَ الَّتِي  
تَعَيَّاها مُنْذُ عَادَتْ إِلَى الْقَرْيَةِ  
He described to him the  
strange life she had led  
since she returned to the  
village. Manf. mag. 250,2
- فِي تِلْكَ اللَّيْلَةِ الَّتِي رَأَيْتَكَ فِيهَا  
الشَّيْطَانَ الَّذِي كَانُوا يُخِيفُونَنَا  
بِهِ صِفَارًا  
on that night on which I  
saw you. Nu'. liq. 12,3
- صَاحِبُ هَذِهِ الشَّجَرَةِ الَّتِي لَا  
ثَمَرَ فِيهَا  
the Devil, with whom people  
used to frighten us when  
we were children.  
Manf. mag. 109,2
- سَكَتَ الشَّابُّ فِي أَوَّلِ يَوْمٍ وَفِي  
الْيَوْمِ الَّذِي يَلِيهِ  
the owner of this tree  
that has no fruit.  
Hak. sheh. 118,14
- The young man was silent  
the first day and also on  
the following day.  
Hus. ayy. I,77,9

B The resumptive pronoun may appear in a clause subordinated to the relative:

- أَيْنَ مَوْضِعِ الْمَاءِ الَّذِي أَرْسَلْتُكَ  
تَبَحُّثَ عَنْهُ وَتَدُلَّنَا عَلَيْهِ؟  
Where is the water located  
which I sent you to look  
for and to show us?  
Hak. sul. 25,7
- بِذَلِكَ الصَّوْتِ الرَّخِيمِ الْعَذْبِ  
الَّذِي طَالَمَا سَمِعْتَهُ مِنْ قَبْلُ  
with that sweet and pleasant  
voice, which he had heard  
so many times before.  
Manf. mag. 186,10
- بِهَذِهِ الْكَلِمَاتِ الَّتِي أَلْفَقَهَا  
يَقُولُونَ إِنَّهَا سِرْيَانِيَّةٌ  
with these words, which the  
jurists said were Syriac.  
Hus. ayy. I,111,7

C However, the strong logical attachment of the relative adjective to the relative clause causes the omission of the resumptive pronoun more frequently than is the case in asyndetical constructions. This omission is always conditioned by the fact that the context clearly indicates the syntactical and logical connection between antecedent and its relative modification.

The resumptive personal pronoun is therefore never omitted when it fulfills the function of a genitive in the relative clause.

However, it is omitted

a) usually when it should function as subject, either in a verbal sentence:

عَنْ طَعَامِهِ الَّذِي كَانَ يُحْمَلُ إِلَيْهِ  
مِنَ الْبَيْتِ ظَهَرَ كُلِّ يَوْمٍ

from its food, that was  
brought to him from the  
house.  
Hus. ayy. I, 52, 16

لِعِلْمِ الْعُلَمَاءِ الَّذِينَ يَأْخُذُونَ  
عِلْمَهُمْ مِنَ الْكُتُبِ

to the knowledge of the  
ulemas, who learned from  
books. Hus. ayy. I, 86, 11

or in a nominal sentence:

أَبَانَا الَّذِي فِي السَّمَوَاتِ ...

Our Father, Which art in  
Heaven.... Gibr. I, 87, 14

أَنَا وَبَعْضُ أَصْدِقَائِي الَّذِينَ فِي  
مِثْلِ حَالِي —

I, and some friends who  
are in the same situation  
as I am....  
Jabr. (Br.) 72, 10

رَأَتْ أُمُّهَا أَلْهَمَ الَّذِي بِهَا

Her mother saw her grief.  
Hai. sir. 359, 18

b) not very frequently, but not uncommonly, when it functions as an accusative direct object:

هَذَا الَّذِي نَرَى دُنْيَا أُخْرَى

What we see is a different  
world. Hak. ahl. 68, 15

(مِنْ) رَيْبَةٍ هَذَا الرَّجُلِ الَّذِي  
تُحِبُّ وَتَقْدِّسُ وَالَّذِي بِهِ تُؤْمِنُ

the doubts of this man,  
whom she loved and vener-  
ated. Hai. sir. 360, 17

## § 231 PRONOMINAL USE OF THE RELATIVE ADJECTIVE

In the same way that a demonstrative can be used as an adjective and also pronominally in lieu of a substantive, a relative adjective also may be used to replace a substantive whose syntactical function in the sentence the relative adjective assumes. The resumptive personal pronoun is required, however, and follows the same patterns expressed above.

The relative adjective in a pronominal function may be used in place of any nominal part of the sentence, except that of the noun in the construct state, and it usually has a definite meaning:

حَدَّثَهَا بِأَلَّذِي رَأَى

He told her what he had seen. Hai. sir. 134,9

هُوَ الَّذِي سَيَغَيِّرُ مِنْ حَوْلِنَا  
كُلَّ شَيْءٍ

He is the one who will completely change our way of life.  
Hus. 'ala. II,71,11

نَسْتَطِيعُ بَعْدَ الَّذِي ذَكَرْنَا فِي  
الْفَصْلِ السَّابِقِ أَنْ نَقُولَ —

After what we have mentioned in the preceding section, we can say that.... Amin duh. I,50,3

إِنَّ الَّذِينَ تَنْتَسِبُ إِلَيْهِمْ يَطْلُبُونَ  
مُعَاقِبَتَكَ

Those whom you claim as kin seek your punishment.  
Gibr. I,184,12

أَلَعَلَّهُ وَاثِقٌ مِنْ أَنَّ مَا خَلْفَ  
السِّتَارِ لَيْسَ جَمِيلًا كَالَّذِي أَمَامَهُ؟

Is he so certain that what is behind the curtains [of death] is not as beautiful as what is in front of them?  
Nu'. liq. 28,4

بَعْدًا عَنْ أَعْيُنِ الَّذِينَ يَعْرِفُونَنَا

away from the eyes of those who know us.  
Mah. zuq. 55,8

كَالَّذِي رُوِيَ —

As it is said....  
Amin duh. I,78,4

كُلُّ الَّذِي ذَكَرَهُ الْفُقَهَاءُ فِي  
هَذَا الْمَوْضِعِ —

Everything the jurists said about this matter is.... Amin duh. I,82,20

كَذَلِكَ كَانَ شَأْنُ سَائِرِ الَّذِينَ  
جَمَعُوا الْحَدِيثَ

The same thing happened  
to all those who collected  
the *hadith*.

Hai. sir. 49,14

إِنَّمَا كَانَ يَطْلُبُهَا وَيَطْلُبُ مَعَهَا  
أَشْيَاءَ أُخْرَى هِيَ الَّتِي يَطْلُبُهَا  
النَّاسُ فِي حَيَاتِهِمْ

He sought it [the diploma],  
but along with it, he sought  
other different things  
which people also seek in  
their lives.

Hus. ayy. II, 53, 11

(كَانَ) وَجَادِلَهُمْ بِالَّتِي هِيَ  
أَحْسَنُ

but he used better argu-  
ments in his dispute.

Hai. sir. 6,21

وَأَنَّ الْقُوَّةَ الَّتِي تَحْصُلُ مِنْ اتِّحَادِ  
الْمُسْلِمِينَ تَكُونُ أَعْظَمَ مِنَ الَّتِي  
تَحْصُلُ مِنْ اتِّحَادِ الْعَرَبِ؟

and that the strength re-  
sulting from the unifika-  
tion of the Muslims will  
be stronger than the one  
resulting from Arab uni-  
fication?

al-Hus. (Br. II) 74,8

Here we should mention the cases of sentences with the interrogative pronouns مَنْ and مَا in which the interrogative sentence is expanded into a relative construction. The relative pronoun, الَّذِي, then fulfills the function of the subject in the interroga-  
tive construction (see Vol. I, § 43):

مَنْ الَّذِي يَعُودُ؟

Who was supposed to come?  
Hak. ahl. 44,12

مَنْ ذَا الَّذِي يُرِيدُ أَنْ —؟

Who wants to...?  
Manf. sha'. 41,6

مَا الَّذِي أَحْدَثَ هَذَا كُلَّهُ؟

What caused all this?  
Raf. wah. I, 71, 21

and also in indirect interrogatives (see Vol. III, p. 97ff.):

وَلَا تَعْلَمُ مَا الَّذِي أَضْحَكَهَا وَلَا  
مَا الَّذِي أَبْكَأَهَا

without knowing what [it  
was which] made her laugh  
and cry. Manf. mag. 18,10



Compare with:

مَنْ هِيَ الَّتِي تَتَمَتَّعُ بِحُبِّكَ بَعْدِي؟

Who [is she who] will enjoy your love after me?  
Gibr. I, 146, 18

مَنْ هُمُ الَّذِينَ رَفَعُوا هَذَا اللَّيْسَ عَلَى الشَّجَرَةِ؟

Who are those who hanged this thief on the tree?  
Gibr. I, 132, 19

### § 232 THE PRONOMINAL CLAUSE

The only pronominal clauses in Arabic are those introduced by a relative pronoun.

The main difference between an adjectival and a pronominal relative clause is that the former always refers to a substantive in the main clause, which the relative clause modifies in very much the same way as an adjective does its governing substantive, while the pronominal relative clause assumes, in the main clause, the function of a pronoun; that is to say, the pronominal relative clause refers to an unexpressed substantive, whose function in the main clause is taken over by the relative clause. In short, an adjectival relative clause requires a substantive antecedent; the pronominal does not.

The relative pronouns in Arabic are مَنْ, "who," and مَا, "what." They are actually the same as those used for the interrogatives, from which the relative construction has been derived because of the fading of their interrogative nature in some positions.

مَنْ and مَا found as indirect interrogatives can be considered as being in a position midway between their use as direct interrogatives and pronominal relatives.

In general, we may say that the difference between an indirect question and a relative construction consists, from the point of view of their meanings, in the fact that the interrogative clause intends to seek out information; thus, it is used only after verbs of an interrogative character, such as "to ask" and the like. A relative sentence, on the other hand, introduces a statement of fact independent of any request for information.

From a structural point of view, the interrogative sentence is considered as a whole part of a compound with a very limited syntactical function—that of an accusative or as apposition to an accusative—and the pronoun always remains a part of the interrogative clause. The relative is actually more closely related to the main clause, thus accounting for the presence of a resumptive pronoun in the subordinate clause;<sup>19</sup> it has all the syntactical possibilities of a substantive, except that of *status constructus*, since the relative pronoun must always be followed by the relative clause.

There are, however, frequent cases in which a clear distinction between both constructions cannot be drawn. In those instances, an attempt at differentiation would either be of no real syntactical interest or should be based on textual interpretation.

In modern Arabic there are no further definite characteristics on which to base a more exact differentiation between indirect interrogative and pronominal relative constructions than previously. On the contrary, there seem to be greater points of contact between both, increased by the greater use that Arabic makes today of the indirect constructions.

The structural difference between the two only appears in instances when the resumptive personal pronoun fulfills the function of a genitive within the clause, since, in such instances, it must be used in the relative construction but not, generally, in the interrogative.

Compare, for example, the following relative constructions:

يَطْلُبُ إِلَيْهِ مَا يُرِيدُهُ      He would ask him whatever  
he wanted.  
Hus. ayy. I, 102, 12

سَلْ عَمَّا شِئْتَ      Ask for what[ever] you  
want. Hak. ahl. 13, 11

19. The fact that both—the relative pronouns and the relative adjectives—follow the same patterns in the use of the resumptive personal pronoun can be explained as a case of analogy. Compare, e.g., with indirect questions, Vol. III, p.

and also the following:

وَقَفَّ الْنِسَاءُ فِي الْمَقَاصِيرِ يَنْظُرْنَ  
مَاذَا جَرَى

The women stood up in  
their loges to see what  
was taking place.  
Manf. sha'. 37,10

with the indirect interrogatives:

سَأَلَهَا عَمَّا عِنْدَهَا

He asked her what she had  
with her.  
Manf. sha'. 23,9

أَنَّهُ لَمْ يَفْهَمْ لِمَاذَا صَدَّقَ وَعَدَ  
أَبِيهِ فِي هَذِهِ السَّنَةِ

that he did not understand  
why he believed his father's  
promise that year.  
Hus. ayy. I,138,12

إِلَى أَنْ يَتَشَاوَرَ مَعَ خُلَصَائِهِ مَاذَا  
يَضَعُ

to consult with his as-  
sociates about what should  
be done. Hai. sir. 360,8

وَهُوَ لَا يَدْرِي مَاذَا يَقُولُ

without knowing what to  
say. Manf. mag. 29,16

أَتَدْرِي مَاذَا أَصْنَعُ؟

Do you know what I'll do?  
Raf. wah. I,92,10

أَدْرَكَ مَحْبُوبٌ فِي الْحَالِ عَمَّ  
يَتَسَاءَلُ صَاحِبَهُ

Mahbub understood right  
away what his friend  
was asking about.  
Mah. qah. 51,21

لَا نَدْرِي بِمِ نَجِيبٍ

We don't know what to  
answer. Hai. sir. 360,23

لَيْتَ شِعْرِي مَاذَا تُرِيدُ أَنْ  
تَقُولَ لِي؟

I wish I knew what she  
wants to tell me.  
Manf. sha'. 71,4

كَانَتْ تَسْأَلُ نَفْسَهَا أَلْفَ مَرَّةٍ فِي  
كُلِّ يَوْمٍ بِمَنْ تَنْزِلُ النَّازِلَةُ مِنْ  
أَبْنَائِهَا وَنَوَاتِيهَا

She asked herself a  
thousand times each day  
who among her children  
would be stricken.  
Hus. ayy. I,127,8

Only in the last given example is there a structural difference between indirect interrogatives and

pronominal relative sentences, since this construction as a relative clause would be:

مَنْ تَنَزَّلَ بِهِ النَّارِلَةُ مِنْ أَبْنَائِهَا  
وَمَنَاتِهَا      whoever among her children  
was stricken.

From the semantic point of view, we frequently find a difference based on the logic of a question that is addressed to a third person asking for specific information; the relative construction, on the other hand, has an indefinite meaning.

Thus, e.g., in the first of the examples mentioned above under relative construction:

يَطْلُبُ إِلَيْهِ مَا يُرِيدُهُ      He (the boy) would ask  
him (the jinn) what(ever)  
he (the boy) wanted.

understood as an interrogative construction would have a different meaning: "He (the boy) would ask him (the jinn) what he (the jinn) wanted," and on the other hand:

لَمْ يَدْرِ أَمْ حَمِيدَةُ مَاذَا تَقُولُ      Umm Hamida did not know  
what to say.  
Mah. zuq. 176,17

understood as a relative construction would be: "Umm Hamida did not know what she was saying."

## § 233 مَنْ

A مَنْ is used referring to persons; its meaning usually is general and indefinite, "who," "whoever":

أَنَّهُ يَأْخُذُ مِمَّنْ يَعْينُهُ نِصْفَ مَرْتَبِهِ      that he takes half of his  
salary from whomever he  
helps. Mah. qah. 85,3

قَالَ ذَلِكَ بِصَوْتِ مَنْ يُخَاطَبُ  
نَفْسَهُ      He said that with the  
voice of one who is  
talking to himself.  
Nu'. liq. 12,9

مَنْ يُرِيدُ بِهِ شَرًّا يَكُونُ عَدُوًّا لَنَا

Whoever wishes him evil  
is our enemy.  
Gibr. I, 198, 6

مَنْ عَرَفْتُ مِنْهُمْ وَمَنْ لَمْ أَعْرِفْ

whomever I knew of them  
and whomever I did not.  
Hai. sir. 19, 14

قَالَ الْمُعَلِّمُ كَمَنْ نَفَدَ صَبْرَهُ —

The teacher said as one  
who has exhausted his  
patience....  
Mah. zuq. 64, 7

مَنْ مَاتَ سَوْفَ يُبْعَثُ

Whoever dies will be  
resurrected.  
Hak. ahl. 52, 6

مَنْ لَا يَرَى الْآحْزَانَ لَا يَرَى الْفَرْحَ

Whoever does not see  
sorrow does not see  
joy. Gibr. II, 122, 13

لَإِنَّ مَنْ يُسَاعِدُ الشَّرِيرَ يَكُونُ شَرِيرًا

for he who assists evil-  
doers is himself evil.  
Gibr. I, 180, 18

مَنْ يَعْتَرِضُكُمْ يَكُونُ شَرِيكًا لَهُمَا  
بِالْجَرِيمَةِ

The one who stands in  
your way is their partner  
in evil. Gibr. I, 199, 10

It may also have a concrete meaning, which is usually  
defined as "this," "these who":

سَائِرُ مَنْ فِي الْقَرْيَةِ

the rest of those who  
were in the village.  
Tai. (Br.) 124, 1

مَنْ هُوَ أَوَّلُ مَنْ قَالَ شِعْرًا؟

Who was the first one  
to recite verses?  
Djir. tar. I, 72, 24

كَانَ الشَّابُّ مِمَّنْ يُحِبُّونَ الْكُتُبَ  
حُبًّا بَالِغًا

The young man belonged  
to those who have a  
great love of books.  
Mah. qah. 11, 18

but may also be found with a restricted indefinite  
meaning, "someone," "something":

بَعَثَ مَنْ يَبْحَثُ عَنْهُ      He sent someone to look  
for him. Hai. sir. 112,22

It may also refer to animals or inanimate objects, but only when they are in some way personified:

فَهَذِهِ الصَّادِرُ وَفِي مَقَدِّمَتِهَا      for these sources, with  
الْقُرْآنُ هِيَ أَوَّلُ مَنْ تَحَدَّثَ عَنْ      the Koran foremost, are  
حَيَاةَ النَّبِيِّ الْعَرَبِيِّ      the first that tell of  
Prophet.  
Hai. sir. 29,1

B مَنْ usually takes the gender of the noun to which it refers:

رِئَسَتُنَّ مَنْ تَبَقَّى عَلَى دِينِهَا      Of them, some kept their  
religion. Amin duh. I,341,3  
إِنَّ الْأَمِيرَةَ مَسِيحِيَّةً كَمَنْ تَحْمِلُ      The princess is Christian,  
أَسْمَهَا      as was [the other one] who  
had her name.  
Hak. ahl. 85,15

يَا مَنْ تُبَيِّنُهَا النَّفْسُ!      Oh you, whom the soul  
announces!  
Gibr. I,70,6

مَنْ is singular and any agreement with the pronoun may be in the singular, regardless of the number of persons involved:

صَبَّوْا اللَّبَنَ مِنَ الْقِرْبِ لِمَنْ أَرَادَ      They poured milk from  
waterskins for those  
who wanted it.  
Raih. mul. 49,2

كَانَتْ عِدَّةُ مَنْ خَرَجَ مَعَ مُحَمَّدٍ      The number of people who  
إِلَى هَذِهِ الْغَزْوَةِ خَمْسَةَ وَثَلَاثِمِائَةٍ      accompanied Mohammed on  
this raid was 350.  
Hai. sir. 258,2

إِنَّهُمْ أَوَّلُ مَنْ بَحَثَ فِي عِلَاجِ      that they were the first  
الْأَمْرَاضِ      ones to investigate the  
treatment of diseases.  
Djir. tar. I,197,3

قَلَّ مِنَ الشُّعْرَاءِ مَنْ لَمْ يَحْرِكْ  
قَلْبَهُ الْحُبُّ  
Few are the poets whose  
hearts are not inspired  
by love.  
Djir. tar. I, 156, 2

مِنَ الشِّرْكِينَ مَنْ آلهَ الْكَوَاكِبِ  
Among the idolators are  
those who deify the stars.  
Amin duh. III, 1, 18

but its verbal or nominal predicate may also agree in number with the logical idea:

فَرَّ مَنْ جَاءُوا لِنُصْرَتِهِمْ  
Those who had come to  
help them, fled.  
Hai. sir. 353, 4

وَلَمْ يَدْرِكْ كَثِيرٌ مِمَّنْ أَسْلَمُوا  
مَعْنَاهُ  
Nor did many of the  
converted understand  
its meaning.  
Hai. sir. 197, 8

انْضَمَّ إِلَيْهِمْ مَنْ لَا يَخَافُونَ اللَّهَ  
Whoever had no fear of  
God joined them.  
Amin duh. III, 6, 21

يَا وَيْحَ مَنْ رَبِيعُهُمْ شِتَاءٌ!  
Woe to those whose springs  
are winters!  
Nu'. liq. 28, 4

أَنَّا أَوَّلَ مَنْ دَعَوْا أُرَاءَ الْعَرَبِ  
إِلَى آجْتِمَاعِ  
that we are the first ones  
who have summoned the Arab  
princes to unite.  
Raih. mul. 43, 21

C When the relative pronoun has the function of subject it can be given a numerical determination with the personal pronoun of the third person in apposition to it. This pronoun actually has a resumptive function (see Vol. II, § 178 and also compare with Vol. III, p. 182f.):

لِمَ لَا أَلْفَتَ النَّظَرَ إِلَيَّ وَإِلَى غَيْرِي  
مِمَّنْ هُمْ فِي مِثْلِ ظُرُوفِي؟  
Why not attract attention  
to me and to others in  
the same circumstances?  
Kam. (Zy.) 4, 32

§ 234 مَا

A مَا is used referring to inanimate objects and, as مَنْ, it is usually indefinite:

لَا يَنْظُرُ إِلَى مَا وَآءِ الْأَشْيَاءِ not looking at what is beyond the [superficial].  
Gibr. I, 108, 4

سَلْ عَمَّا شِئْتَ Ask about whatever you wish. Hak. ahl. 13, 11

أَتَهُمْ يَوْمَ مَا لَا يَرَى that they could see what he did not.  
Hus. ayy. I, 18, 9

تَمَثَّلَ لِخَاطِرِي مَا يُكَابِدُهُ To my mind came the efforts which the learned have to undergo.  
Maz. (Zy.) 1, 2

but it also can be used referring to concrete objects:

هُمْ آمَنُوا بِاللَّهِ وَمَا جَاءَ بِهِ رَسُولُهُ They believed in God and in what His Apostle brought.  
Amin duh. III, 15, 11

حَمَلَنِي عَلَى مَعْرِفَتِهِ مَا حَمَلَكَ عَلَى قَبُولِ هَذَا الزَّوْاجِ The same thing which let you accept such a marriage brought about my meeting with him.  
Mah. qah. 158, 2

أَخْرَجْتُ لَهُ كُلَّ مَا مَعِيَ I offered him all I had with me. Hak. ahl. 35, 3

It may refer not only to the identification of inanimate things but also to their qualities or states of being and, with the same meaning, to persons as well:

وَمَا يَدْرِيكَ مَا يُؤْتِنُ بْنُ مَتَّى and how did you know what Jona, the son of Mata was? Hai. sir. 187, 18



قَلِيلٌ مَا هُمْ

They were few.  
Amin duh. I,101,11;  
Hus. ayy. II,76,17

Otherwise, مَا may refer to persons only when modified by a prepositional phrase with مِنْ (see Vol. III, p. 179f.).

B مَا is also masculine and thus may take a masculine agreement even when referring to a feminine noun:

هِيَ مَا سَتَتَكَلَّمُ فِيهِ الْآنَ

That is something we shall  
now talk about.  
Amin duh. I,305,6

مِنْهَا مَا يَهَيَّأُ فِيهِ طَعَامُ الْفُقَرَاءِ  
وَالْبَائِسِينَ

Among them there were some  
[shops] in which the food  
of the poor was prepared.  
Hus. ayy. II,11,1

مِنْ هَذِهِ الْحَوَانِيتِ مَا كَانَتْ تُدَارُ  
فِيهِ تِجَارَةٌ هَادِئَةٌ

Among those shops there  
were some in which a  
[certain kind of] trade  
was quietly conducted.  
Hus. ayy. II,11,10

When the relative pronoun functions as the subject, it can be given a feminine gender with the personal pronoun of the third person feminine singular in apposition to it. This pronoun actually has a resumptive function (see more examples below, Vol. III, p. 182f.):

مِنْهَا مَا هِيَ قَرِيبَةٌ مِنَ السَّوَاهِلِ

Some of them are close  
to the seashore.  
Raih. mul. 221,5

C مَا, as the interrogative pronoun, may also be followed by the demonstrative particle ذَا :

وَقَفَّ النِّسَاءُ فِي الْمَقَاصِرِ  
يَنْظُرْنَ مَاذَا جَرَى

The women stood up in  
their loges to see what  
was taking place.  
Manf. sha'. 37,10

§ 235 مَنْ / مَا — مِنْ

A Since the relative pronouns express an indefinite idea, basically making only a distinction in species —"who," "whoever" and "what," "whatever"— without the determination that could be given by an antecedent, Arabic frequently introduces a closer specification of the relative pronouns by the use of a prepositional phrase with مِنْ.<sup>20</sup>

Hence, without actually changing the structure of the pronominal relative clause, Arabic secures for it a specific and concrete meaning equivalent to that of the adjectival relative clause. In fact, it is generally translated into English using an adjectival relative construction, for English has no equivalent of this expression.

As to the nature of the prepositional determination, it usually introduces a partitive specification with the preposition thus governing a plural or a collective noun.

مِنْ, however, may also introduce a specifying determination and therefore be followed by a singular noun (see the following paragraphs) and even by a noun clause (immediately below):

أَنَّ أَحَدَكُمْ بِمَا يَذْكُرُ الصَّبِيُّ  
مِنْ أَنَّ الْأَيَّامَ الَّتِي كَانَتْ تَسْبِقُ  
أَيَّامَ شَمِّ النَّسِيمِ كَانَتْ أَيَّامًا  
غَرِيبَةً

to tell you of what the  
boy remembers about the  
fact that the days which  
preceded those of *shamm*  
*an-nasim* were strange.  
Hus. ayy. I, 109, 15

B The prepositional phrase is usually placed at the end of the relative clause:

مَا يَكَابِدُهُ الْأَسَاتِذَةُ مِنَ الْعَنَاءِ

the efforts the learned  
have to undergo.  
Maz. (Zy.) 1, 2

20. مَنْ governing a plural noun does not change the possibility of مَنْ being used to agree in the singular, not even in those cases in which the prepositional phrase precedes the relative clause:

مِنْهُمْ مَنْ كَانَ يَعْطِفُ عَلَى هَذِهِ  
الْحَوَانِيتِ فَيَشْتَرِي مِنْهَا —

Some of them were fond of those  
shops and bought from them....  
Hus. ayy. II, 11, 4

- إِنَّهُ يَسْمَعُنِي مَا لَا أُحِبُّ مِنَ الْكَلَامِ      He lets me hear words I do not like.  
Hak. sul. 55,14
- يَعْرِفُ مَا بَيْنِي وَبَيْنَهُمْ مِنْ صَدَاقَةٍ      He knows the friendship existing between them and me. Nu'. liq. 16,1
- هَذَا كُلُّ مَا بِالْكَتَابِ مِنْ أَدَوَاتٍ      This was all the furniture there was in the school.  
Amin (Br.) 85,21
- كُلُّ مَا فِي كَلِمَةِ جَسَدٍ وَكُلُّ مَا فِي كَلِمَةِ مَادَّةٍ مِنْ مَعْنَى      all the meaning [contained] in the word "body" and in the word "material."  
Hak. sheh. 112,3
- هُوَ سَلَاحُهَا الْأَوَّلُ فِيمَا يَشْجُرُ بَيْنَهَا وَبَيْنَ الْجَارَاتِ مِنْ تَزَاعٍ      It was her most important weapon in the dispute which broke out between her and her neighbors.  
Mah. zuq. 22,6
- لَا يَعْدَمُ مَا يَعِيشُ عَلَيْهِ مِنْ خُبْرٍ      He won't lack bread to live on.  
Sak. (Zy.) 13,15
- تَرَجَمُوا عَنِ الْفَرَسِ أَشْيَاءَ كَثِيرَةً مِنْهَا مَا ذَكَرْنَا قَبْلُ مِنْ كَلِمَةٍ وَدِمْنَةٍ وَالْيَتِيمَةِ —      They translated many things from the Persian; among them are the above-mentioned *Calila and Dimna* and *al-Yatima*....  
Amin duh. I,187,7
- هَلْ لِي وَجُودٌ حَقِيقِي خَارِجَ مَا يَحْتَوِي جَسَدِي مِنْ زَمَانٍ وَمَكَانٍ؟      Do I have a real existence besides the time and place which embrace my body?  
Hak. sheh. 149,5
- مِنْ مَوْظِعِي الدَّارِ كِبَارًا وَصِغَارًا مَنِ عَرَفْتُ مِنْهُمْ وَمَنْ لَمْ أَعْرِفْ      from the employees of the library of high and low status, those whom I knew and those whom I did not.  
Hai. sir. 19,14

C The prepositional phrase may also be placed within the relative clause as a parenthetical expression:

هِيَ لَا تَعْرِفُ مِنْ كُلِّ مَا يَدُورُ  
حَوْلَ اسْمِهَا مِنْ حَدِيثِ شَيْئًا

She was not aware of any  
of the rumors which cir-  
culated concerning her.  
Hai. sir. 359,5

هُوَ لَاحٍ فَقِيرٌ أَسَدَى إِلَيَّ فِيهَا  
مَضَى مِنَ الْأَيَّامِ صَنِيعَةً

He is a poor sailor who  
rendered me some service  
in the past.  
Manf. mag. 100,5

D The prepositional phrase may even precede the relative clause:

تَرَكْتُ بَدْرَ بَعْمَكَةَ مِنْ عَمِيقِ الْأَثَرِ  
مَا رَأَيْتُ

Badr left in Mecca the  
deep influence that you  
have seen.  
Hai. sir. 277,5

يَدْخُلُونَ مِنَ الْأَمْكِنَةِ مَا يَشَاءُونَ

They entered any place  
they wanted to.  
Manf. sha'. 20,2

أَلَمْ يَنْفَسِ مِنَ الْوَجْدِ بِهَا مَا لَمْ  
أَسْتَطِعْ مَعَهُ صَبْرًا

I felt a passion for her  
which I could stand no  
longer.  
Manf. (Zy.) 30,22

مِنْ الْمُعْتَرِلَةِ مَنْ قَالَ —

Some *mu'tazilites* say....  
Amin duh. III,32,19

مِنْ الْمُتَكَلِّمِينَ مَنْ قَالَ —

Some theologians say....  
Amin duh. III,32,14

Note the following:

يَقُومُ مِنَ الْأَمْرِ بِمَا يَقُومُ بِهِ مَنْ  
هَمَّ فِي مِثْلِ سِنِّهِ

doing the same as all  
others of his age.  
Hai. sir. 115,18

Note also the following paronomastic expressions  
(see also Vol. III, p. 209f.):

وَقَفْتُ وَبِي مِنَ الدَّهْشَةِ مَا بِي

I stood there perplexed  
and excited.  
Nu'. liq. 69,6

وَمَعَهُمْ مَا مَعَهُمْ مِنَ السَّبْيِ  
وَالْفَنَائِمِ

with the prisoners and  
booty they brought with  
them. Hai. sir. 355,19

E However, the ones in which the expressions *مِنْ ... مَا / مَنْ*, etc. represent a nominal sentence, should be carefully distinguished from the preceding cases:

مِنْ هَؤُلَاءِ مَنْ جَاءُوا فِي الْعَصْرِ  
الَّتِي يُسَمُّونَهَا عَصْرَ الْعِلْمِ وَالْبَحْثِ

Among those are some who belong to an era which they call the age of knowledge and research. Hai. sir. 11,17

مِنْ هَذِهِ الْحَوَانِيتِ مَا كَانَتْ تُدَارُ  
فِيهِ تِجَارَةٌ هَادِئَةٌ —

Among those shops there were some in which a [certain kind of] trade was quietly conducted.... Hus. ayy. II,11,10

حَتَّى إِذَا قَرَعَ مِنْ هَذَا كُلِّهِ جَلَسَ  
لِلنَّاسِ وَهُمْ يَتَقَاطِرُونَ عَلَيْهِ مِنْهُمْ  
مَنْ يُقَبِّلُ يَدَهُ وَيُنْصِرِفُ خَاشِعًا  
وَمِنْهُمْ مَنْ يَتَحَدَّثُ إِلَيْهِ لَحْظَةً أَوْ  
لَحْظَاتٍ وَمِنْهُمْ مَنْ يَسْأَلُهُ حَاجَتَهُ

When he finished all this he would sit down with the crowds coming to him; some kissed his hand and humbly left, others talked to him for a moment or so, and others asked him about some need [of theirs]. Hus. ayy. I,90,11

مِنْ هَذِهِ الْأَسْوَاقِ مَا يَنْعَقِدُ كُلَّ  
أُسْبُوعٍ

Among those markets were some that convened every week. Djir. tar. I,193,23

F The presence of the prepositional phrase with *مَا*, makes possible the use of this pronoun referring to persons as equivalent to *مَنْ*:

وَمَعَهُمْ مَا مَعَهُمْ مِنَ السَّبْيِ  
وَالْغَنَائِمِ

with the prisoners and booty they brought with them. Hai. sir. 355,19

#### § 236 THE RESUMPTIVE PERSONAL PRONOUN

*مَنْ* and *مَا* as relative pronouns can be considered as belonging structurally to the main clause; hence, the presence of a resumptive personal pronoun. Its

use, however, is still conditioned to the fact that **مَنْ** and **مَا** have not clearly developed a structural distinction between their function as interrogative and as relative pronouns.

A Thus, the resumptive pronoun is generally omitted when it functions as subject:

عَلِمَ وَالِدَا يُوَحْنَا بِمَا جَرَى  
لِوَحِيدِهِمَا

John's parents learned  
what had happened to  
their only son.  
Gibr. I, 97, 3

حَمَلَنِي عَلَى مَعْرِفَتِهِ مَا حَمَلَكَ عَلَى  
قُبُولِ هَذَا الزَّوْجِ

The same thing which let  
you accept such a marriage  
brought about my meeting  
with him.  
Mah. qah. 158, 2

سَأَلَهُ أَنْ يَبْعَثَ إِلَيْهِمْ مِنَ الرُّومِ  
مَنْ يَكُونُ لَهُ مَلِكُ الْيَمَنِ

He asked him to send some-  
body to them to become  
king in Yemen.  
Hai. sir. 76, 10

وَيَنْبِئُ بِمَا كَانَ وَمَا سَيَكُونُ

and sees the past and  
prophesies the future.  
Hus. ayy. I, 98, 9

قَدْ تَرَكْتُهُ وَكُلَّ مَنْ فِيهِ

I have abandoned it and  
all who are there.  
Gibr. I, 145, 15

Its use either lends an emphatic effect or is designed to give the relative pronoun a specification in gender or number:

لِمَ لَا أَلْفَتُ النَّظَرَ إِلَيَّ وَإِلَى  
غَيْرِي مِمَّنْ هُمْ فِي مِثْلِ ظُرُوفِي؟

Why not attract attention  
to me and to others in  
the same circumstances?  
Kam. (Zy.) 4, 32

أَسْتَحْلِفُكَ بِكُلِّ مَا هُوَ عَزِيزٌ لَدَيْكَ  
فِي هَذِهِ الْحَيَاةِ

I entreat you by every-  
thing that is dear to  
you in this life.  
Gibr. I, 142, 10

يَقُومُ مِنَ الْأَمْرِ بِمَا يَقُومُ بِهِ مَنْ هُمْ  
 فِي شَيْءٍ سِوَهُ  
 doing the same as all  
 others of his age.  
 Hai. sir. 115,18

B The resumptive pronoun in the function of an accusative is usually expressed:

يَطْلُبُ إِلَيْهِ مَا يُرِيدُهُ  
 He would ask him what-  
 ever he wanted.  
 Hus. ayy. I,102,12

كَمَنْ أَعْيَاهُ التَّعَبُ  
 like one whom fatigue  
 oppresses.  
 Nu'. liq. 23,4

قَدْ قَالَ لَكَ الْيَوْمَ مَا قُلْتُهُ أَنَا  
 مِّنْذُ سِنِينَ  
 He told you today what  
 I have been saying for  
 years. Gibr. I,98,1

أَيُّدَقُّ فِيَمَا يَسْمُونَهُ الشَّرَفُ؟  
 Did he believe in what  
 people call honor?  
 Mah. qah. 107,11

ثُمَّ لَمْ يَجِدْ مَا يَقُولُهُ  
 Then he could not find  
 a word to say.  
 Mah. qah. 63,19

but it is also very frequently omitted:

لَا يَخَافُهُمْ شَيْءٌ فِي صِحَّةِ مَا  
 تَرَوْنَ وَتَقُولُ  
 They will not suspect the  
 authenticity of whatever  
 you say.  
 Din (Zy.) 3,14

سَمِعْنَا مَا قُلْتَ  
 We heard what you said.  
 Hai. sir. 204,15

أَنَّهُمْ يَرَوْنَ مَا لَا يَرَوْنَ  
 that they could see what  
 he did not.  
 Hus. ayy. I,18,9

أَدْرَكْتُ مَا تَعْنِي وَمَا تُرِيدُ  
 I know what you mean and  
 what you want.  
 Hak. ahl. 35,9

قَدْ كَانَ فَوْقَ مَا يَحْتَمِلُ الْمُحْتَمِلُ  
 It was more than anyone  
 could endure.  
 Manf. mag. 34,16

كَانَ آخِرُ مَا سَمِعْتُ نِدَاءَ  
الْمُؤَذِّنِ

The last thing I heard  
was the voice of the  
muezzin. Nu'. (Zy.) 33,54

أَوَّلُ مَا نَجَلُّوهُنَا أَنْ —

The first thing we should  
make plain here is that....  
Musa adab. 37,8

C The resumptive pronoun in a genitive function is, as a rule, always expressed, even in the cases in which the same preposition governs the relative pronoun:

كَانَتْ قَدْ أَعَدَّتْ لَهُ مَا لَا يَدُّ مِنْهُ  
فِي مِثْلِ هَذَا الْوَقْتِ

She had already prepared  
for him what was unavoidable  
on such occasions.  
Hus. ayy. I,35,8

شَكَاَ إِلَيْهِ مَا هُمْ فِيهِ

He complained to him about  
the situation in which  
they found themselves.  
Hai. sir. 76,9

كَانَ الْآعَجُّ يَعْرِفُ مَا يَجِبُ عَلَيْهِ  
فِي مِثْلِ هَذَا الْوَقْتِ

The lame boy knew what  
was necessary to know in  
such a situation.  
'Aww. (Br.) 11,21

ظَلَّ فِيَمَا هُوَ فِيهِ

He remained as he was.  
Hai. sir. 127,16

إِنَّا نَطَالِبُ الْأَرْبَابَ فِي آيَاتِنَا  
بِمَا كُنَّا نَطَالِبُ الْكَاهِنَ أَوْ الْإِمَامَ  
فِي الْقُرُونِ الْمَاضِيَةِ

We demand from the writer  
of our times what we did  
from the priest or the  
*imam* in past centuries.  
Musa adab. 10,1

The resumptive pronoun in the function of a genitive may be omitted only when it is a genitive governed by a preposition. When the relative pronoun is already governed by the same preposition, the prepositional phrase is frequently lacking (see Vol. II, § 120):

أَمَرَ بِمَا أَمَرَ

He prescribed something.  
Hus. ayy. I,130,12



إَفْعَلْ مَا تُؤْمَرُ Do what you have been  
ordered [to do].  
Hai. sir. 88,9

هُوَ يَتَمَنَّى أَنْ تَدْرِمَ أَلْحَالَ عَلَى مَا هِيَ He wished things would  
stay as they were.  
'Aww. (Br.) 12,17

*Note the following:*

لِأَنَّ الْبَقْصَةَ تَحْتَاجُ أَوَّلَ مَا تَحْتَاجُ for a novel needs person-  
ality first of all.  
إِلَى شَخْصِيَّةٍ Musa adab. 182,2

D As with the adjectival relative constructions, the resumptive pronoun may appear in a clause subordinated to the relative clause:

هَذَا كُلُّ مَا أَقْدِرُ أَنْ أَقُولَهُ This is all I can say.  
Gibr. I,111,5

مَا سَبَقَ أَنْ عَلِمْتَهُ مِنْ — What I had previously  
learned from....  
Hak. yaum. 94,6

يُفَكِّرُ فِيمَا عَسَى أَنْ يَقُولَهُ لِلْبَكِ thinking of what he could  
say to the Bey.  
Mah. qah. 62,3

تَقَلَّبْتُ فِيمَا شَاءَ اللَّهُ أَنْ أَتَقَلَّبَ I went through all the  
vicissitudes of life  
which God desired for  
me. Hus. (Br.) 105,17

## § 237 FUNCTION OF THE PRONOMINAL RELATIVE CLAUSE

As we have already stated in the introduction above, a pronominal relative clause may fulfill within the compound any of the functions in which a pronoun can be found; that is to say, all those of a substantive, with the only exception being that of the noun in the construct state (see Vol. II, § 72). Thus, for example,

A Nominative:

قَلَّ مَنْ لَا يَعْرِفُهُ. قَلَّ مَنْ يَعْرِفُهُ  
Few do not know him. Few do know him.  
Raih. mul. 186,3

مَنْ لَا يَرَى الْآحْزَانَ لَا يَرَى الْفَرْحَ  
Whoever does not see sorrow does not see joy.  
Gibr. II,122,13

مَنْ هُوَ أَوَّلُ مَنْ قَالَ شِعْرًا؟  
Who was the first one to recite verses?  
Djir. tar. I,17,20

(Also see Vol. III, p. 211f.)  
(Refer to Vol. III, p. 192 for special formular expressions with **مَا** in the function of a subject.)

#### B Accusative:

يَطْلُبُ إِلَيْهِ مَا يُرِيدُهُ  
He would ask him whatever he wanted.  
Hus. ayy. I,102,12

بَعَثَ مَنْ يَبْحَثُ عَنْهُ  
He sent someone to look for him.  
Hai. sir. 112,22

أَتَتَهُمْ يَرَوْنَ مَا لَا يَرَى  
that they could see what he could not.  
Hus. ayy. I,18,9

قَدْ كَانَ يَرُوهُ أَنْ يَسْمَعَ وَمَا أَكْثَرَ  
مَا كَانَ يَسْمَعُ وَمَا أَغْرَبَ مَا كَانَ  
يَسْمَعُ  
It delighted him to listen, and how many and how strange were the things he listened to!  
Hus. ayy. II,24,4

#### C Genitive after a noun:

دَعَا قَوْمَهُ إِلَىٰ شَيْءٍ مَا دَعَاهُمْ  
إِلَيْهِ قَصِيٌّ جَدُّهُ  
He summoned his people as his grandfather, Qusay, had.  
Hai. sir. 97,4

إِذَا دَعَا الْعَرَبَ إِلَىٰ شَيْءٍ مَا دَعَا  
إِلَيْهِ قَوْمَهُ فَا—  
When he preached to the Arabs what he had to his people....  
Hai. sir. 91,4

كُلِّ مَا فِي كَلِمَةِ جَسَدٍ وَكُلِّ مَا فِي  
كَلِمَةِ مَادَّةٍ مِنْ مَعْنَى

All the meaning [contained]  
in the word "body" and in  
the word "material."  
Hak. sheh. 112,3

أَخْرَجْتُ لَهُ كُلَّ مَا مَعِيَ

I offered him all I had  
with me. Hak. ahl. 35,3

أَوَّلَ مَا نَجْلُو هُنَا أَنْ —

The first thing we should  
make plain here is that....  
Musa adab. 37,8

كَانَ أَوَّلَ مَا بَلَغَهُ بَعْدَ شَهْرَيْنِ  
مِنْ أَحَدٍ أَنْ —

The first news that reached  
him two months after Uhud  
was that....  
Hai. sir. 303,19

وَلَتَكُونَنَّ هَذِهِ التَّلَاوَةُ أَوَّلَ مَا  
تَأْتِي بِهِ حِينَ —

and this recitation would  
be the first thing he  
would do when....  
Hus. ayy. I,46,11

أَجْمَلَ مَا فِيهِ عَيْنَانِ سَوْدَاوَانِ

The most striking [feature]  
were his two black eyes.  
Mah. qah. 12,3

أَشَدَّ مَا آسَظَاعُوا أَنْ يَأْخُذُوهُ  
عَلَيَّ أَنْ —

The worst thing they can  
blame on me is that....  
Hai. sir. 45,17

كَانَ يَسْتَوْعِبُ أَكْثَرَ مَا يَسْتَطِيعُ

He included as much as  
he could.  
Musa (Zy.) 29,6

تَحَرَّكَتْ نَفْسَاهُمَا رَحْمَةً لَهُ وَإِشْفَاقًا  
مِنْ سُوءِ مَا لَقِيَ

Their spirits were moved  
with pity and compassion  
for him because of the  
misfortune which had over-  
whelmed him. Hai. sir. 187,14

قَدَرَمَا تَسَمَحَ بِهِ قُوَّتِي وَمَوَاهِبِي

as much as [in the measure of that which] my strength and my talents grant me.  
Manf. sha'. 122,16

إِنَّكَ لَا تَسْتَطِيعُ أَنْ تَدْرِكَ مِقْدَارَ  
مَا أُجِدُّ مِنَ اللَّذَّةِ وَالْغَبْطَةِ فِي  
نَفْسِي عِنْدَ مَا —

you could not understand how much pleasure and happiness I experienced when....  
Manf. sha'. 123,11

(Also see Vol. III, p. 218ff.)

#### D Genitive after a preposition:

يَقُومُ مِنَ الْأَمْرِ بِمَا يَقُومُ بِهِ مَنْ هُمْ  
فِي مِثْلِ سِنِّهِ

doing the same as all others of his age.  
Hai. sir. 115,18

ظَلَّ فِيمَا هُوَ فِيهِ

He remained as he was.  
Hai. sir. 127,16

لَا يَسْتَطِيعُونَ أَنْ يَطِيرُوا إِلَى مَا  
رَاءَ الْغُيُومِ —

They cannot fly toward what is beyond the clouds....  
Gibr. II,51,9

Note the following:

وَلَمْ يَكُنْ يَسَمِّي الْوَرَاءَ أَمْرَاءَ وَلَا  
سَيِّدَةً وَلَا أَنْثَى وَلَا شَيْئًا مِمَّا  
تَعَوَّدَ النَّاسُ أَنْ يَسْمُوهَا

He would not call a woman, woman or lady or female or anything that man customarily calls her.  
Hus. ayy. II,57,12

إِتِّجَاهَهُمَا نَعَوَّ الْيَمِينَ لَمْ يَكُنْ  
مِمَّا يَرْدُ بِالْبَالِ

Their departure for Yemen went unnoticed.  
Hai. sir. 211,5

Modern Arabic very frequently uses a pronominal relative clause governed by a preposition to express temporal or local ideas for which English prefers the use of an adverb or an adverbial phrase.

Such expressions do not seem very productive when introducing a verbal sentence; in fact, they are restricted to a short series without great variety either in meaning or in the prepositions involved:

- نَعَمْ إِنَّكَ قَدْ أَحْسَنْتَ إِلَيَّ فِيمَا مَضَى  
You have, indeed, been good to me in the past.  
Manf. mag. 65,14
- هُوَ مَلَّاحٌ فَقِيرٌ أَسَدَى إِلَيَّ فِيمَا مَضَى مِنْ الْأَيَّامِ صَنِيعَةً  
He is a poor sailor who rendered me some service in the past.  
Manf. mag. 100,5
- كَانَتْ مَعِيَ أَمْسٍ فِيمَا أَذْكَرُ ذَرَاهِمُ مِنَ الْفِضَّةِ  
Yesterday, as I recall, I had some silver coins.  
Hak. ahl. 24,2
- هِيَ فِيمَا يَقُولُونَ لَا تَتَفَكَّرُ فِي هَرَوَلَتِهَا  
She, it is said, did not slow down in her pace.  
Hai. sir. 89,8

In the instances in which the relative clause is nominal, the relative pronoun **مَا** functions as the subject and is thus followed only by the nominal predicate. The nominal predicate is, in most cases, a prepositional phrase or an adverb:

- لَا تَصْبِرُ عَلَى مَا دُونَ الْحَرِيَّةِ كَامِلَةً لِلْفَرْدِ وَلِلْأُسْرَةِ وَلِلْقَبِيلَةِ كُلِّهَا  
They are not satisfied with less than complete freedom for the individual, the family, and the whole tribe. Hai. sir. 79,3
- قَدْ كَانَ بِلَادُ الْعَرَبِ فِيمَا سِوَى الْيَمَنِ مَجْهُولَةً بِالْفِعْلِ مِنْ أَهْلِ تِلْكَ الْعَصْرِ الْقَدِيمَةِ  
Arabia, with the exception of Yemen, was in reality unknown to the people of that ancient period.  
Hai. sir. 72,7
- قَدْ اِخْتَلَفُوا فِيمَا بَيْنَهُمْ أَيْنَ يَدْفَنُ  
They were in disagreement as to where he should be buried. Hai. sir. 510,24
- مِنْ الصَّبَاحِ حَتَّى مَا بَعْدَ الْعِشَاءِ  
From morning until night. Mah. qah. 37,22
- وَرَبَّامَا لَا يَقَعُ شَيْءٌ مِنْ ذَلِكَ فِيمَا بَعْدَ  
Perhaps none of this will happen later.  
Manf. mag. 3,17
- نَظَرَ مَحْجُوبٌ فِيمَا حَوْلَهُ  
Mahjub looked around.  
Mah. qah. 118,15

كَانَ الْأَرَبِيُّونَ وَالْأَمْرِيكِيُّونَ يَتَأَخَّرُونَ  
فِي الزَّوْاجِ إِلَى مَا بَعْدَ الثَّلَاثِينَ

Europeans and Americans  
postponed marriage until  
they were over thirty.  
Musa adab. 84,16

الْجِبَالُ الْجَرْدَاءُ فِيهَا حَوْلَ مَكَّةَ

The desolate mountains  
around Mecca.  
Hai. sir. 115,9

مَا أَجْمَلَ أَنْ تَضِيَ الْحَيَاةَ كُلَّهَا  
مَا بَيْنَ بَرْوكْسَلْ وَبَارِيسَ وَفِيْنَا<sup>21</sup>

How nice it would be to  
spend one's entire life  
between Brussels, Paris,  
and Vienna!  
Mah. qah. 72,19

التَفَتَ فِيْمَا حَوْلَهُ<sup>22</sup>

He turned around.  
Idr. (Br.) 80,20

The nominal predicate may also be an adjective. This construction does not seem to be used very often but is, rather, restricted to idiomatic expressions. Since the earliest development of the language, the adjective seems to have been attracted by the governing function of the preposition and is thus in the genitive case. This attraction, however, cannot be ascertained in modern unvocalized texts:

فَإِنِّي سَأَمُوتُ عَمَّا قَلِيلٍ

for I shall die very soon.  
Manf. sha'. 272,2

عَمَّا قَرِيبٍ يَشْتَرِيهَا الْمَوْتُ بِرَاحَةِ  
الْقَبْرِ

Very soon Death will buy  
them for the price of  
rest in a grave!  
Gibr. I, 82,19

21. For more on مَا بَيْنَ , see Vol. II, Section 132.

22. The relative character of (فِيْمَا) can be seen in its acceptance of a specifying prepositional phrase with مِنْ (see Vol. II, Section 127):

لِذَلِكَ — لَمْ تَطْمَعِ بِرَنْطِيَّةَ وَلَا  
طَمَعْتَ فَارِسَ فِيْمَا سِوَى الْيَمَنِ  
— مِنْ بِلَادِ شَبْهِ الْجَزِيرَةِ الَّتِي

For this reason...neither  
Byzantium nor Persia coveted  
any of the Arab Peninsula  
which...except Yemen.  
Hai. sir. 79,18

## § 238 FORMULAR EXPRESSIONS WITH مَا

Of special interest are the following formular expressions:

A مَا خَلَا and مَا عَدَا , "except," are relative clauses in which the relative pronoun functions as the subject of the verbs خَلَا , "to pass," "to be over"; عَدَا , "to exceed," "to transcend." Hence they are followed by an accusative, which is actually the object of the verb:

جَمِيعَ الْأَنْبِيَاءِ مِنْ غَيْرِ الْعَرَبِ مَا  
خَلَا أَرْبَعَةً هُوْدًا وَمَالِئًا وَإِسْمَاعِيلَ  
وَمُحَمَّدًا

All the prophets were non-Arabic except four: Hud, Malih, Isma'il, and Mohammed. Amin duh. I, 55, 8

كُلَّ الشَّوْاطِئِ الْإِفْرِيقِيَّةِ يَقُطِنَهَا  
سَلِمُونَ مَا خَلَا الْجَانِبَ الْعَرَبِيَّ  
إِلَى الْجَنُوبِ

All the African seacoasts were inhabited by Moslems, with the exception of the Arabic portion to the south. 'Aqq. (Br. II) 139, 20

الطَّائِفِ الْخَاصِّ الَّذِي يَمَيِّزُهَا عَمَّا  
عَدَاهَا

the special personality which differentiates it from others. Amin (Br. II) 121, 2

وَجَدَ الْأُسْرَةَ فِي أَنْتِظَارِهِ مَا عَدَا  
إِحْسَانًا<sup>23</sup>

He found the family, with the exception of Ihsan, expecting him. Mah. qah. 131, 2

مَا may be preceded by the preposition فِي , with the same meaning as above (see Vol. II, § 127):

مِنْ الْبِزَنْطِيِّينَ مَنْ أَوْقَرُوا الْإِسْلَامَ  
أَخْتِقَارًا مِنْ غَيْرِ أَنْ يَكْلِفُوا أَنْفُسَهُمْ  
فِيمَا خَلَا جَانِ دَامَاسِينَ مَوْئِنَةً  
دِرَاسَتِهِ

Some Byzantines, with the only exception of John of Damascus, despised Islam without taking the trouble of studying it. Hai. sir. 10, 6

23. For proper names used as indeclinable in modern Arabic, see Vol. II, p. 27.

فِيَمَا خَلَا أَلْيَمَنَ — فَسَائِرُ بِلَادِ  
الْعَرَبِ جِبَالٌ وَ —

And with the exception of Yemen..., the rest of Arabic consists of mountains and....  
Hai. sir. 71,19

لَكِنِّ فِيَمَا عَدَا ذَلِكَ سَارَتْ الْحَيَاةُ  
سَيِّئًا هَوْنًا مُحْتَمَلًا

But except for this, life followed an easy, bearable course. Mah. qah. 78,11

Other prepositions may also be used according to the particular requirements of the preceding expression or verb:

الطَّابِعُ الْخَاصُّ الَّذِي يُمَيِّزُهَا  
عَمَّا عَدَاهَا

the special personality which differentiates it from others.  
Amin (Br.II) 121,2

The relative function of مَا can be seen when it takes a specifying prepositional phrase introduced by مِنْ<sup>24</sup>:

أَمَّا مَا عَدَا ذَلِكَ مِنْ قَوْمِيَّةٍ  
وَوَطَنِيَّةٍ وَ —

As for everything else, such as nationalism, patriotism....  
Amin (Br.II) 120,11

وَلَكِنَّهُ كَانَ فِيَمَا خَلَا ذَلِكَ مِنْ أَوْقَاتِ  
السَّنَةِ خَلَاءً أَوْ يَكَادُ

But except on these occasions during the year, it was completely or almost completely deserted.  
Hai. sir. 89,4

The relative pronoun may be omitted. In such instances, according to Arab and Western grammarians, the genitive and the accusative case are permitted.<sup>25</sup> In vowelized texts, however, the accusative seem to be preferred:

24. Compare with فِيَمَا, above footnote 22 on p. 191.

25. See, e.g., Munjid under خَلَا and Wright, II, p. 342A. This, however, cannot always be ascertained in unvocalized texts.



مَا مِنْ شَيْءٍ خَلَا صُورَتَنَا فِي هَذِهِ  
الْمِرَاةِ الْعَظِيمَةِ  
There is nothing in this huge mirror except our image. Hak. sheh. 151,2

ثُمَّ أَمَرَ بِمَنْ فِي الدَّارِ خَلَا عَمَّهُ  
الْعَبَّاسُ أَنْ —  
Then he ordered all who were in the house, with the exception of his Uncle 'Abbas, to....  
Hai. sir. 502,8

مَضَوْا مَعَهُ جَمِيعًا خَلَا سَعْدَ بْنِ  
وَقَّاصَ — وَتَتَبَهُ بْنُ —  
Everyone went with him except Sa'd ibn Abu Waqqas...and 'Utba ibn....  
Hai. sir. 249,13

شِبْهُ جَزِيرَةِ الْعَرَبِ مَجْهُولَةٌ خَلَا  
الْيَمِينَ  
The Arabian Peninsula was unknown with the exception of Yemen.  
Hai. sir. 72,3 (margin)

B شَتَّانَ مَا بَيْنَ — وَبَيْنَ — , is a relative clause in which مَا functions as a subject modified by شَتَّانَ , which is actually an exclamatory accusative. The expression thus has an emphatic character: "How different they are!" "What a difference between...and....!"

شَتَّانَ مَا بَيْنَ ذَلِكَ وَبَيْنَ إِعْلَانِ  
الْحَرْبِ  
What a difference between that and a declaration of war! Hai. sir. 246,17

شَتَّانَ مَا بَيْنَ هَذَا وَبَيْنَ نَشَاطِ  
رُوحِي قَوِيٍّ قَاهِرٍ  
How different that is from strong spiritual zeal!  
Hai. sir. 41,15

The relative pronoun may be omitted, leaving the expression with the same emphatic meaning:

شَتَّانَ بَيْنَهَا وَبَيْنَ الْجَهْدِ الْمُوَحَّدِ  
That is very far from a united effort!  
Raz. (Br.II) 85,22

(Also see Vol. II, § 131.)

C يَتَسَنَّ مَا , "How wonderful...is!" and يَتَسَنَّ مَا , "How unfortunate...is!" may also modify a relative clause:

نِعْمًا هُمْ! الْهَارِبُونَ مِنْ أَجْسَادِهِمْ!

How fortunate they are,  
those who can flee their  
own bodies!

Hak. sheh. 120,4

بِئْسَ مَا اخْتَرْتَ هَذَا الْوَقْتَ  
لِلتَّدخينِ

How unfortunate that you  
had to choose this time  
to smoke!

Mah. zuq. 284,13

D لَا سِيَّمَا is also a relative compound preceded by " لَا of general denial" (see Vol. II, § 108) and the substantive سِيَّمَا, "equal," "similar"; hence, its meaning "there is nothing like," from which the usual translations of "especially," or "in particular" are derived.

The expression is very frequently coordinated to the preceding statement by the conjunction وَ, and it introduces either a substantive in the nominative case:

اِقْتَدَى بِالرَّسُولِ خُلَفَاؤُهُ الْأَوَّلُونَ  
لَا سِيَّمَا عُمَرُ بْنُ الْخَطَّابِ

The first caliphs emulated  
the Prophet, especially  
Omar ibn al-Khattab.  
Djir. tar. I, 214,19

كَانَ الْعَرَبُ وَلَا سِيَّمَا أَهْلُ مَكَّةَ  
يَتَتَبِعُونَ أَخْبَارَ هَذِهِ الْحَرْبِ  
بِتَلَهْفٍ وَشَغَفٍ

The Arabs, the people of  
Mecca in particular, fol-  
lowed the news of the war  
with interest and concern.  
Hai. sir. 3,19

(عَنْ) وَلَا النَّظِمَةِ الْفَاسِدَةِ الْمَسْطِرَةِ  
وَلَا سِيَّمَا نِظَامُ الْإِقْطَاعِ

and from the corrupt systems  
in power, the feudal in  
particular.  
Razz. (Br.II) 85,14

or a prepositional phrase:

لِأَنَّ كَثْرَةَ الْقَبَائِرِ وَانْتِشَارَهَا وَتَرَاهُمَا  
تَضِلُّ وَلَا سِيَّمَا فِي الظَّلَامِ

because the countless  
tombs, so unordered and  
crowded, make one lose  
his way, especially at  
night. Maz. (Zy.) 10,8

فِي كَثِيرٍ مِنَ الْوَقْتِ وَلَا سِيَّمَا  
فِي الشِّتَاءِ

most of the time, especially  
in winter.  
Hus. ayy. II, 94,10

It may also introduce a complete sentence:

الشَّيْخُ خَزَعْلٌ مِنْ أُمَرَاءِ الْعَرَبِ  
الْمَحَافِظِينَ عَلَى التَّقَالِيدِ الْإِجْدَادِ  
فِي التَّعْرِيسِ وَلَا سِيَّمَا شَرِيعَةُ  
الْمَتْنَةِ عِنْدَ الشَّيْعَةِ تُسَاعِدُهُ فِي ذَلِكَ

Sheikh Khaz'al was one of the Arab princes who defended the custom of repetition of marriage. The *Shi'a* law of the *mut'a* was particularly helpful to him. *Raih. mul.* 187,19

and a subordinate clause:

إِنِّي عَصِيٌّ الْعِزَاجِ لَا أَقْوَى عَلَى كَبْحِ  
غَضَبِي مَتَى ثَارَ لَا سِيَّمَا إِذَا كَانَ  
خَصِي وَضِيعَ الْحَالِ نَحِيلُ الْبَنِيَّةِ

I have a nervous temperament; I cannot curb my anger when it is aroused, especially when my opponent is a plebian of weak constitution. *Din (Br.)* 58,20

E The particle **أَمَّا**, "as far as...is concerned," is usually followed by a noun which is always in the nominative case.<sup>26</sup> It is a contraction of **أَنَّ** and the relative pronoun **مَا**. The construction was originally a relative nominal sentence in which the noun following the particle had the function of a subject, as one can still see, e.g., in: **أَمَّا زَيْدٌ فَهُوَ عَابِلٌ**, "What Zaid is, he is upright."

The expression is always followed by the conjunction **فَ** in an expositive meaning (see Vol. III, p. 20f), usually introducing a complete sentence (see Vol. III, p. 31).

In fact, the noun introduced by **أَمَّا** can be considered as an anacoluthon, the actual and usually complete sentence being introduced by the conjunction **فَ**. The function of the isolated noun is syntactically expressed by a personal pronoun.

26. In some cases, **أَمَّا** is directly followed by a sentence introduced by **إِنَّ**:

أَمَّا إِنِّي مَسْئُولٌ عَنْ ابْنَتِي فَمَا  
رَغِبْتُ عَنْ صَاحِبِكِ إِلَّا لِأَنِّي مَسْئُولٌ  
عَنْ ابْنَتِي

I am responsible for my daughter; I have nothing against your friend, but I am responsible for my daughter. *Raf. wah.* I,169,6

أَمَّا صَوْرَتُهُ فَبِهِيَ أَجْمَلُ صُورَةٍ  
خَلَقَهَا اللَّهُ فِي الْعَالَمِ

As for his appearance, it is the most beautiful God ever created on this world. Manf. sha'. 101,6

أَمَّا الْحَقِيقَةُ كَالنُّجُومِ لَا تَبْدُو إِلَّا  
مِنْ هَرَاءٍ ظُلْمَةِ اللَّيْلِ

The truth is like the stars, which do not appear but in the darkness of the night.  
Gibr. I, 164, 19

The sentence following by إِنَّ :

أَمَّا أَنَا فَإِنِّي حَزِينٌ لِإِفْرَاقِكِ حَزْنًا  
شَدِيدًا  
أَمَّا أَنَا فَإِنِّي أَحِبُّ الْقَرْيَةَ

ف may also be introduced

Being away makes me very sad. Manf. sha'. 151, 17

As for me, I love the village.  
Sak. (Zy.) 13, 50

أَمَّا أَنَا فَإِنِّي أَقُولُ لَكَ —

As for me, I tell you....  
Manf. mag. 65, 13

The personal pronoun which refers back to the noun introduced by أَمَّا may be omitted when the relationship to the isolated noun remains clear enough to be understood without the help of the pronoun. This is the case when the noun functions as subject in both nominal and verbal sentences:

أَمَّا الْبَشَرُ فَمَحْرُومُونَ مِنْ هَذَا  
النِّعْمَةِ

Only mankind is forbidden this bliss.  
Gibr. I, 125, 17

أَمَّا الْإِسْكَندَرِيَّةُ فَعَاصِمَةُ مِصْرَ  
الْيُونَانِيَّةِ

As for Alexandria, it was the capital of Greek Egypt. Amin duh. I, 272, 12

أَمَّا نَحْنُ فَأَوْلَادُ الْأَرْضِ

We are the Earth's children. Raf. wah. I, 89, 11

أَمَّا صَالُونُ الْحَلْوِ فَدُكَّانٌ صَغِيرٌ

The candy store was a small shop.  
Mah. zuq. 7, 1

أَمَّا الْكِتَابُ الَّذِي لَمْ يَكُنْ بِدُّ مِنْ  
حِفْظِهِ كُلِّهِ فَالْفِيَّاءُ ابْنِ مَالِكٍ

The book which was necessary to memorize completely was the *Alfiyya* of Ibn Malik. Hus. ayy. I, 67, 11

أَمَّا أَنَا فَبَقِيتُ وَاقِفًا أَنْظُرُ إِلَيْهِ  
تَارَةً وَإِلَى بَهَاءِ أُخْرَى

I remained standing, glancing from him to Baha. Nu'. liq. 102, 2

أَمَّا نَحْنُ فَنَعْتَقِدُ أَنَّ —

We do believe that.... Qutb (Br. II) 161, 8

The pronoun, however, is never omitted when it has any function other than that of the subject in the sentence, e.g.,

a) that of a genitive suffixed to a noun or governed by a preposition:

أَمَّا أَنَا فَلَنْ يَجِدَ الشَّكَّ إِلَيَّ نَفْسِي  
سَبِيلًا بَعْدَ الْيَوْمِ

As for me, I shall never doubt after this day. Hus. 'ala. II, 71, 1

أَمَّا أَنَا فَحَسْبِيَ مِنَ الْفَخْرِ أَنْ —

As for me, it is enough for my pride to.... Manf. sha'. 54, 9

أَمَّا هُنَّ فَلَا رَأْيَ لَهُنَّ فِي هَذَا  
الْأَمْرِ الْخَطِيرِ

They have no opinion in this important matter. Q. Am. (Zy.) 5, 22

أَمَّا الشَّعْبُ — فَلَمْ يَحْسِ هُؤْلَاءِ  
بِهِمْ

As for the people..., they did not care about them. Musa (Zy.) 2, 11

أَمَّا الْمَسِيحِيُّونَ فَقَدْ جَعَلَ  
الْكَثِيرُونَ مِنْهُمْ —

As for the Christians, the majority of them began to.... Hai. sir. 3, 4

أَمَّا النَّاقَةُ فَاسْمَاؤُهَا ٢٥٥ اسْمًا

As for the she-camel, it has 255 names. Djir. tar. I, 54, 2

أَمَّا الشَّعْبُ فَلَا وَجُودَ لَهُ عِنْدَهُ

As for the people, they do not exist for him. Musa adab. 38, 20

or, b) of an accusative after a transitive verb:

أَمَّا هُوَ فَقَدْ أَعْجَبَهُ هَذَا اللَّفْظُ  
فِي أَوَّلِ الْأَمْرِ

As for him, this name surprised him at first.  
Hus. ayy. I, 37, 10

أَمَّا نَوْمُ الصَّبِيِّ فَقَدْ قَطَعَهُ هَذَانِ  
الصَّوْتَانِ

The boy's sleep was disturbed by these two voices.  
Hus. ayy. II, 42, 11

The noun following **أَمَّا** may fulfill its grammatical function in a subordinate clause:

أَمَّا عَائِشَةُ فَلَمْ يَجْرَأُ أَحَدٌ عَلَى أَنْ  
يَبْلِغَهَا مِنْ كُلِّ هَذَا الَّذِي يَقُولُ  
النَّاسُ شَيْئًا

but nobody dared to inform 'Aisha of what the people were saying.  
Hai. sir. 358, 20

**أَمَّا** may also introduce any other part of the sentence, such as, e.g., an adverb, an adverbial modification, a prepositional phrase, etc.

أَمَّا الْيَوْمَ فَأَنْتَ تَسْتَحِقُّ أَنْ تُدْعَى  
شَيْخًا

Today you deserve to be called Sheikh.  
Hus. ayy. I, 45, 2

أَمَّا دِينِيًّا وَلُغَوِيًّا فَقَدْ ائْتَصَرَتْ  
الْعَرَبُ

But in religion and language, the Arabs were victorious.  
Amin duh. I, 49, 4

أَمَّا الْآنَ فَصِرْتُ طَاهِرَةً نَقِيَّةً

Now I have become chaste and pure.  
Gibr. I, 117, 14

أَمَّا الْآنَ فَنِيَّ اسْتَطَاعَتْكَ أَنْ  
تَطْمَعَ فِيهَا كَمَا تَشَاءُ

Now you can hope for her as you wish.  
Manf. sha'. 239, 7

أَمَّا فِيمَا عَدَا ذَلِكَ فَقَدْ كَانَ  
يَدْعُوهُ بِاسْمِهِ

On all other occasions, he used to call him by his name.  
Hus. ayy. I, 37, 5

Hence, **أَمَّا** also frequently introduces a subordinate clause, the main clause then being preceded by the conjunction **فَ** :

أَمَّا وَقَدْ رَأَيْتَ يَا صَاحِبِي مَا  
رَأَيْتَ وَسَمِعْتَ مَا سَمِعْتَ فَانْهَبْ  
إِلَى النَّاسِ وَقُلْ إِنَّ —

Now that you have seen  
and heard what you have  
seen and heard, go back,  
my friend, and tell the  
people that....  
Nu'. liq. 77,12

أَمَّا وَنَعَنْ نَعْرِفُ أَنْ — فَمِنْ  
الْمَعْقُولِ أَنْ —

Since we know that....,  
it is logical that....  
Hai. sir. 37,20

أَمَّا وَقَدْ انْقَضَى كُلُّ شَيْءٍ فَسَافِضِي  
إِلَيْكُمْ بِسِرٍّ مِنْ أَسْرَارِ الْعَرَبِ

Now that everything is  
over, I'll tell you a  
war secret.  
Manf. sha'. 215,8

أَمَّا إِذَا أَرَدْنَا بِهَذَا الَّلَفْظِ —  
فَلَا

If we mean by such an  
expression that....,  
then no.  
Zur. (Zy.) 18,22

أَمَّا إِذَا شَاءَ بَلَّوْغَ مَحَجَّةِ الْكَمَالِ  
فَعَلَيْهِ أَنْ شَعَرَ بِكَيْانِهِ

If he wants to attain  
perfection, he must be  
aware of his nature.  
Gibr. III,212,11

أَمَّا أَنْ يَكُونَ لِأَدَبِهَا طَائِعَهَا  
وَلِفَنِّهَا لَوْنُهُ فَذَلِكَ قَانُونُ الطَّبِيعِيَّةِ

that its literature and  
art have personality is  
nature's law.  
Zayy. (Zy.) 16,29

أَمَّا أَنَّ هَذِهِ الطَّرِيقَةَ طَرِيقَةُ  
الْقُرْآنِ فَذَلِكَ حَقٌّ لَا رَيْبَ فِيهِ

that this is the Koran's  
way is evident.  
Hai. sir. ك ,20

أَمَّا أَنْ تَعُودَ بَعْدَ انْتِصَافِ  
الَّيْلِ — فَشَيْءٌ لَا يَحْتَمَلُ

for you to return after  
midnight—that is some-  
thing that cannot be  
endured.

Mah. qah. 151,9

Hence, the **أَمَّا** construction followed by **فَ** may develop into rather long and complex expressions:

أَمَّا أَنَّهُمْ بِهَذِهِ السَّرَايَا الَّتِي  
بَدَأَتْ بَعْدَ سِتَّةِ أَشْهُرٍ مِنْ مَقَامِهِمْ  
بِالْمَدِينَةِ وَالَّتِي أَشْتَرَكَ فِيهَا الْمُهَاجِرُونَ  
وَعَدَهُمْ كَانُوا يَقْصِدُونَ حَرْبَ قُرَيْشٍ  
وَفَزَوْ قَوَافِلَهَا فَذَلِكَ مَا يَقِفُ  
الْإِنْسَانُ التَّرَدُّدَ وَالتَّفَكُّيرَ

but the fact that they,  
with these riding parties  
which they began after  
having been in Medina  
six months and in which  
only Emigrants took part,  
aimed only at fighting  
the Koreish and at  
riding their caravans is  
something about which the  
people are skeptical.

Hai. sir. 244,11

**أَمَّا** is frequently used in correlative constructions to emphasize correlative nouns or circumstances, and it may likewise emphasize correlative subordinate clauses within the construction. In these instances, **أَمَّا** will either introduce the last correlative part:

إِذَا شَعَرَ الْإِنْسَانُ بِكُلِّ هَذِهِ  
الْأُمُورِ بَلَغَ مُنْتَصَفَ طَرِيقِ الْكَمَالِ  
أَمَّا إِذَا شَاءَ بُلُوغَ مَحْجَةِ الْكَمَالِ  
فَعَلَيْهِ أَنْ شَعَرَ بِكَيْانِهِ

When man feels all this,  
he has reached halfway  
to perfection, but if  
he wants to attain per-  
fection, he must be aware  
of his nature.

Gibr. III, 212,11

إِنَّهُمْ يَلْبَسُونَ لَحْمًا عَلَى عِظَامِهِمْ  
أَمَّا نَحْنُ فَنَلْبَسُ عَلَى عِظَامِنَا جِلْدًا  
كَجِلْدِ الْحِذَاءِ

They have flesh covering  
their bones; we have  
around ours only skin  
like shoe leather.

Raf. wah. I, 89,10

يَعِيشُونَ فِي الْحَيَاةِ ثُمَّ يَمُوتُونَ أَمَّا  
نَحْنُ فَعَمِيشُنَا هُوَ سَكَرَاتُ الْمَوْتِ  
إِلَى أَنْ نَمُوتَ

They enjoy life, then they  
die; for us, however, our  
life is an agony of death  
until we die.

Raf. wah. I, 89,12



شَرِبَ كَأْسٍ أَوْ كَأْسَيْنِ كَمَا نَفْعَلُ  
شَيْءٌ مُحْتَمَلٌ أَمَّا أَنْ تَعُودَ بَعْدَ  
اَنْتِصَافِ اللَّيْلِ — فَشَيْءٌ لَا يَحْتَمَلُ

to drink one or two glasses, as we do, is all right; but for you to return after midnight—that is something that cannot be endured.

Mah. qah. 151,8

or it will also introduce all the correlative parts:

أَمَّا إِخْوَتُهُ فَأَغْرَقُوا فِي الضَّحْكِ وَأَمَّا  
أُمُّهُ فَاجْتَهَشَتْ بِالبَّكَاءِ وَأَمَّا أَبُوهُ  
فَقَالَ — وَأَمَّا هُوَ فَلَمْ يَعْرِفْ  
كَيْفَ قَضَى لَيْلَتَهُ

His brothers broke into laughter, his mother burst into tears, his father said..., and he, he did not know how he passed that night.

Hus. ayy. I,19,12

كَانَ مِنْهَا طَرِيقَانِ رَئِيسِيَّانِ فَأَمَّا  
أَحَدُهُمَا فَ— وَأَمَّا الْآخَرُ فَ—

Among them are two main roads, one..., and the other...,

Hai. sir. 73,4

أَمَّا نَوْمُ الصَّبِيِّ فَقَدْ قَطَعَهُ هَذَانِ  
الصَّوْتَانِ وَأَمَّا أَخُوهُ فَلَمْ يَسْمَعْهُمَا  
هَذِهِ اللَّيْلَةَ كَمَا لَمْ يَسْمَعْهُمَا مِنْ  
قَبْلُ

The sleep of the boy was disturbed by these two voices, but his brother did not hear them that night as he had not before. Hus. ayy. II,42,11

هَبَّ لَهَا الْقَوْمُ جَمِيعًا فَأَمَّا الشَّيْخُ  
وَزَوْجَتُهُ — وَأَمَّا الشَّبَابُ مِنْ أَهْلِ  
الدَّارِ فَ— وَأَمَّا الصِّبْيَانِ فَ—

All rushed toward this [voice], the sheikh and his wife..., the youths of the family and the small children....

Hus. ayy. I,128,14

F **إِنَّمَا** is an emphatic particle composed of the particle **أَنَّ** and the relative pronoun **مَا**, (compare with **أَمَّا**, Vol. III, p. 196). It has no governing action, since the relative pronoun **مَا** is virtually in the accusative case. Structurally, it is equivalent to a sentence in which the subject is a relative clause.

The relative character of the construction can still be seen in such examples as:

هَمْ لَيْسُوا أَشْخَاصًا خُرَافِيَّينَ إِنَّمَا هُمْ قَدِيسُونَ  
They are not legendary apparitions; [what] they [are] are saints.  
Hak. ahl. 54,6

إِنَّمَا هِيَ وَسْوَسةٌ مِنْكَ  
[What] that [is] is a temptation of yours!  
Hak. (Br.) 41,19

لَيْسَ الْآدَبُ الشَّعْبِيَّ الْإِنْسَانِي  
أَنْ تُؤَلِّفَ الْقَصَائِدَ — إِنَّمَا هُوَ أَنْ  
نَنْظُرَ بِالْعَيْنِ الْفَنِيَّةَ لِلشَّكَلَاتِ  
الْإِنْسَانِيَّةِ وَالْاجْتِمَاعِيَّةِ  
Composing *qasidas* is not popular, human literature.... [What] it [popular, human literature] is, is to look with an artistic eye into human and social problems.  
Musa adab. 16,6

إِنَّمَا is usually placed in the beginning of a sentence, either nominal or verbal, to emphasize not so much a noun as the definition of the noun or the action and the circumstances of the action as attributed to the noun:

إِنَّمَا هُوَ أَبْنُ أَخِي هَاشِمٍ قَدِمْتُ بِهِ مِنْ يَثْرِبَ  
He is my brother, Hashim's, son. I brought him from Yathrib. Hai. sir. 98,18

لَا تَرَعْ إِنَّمَا أَنَا كَأَبِيكَ  
Don't be frightened, I am as a father to you.  
Raf. wah. I,93,9

اجْلِسْ فَإِنَّمَا أَنْتَ أَعْرَابِيٌّ لَا عِلْمَ لَكَ  
Sit down. You are just an ignorant Badouin.  
Hai. sir. 370,2

إِنَّمَا كَانَ يُحِبُّ الْإِجَارَةَ لِهُذَا كُلِّهِ  
He loved vacations for all these reasons.  
Hus. ayy. II,174,16

إِنَّمَا كَانَ الْأَمْرُ هَيْئًا سَهْلًا  
It was indeed a simple and easy thing.  
Hus. ayy. II,71,12

لَيْسَ الْهَذْيَانِ وَلَا الْجُنُونِ وَلَا الْوَسْوَاسِ وَلَا حَرَارَةِ الْعَمَى كَمَا يَظُنُّ وَإِنَّمَا هُوَ الْعُحْبُ  
It was not folly or frenzy or delusion or fever as he thought; it was love!  
Manf. mag. 14,13

أَنَّهُ حِينَ يَصْدُرُ الْأَرِيبُ كِتَابًا  
لِلشَّعْبِ فَإِنَّمَا يَصْدُرُ نَفْسَهُ

that when a writer publishes a book for the people, he expresses his [own] spirit.  
Musa adab. 10,6

Thus it can be used with an adversative meaning:

لَسْتُ أَسْتَطِيعُ أَنْ أَجِيبَكَ! وَإِنَّمَا هُنَاكَ  
شَخْصٌ آخَرٌ هُوَ الَّذِي يَسْتَطِيعُ هَذَا  
الْجَوَابَ

I cannot answer you, but there is someone else who can. Hus. ayy. I, 151, 15

It is also frequently preceded by the subject of the sentence, which then should be considered as an anacoluthon. Since the noun functions as the subject, a resumptive pronoun is not needed:

أَنْتِ إِنَّمَا تَلْعَبِينَ بِي

You are just playing with me. Hak. sheh. 106, 14

إِنِّي إِنَّمَا أَحْيَا بِهِمَا وَلَهُمَا

I only live through them and for them.  
Hak. ahl. 17, 16

أَنَّ الدَّبِيجَ إِنَّمَا كَانَ إِسْحَاقَ لَا  
إِسْمَاعِيلَ

that the one brought to be sacrificed was Isaac, not Isma'il.  
Hai. sir. 87, 5

أَنَّ مَا يُوحَىٰ إِلَىٰ صَاحِبِهِ إِنَّمَا  
يُوحَىٰ إِلَيْهِ مِنَ اللَّهِ ذَاتِهِ

that what had been revealed to his friend had been revealed by God himself. Hai. sir. 36, 21

لَكِنَّ هَذَا الْقَوْلَ إِنَّمَا يَدُلُّ  
عَلَىٰ أَنَّ —

But this word only proves that....  
Hai. sir. 42, 2

هُمْ إِنَّمَا فَعَلُوا ذَلِكَ لِيُخْدَعُوا  
بِهِ أُولَئِكَ الَّذِينَ —

They do this only to mislead those who....  
Hai. sir. 41, 7

أَتَنِي إِنَّمَا أَفْعَلُ ذَلِكَ لِكِرَاهَتِي  
لِلتَّقَالِيدِ

that I do this only because of my hatred for traditions.  
Musa adab. 18, 1

But the resumptive pronoun may be used, e.g.,

الْعِيدُ إِنَّمَا هُوَ الْمَعْنَى الَّذِي يَكُونُ  
فِي الْيَوْمِ لَا الْيَوْمَ نَفْسَهُ

The holiday is the meaning of the day, not the day itself. Raf. wah. I,35,6

لَكِنَّ الذَّنْبَ لَيْسَ عَلَيْكَ وَلَا عَلَيَّ  
إِنَّمَا هُوَ عَلَى أَبِيكَ

but it is not you or I; your father is the one to be blamed.  
Hus. ayy. I,42,1

أَنْ أَصْدَقَ مَرْجِعٍ لِلْسَّيْرَةِ إِنَّمَا  
هُوَ الْقُرْآنُ الْكَرِيمُ

that the most trustworthy source for [Mohammed's] biography is the precious Koran. Hai. sir. 18,14

The noun preceding the particle *إِنَّمَا* does not have to be the subject of the sentence; it may perform, as an anacoluthon, any nominal function that will be carried out by a resumptive personal pronoun in the proper place.

These cases of anacoluthon may cause other internal changes based on attraction, especially with the verb *كَانَ*, which may precede the noun anacoluthon (see Vol. II, § 180):

كَانَتْ أَكْثَرُ هَذِهِ الْحَوَانِيتِ إِنَّمَا  
تُدَارُ فِيهَا تِجَارَةُ الْبَنِّ وَالصَّابُونِ

In the majority of shops there was only a trade of coffee and soap.  
Hus. ayy. II,11,14

The emphatic statement introduced by *إِنَّمَا* is frequently understood as being in opposition to a preceding term, statement, or another situation; thus it becomes, in some ways, a restrictive definition. Based on these cases, Arab grammarians usually call *إِنَّمَا* a "restrictive particle," even though this is not its most common meaning; it is actually used to emphasize the statement it presents, e.g.,

إِنَّمَا الْأَلْفِيَّةُ لِلْأَزْهَرِيِّينَ لَا لِأَبْنَاءِ  
الْمَدَارِسِ

The *Alfiyya* is for the students of al-Azhar, not for those of the schools.  
Hus. ayy. I,77,13

رَأَى أَنْ يَزَوِّجَهُ فَأَخْتَارَ لَهُ أَمِينَةً —  
وَخَرَجَ بِهِ حَتَّى أَتَى مَنَازِلَ بَنِي زُهْرَةَ  
وَدَخَلَ وَإِيَّاهُ عِنْدَ وَهْبٍ وَخَطَبَ  
إِلَيْهِ ابْنَتَهُ وَيَذْهَبُ بَعْضُ الْمُؤَخِّينَ  
إِلَى أَنَّهُ إِنَّمَا ذَهَبَ إِلَى أَهْبَبَ عَمَّ آمِنَةَ  
لأنَّ أَبَاهَا كَانَ هَلَكًا وَكَانَتْ هِيَ  
فِي كَفَالَةِ عَمِّهَا

He decided to have him marry and chose Amina for him.... He went with him to the settlement of the Banu Zuhra and visited Wahb with him and asked for his daughter's hand for him. Some historians, however, believe that he went rather to Uhaib, Amina's uncle, because her father had already died and she was under her uncle's tutelage.  
Hai. sir. 107,9

In this function, **إِنَّمَا** is often used to emphasize the second member of a correlative proposition, especially when the first part is a negative statement. In this case, **إِنَّمَا** introduces the second statement, to which it is usually connected by the conjunction **وَ**

a) either with an adversative meaning:

لَمْ يَكُنْ يَحْفَلُ بِهَذِهِ الْأَصْوَاتِ  
— إِنَّمَا كَانَ يَخَافُ الْخَوْفَ كُلَّهُ  
أَصْوَاتًا أُخْرَى

He was not concerned with these voices..., but he was very much afraid of other voices.  
Hus. ayy. I,8,2

كَانَ سَيِّدَنَا لَا يَغْنِي بِصَوْتِهِ  
وَلِسَانِهِ وَحَدَّهُمَا وَإِنَّمَا يَغْنِي  
بِرَأْسِهِ وَبِجَنَانِهِ أَيْضًا

The school teacher did not sing with his voice and tongue only but also with his head and body.  
Hus. ayy. I,32,7

لَمَّا انْصَرَفَ مِنَ الْكُتَّابِ لَمْ يَذْهَبْ  
إِلَى الْبَيْتِ وَإِنَّمَا ذَهَبَ مَعَ جَمَاعَةٍ  
مِنْ أَصْحَابِهِ إِلَى الْجَامِعِ لِيُصَلِّيَ  
الْعَصْرَ

When he left the school, he did not go home but went with some comrades to the mosque to say his evening prayer.  
Hus. ayy. I,56,4

فَالرَّأَةُ لَيْسَتْ مَجْرَدَ مَخْلُوقٍ  
سَتَقْبَلُ بِذَاتِهِ وَإِنَّمَا هِيَ مُوَاطِنَةٌ  
وَزَوْجَةٌ وَأُمٌّ

for woman is not a mere creature isolated in herself, but a citizen, a wife, and a mother. Sa'. (Zy.) 6,20

b) or with a restrictive meaning:

إِنَّ صَاحِبَ الْحَيَاةِ الْهَنِيئَةِ لَا  
يَدُونَهَا إِنَّا يَحْيَاهَا

He who has a happy life  
does not record it, he  
only lives it.  
Hak. yaum. 5,2

لَا تَنْهَا لَا تَعِيشُ بِنَفْسِهَا وَلِنَفْسِهَا  
وَإِنَّا تَعِيشُ بِالرَّجُلِ وَلِلرَّجُلِ

for she does not live by  
herself or for herself,  
she only lives by and  
for man.  
Q. Am. (Zy.) 5,30

إِنَّا لَا نَمْلِكُ حَقَّ سَوَالٍ كَهَذَا  
إِنَّمَا يَنْبَغِي لَنَا أَنْ نَعْتَقِدَ

We have no right to in-  
quire in this way; we  
must simply believe.  
Gibr. I, 115,4

إِنَّمَا may also introduce the second part of a sub-  
ordinate correlative:

إِنَّمَا يَجِبُ أَنْ نَدْرَسَ آلَادَابَ  
الْعَرَبِيَّةِ وَلَكِنْ لَا لِنَقْتَدِيَ بِهَا فِي  
أَهْدَافِهَا وَأَسَالِيِبِهَا وَإِنَّمَا لِنَعْرِفَ  
مِنْهَا تَارِيخَنَا الدِّقَاقِي

We must study Arabic  
literary productions,  
not to emulate them in  
their aims and their  
styles, but rather to  
learn our cultural history  
from them.  
Musa adab. 64,6

Since إِنَّمَا actually does not have a connecting  
function, it may also emphasize a main clause as op-  
posed to a subordinated one:

إِنْ أَعْجَبَ لِسِّيْ فَإِنَّمَا أَعْجَبَ  
لِهْدُوءِكَ وَاسْتِقْرَارِ نَفْسِكَ

If I could be amazed at  
anything, it would be  
at your tranquility and  
the steadiness of your  
spirit.  
Hus. 'ala. III, 207,5

## § 239 كَ AS INDEFINITE PARTICLE

The same relative particle early became one of  
emphatic indetermination always following the sub-  
stantive it modifies:

أَلَيْسَ لَكَ رَأْيٌ مَا ؟

Don't you have any opinion?  
Mah. qah. 10,13

وَلَكِنِّي سَأَذْهَبُ يَوْمًا مَا

But I shall go some day.  
Mah. qah. 59,14

لَيْسَ بَيْنِي وَبَيْنَكَ صَلَٰةٌ مَا

We have nothing whatsoever  
in common.  
Hak. ahl. 130,16

وَهِيَ إِلَىٰ حَدِّ مَا كَذَلِكَ

That is so to some extent.  
Musa adab. 162,3وَلَكِن لِّأَمْرٍ مَا خَطَرَ لَهُ خَاطِرٌ  
غَرِيبٌBut, for some reason, a  
strange idea occurred to  
him. Hus. ayy. I,19,8

Note that مَا as an indefinite particle is never written as a single word; nevertheless, the Arabic editions of books frequently require the assimilation of the nunnation into the *m* of the particle. This assimilation is in some text editions graphically expressed with the sign for reduplication (*shadda*), e.g.,

شَأْنٌ مَا

a certain affair.  
Manf. mag. 15,11

Hence, the use of مَا becomes generalized to that of a particle which emphasizes indetermination (also see indefinite-conditional clauses, Vol. III, p. 353ff.)

a) as a paronomastic repetition, مَهْمَا ,  
"whatever":

مَهْمَا يَنْسَى الصَّبِيَّ فَلَنْ يَنْسَى  
لَيْلَةً —No matter what the boy  
might forget, he never  
will a night....  
Hus. ayy. I,92,3

b) suffixed to certain adverbs, e.g.,

جَعَلَهُ بَارَكًا أَيْنَمَا كَانَ

It considered him blessed  
wherever he went.  
Hai. sir. 3,2

أَيْنَمَا ذَهَبْنَا فَلَيْسَ غَيْرُنَا وَغَيْرُ  
ظِلِّنَا وَخَيْالِنَا

Wherever we go, there are  
just the two of us, and  
our shadow and chimera.  
Hak. sheh. 151,1

(For more on this construction see Vol. III, p. 354ff.)  
(On the use of *حَتَّىٰ إِذَا مَا*, see Vol. III, p. 92f, and  
on the use of *إِذَا مَا*, see Vol. III, p. 305f.)

#### § 240 PARONOMASIA IN A PRONOMINAL RELATIVE CLAUSE

The indefinite meaning of the relative pronouns leads, as a logical consequence, to their use in paronomastic relative constructions

a) to emphasize the indetermination of the main clause:

عَادَ إِلَى الْحَبَشَةِ مَنْ عَادَ وَدَخَلَ  
مَكَّةَ مَنْ دَخَلَ

Some returned to Abyssinia  
and some entered into  
Mecca. Hai. sir. 160,10

(الطَّبِيبُ) وَصَفَ مَا وَصَفَ وَأَمَرَ  
بِمَا أَمَرَ

[The doctor] prescribed  
some things and ordered  
some others.  
Hus. ayy. I,130,12

مَاتَ مِنْهُمْ مَنْ مَاتَ

Some of them died.  
Hai. sir. 102,18

رَأَيْتُنِي مِنْ أَمْرِهِ مَا رَأَيْتُنِي

Some doubts concerning  
him came to my mind.  
Manf. (Zy.) 30,4

Note the effect caused by this emphatic indetermination in the following:

كَانَ الْوَبَاءُ يَزْدَادُ كُلَّ يَوْمٍ شِدَّةً  
وَرِجَالُ الْجَيْشِ يَمُوتُ مِنْهُمْ مَنْ  
يَمُوتُ كُلَّ يَوْمٍ بِغَيْرِ حِسَابٍ

The epidemic became in-  
creasingly virulent and  
countless soldiers died  
every day.  
Hai. sir. 102,19

b) to achieve a special emphasis:



أَمِيزَ مَا يَمِيزُهَا عَيْنَانِ سَوْدَاوَانِ جَمِيلَتَانِ  
Her most remarkable feature was her two beautiful black eyes. Mah. zuq. 32,2

or, *e)* to paraphrase an indefinite pronoun:

فِي الْبَحْثِ عَمَّا أُرِيدُ الْبَحْثَ فِيهِ  
in the study of whatever I wished.  
Hai. sir. 19,13

شَعَرْتُ أَوَّلَ مَا شَعَرْتُ أَنَّ —  
The first thing I felt was.... Raf. wah. I,111,18

أَنَّ مَا حَصَلَ فِي الْأَجْنَاسِ  
الْبَشَرِيَّةِ حَصَلَ نَظِيرُهُ فِي  
الثَّقَافَاتِ الْعِلْمِيَّةِ  
that something similar to what happened racially also occurred in their cultures.  
Amin duh. I,169,15

#### § 241 ADVERBIAL USES OF مَا

As we have already seen, the relative pronoun مَا may be used referring not only to animals and inanimate objects, but to their qualities as well and also to those of persons. Hence مَا can also be used to express circumstantial (temporal and modal) modifications of the action expressed in the main clause. As a consequence of the indefinite meaning of مَا, the modifications it introduces always have an indefinite connotation only to some extent specified in the light of the relative clause.

Cf. the use of the interrogative مَا as an interrogative adverbial in Vol. I, § 43:

مَا دَخَلَ الشَّرَفُ فِي الْأَدَبِ؟  
What has honor to do with literature?  
Musa adab. 47,14

وَمَاذَا يُهِمُّنَا أَيْنَ تَعِيشُ  
الْأَكْثَرِيَّةُ؟  
What does it interest us where the majority lives? Jabr. (Br.) 69,20

In the adverbial usage of مَا, it seems to be essential for the relative pronoun to assume an

adverbial function in the relative clause. In this instance, **لَ** never takes a resumptive pronoun.

Independent of its adverbial function within the relative clause, **لَ** may fulfill the function of a nominative, genitive, or accusative in the main clause.

Arab grammarians of Arabic, and most Western scholars with them, compare the adverbial use of **لَ** with noun clauses introduced by **أَنَّ** and **أَنْ** and give the relative pronoun the name of **مَا الصَّدرِيَّةُ**, "infinitival **لَ**." This equivalence, however, cannot be accepted, for it does not explain the syntactical differences between both constructions, such as the perfect after the relative pronoun to mean the future; this use is not admitted after the other particles. **أَنْ** draws one's attention to the action, and **أَنَّ** emphasizes the logical subject of the statement following.

**لَ** always indicates an indefinite circumstantial modification of the subordinated clause in its relationship to the action expressed in the main clause.

In most cases, the *Sprachgefühl* of native Arabs unites different words with **لَ** as if they were seeing a compound particle of adverbial or conjunctive nature. In our translations of the examples used in the following paragraphs, we shall necessarily use adverbial and conjunctive words, or even phrases, in order to express their English equivalent.

Nevertheless, they cannot be considered as simple conjunctions or adverbs, for their use is still most often determined by the same rules as those applying to a relative clause. In other cases, the linguistic intuition of the native speakers and writers of Arabic has given those expressions more freedom of use and a greater flexibility in their construction, which, however, is still not sufficient to establish them in a different grammatical category.

In the following paragraphs, we shall try to present the most common and characteristic constructions in which the relative pronoun is used in an adverbial function in the relative clause.

#### § 242 THE ADVERBIAL RELATIVE CLAUSE FUNCTIONING AS A NOMINATIVE

A **لَمَّا**, "The time during which...has been long"; hence, its meaning is equivalent to a temporal adverb:

"very long," "how long." The expression is frequently preceded by the emphatic particle **لَ**.

**طَالًا** is used in this construction only in the perfect tense and, because of its preterital meaning, it is followed only by a relative clause expressing a statement of fact about a past action with the verb in the perfect tense:

إِنِّي لَنْ أَنْسَى تِلْكَ اللَّيْلَةَ الَّتِي  
طَالَمَا حَدَّثْتُكَ عَنْهَا

I never will forget that  
night on which I spoke  
to you so long about her.  
Hak. ahl. 31,4

لَطَالَمَا وَدِدْتُ أَنْ أَزُورَ مَمْلَكَتَكَ

I have wished to visit  
your kingdom for a long  
time. Hak. sul. 84,4

لَطَالَمَا أَنْتَظَرْتُكَ!

I have been waiting for  
you a long time!  
Hak. sul. 76,4

**طَالَمَا** also introduces a consideration of the repetition of an action during an extended period of time: "how many times," "how frequently":

بِتِلْكَ الصَّوْتِ الرَّخِيمِ الْعَذْبِ الَّذِي  
طَالَمَا سَمِعْتُهُ مِنْ قَبْلُ

with this soft and pleasant  
voice he had heard so  
many times before.  
Manf. mag. 186,10

طَالَمَا سَمِعْتُهُ يَهْدِي فِي وَحْدَتِهِ

Many times have I heard  
him, alone, raving.  
Gibr. I, 103,5

لَطَالَمَا قَالَ عَنْهُمْ —

Many times he said about  
them....  
Mah. zuq. 220,18

وَفِي الطَّرِيقِ طَالَمَا تَبَادَلْنَا  
الْأَفْكَارَ فِي كُلِّ شَيْءٍ

and on the way we quite  
often exchanged ideas  
about everything.  
Hind. (Zy.) 32,4

طَالَمَا حَذَرْتُكَ الْكِتَابَةَ إِلَى بَرِيْسْكَ

How often I have warned  
you against writing to  
Prisca. Hak. ahl. 15,5

طَالَمَا أَخْبَرْتُكَ طَالَمَا نَصَحْتُكَ —

How often I have told and advised you....

Mah. zuq. 46,4

النَّاسُ فِي أَيَّامِنَا هَذِهِ لَا يُرِيدُونَ  
الشَّاعِرَ وَطَالَمَا طَالَبُونِي بِالرَّادِيُو

People in these days do not want [to have] a poet, but have asked for a radio many times.

Mah. zuq. 11,2

قَدْ طَالَمَا may be preceded by the particle قَدْ :

قَدْ طَالَمَا ظَهَرَتْ الْأَشْيَاءُ الْقَاسِيَةُ  
مَتَلَبِّعَةً مِنْ خِلَالِ الدَّمُوعِ

How frequently dark things seem to glitter [when seen] through tears.

Gibr. II,88,5

قَدْ طَالَمَا قَالَ وَزُرَّائُهَا — إِنْ  
مَرَّكَزَ فَرَنْسَا فِي الْبَحْرِ الْمَتَوَسِّطِ  
يَتَزَعَزَعُ إِذَا تَرَكَّتْ سُوْرِيَا

Very frequently its ministers...had said that the position of France in the Mediterranean would be upset if it left Syria.

Raih. mul. 346,19

B قَلَّمَا , also frequently preceded by the emphatic particle لَ , is in some ways the counterpart of طَالَمَا mentioned above. It literally means "The occasion, or time during which...seldom occurs"; hence, its equivalence to a simple adverbial modification, "seldom," "rarely," and the like.

قَلَّمَا is usually followed by a perfect tense, but the verb may also be in the imperfect indicative when the meaning requires it:

لَقَلَّمَا كَانَتْ أَمْرَاءَ حَسَنَاءَ عِنْدَ  
رَجُلٍ يُحِبُّهَا لَهَا ضَرَائِرُ إِلَّا  
كَثُرْنَ وَكَثُرَ النَّاسُ عَلَيْهَا

Very seldom has there been a beautiful woman loved by a man having other wives, against whom the other wives and people did not unite. Hai. sir. 359,19

ذَلِكَ لِأَنَّ مِيَاهَ الْبَحْرَيْنِ قَلَّمَا  
تَخْلُو مِنَ الْجَلَابِيَّتِ السَّارِحَةِ  
الْمَارِحَةِ عَلَى الدَّوَامِ

That is because Bahrein's waters are seldom empty of the boats which always roam freely on them.

Raih. mul. 199,5

يَشْكُو الْبَطْلُ وَلَمَّا تَعْنَى بِهِ أُمُّهُ      A child may complain, but  
his mother very seldom  
pays any attention to him.  
Hus. ayy. I, 120, 8

Note the meaning of **لَمَّا** in the following:

لَمَّا كَانَتْ تَسْتَقِيمُ لَهُ هَذِهِ الطَّرِيقُ      This way did not seem to  
him to be very straight.  
Hus. ayy. II, 4, 6

Compare with the following relative constructions:

وَقَلَّ مِنَ الشُّعْرَاءِ مَنْ لَمْ يَرْكَبْ      And only a few of the poets  
أَوْ يَغْزُ      neither rode nor partici-  
pated in raids.  
Djir. tar. I, 142, 3

قَلَّ فِيهَا مَا هُوَ أَجْمَلُ وَقَعَا فِي      There are few things which  
النَّفْسِ مِنْ —      cause a more wonderful im-  
pression on the soul  
than.... Raih. mul. 34, 11

(Also see Vol. III, p. 187.)

C In the expression, **كَانَ كَثِيرًا مَا**, "The times/occasions during which...were numerous," the relative clause may be considered to function as subject of the verb **كَانَ**. The relative pronoun **مَا** usually assumes an adverbial function of temporal meaning in the relative clause. Since classical times, however, it has been viewed as a compound expression with the verb **كَانَ** governing the verb following; thus in the relative clause only the imperfect is used with a preterital meaning:

كَانَ كَثِيرًا مَا يَسْتَيْقِظُ —      He frequently woke up....  
Hus. ayy. I, 7, 12

كَانَ كَثِيرًا مَا يُحَدِّثُ وَالنَّبِيُّ فِي      The Prophet frequently  
تَمَامِ يَقْتَتِهِ الْعَادِيَّةُ      spoke in a state of com-  
pletely normal wakeful-  
ness. Hai. sir. 40, 20

مَعَ أَنَّ سَكُونَ الْعَصْرِ كَانَ كَثِيرًا      Though the afternoon si-  
لنسه frequently put him  
مَا يَضْطَرُّهُ إِلَى النَّوْمِ —      to sleep....  
Hus. ayy. II, 38, 20

The use of the subject of the subordinate clause in the main clause may lead to the assumption that it is also the subject of كَانَ, and this, therefore, will be brought into agreement with it:

إِذَنْ كَانَتِ الْجَارِيَةُ كَثِيرًا مَا  
تَعَلَّمَ أَدَبًا

Then slave girls very frequently studied literature.  
Amin duh. I,93,16

Thus the use of the verb كَانَ is not always felt necessary to the expression which, in its absence, has the meaning of a present or an imperfect:

كَثِيرًا مَا نَرَى فِي خُلُقِ الشَّيْخِ  
مَا يُقَرِّبُهُ مِنَ الطُّفُولَةِ

How often we see in an older man's nature what brings him close to childhood.  
Qal. (Zy.) 21,5

كَثِيرًا مَا يَقِفُ السُّلْطَانُ عَبْدَ الْعَزِيزِ  
فِي حَدِيثِ مُهِمٍّ لـ

Frequently Sultan 'Abd al-Aziz would halt in an important speech to....  
Raih. mul. 56,12

إِذَا أَرَادَ أَنْ يُعْلِنَ غَضَبَهُ وَكَثِيرًا  
مَا يَفْعَلُ آسْتَعَانَ بِنَبْرَاتِ صَوْتِ  
الْقَلِيطِ

When he wanted to show his anger, which he often used to do, he made good use of his coarse voice.  
Mah. qah. 31,21

إِذَا شَجَرَ بَيْنَهُ وَبَيْنَ آخَرٍ خِلَافٌ  
وَكَثِيرًا مَا يَعْدُثُ —

When there was a difference of opinion, and this used to happen frequently....  
Mah. zuq. 19,5

كَثِيرًا مَا يَنْتَهِي هَذَا التَّعْدِيدُ  
إِلَى الْبَكَاءِ حَقًّا

Many times this eulogy ended in real tears.  
Hus. ayy. I,26,3

وَلَكِنَّ الْمَاضِيَ كَثِيرًا مَا يَلَاحِظُنَا  
كَمَا يَلَاحِظُ الْأُمَمُ بِالضَّبْطِ

But the past chases us exactly as it does nations. Jabr. (Br.) 71,24

ذَلِكَ لِأَنِّي كَثِيرًا مَا أَعْرَضْتُ عَلَى  
مُخْلَفَاتِ رُومَانِيَّةٍ —

That is because I frequently come across the Romanic heritage....  
Musa adab. 65,5

For a preterital meaning, the perfect is used:

كثيراً ما أباح الغرور للنساء أن  
تتركن رجالهن الفقراء

Ofttimes has vanity led women to abandon husbands who are poor.  
Gibr. I, 124, 17

إنني كثيراً ما عبطته ببني  
ووين نفسي —

that I, in my innermost soul, have often envied him....  
Manf. sha'. 259, 6

An imperfect in the relative clause may be given preterital meaning by using كَانَ within the clause rather than preceding the expression:

كثيراً ما كان يبكيه

Very frequently it made him cry.  
Hus. ayy. I, 26, 7

The expression كثيراً ما may function adverbially in more than one clause:

إنني كثيراً ما عبطته ببني ووين  
نفسى وتمنيت أن أكون مثله

that I, in my innermost soul, have often envied him and wished I were like him.  
Manf. sha'. 259, 6

D قليلاً , "seldom," "rarely," can be used as a counterpart of the preceding expression:

قليلاً ما يستطيعون أن يطبخوا

Very seldom can they cook.  
Amin (Zy.) 26, 45

Compare with (see Vol. III, p. 178):

إلا الأَقوياءَ وقليلٌ ما هم

only the strong and they are very few.  
Hus. ayy. II, 76, 17

E نادراً , which has the same meaning as above:

نادراً ما يتغير وجهه

His face very seldom changed. Mah. qah. 31, 20





هَذِهِ الْقُوَّةُ الَّتِي اَنْتَشَرَ الْاِسْلَامُ  
بِهَا سُرْعَانَ مَا وَقَفَتْ وَجْهًا لِوَجْهِ  
اِمَامِ الْمَسِيحِيَّةِ —

The force with which  
Islam spread very soon  
brought it face to face  
with Christianity....  
Hai. sir. 2,12

سُرْعَانَ مَا اَمْتَدَّتْ يَدُ الْغُلَامِ اِلَى  
اَبِيهِ لَا لِيَدُّوَدَ عَنْ نَفْسِهِ بَلْ —

The boy's hand was very  
soon brought forward  
toward his father, not  
to defend himself, but....  
Tai. (Br.) 124,19

#### § 243 THE ADVERBIAL RELATIVE CLAUSE FUNCTIONING AS A GENITIVE

A مِثْلًا, "in the (same) manner of/as," is usually  
followed by a paronomastic construction:

اِنَّكَ لَا تَعْرِفُ النَّاسَ مِثْلًا  
اَعْرِفَهُمْ

You don't know humankind  
as well as I do.  
Hak. (Br.) 39,10

قَدْ تَرَكْتَهُ وَكُلَّ مَنْ فِيهِ مِثْلًا  
يَتْرُكُ الْاَسِيرُ اَرْضَ الْمَنَى

I have abandoned it and  
everybody in it, as a  
prisoner leaves his  
exile. Gibr. I,145,15

قَادَتْنِي مِثْلًا يَقُودُ الْبَصِيرُ  
ضَرَبُوا

They led me as one who  
sees leads the blind.  
Gibr. I,135,14

(النِّسَاءُ) يُسَاهِمْنَ مِثْلًا يُسَاهِمُ  
الرَّجُلُ فِي بِنَاءِ النَّهْضَةِ الْجَدِيدَةِ

They take part in the  
creation of the new re-  
naissance as men do.  
Sa'. (Zy.) 6,36

سَأَذْكُرُكَ يَا سَلْمَى مِثْلًا يَذْكُرُ  
الْغَرِيبُ الْمَسْتُوحِشَ وَطَنَهُ الْمَحْبُوبَ

O Salma! I shall remem-  
ber you as the lonesome  
stranger remembers his  
beloved country.  
Gibr. II,49,14

اَنَا هَهُنَا اَعِيشُ مِثْلًا كُنْتُ عَاشًا  
عِنْدَ مَا —

I live here as I did  
when....  
Gibr. III,88,5

(Compare with *مِثْلُ مَا*, Vol. III, p. 187f.)

B *مَسَافَةً مَا*, "in the interval of," "in the time...":

ثُمَّ عُدَّ إِلَيَّ مَسَافَةً مَا أَعْمَضُ عَيْنِي  
ثُمَّ أَفْتَحُهَا  
Then come back to me as  
quick as a wink [in the  
time in which I close  
and open my eyes].  
Hus. ayy. I, 31, 2

C *كَلَّمَا*, "each time when...", "as often as...",  
"whenever":

كَمَا كَانَ يَحْلُو لَهُ أَنْ يَقُولَ كَلَّمَا  
سُئِلَ عَنِ الْحَبِّ  
as he liked to say when-  
ever he was asked about  
love and women.  
Mah. qah. 155, 14

تَدَلَّهُ نَظَرَاتُهُ كَلَّمَا رَأَى  
It shows in his eyes as  
often as he looks at me.  
Manf. sha'. 100, 13

وَمَعَ أَنَّ الصَّبِيَّ كَانَ كَلَّمَا بِإِحْصَاءِ  
الدَّرَجِ كَلَّمَا صَعَدَ فِي سَلَمٍ أَوْ  
هَبَطَ مِنْهُ —  
Although the boy was very  
fond of counting the steps  
whenever he went up or  
down a stairway....  
Hus. ayy. II, 5, 9

إِنَّمَا سَمِعْتُ تَقُولُ كَلَّمَا أَرْغَمَوَهَا  
عَلَى الزَّوْاجِ —  
as often as people [tried]  
to coerce her into mar-  
riage, she was heard  
saying....  
Hak. ahl. 43, 11

(شَعْرَةً) كَلَّمَا أَبْيَضَتْ نَزَعَتْهَا  
(A hair) whenever it be-  
comes grey, she pulls  
it out. Hak. sheh. 154, 8

كَلَّمَا أَلْتَفَتَ الْمَوْتُ إِلَى الْوَرَاءِ  
يَسْقُطُ مِنَّا أَلْفٌ  
As often as Death looks  
behind, we lose a thousand.  
Gibr. III, 73, 9

(Compare with *كُلُّ مَا*, Vol. III, p. 187f.)

When *كَلَّمَا* follows the main clause, it may intro-  
duce an elliptical construction in order to avoid  
the repetition of elements already mentioned:

إِنَّ قِيمَ الْأَدَبِ — تَتَغَيَّرُ كُلَّمَا  
الظُرُوفِ

Literary values...change  
as often as circumstances  
do. Musa adab. 88,3

كُلَّمَا may also introduce the idea of progression  
of the action: "the more..." rather than its repe-  
tition: "as often as":

كُلُّهُمْ يَنْتَسِمُ هَذِهِ الرَّائِحَةَ الذَّكِيَّةَ  
الَّتِي تَبْعَثُهَا النَّارُ مِنْ هَذَا  
الطَّعَامِ كُلَّمَا تَقَدَّمَتْ بِهِ إِلَى الْإِنْصَاجِ

All of them would inhale  
this delicious aroma  
which the fire would ex-  
tract from the food, the  
closer it was to being  
ready. Hus. ayy. II,50,4

With the indefinite meaning of "whenever," the  
perfect after كُلَّمَا may have a nonpreterital signifi-  
cance; the verb in the main clause may then be in the  
jussive (also see Vol. III, p. 353ff.):

كُلَّمَا بَعْدَتْ مِنْ ذَاكَ الْهَيْمِ وَمِنْ  
عِلَّكَ الْمَدِينَةِ وَكُلَّمَا بَعْدَتْ مِنْ  
الْعَارِضِ شَمَالًا أَوْ شَرْقًا تَبْعُدْ مِنْ  
الْغُلُوِّ فِي الدِّينِ

Whenever you go away from  
that tribe and from that  
city, whenever you go  
away from al-Arid toward  
the North or East, you  
leave this excess of re-  
ligion. Raih. mul. 81,20

The correlative idea, "the more...the more," is  
also stated by this expression. كُلَّمَا with the rela-  
tive clause must precede the main clause in order to  
present this idea:

كُلَّمَا تَقَدَّمَ الْأَعْرَجُ فِي السَّيْرِ زَادَ  
فِي طَوْلِهِ

The more the lame boy  
went on walking, the  
longer his [shadow] be-  
came. 'Aww. (Br.) 21,14

كُلَّمَا كَانَ الْإِنْسَانُ أَعْدَلَ وَأَحْكَمَ  
كَانَ أَصَحَّ غَايَةً

The more a man becomes  
just and wise, the more  
righteous he becomes in  
his aim.

Amin duh. III,47,4

كُلَّمَا أَوَّلْنَا فِيهَا تَكَثَّفَتْ وَتَعَالَتْ

The deeper he penetrated  
into it, the denser and  
higher it became.

Tai. (Zy.) 9,22

كَلَّمَا زِدْتَهُ فِكْرًا زَادَكَ مَعْنَى

The more you meditate  
[about it], the more  
meaningful it becomes.  
Raf. wah. III, 8, 4

When the subordinated clause precedes the main clause, the verb كَانَ may be used before the former in order to lend a preterital meaning to the construction:

وَكَانَ كَلَّمَا طَالَ صَمْتَهُ طَالَ حَصْرُهُ

The longer the silence  
lasted, the greater was  
his restraint.  
Mah. qah. 133, 7

كَانَ كَلَّمَا نَكِدَ الزَّمَانُ عَنَّا آزْدَادَ  
صَبْرًا وَحُبًّا

The more full of misery  
his fate had become, the  
more his patience and  
love had grown.  
Mah. zuq. 14, 3

كَانَ كَلَّمَا ظَهَرَ تَعَلَّقَتْ بِهِ أَنْظَارُنَا

Every time he appeared,  
we followed him with our  
eyes. Tai. (Zy.) 9, 9

The verb in the main clause may be in the imperfect to express a progression in the past and thus it is also governed by كَانَ :

وَلَقَدْ كَانَ كَلَّمَا آزَدْتُ تَوْسَعًا  
فِي الْبَحْثِ أَرَى مَسَائِلَ تَنْجُمُ أَمَامِي

But the more I continued  
my research, the more I  
saw questions rising be-  
fore me.  
Hai. sir. 20, 3

D      أَوَّلَ مَا , "in the first time of/when," hence,  
"as soon as," "the moment when," "at the beginning  
of," "when":

وَلَمْ يَكُنْ غَرَضِي أَوَّلَ مَا بَدَأْتُ  
الْبَحْثَ —

It was not my aim at the  
beginning of my research....  
Hai. sir. 20, 13

أَوَّلَ مَا نَبْدِئُ الْيَوْمَ نَصَلِّي عَلَى  
النَّبِيِّ

At the beginning of each  
day we praise the Prophet.  
Mah. zuq. 9, 20

كَانَ عِنْدَ مُحَمَّدٍ أَوَّلَ مَا أَشْتَدَّ بِهِ  
الْحَرُّ سَبْعَةَ دَنَانِيرَ

When his illness became serious, Mohammed had seven dinars in his possession.

Hai. sir. 502,10

أَنَّ النَّبِيَّ قَالَ لَهُ أَوَّلَ مَا بَلَّغْنَا —

that the Prophet told him, on their arrival, to....

Hai. sir. 497,2

لِأَنَّ الْقِصَّةَ تَحْتَاجُ أَوَّلَ مَا تَحْتَاجُ  
إِلَى شَخْصِيَّةٍ

for a novel needs personality first of all.

Musa adab. 182,2

(Compare this usage with أَوَّلَ , Vol. III, p. 188.)

أَوَّلَ may be in the genitive after a preposition:

سَمِعْنَا الْقُرْآنَ غَضًا طَرِيًّا كَأَوَّلِ  
مَا نَزَلَ بِهِ الْوَحْيِ

We heard the Koran as freshly and newly as when the Revelation had first been given.

Raf. (Zy.) 20,32

لَقِيَهِ لِأَوَّلِ مَا دَخَلَ مَكَّةَ أَبَانُ بْنُ  
سَعِيدٍ

Aban ibn Sa'id met him as soon as he reached Mecca. Hai. sir. 371,16

مَعَ النِّسَاءِ اللَّاتِي أُسْرِعْنَ إِلَيْهَا  
لِأَوَّلِ مَا بَلَّغَهُنَّ الْخَبْرَ

with the women who had hurried to her as soon as they heard the news. Hai. sir. 505,10

كَانَتْ بِأَسْمَةِ أَبَدًا كَأَوَّلِ مَا  
يَتَلَأَلُ الْفَجْرُ

She always smiled like the first glow of dawn. Raf. wah. I,101,7

E حَالَمَا , "in the moment of/when," hence, "as soon as":

وَهُوَ حَالَمَا يَصِلُ إِلَى الْقَعْرِ يَفْتَحُ  
عَيْنَيْهِ وَ —

As soon as he reaches the bottom, he opens his eyes and.... Raih. mul. 218,4

F قَدَرًا , "in the (same) measure of/as," "as much as." قَدَرٌ is either in the accusative or in the genitive after a preposition:

أَحَبَّبْتَهُمْ بِقَدْرِ مَا كَرِهْتُ هَذَا  
الَّذِي —

I love them as much as  
I detest what....  
Musa adab. 41,3

بِقَدْرِ مَا يُلَوِّكُونَ هَذِهِ الْفِكْرَةَ  
يَجْهَلُونَ حَقِيقَتَهَا

The more they talk about  
this idea the less they  
understand its reality.  
Jabr. (Br.) 70,4

حَقِيقَةُ قَلْبِهِ الْيَوْمَ لَيْسَتْ نَاجِمَةً  
عَنْ قَطِيعَةِ مَا مُنَّ لَهُ بِقَدْرِ مَا هِيَ  
نَاجِمَةٌ عَنْ تَذَكُّرِ عَلِيٍّ طَهَ وَهَوَاهُ

Today his real concern  
was not caused so much  
by Ma'mun's rift with  
him as it was by the  
thought of Ali Taha and  
his love.  
Mah. qah. 155,11

هُوَ مَعَكَ عَلَى قَدْرِ مَا أَنْتَ مَعَهُ

It treats you as you  
treat it.  
Raf. wah. III,8,5

مَعَ ذَلِكَ أَنَا لَمْ أَتَأَثَّرْ بِعُلُوفَاتِ  
هَذَا الْأَرِيْبِ الْعَظِيمِ قَدْرًا  
تَأَثَّرْتُ بِحَيَاتِهِ

Nevertheless, I was not  
so impressed by the works  
of this great writer as  
I was by his life.  
Musa adab. 176,17

G رَيْثًا is actually a compound of the adverbial  
and the verbal noun رَيْثٌ, "delay." It indicates  
the validity of the action expressed in the main  
clause "until" or "while" a future event happens.  
Thus it usually takes the imperfect in the relative  
clause with the meaning of a future projection in  
relation to the action of the main clause:

أَشْرْتُ إِلَيْهِ بِالسَّكُوتِ وَالْجُمُودِ رَيْثًا  
يَنْتَهِي لِيُونَارْدُو مِنْ عَزْفِهِ

I motioned for him to  
remain silent till  
Leonardo had finished  
playing.  
Nu'. liq. 111,8

وَلِيُونَارْدُو لَا يَمُكَّتْ فِيهِ إِلَّا رَيْثًا  
يَسْتَسْنِي لَنَا تَهْرِيْبَهُ خَارِجَ الْحَمُودِ

And Leonardo would only  
stay there until we  
found a way to smuggle  
him outside the border.  
Nu'. liq. 83,8

قَدْ دَعَوْتَهُمَا إِلَى الْجُلُوسِ فِي الْبَهْوِ  
رَيْثَمَا تَتَنَاوَلُ كَأْسًا مِنَ السَّمْبَانِيَا

I asked them to sit in the lobby so that we could have a glass of champagne.

Din (Zy.) 3,29

وَلَكِنَّ هَذِهِ السَّعَادَةَ لَمْ يَدُمِ إِلَّا  
رَيْثَمَا يَعْقِبُهَا سَقَاءٌ شَنِيعٌ

But this happiness only lasted until the next horrible misfortune.

Hus. ayy. I,64,15

هَذِهِ فِتْرَةٌ أَنْتَظَارٍ وَتَفَكُّيرٍ رَيْثَمَا  
أَجِدُ سَبِيلًا لِلِاسْتِغْفَالِ بِالْحَيَاةِ  
الْعَامَّةِ

That is a period of reflection and waiting until I find a way to become engaged in public life. Mah. qah. 81,5

But it may also take the verb in the perfect tense when referring to a past action:

سَكَتَ يُوْحَنَّا رَيْثَمَا اسْتَرْجَعَ أَنْفَاسُهُ

John remained silent until he recovered his breath. Gibr. I,95,20

It may be followed by two coordinated clauses:

وَقَفْتُ هُنَيْهَةً فِي مَدْخَلِ الْمَفَارَةِ  
رَيْثَمَا يَكْفُ قَلْبِي عَنِ الْقَرْعِ  
وَيَعْتَدِلُ النَّفْسُ فِي صَدْرِي

At the entrance of the cave I stood still for a moment while my racing blood slowed its pace and I recovered my regular breathing.

Nu'. liq. 68,9

H حينًا, "at the time of/when," hence, "when," "while":

(نَظْرَةً) لَمْ يَسْتَرْجِعْهَا إِلَّا مَبْلَلَةً  
بِالدَّمْعِ حِينَذَا ذَكَرَ أَنَّهُ سَيَفَارِقُ  
عَمَّا قَلِيلٍ هَذِهِ الدَّارَ

[A look] which ended in tears when he thought that soon he would leave this house.

Manf. mag. 53,8

حِينَذَا عَادَ الْأَعْرَجُ فِي الْمَسَاءِ  
إِلَى الْكُوْخِ نَالَ نَصِيْبَهُ أَرْبَعًا  
وَتَلَاثِينَ عَصَا

On his return to the hut in the evening, the lame boy would receive his share of thirty-four blows. 'Aww. (Br.) 14,3

I **رَبَّمَا** is a compound of **رَبَّ** and **مَا**, functioning adverbially. When **رَبَّ** governs an indefinite noun in the genitive case, it expresses, as we have seen (see Vol. II, § 105), some event as known through experience which may occur again; hence, its meaning: "sometimes," "many a time":

**رَبَّ صِدْقٍ أَكْذَبَ مِنْ كَذِبٍ** Many a time a truth is more deceiving than a lie.  
Nu'. liq. 25,7

As the compound **رَبَّمَا**, it expresses an identical idea about an action which has taken place in the past and, thus, could happen again. Hence, the perfect tense is used in the clause, usually with a non-preterital meaning:

**رَبَّمَا سَمِعْتَ فَتَى يَتْلُو الْقُرْآنَ فِي صَوْتٍ هَادِئٍ مُتَعَدِّلٍ** You might hear the calm, steady voice of some young man reciting the Koran.  
Hus. ayy. II,18,10

**كَانُوا يُطِيلُونَ إِجَارَتَهُمْ يَوْمَيْنِ أَوْ أَيْامًا رُبَّمَا أَطَالُوهَا أَسْبُوعًا أَوْ أَكْثَرَ مِنْ أَسْبُوعٍ** They prolonged their vacation two or more days, and sometimes a week and even more.  
Hus. ayy. II,71,6

**رُبَّمَا شَقَّ هَذَا السَّحَابَ مِنَ الْأَصْوَاتِ نَهَيْقُ حِمَارٍ أَوْ صَهِيلُ فَرَسٍ** and sometimes the braying of a donkey or the whinnying of a horse would break through this confusion of voices. Hus. ayy. II,4,18

**رُبَّمَا أُدِيرَتْ فِي بَعْضِهَا تِجَارَةُ السُّكَّرِ وَالْأَرْزِ أَيْضًا** and perhaps there would also be some trade in sugar and rice.  
Hus. ayy. II,11,15

**رُبَّمَا نَظَرَ إِلَى أَثَرِ بَعِيرٍ فَقَالَ هَذَا بَعِيرُ فُلَانٍ** and he might look at a camel's tracks and say this is so-and-so's camel.  
Djir. tar. I,213,6

It is very often used with a meaning equivalent to the indefinite adverb "perhaps," without any connotation of past experience, and is still usually given in the perfect although referring to the future:



إِلَى خَيْمَتِي لِأَكْتُبَ إِلَى رُوكْسَانَ  
رِسَالَةَ الْغَدِ وَبِمَا كَانَتْ الرِّسَالَةُ  
الْأَخِيرَةَ

to my tent to write  
tomorrow's letter to  
Roxane, and it might be  
the last one.  
Manf. sha'. 206,11

وَبِمَا عُدْتُ إِلَيْكَ بَعْدَ قَلِيلٍ

Perhaps I shall return  
to you shortly.  
Manf. sha'. 241,5

لَأَنَّهُ أَقْوَى مِنْكَ وَبِمَا قَتَلَكَ

for he is stronger than  
you and he might kill  
you. Manf. sha'. 33,3

رَبِّمَا مِنْ حَقِّكَ أَنْ تَجْعَلَ مِنِّي  
كَلْبًا ...

Perhaps it is in your  
power to make a dog out  
of me....  
Hak. sul. 44,5

After رُبَّمَا, the imperfect may also be used to refer to the present:

أَصْدَقُ يَا مَوْلَاتِي .. أَصْدَقُ ...  
لَكِنْ رُبَّمَا لَا أَفْهَمُ

"I do believe, My Lady,  
I do believe, but per-  
haps I do not understand."  
Hak. ahl. 166,5

As an adverbial compound, it may be used after a relative pronoun:

يُذَاكِرُ فِي أُسْبُوعٍ مَا رُبَّمَا ذَاكَرَهُ  
مَأْمُونٌ فِي يَوْمَيْنِ

It would take him a week  
to learn what Ma'mun did  
in perhaps two days.  
Mah. qah. 22,23

and to introduce a sentence or a main clause:

رَبِّمَا مَنَّ اللَّهُ عَلَيَّ !

May God bestow his favors  
on me! Nu'. kan. 71,8

أَمَّا إِذَا تَمَكَّنَ مِنْهَا أَلَلٌّ وَأَذْرَكَهَا  
السَّامَةُ فَرُبَّمَا خَرَجَتْ عَنْ حِكْمَتِهَا  
وَذَكَرَتْ مَالِبَ حَيَاتِهَا

When boredom overcame  
her, at times she forgot  
her wisdom and remembered  
the shortcomings of her  
life. Mah. qah. 163,2

or to introduce a single part of a sentence:

إِذَنْ هَنَا فِي هَذَا آلْبَهْوِ عَيْنِهِ  
وَرُبَّمَا فِي هَذَا الْمَوْضِعِ الَّذِي نَقِفُ  
فِيهِ الْآنَ

then here in this very hall, and perhaps even in this place where we stand now.

Hak. ahl. 46,1

J أَشَدَّ مَا أَكْثَرًا, "more/most frequently"; أَشَدَّ, "extremely," "most" and the like, are used introducing a verbal sentence:

كَانَ أَبُوهُ يَنْتَظِرُ هَذِهِ السَّاعَةَ  
أَشَدَّ مَا يَكُونُ إِلَيْهَا شَوْقًا

His father waited for this moment with the greatest expectation.

Hus. ayy. I, 83, 6

أَشَدَّ مَا يَكُونُ إِشْفَاقًا مِمَّا يَصِيرُ  
إِلَيْهِ أَمْرُ الْإِسْلَامِ

He was very much concerned about what would happen to the cause of Islam.

Hai. sir. 263, 20

أَكْثَرًا مَا يَكُونُ أَنَّ نَخَاسًا يَمْلِكُهُنَّ  
فَيَعْرِضُهُنَّ لِلْغَنَاءِ

Very frequently a slaver would own them in order to display them singing.

Amin duh. I, 96, 16

وَلَكِنْ أَكْثَرًا مَا آسْتَفَانَ بِهِ كَانَ  
الْبَاعِثُ عَلَيْهِ دِينِيًّا

But most often when they dedicated themselves to it, the incentive was religious.

Amin duh. I, 101, 16

(Compare with the cases of non-adverbial أَكْثَرًا mentioned above, Vol. III, p. 188.)

They may also follow the subject of the sentence or an anacoluthon (see Vol. II, § 180):

هَذِهِ أَكْثَرًا مَا أَسْمَعُهَا فِي مِصْرَ

This I hear most frequently in Egypt.

Kurd (Zy.) 28, 27

هُوَ أَشَدَّ مَا يَكُونُ خَوْفًا مِنْ مَصِيرِ  
ذَلِكَ الْيَوْمِ

He was very much concerned about the outcome of that day.

Hai. sir. 263, 20

(قَرِيشٌ) هِيَ الْآنَ أَشَدَّ مَا تَكُونُ  
خَوْفًا مِنْ — [The Koreish] was now  
most afraid of....  
Hai. sir. 169,22

تَنَاوَلْتُ الْكَنْجَةَ مِنْهُ بِرِقِّ أَقْرَبَ  
مَا يَكُونُ إِلَى الْخَشَوِيعِ I received the violin  
from him very gently,  
almost humbly.  
Nu'. liq. 19,4

They may also be preceded by مَا as an exclamatory particle (see Vol. II, § 105):

جَعَلَ الْمُسْلِمُونَ يَنْتَهَبُونَ الْغَنِيمَةَ  
وَمَا أَكْثَرَ مَا كَانَتْ ! The Muslims began seizing  
the booty, and it was  
immense!  
Hai. sir. 297,14

مَا أَشَدَّ مَا يَشَارِكُهُمْ مُحَمَّدٌ فِي  
شَوْقِهِمْ — How greatly Mohammed  
shared their yearning....  
Hai. sir. 364,18

Note that in coordinated constructions the exclamatory formular expression does not have to be repeated:

مَا أَشَدَّ مَا يَشَارِكُهُمْ مُحَمَّدٌ فِي  
شَوْقِهِمْ وَمَا يُوَكِّدُ لَهُمْ أَنَّ هَذَا  
الْيَوْمَ قَرِيبٌ ! How greatly Mohammed  
shared their yearning,  
and how greatly did he  
assure them that this  
day was near!  
Hai. sir. 364,18

K أَيُّمَا , "what," "which," in the adverbial accusative and with an exclamatory meaning (see Vol. I, § 45) may introduce a relative paronomastic nominal sentence. The nominal predicate of مَا undergoes case attraction and is considered to be in the genitive case.<sup>27</sup>

سَرَّهُ أَيُّمَا سُرُّهُ أَنْ — It gave him a great  
joy to....  
Mah. qah. 14,17

27. The genitive ending, as a rule, cannot be ascertained in unvocalized texts.

إِرْتَاَحَ أَيَّامًا إِرْتِيَاَحَ لِلْقَوْلِ ب — He found great pleasure  
in saying....  
Mah. qah. 22,18

إِصْطَرَبَتْ حَيَاتُهُ أَيَّامًا أَصْطِرَابٍ His life became completely  
upset. Mah. qah. 53,2

#### § 244 THE ADVERBIAL RELATIVE CLAUSE FUNCTIONING AS AN ACCUSATIVE

The relative pronoun **مَا** functioning as an indefinite adverbial within the subordinate clause can assume for the main clause at the same time the role of an adverbial accusative expressing a temporal modification of the action of the main clause.

In such cases, since **مَا** introduces a temporal modification that accompanies the action of the main clause, it always implies simultaneity, at the same time stating the duration of its action.

Arab grammarians call the relative pronoun in this function **مَا الدَّيْمُومَةُ** " **مَا** of duration."

The verb in the clause is generally used in the perfect tense, with the meaning of the future:

سَأَشْكُرُكَ فَضْلَكَ مَا حَيِّتُ I shall be thankful to  
you for your kindness as  
long as I live.  
Manf. sha'. 261,16

نَحْنُ نُفَارُ مَا دُمْنَا نَحِبُّ We shall be jealous as  
long as we love.  
Mah. qah. 145,22

أَوْصَاهُ بِالصَّلَاةِ وَالزَّكَاةِ مَا دَامَ حَيًّا He asked him to perform  
the prayer and to give  
alms as long as he might  
live. Hai. sir. 3,2

مَا دُمْتُ أُعْطِيكَ الْقُدْرَةَ عَلَى As long as I give you the  
power to....  
— أَنْ Hak. sul. 136,9

also with a preterital meaning:

قَدْ ظَلَّ يَحْفَظُ لَهَا خَيْرَ الْوَدِّ — He loved her deeply...as long as she lived.  
مَا عَاشَتْ Hai. sir. 109,20

لَقَدْ جَاهَدْتُ مُحَمَّدًا مَا وَسَعَنِي I fought against Mohammed as long as it was possible  
جِهَادُهُ وَحَارَبْتُ مَا وَجَدْتُ إِلَى and I battled (against him) as long as I saw a way to do it.  
حَرْبِهِ سَبِيلًا Hus. 'ala. III,207,8

and as an indefinite present:

كُلُّ الْأَلْفَاظِ جَمِيلَةٌ مَا دَامَ الْفَمُ All words are beautiful as long as the lips that say them are beautiful.  
الَّذِي يَنْطِقُ بِهَا جَمِيلًا Manf. sha'. 103,12

الَّذِي لَا بَدَّ مِنْهُ لِكُلِّ طِفْلٍ مِثْلُهُ which is necessary for every child as long as there is a child.  
مَا دَامَ الْطِفْلُ Raf. wah. I,87,2

الَّتِي كَانَتْ تَهْبِطُ تَحْتَ الْأَرْضِ which would hide under the ground as long as the sun shines and people move about.  
مَا أَضَاءَتِ الشَّمْسُ وَأَضْطَرَبَ النَّاسُ Hus. ayy. I,7,7

The temporal indetermination introduced by مَا may receive a specification through the use of a prepositional phrase with مِنْ :

إِنَّا نَمَنَا مَا شِئْتَ مِنْ أَعْوَامٍ that we have slept as many years as you wish.  
Hak. ahl. 78,10

The temporal modification may refer to a subordinate clause:

أَمَا أَنْتَ قَسَافِرَ مَا شِئْتَ أَنْ تُسَافِرَ [You] travel as much as you want to.  
Hak. sheh. 89,12

The subordinate clause may be understood:

ابْقَ مَا شِئْتَ فِي الْأَرْضِ Stay on earth as long as you wish.  
Hak. (Br.) 42,20



pronoun. On the other hand, their flexibility in admitting an explicative prepositional phrase with **بَيْنَ**, and even, at times, an easy substitution in many cases by the relative adjective **الَّذِي**, speaks for the retention of their relative character.

The fact that these compounds are only used to express temporal or modal aspects of statements of a (real) fact can be explained as a consequence of this relative character. They are never used to express actions contrary to fact or those conditioned upon another action.

A **بَيْنَ**, "when," "while," "whilst," is also used in its shortened form, **بَيْنَا**, with the same meaning and construction. It is at times further shortened, perhaps under the influence of dialectical forms, with the end result of **بَيْنَ**, which is completely identical with that of the preposition alone (see examples below).

**بَيْنَمَا** introduces an action that in some way is interrupted by the action of the main clause. The duration implied by this compound particle is expressed by either a nominal or verbal sentence with the verb in the imperfect. The temporal meaning is always specified by the temporal sphere of the main clause, which usually follows the subordinate clause:

**بَيْنَمَا هُوَ فِي شُغْلِهِ بِهَا كَانَ قَوْمٌ قَدْ بَدَأُوا يَتَهَايَسُونَ** While he was busy attending her, some people began to murmur. Hai. sir. 358,4

**بَيْنَا أَنَا مُسْتَسْلِمٌ لِعَوَامِلِ التَّأَمُّلاتِ** While I was given to such reflections, a crowd **أَسْتَلَفَتْ نَاطِرِي جَمَعَ غَفِيرٌ يَسِيرُ** walking slowly, preceded by musicians playing, attracted my attention. Gibr. II,103,16

**بَيْنَ هُوَ يَسْحَبُ الْحَبْلَ** while he pulls out the cord. Raih. mul. 218,8

A perfect may also be used in the clause when it has a durative or progressive meaning:

**بَيْنَمَا كَانَ هُوَ يَصْعَدُ إِلَى مَقْعَدِهِ كُنْتُ أَنَا أُنْزِلُ** While he was climbing up to his seat, I descended. Maz. (Zy.) 1,38

بَيْنَ كُنَّا عَائِدِينَ تِلْكَ اللَّيْلَةَ إِلَى  
الْحَبَاءِ مَرَرْنَا بِ—

While we were returning  
to our tent that night,  
we went by....  
Raih. mul. 68,13

The subordinate clause may also follow the main clause:

إِذْ أَتَى أَنْ الْعَصَا لَطَمَتْ الْقَنْدِيلَ  
بَيْنَمَا كَانَ الْأَعْوَجُ يَرْفَعُهَا عَلَى  
الْعَمِّ إِبْرَاهِيمَ

It happened that the stick  
hit the candle while the  
lame boy was raising it  
against his Uncle Ibrahim.  
'Aww. (Br.) 20,18

The temporal clause introduced by **بَيْنَمَا** may function as an appositive of an adverb or adverbial phrase which has a temporal meaning:

فِي تِلْكَ السَّاعَةِ بَيْنَمَا كَانَتْ رَاحِيلُ  
وَابْنَتُهَا مَرِيَمَ وَخَلِيلُ جَالِسِينَ حَوْلَ  
مَائِدَةٍ خَشَبِيَّةٍ — طَرَقَ الْبَابَ  
وَدَخَلَ عَلَيْهِمْ خَدَّامُ الشَّيْخِ عَبَّاسَ

At that moment, as Rachel,  
Maryam and Khalil were  
seated around a wooden  
table, the servants of  
Sheikh 'Abbas knocked on  
the door and entered....  
Gibr. I, 181,6

بَعْدَ لَحْظَةٍ بَيْنَمَا يَنْظُرَانِ إِلَيْهِ فِي  
وُجُوهٍ

A moment later, while  
they are looking at him  
in apprehensive silence.  
Hak. ahl. 79,13

The action of the main clause, when following the subordinate one, frequently seems to have a certain connotation of an unexpected event. This effect can be emphasized by the adverbial demonstrative **إِنَّا**, or the expression **إِنَّا بِ** introducing the main clause:

بَيْنَمَا أَنَا عَائِدٌ إِلَى مَنَزِلِي فِي لَيْلَةٍ  
مِنَ اللَّيَالِي إِذْ دَفَعَنِي الْجَهْلُ  
بِالطَّرِيقِ فِي هَذَا الظَّلَامِ إِلَى —

While I was returning to  
my house one night, my  
ignorance of the way in  
the darkness suddenly  
brought me to....  
Manf. (Zy.) 30,7

بَيْنَمَا أَنْتَ تَنْظُرُ إِلَى طَائِرِكَ —  
إِنَّا بِهِ قَدْ مَرَّ مِنْ بَيْنِ يَدَيْكَ  
وَطَارَ

While you are looking at  
your bird..., he suddenly  
leaves you and flies away.  
Gibr. I, 109,20



وَبَيْنَمَا أَنَا أَفَكِّرُ فِي ذَلِكَ إِذْ لَمَحْتُ  
شَقِيًّا مِنْ أَوْلِيكَ الْأَشْقِيَاءِ —

While I was thinking about that, I suddenly saw one of those villains....  
Manf. sha'. 130,14

The subordinating effect of the particle fades at times to the point that it can be used to express the validity of two different statements at the same time:

لَكِنَّهُ لَا يُحِبُّ عَلِيَّ بَيْنَمَا لَا يَكْرَهُ  
مَأْمُونًا

But he did not like 'Ali, nor did he dislike Ma'mun.  
Mah. qah. 69,3

*Note* that بَيْنَمَا may introduce a noun clause preceded by أَنْ:

بَيْنَمَا أَنَّنَا نَحْنُ لَا نَزَالُ فِي الْأَغْلَبِ  
بَعِيدِينَ عَنْ هَذَا الْحَيَاةِ مُتَنَكِّرِينَ لَهَا

while we mostly still are alien and hostile to this way of life.  
Zur. (Zy.) 18,10

B. "while," is followed by a nominal sentence or a verbal one with inverted word order. Since it always expresses the idea of a continuous action, the verb is in the imperfect; its meaning will either refer to the past or not, according to the context:

فِيمَا هُوَ نَائِمٌ يَوْمًا بِالْغَارِ جَاءَهُ مَلَكٌ

Once, while he was sleeping in the cave, an angel came to him. Hai. sir. 133,3

فِيمَا مُحَمَّدٌ وَخَدِيجَةٌ يَصَلِّيَانِ يَوْمًا  
دَخَلَ عَلَيْهِمَا عَلِيٌّ مُفَاجَأَةً

and, once, while Mohammed and Khadija were praying, 'Ali suddenly went in to them. Hai. sir. 139,21

فِيمَا هُمَا يَدْتَوَانِ مِنَ الْمَقْبَرَةِ  
رَأَى الْمَعْبُدُ سَأَلَتْهُ تَحِيَةً —

While they were approaching the burial ground behind the temple, Tahya asked him.... Mah. qah. 74,14

فِيمَا هُوَ يَفَكِّرُ فِي هَذَا —  
أَحْسَ —

While he was thinking about this...he felt....  
Hus. ayy. I,143,14

The main clause when following the subordinate may be introduced by **إِذَا بِ**:

فِيمَا هُوَ فِي هَدَاةٍ نَوْمِهِ إِذَا بِهِ  
أَهْتَزَّ وَثَقُلَ تَنَفُّسُهُ

While he was peacefully sleeping, he suddenly began to shiver and his breathing became difficult. Hai. sir. 136,4

(For other functions and meanings of **فِيمَا**, see Vol. II, § 127.)

**عِنْدَ مَا** presents the specific and concrete moment in which the action of the main clause, depending on whether the stress is intended for the idea presented by the main clause or by the temporal occasion.

It generally introduces a verbal sentence with normal word order and is thus followed by a verb. It is used with the perfect to express the past:

كُنْتُ فِي الثَّامِنَةِ عَشْرَةَ مِنْ عَتَمِي  
عِنْدَمَا قَادَنِي الْقَدَرُ إِلَى رَشِيدٍ

I was eighteen years of age when destiny led me to Rashid. Gibr. I, 113,4

وَلَكِنْ لَشَدَّ مَا ذَهَلْتُ عِنْدَمَا  
سَمِعْتُ مُحَامِيًا آخَرَ يَقُولُ —

But I was greatly amazed when I heard another lawyer saying.... Kam. (Zy.) 4,44

or with the imperfect to express the present, usually with an indefinite meaning:

عِنْدَمَا نَقْدِمُ عَلَى إِعْمَالِ الدِّهْنِ  
وَأَنْعَامِ النَّظَرِ فِي بَيْتِ هَذِهِ  
السَّائِلِ يَتَرْتَبُ عَلَيْنَا —

When we attempt to consider and to examine carefully such questions, we must.... Hus. (Br.II) 75,10

ثُمَّ يَنْدُمُونَ عَلَى تَسْرُعِهِمْ بَعْدَ فَوَاتِ  
الْوَقْتِ عِنْدَمَا تَصِيرُ النَّدَامَةُ مَجْلَبَةً  
لِلْشُخْرِيَّةِ وَالْإِسْتِهْزَاءِ بَدَلًا مِنَ  
الْعَفْوِ وَالْغُفْرَانِ

Then later they regret their impulsiveness, when regret becomes an occasion of scorn and ridicule instead of remission and forgiveness. Gibr. I, 108,10

كثيراً ما أحزن عند ما أجد طالب  
الأدب في مصر يتحدث عن  
الأسلوب كأنه شيء يعلم

I am often sad when I find a student of literature in Egypt talking about style as if it were something that can be known. Musa adab. 19,9

عند ما ننقد الأدب في مصر —  
يجب ألا ننسى —

When we examine literature in Egypt...we must not forget....  
Musa adab. 97,2

"نبر" كلمة يرددوها عند ما  
يجذب الغوص الحبل برجله

*nabar* is a word which they repeat when the diver pulls the cord with his foot. Raih. mul. 218,23

At times the perfect in the subordinate clause has the meaning of an indefinite present: "as soon as," "whenever":

أنظر يا سيدي إلى هؤلاء الأبطال  
الباكين كيف استحالوا في لحظة  
واحدة إلى ليوت كواسر عند ما  
سمعوا نداء وطنهم

"Look, My Lord, how these weeping children become ferocious lions in an instant as soon as they hear the call of their country."  
Manf. sha'. 209,15

The verb كَانَ may precede the subordinate clause, giving a preterital meaning to the construction:

مع ذلك كنت عند ما أقول نجد  
هي تقول العراق

Nevertheless, whenever I said "Nejed," she answered, "Iraq."  
Raih. mul. 23,10

D كما introduces a comparison: "as," "just as," "in the same way as," or a parallelism: "as also," "as on the other hand." In both cases, since the relative pronoun ما necessarily points out the actual and real circumstances of the statement expressed in the relative clause, the syntactical function of the compound is more that of a coordination than of an actual subordination.

كما in this compound seems to have kept its relative character almost completely, as we can see when الذي is substituted for it in a pronominal function (see Vol. III, p. 168ff.):

لَا تَعْرِفُ قَانُونًا كَالَّذِي نَعْرِفُ  
وَلَا تَخْضَعُ لِنِظَامٍ كَالَّذِي تَخْضَعُ لَهُ

They do not know laws as we know [them], nor do they obey any established order as we do.

Hai. sir. 79,2

وَاضِحٌ أَنَّ الْأُمَمَ تَخْتَلِفُ فِي  
مِيزَاتِهَا كَالَّذِي بَيْنَ أَفْرَادِهَا

It is obvious that nations differ in their characteristics as their peoples do. Amin duh. I,5,3

In comparisons as well as in parallelisms, كَمَا usually introduces a verbal sentence:

النَّصْرَانِيَّةُ لَا تَقْرَأُ بِنُبُوَّةِ مُحَمَّدٍ كَمَا  
يَقْرَأُ الْإِسْلَامُ بِنُبُوَّةِ عِيسَى

Christianity does not acknowledge Mohammed's prophethood as Islam does that of Jesus.

Hai. sir. 5,18

أَنَّ جُمْلَتِي رَأَيْتُهُ كَمَا لَمْ يَرَهُ  
شَيْءٌ فِي حَيَاتِهِ

that my expression had amused him as nothing ever had [before].

Maz. (Zy.) 1,15

وَلَكِنَّ الْمَاضِيَ كَثِيرًا مَا يَلَاحِظُنَا كَمَا  
يَلَاحِظُ الْآلَمُ بِالضَّبِطِ

But the past often chases us exactly as it does nations.

Jabr. (Br.) 71,24

أَمَّا أَخُوهُ فَلَمْ يَسْمَعْهُمَا هَذِهِ اللَّيْلَةَ  
كََمَا لَمْ يَسْمَعْهُمَا مِنْ قَبْلُ

His brother did not hear them that night, the same as he never had before.

Hus. ayy. II,42,11

لَمْ يَكُنْ فَقِيرَ الْحَالِ كَمَا كَانَ  
يُقَالُ فِي ذَلِكَ الْوَقْتِ

He was not poor at that time as he was said to be. Hus. ayy. II,54,2

كَانَ لِلْهِنْدِ فَلَسَفَةٌ كَمَا كَانَ  
لِلْيُونَانِ فَلَسَفَةٌ

India had philosophy at that time, as did Greece. Amin duh. I,246,8

اِخْتَلَفْنَا كَمَا تَخْتَلِفُ الشَّجَرَتَانِ  
الْمُتَجَاوِرَتَانِ فِي مَنْتَبِهَتَيْهِمَا ثَمَرَةً وَشَكْلًا

We became different, as two trees closely rooted do in fruit and form.

Manf. mag. 7,11

وَلَمْ يَكُنْ حَتَّى فِي حَالَتِهِ تِلْكَ يَؤْمِنُ  
بِأَلْحَبِّ كَمَا عَرَفَهُ عَلَى طَه

Not even in such situations  
did he believe in love as  
'Ali Taha knew it.  
Mah. qah. 155,16

كَثُرَتْ أَمْوَالُهُ كَمَا كَثُرَ أَوْلَادُهُ وَمَعَهُ  
بَيْنَ قَوْمِهِ شَرَفُهُ

His wealth increased, as  
well as the number of his  
sons and his standing  
among his people.  
Hai. sir. 95,13

(For cases of nominal sentences following **كَمَا** see  
Vol. III, p. 239.)

The repetition required by this parallelism brings  
forth a series of constructions in which the adverbial  
relative clause precedes parts which in fact belong  
in the main clause.

**كَمَا** with the subordinate clause can also be under-  
stood as a parenthetical expression:

لَنْ أَعُودَ كَمَا كُنْتُ أَبَدًا

I never will be as I was.  
Mah. qah. 36,15

أَنَّهُ مَا زَالَ كَمَا كَانَ قَبْلَ رِحْلَتِهِ  
إِلَى الْقَاهِرَةِ قَلِيلَ الْخَطَرِ ضَعِيفَ  
الشَّانِ

that he still was, as  
before his journey to  
Cairo, of little impor-  
tance. Hus. ayy. II,122,4

كَانَ الْيَهُودَ إِلَى يَوْمُنَا كَمَا لَا  
يَزَالُونَ يَذْكُرُونَ ثَوْرَةَ عِيسَى بِهِمْ

The Jews up to that time  
remembered, as they still  
do, Jesus' rebellion  
against them.  
Hai. sir. 81,6

قَدْ كَانَ أَبْنَاؤُهَا كَمَا لَا يَزَالُ  
أَكْثَرُهُمْ حَتَّى الْيَوْمِ أَهْلُ بَادِيَةِ

Its population, as most  
of them are even today,  
consisted of Badouins.  
Hai. sir. 78,21

When the subordinate clause precedes the main  
clause, the former may be reintroduced in the latter  
by means of a modal adverb:

لَتَكُنْ مَشِيقَتُكَ كَمَا فِي السَّمَاءِ  
كَذَلِكَ عَلَى الْأَرْضِ

Thy will be done on earth  
as it is in heaven.  
Gibr. I,87,15

كَمَا عَرَفَ مُحَمَّدٌ طُرُقَ الْقَوَافِلِ فِي  
الْصَّحَرَاءِ — وَكَمَا اسْتَمَعَ إِلَى  
الشُّعَرَاءِ — عَرَفَ كَذَلِكَ حَمَلُ  
السَّلَاحِ

In the same way that  
Mohammed became familiar  
with the routes of the  
caravans in the desert...  
and listened to the  
poets..., so he learned  
how to carry arms.  
Hai. sir. 116,6

كَمَا introduces a nominal sentence directly only  
when the relative pronoun in the nominal sentence  
functions as an adverbial predicate; thus it is fol-  
lowed by a substantive in the nominative case:

أَبْقُوا الْأَنْوَارَ كَمَا هِيَ حَتَّى نَعُودَ

Leave the lights as they  
are until we come back.  
Manf. sha'. 60,5

لَإِنَّ مَكَانَهُ مِنْ قَلْبِي لَا يَزَالُ  
بَاقِيًا كَمَا هُوَ

for his place in my  
heart is still the same  
as it ever was.  
Manf. sha'. 255,3

(أَنْ) يَأْخُذُوا الْكَلِمَاتِ الْأَجْنَبِيَّةَ  
كَمَا هِيَ أَحْيَانًا

They took the foreign  
words [into Arabic] at  
times without change.  
Amin duh. I, 182,14

فَيَرَاكَ كَمَا أَنْتَ

for he will see you as  
you are. Manf. mag. 139,13

Otherwise, the nominal sentence is introduced by  
أَنْ with the meaning of "as well as." This is actually  
no different from the preceding construction, since  
the nominal sentence with the particle أَنْ can be  
considered as being the subject (i.e., a noun clause  
with the function of a subject): "as the fact is,  
that...."

كَمَا أَنَّ النَّفْسَ الْعَظِيمَةَ الَّتِي —  
كَانَتْ فِي تَوْفِهَا إِلَى الْكَمَالِ تَرْتَبُّ  
عَنْ هَذَا اللَّهِ الَّذِي يَصْبُو إِلَيْهِ  
أَهْلُ مَكَّةَ

as well as this Great  
Spirit who..., in his  
desire for perfection  
detested the pleasures  
for which the people of  
Mecca strove.  
Hai. sir. 118,10

لَكِنَّهُ بَقِيَ دَائِمًا أَصْلُ هَذِهِ  
الْحَضَارَاتِ الَّتِي شَكَّلَتْ مَصَائِرَ  
الْعَالَمِ كَمَا أَنَّ قُوَى الْأَثَرِ فِي  
حَضَارَةِ هَذَا الْعَصْرِ الْحَاضِرِ

But it always remained  
the basis of these cul-  
tures which formed the  
world's destinies, as  
well as having a great  
influence on the cul-  
ture of the present era.  
Hai. sir. 67,11

كَأَنَّ رَئِيسَ الشَّيْخِ مَحَامٍ

The president of the  
Senate was a lawyer  
as well.  
Kam. (Zy.) 4,6

الْبُؤْسُ قَضَاءٌ مَحْتَمٍ عَلَى الْبَائِسِينَ  
كَأَنَّ النَّعِيمَ قَضَاءٌ مَحْتَمٍ عَلَى  
النَّعِيمِينَ  
لَكِنَّ الْفَرَحَ كَثِيرَ الشُّيُوعِ كَمَا أَنَّ  
الْحُزْنَ كَثِيرَ الشُّيُوعِ

Misery is the destiny of  
the wretched as happiness  
[is] that of the for-  
tunate. Hus. (Br.) 94,14

But joy is very contagious,  
as sadness also is.  
Hus. ayy. II,84,19

كما is frequently followed by *لَوْ* and thus intro-  
duces a contrary-to-fact conditional clause which  
takes the meaning of the hypothetical comparison,  
"as if":

تَقَبَّلَتِ الْحَدِيثَ كَمَا لَوْ كَانَ  
عَنِ الطَّقِصِ

She took the matter [as  
lightly] as if it were  
about the weather.  
Nu'. liq. 33,4

كَأَنَّ لَوْ كُنْتَ تَنْظُرُ إِلَيْهَا مِنْ سَمَاءِ  
أُخْرَى لَا مِنْ الْأَرْضِ

as if you would be looking  
at it from another firma-  
ment, not from the earth.  
Raf. wah. I,51,10

كَأَنَّ لَوْ كَانَ مِنَ الْمُسْرِينَ الْمُثْقَلِينَ  
بِالْمَالِ وَالْمَتَاعِ وَإِنْ كَانَ فِي الْوَقَعِ  
لَا يَمْلِكُ إِلَّا الْبَيْتُ —

as if he were wealthy,  
with money and property,  
although he actually only  
owned the house....  
Mah. zuq. 13,8

(For more on *لَوْ*, see Vol. III, p. 320ff.)

كَأَنَّكَ, "as though," introduces a nominal or verbal  
sentence which has the meaning of a hypothetical com-  
parison:

كَانَ يَعْزِمُ إِلَى الْفَاطِمَةِ كَأَنَّا يُرِيدُ  
أَنْ يَثْبِتَهَا فِي آذَانِ سَامِعِيهِ

He emphasized his words as though he wanted to fasten them onto the ears of his listeners.  
Hus. ayy. II, 56, 7

لَبِثَ بِلَا حَرَكٍ كَأَنَّا رَاحَ فِي  
سَبَاتٍ عَمِيقٍ

He remained motionless as if sunk in a deep lethargy.  
Mah. qah. 36, 20

امْتَلَأَتْ آذَانُهُ بِأَصْوَاتٍ مُوسِيقِيَّةٍ  
بَارِعَةٍ كَأَنَّا هِيَ مُوسِيقَى السَّمَاءِ

His ears were filled with wonderful harmonious sounds like celestial music.  
Hai. sir. 119, 14

The hypothetical comparison may refer to a circumstance introduced by a subordinate clause:

تَحَرَّكَتْ شَفَتَاهَا كَأَنَّا لِنَتَكَلَّمَ

Her lips moved as if to speak. Mah. qah. 135, 14

E فوقَ مَا , "over," "above," "more than," introduces a modal comparison:

لَوَى ذَقْنَهُ إِلَى الشِّمَالِ فَوْقَ مَا  
لَوَاهَا اللَّهُ

He twisted his chin to the left [even] more than God had already done.  
'Aww. (Br.) 11, 20

F أَكْثَرَ مِمَّا , "more than," and like expressions have a comparative adverbial meaning and usually introduce a verbal sentence:

وَمَعَ ذَلِكَ أَحَبُّهَا أَكْثَرَ مِمَّا تُحِبُّهَا  
أَنْتَ

though I love her more than you do.  
Hak. shah. 122, 16

فِي سَاعَتَيْنِ أَوْ أَكْثَرَ وَلَوْ دُرْتُ  
أَنَّهُ طَالَ أَكْثَرَ مِمَّا كَانَ

in two hours or more and I wished it had lasted longer than that.  
Amin (Br.) 88, 6

وَلَمَّا كَانَتْ الزِّيَارَةُ لِلتَّعَارُفِ  
فَأَحَبَّ أَلَّا تَطُولَ أَكْثَرَ مِمَّا  
طَالَتْ

Since the visit had been only to get acquainted, he did not want it to last longer than it already had.  
Mah. qah. 143, 17



اِنْخَفَضَ صَوْتُهُ أَكْثَرَ مِمَّا كَانَ سَنخَفِضًا His voice grew softer than it already was.  
Hus. ayy. II, 62, 6

It introduces a nominal sentence only when مَا functions as adverbial predicate (see Vol. I, § 7):

تَبَدُّوْكَ أَلْسَمَاءُ عَلَى الْبَحْرِ The sky above the sea  
أَعْظَمُ مِمَّا هِيَ seems to you greater than it is. Raf. wah. I, 51, 10

G مَا introduces an adverbial modification with a logical meaning of "since," "inasmuch as":

بِمَا أَنَّ صَاحِبَهُ لَمْ يَكُنْ يَعْرِفُ Since his master did not  
الطَّرِيقَ اسْتَأْجَرْتُ كَذَلِكَ دَلِيلًا know the way, I hired a  
Ra.ih. (Zy.) 23, 21

## § 246 ADVERBIAL CLAUSES

An adverbial clause, as its name indicates, assumes in the compound the function of an adverb. It expresses circumstances, modal, temporal, etc., that modify the action as stated in the main clause with which it may or may not have some parts in common.

## § 247 CIRCUMSTANTIAL CLAUSES

A modal circumstantial clause is called **جُمْلَةٌ حَالِيَّةٌ** by Arab grammarians, for it sets forth **حَالٌ**, "the state," or "situation." They emphasize the direct relationship of the clause to the part of the main clause which it modifies; this part is thus called **ذُو الْحَالِ**, and also, simply, **حَالٌ**. However, they do not go into the problem of its syntactical structure and various uses.

A According to the nature of such constructions and, in fact, to the nature of circumstances surrounding an action in general, the action or situation expressed by the circumstantial clause must be

simultaneous at least in its results with the action stated by the main clause which it modifies. This requires the subordinate clause to be, in addition, a statement of fact, usually expressed by the imperfect—as the progressive tense of Arabic—but also by a resultative perfect. Since a nominal sentence, generally thought timeless in Arabic, may be applied to a definite time, there is nothing against its use as statement of a specific temporal circumstance and thus as a subordinate clause in a circumstantial construction.

Subordinate circumstantial clauses may be used in asyndetical and syndetical construction. For the syndetical only, the coordinating conjunction **وَ** is used without any other introductory particles. Hence, in both cases, the syntactical structure of a circumstantial clause may have many points in common with a simple coordination—which may also be either syndetical or asyndetical (see Vol. III, p. 7ff.).

B From the structural point of view, the subordinating function of the main clause can be seen in the polarity of verbal tenses used—perfect in the main clause, imperfect in the subordinate—usually accompanied in the case of explicit subjects by the inversion of the word order of the subordinate clause in syndetical construction. In the cases in which this polarity is not presented—a verb in the perfect tense or a nominal sentence in the clause—only other polarities of less striking force can be presented, e.g., simple perfect in the main clause, resultative perfect with **كَانَ** in the subordinate; verbal sentence in the main clause, nominal sentence in the subordinate. These points, though, still leave numerous circumstantial clauses in which there is no apparent sign of the subordinating effect of the main clause.

They are, nevertheless, not to be considered as coordinations, for they cannot be inverted; that is to say, they never precede the main clause. At the most, they can be inserted into the main clause, still following the part they more directly modify, the **ذَوِ الْأَعْمَالِ**, and then only in syndetical constructions.

C The difference between asyndetical and syndetical construction of the circumstantial clauses is also usually neglected as though it were a question of mere style. In many cases this difference is in

reality a question, not of style, but of interpretation or evaluation of the circumstances to be expressed; in such instances, it will be immaterial —or rather of no great difference— which one of the two constructions, syndetical or asyndetical, is used.

In general we may say that a restrictive circumstance is expressed in Arabic with an asyndetical construction, while the syndetical expresses the nonrestrictive.

The syndetical construction emphasizes the simultaneity of the two actions; thus they are to some extent independent of each other. The asyndetical, on the other hand, emphasizes the unity of both main and subordinate statements. A typical consequence of this unity can be seen in the so-called auxiliary verbs, which, in such constructions, become compounds of completely different meanings from the ones they express when used independently (see Vol. III, p. 255ff.).

#### § 248 THE ASYNDETIICAL CIRCUMSTANTIAL CLAUSE

A A nominal sentence presenting an adverbial modification may be asyndetically used when it contains a personal pronoun that refers to the noun which the nominal sentence modifies. The following, however, should be noted:

a) The personal pronoun is always brought forward to the beginning of the nominal sentence, thereby causing frequent inversion of the normal word order (see Vol. I, § 9):

انْصَرَفْنَا عَنِ الْجَمْرِكَ خَلْفَنَا  
الزُّنُجُ يَحْمِلُونَ حَقَائِبَ الْمَتَاعِ

We left the custom-house,  
followed by Negroes carrying our luggage.  
Tai. (Zy.) 9,16

رَأَى إِبْرَاهِيمَ مَصْرُومًا فِي يَدِهِ  
الْأَزْلَامَ

He saw Ibrahim painting,  
holding divination feathers  
in his hand.  
Hai. sir. 423,1

b) However, when the nominal sentence is modified by the negative adverb لَا, there is no inversion of the word order:

كَشَفَ عَنْ وَجْهِهِ فَأَلْفَاهُ لَا حَرَكَ بِه

He uncovered his face and found him motionless.

Hai. sir. 505,14

رَأَيْتَهَا فِي هَذِهِ الْغُرْفَةِ عَلَى هَذَا  
السَّرِيرِ جَسَدٌ هَامِدٌ لَا حَرَكَ بِهَا

I found her in this room, on this bed, a stiff corpse, motionless.

Manf. (Zy.) 30,43

c) When the predicate of the nominal sentence is a grammatically undefined adjective or participle, the word order is inverted and the predicate, by analogy to the circumstantial adjective (see Vol. II, § 117), is put in the accusative case:

لِيَعْبُدُوهُ مُخْلِصِينَ لَهُ الدِّينَ  
طَاهِرَةً نَفُوسَهُمْ

in order to worship him faithfully and sincerely, with an upright spirit.

Hai. sir. 137,8

حِينَ رَأَيْتُ أَبَا يَزِيدٍ مَجْمُوعَةً  
يَدَاهُ إِلَى عُنُقِهِ —

When I saw Abu Yazid with his two hands bound behind his neck....

Hai. sir. 271,

وَجَدْنَاهُ قَائِمًا مُتَقَمًّا وَجْهُهُ

We found him standing, his face pale.

Hai. sir. 110,22

نَزَلْنَا فِي الْعَقَبَةِ مَاشِينَ كُلُّنَا

We all walked down the mountain slope.

Raih. (Zy.) 23,26

Here the following usage of the so-called impersonal passive participles should also be mentioned (see Vol. II, § 177):

سَقَطَتْ عِنْدَ سَمَاعِ الْخَبَرِ مَعِيًّا  
عَلَيْهَا

Upon hearing the news, she fainted.

Manf. mag. 247,17

سَقَطَ مَفْشِيًّا عَلَيْهِ

He fainted.

Manf. mag. 125,16

B A verbal sentence in the function of an adverbial modification may be used in an asyndetical construction

a) when the subject of the main clause is, at the same time, subject of the verb in the adverbial clause. The subject is never repeated in the circumstantial clause nor represented by a personal pronoun:

ثُمَّ جَلَسَتْ تَنْظُرُ إِلَيْهِ بِحَنَوٍ  
وَشَفَقَةٍ  
Then she sat down, looking at him with tenderness and compassion. Gibr. I, 159, 19

جَلَسْنَا إِلَى الْمَائِدَةِ نَأْكُلُ وَنَشْرَبُ  
وَنَتَحَدَّثُ  
We were sitting around the table, eating, drinking, and chatting. Gibr. II, 29, 5

لَبِثْتُ لَيْلَتِي أَفْكُرُ  
I spent that night thinking. Hak. ahl. 21, 8

لَقَدْ جَاءَ السَّاعَةَ هُنَا كَاهِنٌ شَيْخٌ  
يَسْأَلُ عَنْ مَنْزِلِكَ  
This very moment an old priest came by asking for your house. Manf. sha'. 184, 12

b) or when the noun known as ذُو الْآحَالِ, modified directly by the adverbial clause, is at the same time its subject. The subject, as above, is not repeated or represented in the subordinate clause:

رَأَيْتُ فَتًى فِي رَبِيعِ الْعَصْرِ يَتَقَدَّمُ  
I saw a young man in the spring of his life approaching. Gibr. I, 134, 18

رَأَيْتُ فَتَاتَهَا إِلَى جَانِبِهَا تَبْكِي  
بَكَاءَ مَرًّا  
I saw her child by her bed, crying bitterly. Manf. (Zy.) 30, 44

شَعَرَ مَرَّةً أُخْرَى بِالدِّمِ يَتَصَاعَدُ  
إِلَى رَأْسِهِ  
He again felt his blood rising to his head. Mah. qah. 110, 12

حِينَ رَأَتْ إِسْمَاعِيلَ يَضْرِبُ أَخَاهُ  
when she saw Isma'il beating his brother. Hai. sir. 88, 23

كَانَ عَدَدُهُمْ لَا يَزِيدُ عَلَى  
سَبْعِمِائَةٍ يَقَاتِلُونَ ثَلَاثَةَ آلَافٍ  
Their number did not exceed 700 fighting against 3,000. Hai. sir. 296, 8

مَا أَجْمَلَ صَوْتًا سَمِعْنَاهُ آتِنْدِ وَّاءِ  
 الْإِكَاخِ فِي مَوْجِ اللَّيْلِ يُنَادِي —  
 How beautiful was the voice  
 we could hear that moment  
 beyond the nocturnal hills,  
 exclaiming....  
 Raih. mul. 40,20

as <sup>c)</sup>ذُو الْحَالِ—which usually is the subject of the main clause—assumes the function of an accusative or a genitive in the subordinate clause. The verbal sentence, acting as an adverbial modification, always has normal word order with the subject following the verb:

دَخَلَا الشَّقَّةَ يَتَّبَعُهُمَا الْبَوَّابُ  
 بِالْحَقِيقَةِ  
 They entered the apartment,  
 followed by the  
 doorman with the suit-  
 case. Mah. qah. 133,19

هُوَ يَسِيرُ لَا تَعْنِيهِ سَقَسَةُ الْعَصَافِيرِ  
 He went on, paying no  
 attention to the twit-  
 tering of the birds.  
 Tai. (Br.) 123,12

ثُمَّ جَاءَ أَهْلَ الْقَرْيَةِ يَتَقَدَّمُهُمُ  
 الْكَاهِنُ  
 Then the villagers came,  
 preceded by the priest.  
 Raih. (Zy.) 23,31

خَرَجَ إِلَى الطَّائِفِ وَحِيدًا مَنفُودًا  
 لَا يَعْلَمُ بِأَمْرِهِ أَحَدٌ  
 He went alone toward Taif,  
 without anybody's knowing  
 about it. Hai. sir. 187,1

أَقَامَ مُحَمَّدٌ فِي الصَّحْرَاءِ سَنَتَيْنِ  
 تَرْضَعُهُ حَلِيمَةً  
 Mohammed spent two years  
 in the desert being nursed  
 by Halima.  
 Hai. sir. 110,12

رَوَّجَهَا مَائِلٌ أَمَامَهَا لَا يَنْطُقُ  
 لِسَانُهُ بِحَرْفٍ  
 Her husband was bowing  
 down in front of her  
 without saying a word.  
 Hus. ayy. I, 124,10

انْطَلَقَتْ تَبْكِي لَا يَحْبِسُ دُمْعَهَا  
 حَابِسٌ  
 She started to cry in-  
 consolably.  
 Hai. sir. 359,15

In these instances there frequently is no structural distinction between relative and adverbial constructions.

Their meaning will be different only when the meaning of the subordinate clause clearly modifies either the action or the persons involved in it.

The reason for such structural similarity is to be found in the common nature of the two constructions, both being adjectival; i.e., the subordinate clause fulfills the function of an adjective in the main clause, as either an adjective in attributive agreement with its noun (a relative clause) or as an adjective in the adverbial accusative (a circumstantial clause).

Compare the above with the similarity of both expressions in English: "I saw the coming rain," and "I saw the rain coming." Whereas the first is equivalent to "I saw the rain that was coming," the second is equivalent to "I saw the rain while it was coming."

In modern Arabic, these constructions are quite often used in descriptions:

فِي الشَّارِعِ الْكَبِيرِ قَامَتْ عَلَى جَانِبَيْهِ  
الْأَشْجَارُ الْبَاسِقَةُ تَقْبَعُ مَرَاهَا  
الْقُصُورُ وَالْفِيلَاتِ on the main road with tall  
trees on both sides and  
palaces and villas behind  
them (or behind which there  
were palaces and villas).  
Mah. qah. 16,3

كَفَرِحَ الْأَطْفَالُ رَجَعَتْ أُمُّهُمْ مِنْ  
سَفَرٍ! As the joy of children  
when their mother has  
returned from a trip (or  
whose mother has returned  
from a trip)!  
Raf. wah. I, 40, 12

نَظَرَتْ أُمُّ حَمِيدَةَ إِلَى الشَّعْرِ الْغَاجِمِ  
الْأَلَمِجِ تَكَادُ تَجَاوِزُ ذَوَابَاتَهُ  
الْمَسْتَرَسِلَةَ رَكْبَتَيْ الْفَتَاةِ Um Hamida looked at the  
shiny jet-black hair with  
its unbound locks almost  
reaching the girl's  
shoulders (or whose un-  
bound locks almost reached  
the girl's shoulders).  
Mah. zuq. 31,7

Note:

إِنَّهُمْ يَذْهَبُونَ إِلَى أَرْوَا قِيَعُونَ  
لَا نَحْنُ نَفْهَمُهُمْ وَلَا هُمْ يَفْهَمُونَا  
They go to Europe and then  
come back so [changed]  
that we do not understand  
them, nor they us.  
Jabr. (Br.) 73,18

C The asyndetical construction must be used when the meaning of the action in the subordinate clause is future in relation to that of the main clause in which the action represents a necessary preparation as requirement for the subordinate.

Generally, this construction is equivalent in meaning to an expression of purpose or finality in English:

ثُمَّ ذَهَبَتْ تَدْعُو أُمَّهَا  
Then she went to call her  
mother. Mah. zuq. 21,16

دَفَعَ إِلَيْهِ كِتَابَيْنِ يَحْفَظُ أَحَدَهُمَا  
جُمْلَةً وَيَسْتَظْهِرُ مِنَ الْآخِرِ صُحُفًا  
مُخْتَلِفَةً  
He handed two books to  
him, one to be memorized  
completely and, from the  
other, several pages only.  
Hus. ayy. I, 67,9

أَنَّهُ ذَاهِبٌ إِلَى الْحَدِيقَةِ  
يَسْتَنْشِقُ الْهَوَاءَ  
that he was going to the  
garden to get some fresh  
air. Hak. sul. 57,5

أَيُّاذَنَ لِي مَوْلَايَ — فِي الذَّهَابِ  
إِلَى حُجْرَتِي أَغْيُرَ مَلَابِسِي؟  
"Will My Lord allow  
me,...to go to my room  
to change my clothes?"  
Hak. ahl. 59,14

الثَّالِثُ رَاحَ يَحْلِقُ  
the third went to shave.  
Hak. ahl. 61,10

جَلَسْتُ إِلَيْهِ أَتَحَدَّثُ مَعَهُ وَأَشْرَبُ  
الْقَهْوَةَ عِنْدَهُ  
I sat down to chat and  
have some coffee with  
him. Hai. (Zy.) 14,9

أَسْرَعْتُ نَحْوَهَا أَقْبَلَهَا كَمَا دَرَيْتُ  
I hastened toward her to  
kiss her as I customarily  
did. Qal. (Zy.) 21,15

فَلَمَّا فَرَغَ مِنَ الصَّلَاةِ ذَهَبَ  
يَلْتَمِسُهَا  
When he finished the prayer  
he went to look for them.  
Hus. ayy. I, 56,10



مَا جِئْتُ أَدْعُوكَ إِلَى زِفَافِ بَهَاءِ "I have not come to invite  
you to Baha's wedding."  
Nu'. liq. 23,16

D As we have seen in the preceding examples, in the majority of cases a verb in the perfect tense in the main clause is followed by the imperfect in the subordinate.

However, both the main and the subordinate clauses may also take the verb in the perfect tense. The perfect in the subordinate clause has the meaning of a resultative perfect; thus, it is most often preceded by the particle **قَدْ** and presents the action as having been started in the past but as still lasting in its results:

كَانَ صَاحِبِنَا يَضِي بَيْنَ هَذَا كُلِّهِ  
مُشَرَّدَ النَّفْسِ قَدْ غَفَلَ أَوْ كَادَ  
يَغْفُلُ عَنْ كُلِّ أَمْرِهِ  
Our friend used to go  
through all this, dis-  
concerted, completely  
—or almost completely—  
unaware of his situation.  
Hus. ayy. II,4,20

كَانَ يَخَافُ أَشَدَّ الْخَوْفِ أَشْخَاصًا  
يَتَتَلَّهَا قَدْ وَقَفَتْ عَلَى بَابِ  
الْحَجَرَةِ  
He most feared certain  
apparitions which he would  
fancy standing on the door  
of the room.  
Hus. ayy. I,8,9

لَأنَّهُمْ رَأَوْا الْحَضَرَ قَدْ فَسَدَ  
بِالْإِخْتِلَاطِ  
for they saw the city  
dwellers [speech] cor-  
rupted through [racial]  
mixing.  
Amin duh. I,312,10

E The verb in the main clause, which is usually in the perfect tense, may also be in the imperfect, but always with the meaning of the present:

يَقِفُ يَنْظُرُ إِلَيْكَ لَحْظَةً  
He always stands a  
moment looking at you.  
Hak. sul. 125,14

بَيْنَ الْقَدِيمِ وَالْجَدِيدِ تَقِفُ الْمُسْلِمَةُ  
الْمُعَلِّمَةُ حَائِرَةً لَا تَسْتَطِيعُ أَنْ —  
Between the old and the  
modern, the educated Mus-  
lim woman stands confused,  
without being able to....  
Q. Amin (Zy.) 6,45

Compare the above with verbs in an auxiliary function, Vol. III, p. 255ff.

F Statements following the formular questions *مَا بَالُكَ*, *مَا بَالُكَ*, and similar ones should be considered as circumstantial clauses in asyndetical construction.<sup>28</sup> They are used asyndetically only:

- مَا لِيَجْهَكَ قَدْ تَغَيَّرَ؟* "Why has your face changed?"  
Hak. sheh. 134,3
- مَا لِي أَرَكَ تَنْظُرُ إِلَى أَنْفِي؟* "Why are you looking at my nose?" Manf. sha'. 46,17
- مَا بَالُ السَّلِيمِينَ وَالنَّصَارَى إِذَا ظَلُّوا عَلَى الْقُرُونِ خُصُومًا مُتَقَاتِلِينَ؟* Then why did Muslims and Christians fight each other as opponents over the centuries? Hai. sir. 5,15
- مَا لَكُمْ تَفْرُونَ مِنِّي وَجْهِي؟* Why do you flee from me?  
Manf. sha'. 41,11
- وَمَا لِخَبْرِهِ انْقَطَعَتْ مِنْ يَوْمٍ أَنْ سَافَرَ بِكَ الْمَدِينَةَ* Why hasn't there been any more news from the king of the city since he departed? Hak. sheh. 132,2

G An asyndetical adverbial clause is frequently used

a) following an adverbial accusative:

- رَأَى عَيْنَيْهَا مُحَمَّرَتَيْنِ تَنْدِرَانِ بِالدُّمُوعِ* He saw that her eyes were red, speaking of tears.  
Mah. qah. 121,5

28. Brockelman (*Grund.*, II, p. 473) considers these constructions as sentences in asyndetical coordination.

We, however, prefer to see adverbial-circumstantial constructions, taking into consideration that the same formular expressions are rather frequently followed in modern Arabic by an adverbial accusative:

- مَا بَالَهُمْ مُنْسِدِينَ إِلَى حَائِطِ الدَّارِ هَكَذَا؟* Why are they leaning like that against the wall of the house?  
Hak. sheh. 119,15
- مَا بَالُكَ وَاجِمًا؟* Why are you silent?  
Hak. sheh. 139,4

جَلَسَ عَلَيْهِ صَامِتًا سَاكِئًا يَنْتَظِرُ  
مَا تَقُولُ  
He sat down, still and quiet, waiting for what she would say.  
Manf. sha'. 95,8

لَبِثْنَا بَعْدَ ذَلِكَ سَاعَةً صَامِتِينَ  
لَا يَنْطَاقَانِ  
After this, we remained a while in silence, without saying a word.  
Manf. mag. 30,4

b) also after an adjective or a participle in the accusative case governed by كَانَ :

وَكَانَ النَّسِيمُ بَارِدًا رَطْبًا  
يَتَرَفَّقُ  
The breeze was cool and damp, gently stirring.  
Manf. mag. 37,17

كَانَ كَشَارِعَ رَشَادَ بَاشَا ضَخَامَةً  
وَسَكُونًا تَحْتَشِدُ عَلَى جَانِبَيْهِ  
الْأَشْجَارُ الْبَاسِقَةُ  
It was like Rashad Pasha Street, broad and quiet, with tall trees aligned on either side.  
Mah. qah. 54,15

c) and after a nominal sentence<sup>29</sup>:

أَنْتُمْ فِي الظَّلَامِ تَنْتَظِرَانِ الْفَجَرَ  
You are in darkness waiting for the dawn.  
Hak. ahl. 34,1

عَيْنَاهَا مَحْمَرَّتَانِ ذَاهِلَتَانِ  
تَطَوَّقُهُمَا هَالَتَانِ زُرْقَاوَانِ  
Her eyes were red and tired, with [blue] rings under them.  
Mah. qah. 36,22

حَوْلَهُ الْمُتَكَلِّمُونَ يَدْعُونَ إِلَى  
الْإِسْلَامِ  
Around him [were] the theologians urging [everyone] to embrace Islam.  
Amin duh. I,380,16

d) also after a single noun:

ثَلَاثَةٌ يَأْكُلُونَ وَيَشْرَبُونَ  
three people, eating and drinking. Gibr. II,29,17

29. Compare with cases of predicative adjectives, Vol. I, Section 11.

أَصَوَاتُ الْبَنَاتِ يَخْتَصِمْنَ وَأَصَوَاتُ  
الرِّجَالِ يَتَنَادَوْنَ فِي عَنَفٍ وَيَتَحَادَثُونَ  
فِي رَفَقٍ وَأَصَوَاتُ الْأَثْقَالِ تَعْطُ  
وَتَعْتَلُ وَصَوْتُ السَّقَاءِ يَتَغَنَّى بِبَيْعِ  
الْمَاءِ وَصَوْتُ الْحَذِي يَزْجُرُ جَمَارَهُ  
أَوْ بَغْلَهُ أَوْ قَرَسَهُ وَصَوْتُ الْعَرَبَةِ  
تَثُرُ عَجَلَاتَهَا أَرَا —

Voices of women quarreling,  
of men calling to each  
other roughly but conversing  
in a friendly manner, the  
noise of loads being put  
down or carried, the cries  
of the water carriers  
praising their water in  
order to sell it, of a  
coachdriver scolding his  
donkey, mule, or horse,  
the noise of a cart with  
squeaking wheels....  
Hus. ayy. II, 4, 14

ثَلَاثَةٌ يَمَالِئُونَ الشَّعْبَ —

Three, helping the people....  
Raih. mul. 374, 10

H We should also mention here constructions in which a noun is introduced by the demonstrative adverb *إِذَا* with an interjectional function; the noun is either in the nominative, or in the genitive case after the preposition *بِ* (see Vol. II, § 126):

فَإِذَا بِالْعَجُولِ ضَمَنْ حَظِيرَةٍ  
وَاسِعَةٍ مَوْقِعَةً بِالْحَبَالِ يَحْفَرُهَا  
أَحَدُ الرُّهْبَانِ وَفِي يَدِهِ نَبُوتٌ

And there his ox was tied  
with ropes in a wide shed  
while one of the priests  
was watching over it, a  
club in his hand.  
Gibr. I, 92, 15

إِلْتَفَتَا إِلَى مَصْدَرِ الصَّوْتِ —  
فَإِذَا هُمَا فَتَاتَانِ تَنْتَحِيَانِ  
رَاوِيَةً مِنَ الْمَقْهَى

They looked toward the  
direction from which the  
voice came...and it turned  
out to be two girls sit-  
ting apart in a corner of  
the coffee house.  
Idr. (Br.) 79, 14

وَإِذَا الشَّبَابُ وَالصِّبْيَانِ قَدْ  
فَرَّعُوا إِلَى أُمَّهَاتِهِمْ

There, the youngsters had  
sought asylum with their  
mother. Hus. ayy. I, 124, 8

I The adverbial clause in asyndetical constructions follows the noun it modifies as closely as the normal structure of the main clause allows; thus, it can be separated from its noun by one or more parts of the main clause:

عِنْدَ مَا أَجِدُ طَالِبَ الْأَدَبِ فِي  
بَصَرٍ يَتَحَدَّثُ عَنِ الْأَسْلُوبِ —

When I meet a student of literature in Egypt talking about style....  
Musa adab. 19,9

قَامَ عَلَى الْأَثَرِ مِنْ فِرَاشِهِ كَأَلَالَةٍ  
لَا يَخَافُ وَلَا يَفْكُرُ بِشَيْءٍ

Immediately afterward he got up from his bed mechanically, without fearing or thinking of anything.  
'Aww. (Br.) 20,2

J Two or more adverbial clauses in asyndetical construction modifying the same main clause are usually coordinated by the conjunction وَ :

قَضَيْتُ فِي صُحْبَتِهِ عَهْدًا طَوِيلًا مَا  
أُنْكِرُ مِنْ أَمْرِهِ وَلَا يُنْكِرُ مِنْ أَمْرِي

I spent a long time in his company, not finding fault with him, nor he with me.  
Manf. (Zy.) 30,3

جَلَسْتُ إِلَيْهِ أَتَحَدَّثُ مَعَهُ وَأَشْرَبُ  
الْقَهْوَةَ عِنْدَهُ

I sat down to have a chat with him and to drink a cup of coffee in his company.  
Hai. (Zy.) 14,9

(الْمُسْلِمُونَ) جَعَلُوا يُقِيمُونَ قَرَائِصَهُ  
مُجْتَمِعِينَ وَيُقِيمُونَهَا قُرَادَى لَا  
يَخَافُونَ أَدَى وَلَا يَخْشَوْنَ فِتْنَةً

[The Muslims] began to perform the obligatory prayers, both together and privately without fear of harm or dissent.  
Hai. sir. 228,5

أُرِيدُ أَنْ أَعِيشَ حُرًّا مُسْتَقْلَلًا لَا  
أَخْشَى أَحَدًا وَلَا أَهَابُ شَيْئًا

I want to live freely and independently, not fearing anyone nor intimidated by anything. Manf. sha'. 161,2

but they may also follow each other without any connecting conjunction:

سَاعَةً جِئْنَاكَ نَعْدُو نَسْأَلُكَ مَلْجَأً  
وَمَخْبَأً؟

when we came to you, running and asking you for refuge and a hiding place?  
Hak. ahl. 12,8

## § 249 VERBS IN AN AUXILIARY FUNCTION

A Numerous verbs, when used governing an asyndetical circumstantial clause, frequently lose their original meaning and become, more or less completely, adverbial determinations for the verbs they govern, which in turn, thus logically become the main verbs in the construction.

From the syntactical point of view, the auxiliary function of such verbs is expressed by the fact that they always introduce the following verb in the imperfect, which verb will have the same subject as that in the governing function. This construction is always asyndetical. From the point of view of meaning, the auxiliary function is seen in the fact that it places the verb following it in a definite temporal sphere and also gives an adverbial modification to its meaning based on, or related to, the original significance of the verb.

However, we can only speak here of an auxiliary function and not of auxiliary verbs, since the latter always retain the same independence from the governed verb that they do in the usual construction. They are always used according to the patterns we have seen in our discussion of asyndetical circumstantial clauses.

B كَانَ should be mentioned at this point. Its original function has faded completely and it is now used to modify or determine the temporal sphere of the governed verb. (For more complete information on this verb, see Vol. I, § 11, 22.)

لَيْسَ has completely lost its temporal meaning; it is only used with that of the present and frequently is equivalent to a negative particle. (For additional information on its usage, see Vol. I, § 11, 33.)

C أَصْبَحَ, "to enter upon morning", أَصْبَحَ, "to enter into evening" are verbs that in some especially common constructions have dropped their original meanings and have become auxiliary verbs meaning "to become" —with or without any temporal connotation— followed by a verb in the imperfect used asyndetically:

أَصْبَحْتُ لَا أَدْرِي — I no longer know....  
Manf. sha'. 63,2

أَصَبَحْتُ أَحَابِيشِي لَكَ طِفْلَةً لَا  
تَلْدُ لَكَ آلَانَ

My stories to you when  
you were a child do not  
interest you now.  
Qal. (Zy.) 21,18

أَمْسَى الْقَوْمُ يَنْتَظِرُونَ مَا أَلَّهُ  
فَاعِلٌ بِالْوَلِيدِ فَلَمَّا أَصْبَحَ —

The people spent the night  
waiting for what God would  
do to al-Walid, but on the  
following morning....  
Hai. sir. 125,12

أَصَبَحْتُ لَا تَكْتُبِينَ إِلَيَّ حَرْفًا وَاحِدًا

You no longer write to me  
[even] a single word.  
Manf. mag. 174,14

*Note, however, the following syndetical construction:*

ثَلَاثَةٌ يُعَالِمُونَ الشَّعْبَ الَّذِي  
أَصْبَحَ وَبِيْدِهِ التَّاجُ

Three, helping the people  
who had become the crown  
in its hands.  
Raih. mul. 374,10

D Other verbs used in a similar way are:

بَقِيَ "to remain," "to continue"

قَدْ بَقِيَ يُحَدِّثُنِي عَنْكَ نَعْوَى  
السَّاعَةِ

He kept talking to me  
about you for almost an  
hour. Nu'. liq. 13,16

بَقِيتُ أَفْعَلُ كُلَّ ذَلِكَ

I went on doing all this.  
Gibr. I, 164,2

حَتَّى أَبُو بَكْرٍ — قَدْ بَقِيَ لَا  
يَعْرِفُ مِنَ الْأَمْرِ إِلَّا قَلِيلًا

Even Abu Bakr...knew only  
little about the matter.  
Hai. sir. 210,9

مَضَى "to go," "to go on"

هَكَذَا مَضَى يُحَارِثُ نَفْسَهُ

Thus he went on talking  
to himself.  
Mah. qah. 112,3

مَضَى يَشْتُمْنِي

He went on abusing me.  
Maz. (Zy.) 1,27

- صَارَ "to become," "to begin"  
 صَارَ يَتَرَدَّدُ عَلَى بَيْتِهَا كُلِّ خَمِيسٍ He began to visit her house every Thursday.  
 Mah. qah. 12,9
- صَرَتْ بِهِمُ الْأَطْفَالُ I began to humor them....  
 Hak. ahl. 74,14
- ظَلَّ "to continue"  
 فَقَدْ ظَلَّتْ تَعْمَلُ وَتَنْتَشِرُ مُؤَثَرَةٌ فِي الْبِلَادِ الْمَفْتُوحَةِ For they continued acting and spreading their influence on the conquered countries.  
 Amin duh. I,1,12
- ظَلَّتْ هَذِهِ الْأَفْكَارُ تَتَرَاخَمُ عَلَى فِكْرَتِي وَتَتَسَاهَمُ عَوَاطِفِي My thoughts and feelings were in great confusion....  
 Gibr. I,133,9
- دَامَ "to last"  
 مَا دَامَ ذَلِكَ لَمْ يَحْدُثْ — As long as this did not happen....  
 Hai. sir. 151,5
- مَا دَامَ الْمُسْتَقْبَلُ يُعْرِينَا — As long as the future interests us....  
 Hind. (Zy.) 32,15

*Note* that it may also be followed by a resultative perfect:

- أَنْتَ أَيْضًا مَا دُمْتَ قَدْ سَأَلْتَنِي شِقْتِي وَقُرْبِي You, also, since you asked for my confidence and to be near me.  
 Hak. sul. 71,9
- وَمَا دُمْنَا قَدْ وَصَفْنَا رَحْمَةَ الْمَالِ Since we have described the mercy of wealth....  
 Raf. wah. III,14,9

(For more on this construction see Vol. III, p. 231ff.)

اسْتَمَرَّ "to stay," "to persevere"



— اِسْتَمَرَ الْكَوْنَت يَقُولُ The Count went on saying....  
Manf. sha'. 216,8

عَادَ "to return, "to repeat"

عَادَتْ تَقُولُ بِهَدْوٍ She quietly spoke again.  
Gibr. I, 121, 1

مَا عُدْتُ أَعْرِفُ عَنْهُ شَيْئًا and I did not hear from  
him again.  
Nu'. liq. 46, 10

عُدْتُ أَحْسَسُ مَرَّةً أُخْرَى — On another occasion I  
again felt that....  
Kam. (Zy.) 4, 30

وَلَمْ أَعُدْ أَعْلَمَ بَعْدَ ذَلِكَ مِنْ أَمْرِهَا شَيْئًا After this I did not  
learn anything more from  
her. Manf. (Zy.) 30, 25

*Note the ellipsis in the following:*

ثُمَّ سَكَتَ قَلِيلًا قَلِيلًا حَتَّى لَمْ يَعُدْ إِلَّا صَرْخَةً خَافِتَةً قَصِيْرَةً  
مِنْ أَنْ لَانَ to time.  
Qal. (Zy.) 21, 53

كَانَ "to be on the point of"

كُذِّتُ أَخَذْتُ بِهَذَا الرَّأْيِ I almost accepted this  
opinion.  
Hai. sir. 25, 13

حَتَّى كُذِّتُ أَسْقَطُ to the point that I al-  
most fell down.  
Hus. ayy. I, 103, 10

لَمَّا عَرَفَتْهُ كَانَ يُغْشَى عَلَيْهَا When she learned of it,  
she almost fainted.  
Hai. sir. 359, 14

— مَا كَانَ يَصِلُ الْبَسْتَانِيَّ The gardener had hardly  
arrived...I had hardly  
started to....  
Qal. (Zy.) 21, 36

مَا كَادُوا يَلْبِغُونَ بِهِ بَابَ الدَّارِ  
حَتَّى —

They had barely reached  
the door with him....  
Hus. ayy. I, 134, 12

وَإِذْ كَانَتْ الْحُرُوبُ فِي صَدْرِ  
الْإِسْلَامِ تَكَادَ تَكُونُ دَائِمَةً وَكَانَ  
النَّصْرُ لِلْمُسْلِمِينَ يَكَادُ يَكُونُ مُتَلَاحًا  
مُطْرَدًا وَالْبِلَادُ الْمَفْتُوحَةُ وَالْأُمَمُ  
الْمَغْلُوبَةُ لَا تَكَادُ تُعَدُّ —

Since Islam was, at its  
beginning, in a state of  
almost constant war, with  
the Muslims almost con-  
tinuously victorious and  
the countries conquered  
and peoples subjugated  
almost countless....  
Amin duh. I, 82, 5

لَيْتَ "to continue," "to wait"

لَيْتَ لَا يُجِيبُهُ

He did not answer him for  
a while.  
Raf. wah. I, 260, 14

رَاحَ "to go away," "to begin"

رَاحَتْ تَدَخِّنْ

She began to smoke.  
Mah. zuq. 182, 3

رَحَّتْ أَخْشَى أَصْطِدَامًا بَيْنَهُ  
وَبَيْنَ شَقِيقَتِهِ

I began to fear a bitter  
scene between him and  
his sister.  
Nu'. liq. 49, 3

رَحَّتْ أَقْلَبُهُ

I began to inspect it.  
Maz. (Zy.) 1, 4

إِنْطَلَقَ "to be loose," "to hurry"

إِنْطَلَقَتْ تَبْكِي

She burst into tears.  
Hai. sir. 359, 15

فَتِيَ "to desist," "to cease"

الَّذِي مَا فَتِيَ يَذْكُرُ —

who still remembers....  
Tai. (Zy.) 9, 37

زَالَ "to cease," always used in a negative  
construction:

مَا زِلْتُ أَكْتُمُهُ

I have kept it secret.  
Manf. sha'. 215, 9

بَيْتُ الْقُدْسِ كَانَ مَا يَزَالُ بِأَيْدِي  
الرُّومِ Jerusalem still was in the  
hands of Byzantium.  
Hai. sir. 511,3

E In negative statements the negative adverb, as we have seen (also refer to examples given immediately below), usually modifies only the subordinate verb and thus is placed immediately preceding it:

ثُمَّ زَادَ بِصَوْتٍ مُنْخَفِضٍ يَكَادُ لَا  
يَسْمَعُ — Then he continued in a low  
voice which could hardly  
be heard....  
Gibr. I, 160, 19

لَيْتَ لَا يُجِيبُهُ He did not answer him for  
a while. Raf. wah. I, 260, 14

إِذَا كُنَّا لَا نَبْدَأُ بِنَفْسِنَا فَ — If we do not begin with our-  
selves then....  
Raih. mul. 79, 2

نَحْنُ الَّذِينَ — نَكَادُ لَا نَعْرِفُ  
شَيْئًا مِنْ مَعِيشَةِ سُكَّانِ الْقَرْيِ We who..., know almost  
nothing of the life of  
the villagers.  
Gibr. I, 76, 11

أَصَبَحْتُ لَا تَكْتُبِينَ إِلَيَّ حَرْفًا وَاحِدًا You do not write to me  
anymore, not [even] a  
single line.  
Manf. mag. 174, 14

With some auxiliary verbs, however, the negative adverb may be brought forward to precede the complete expression without actual change in meaning:

مَا بَقِيَتْ أَسْمَعُهُ I did not hear from him  
again. Nu'. liq. 10, 17

مَا كَادَ الرَّجُلُ يَسْمَعُهَا حَتَّى  
أَهْتَزَّ The man had scarcely heard  
her when he began to shake.  
Tai. (Zy.) 34, 5

وَلَمْ يَكَدْ يَدْخُلُ الدَّارَ حَتَّى — He had hardly entered the  
house when....  
Hus. ayy. I, 40, 2

قَالَ بِصَوْتٍ لَا يَكَادُ يُسْمَعُ — He said in a voice that  
almost could not be  
heard.... Mah. qah. 91, 2

لَا تَكَادُ تَجِدُ فِي شُعَرَاءِ  
الْجَاهِلِيَّةِ شَاعِرًا — Among the poets of pre-Islamic times you can hardly find a single one.... Djir. tar. I,168,2

F In correlative disjunctive expressions when the second part includes the same verb as the first but is modified by a verb in an auxiliary function, both parts can be expressed as complete sentences:

دُونَ أَنْ يَرَى أَوْ يَكَادَ يَرَى شَيْئًا without seeing anything, or almost anything.  
Hus. ayy. I,31,5

لَا يَحْفِلُ بِهِمْ أَحَدٌ أَوْ لَا يَكَادُ يَحْفِلُ بِهِمْ أَحَدٌ without anyone's, or almost anyone's paying attention to them.  
Hus. ayy. I,79,5

أَمَّا النِّسَاءُ وَغَاةُ النَّاسِ فَلَمْ يَحْفَلُوا بِهَذَا أَوْ لَمْ يَكَادُوا يَحْفَلُونَ بِهِ But women and the common people were not, or practically not, disturbed by this.  
Hus. ayy. I,107,13

but it may also be expressed as an elliptical sentence without the repetition of the subordinate verb. This construction is especially common with كَادَ :

وَلَكِنَّهُ كَانَ فِيمَا خَلَا ذَلِكَ مِنْ أَوَاقَاتِ السَّنَةِ خَلَاءً أَوْ يَكَادُ But except on these occasions during the year, it was completely, or almost completely, deserted. Hai. sir. 89,4

حَتَّى بَلَغَ الشَّابَّ أَوْ كَادَ when he had not quite reached manhood.  
Hus. 'ala. I,1,11

هَوَتْ أَوْ كَادَتْ She fell or almost fell.  
Hus. ayy. I,134,1

Note the following:

أَسْكُتْ وَلَا تَزِدْ Don't say another word.  
Manf. sha'. 186,3

(كَانَ) يُصِيبُ الْغُلَامَانِ مِنْ هَذَا  
الْعَمَلِ — مَا يَتِيحُ لِأُسْرَتَيْهِمَا قُوَّةَ  
يُقِيمُ الْآوَدَ وَلَا يَكَادُ

The two boys obtained from  
this work...which offered  
their family food that  
hardly provided [enough]  
means of subsistence.  
Hus. (Br.) 100,14

The auxiliary verb may also be used parenthetically  
within the first member of the disjunction:

قَصَرُوا حَيَاتَهُمْ وَأَشْعَارَهُمْ أَوْ  
كَادُوا عَلَى الْمُلُوكِ أَوْ الْأَمْثَرَاءِ

They have limited their  
[own] lives and composi-  
tions almost completely  
to kings and princes.  
Musa adab. 7,2

G On the other hand, when a verb in an auxiliary  
function governs two subordinate verbs, it is usually  
not repeated:

صَرْتُ بِهِمُ الْأَطْفَالَ وَأَسْتَدْرِجُهُمْ

I began to humor them and  
to insinuate myself [into  
their good graces].  
Hak. ahl. 74,14

هُمْ لَا يَكَادُونَ يُحَسِّنُونَ أَوْ  
يَعْقِلُونَ أَنَّ —

They hardly feel or under-  
stand that....  
Musa adab. 8,9

لَسْتُ هُنَا أَقْدَحُ أَوْ أَمْدَحُ هَذِهِ  
الْوُجُودِيَّةَ

Here I am not reproving  
or praising Existentialism.  
Musa adab. 108,3

عُرِّمَ مَا يَزَالُ يُكَلِّمُ النَّاسَ وَيَقْنَعُهُمْ  
بِأَنَّ —

Omar went on talking to  
the people and persuading  
them that....  
Hai. sir. 507,2

*Note* in negative constructions:

فَمَا بَقِيتُ أَسْمَعُهُ وَلَا أَرَاهُ

I did not hear from him  
or see him again.  
Nu'. liq. 10,17

The auxiliary verb is not repeated even in in-  
stances when the subordinate verbs have different  
subjects:

ظَلَّتْ هَذِهِ الْأَفْكَارُ تَتَرَاخَمُ عَلَى  
فِكْرَتِي وَتَتَسَاهَمُ عَوَاطِفِي — My thoughts and feelings  
were in great confusion....  
Gibr. I, 130, 9

H Although the use of the imperfect in the main clause is not uncommon in asyndetical circumstantial constructions (see Vol. III, p. 250), we may consider characteristic of the verbs in an auxiliary function their freedom to be used in the imperfect, even in cases in which a normal adverbial construction would perhaps take the perfect tense:

رَوَائِحُ غَرِيبَةٍ مَعْقَدَةٌ لَا يَكَادُ  
صَاحِبُنَا يَحَقِّقُهَا strange and entangled  
odors, which our friend  
could hardly identify.  
Hus. ayy. II, 4, 1

إِنِّي أَكَادُ أَرَى الْوُصُولَ إِلَيْهَا  
سَّتَحِيلًا I almost have the impres-  
sion that it is impossible  
to reach into it.  
Nu'. liq. 61, 13

وَلَا تَزَالُ أَسْأَلُ هَذِهِ الْأَسْوَاقَ  
تَقَامُ إِلَى الْيَوْمِ فِي الْقَرْىِ and such markets exist  
in the villages up to the  
present.  
Djir. tar. I, 193, 19

لَا يَكَادُ الْوَدِّبُ يَفْتَحُ فَاهُ  
عَجَبًا حَتَّى — The preceptor has hardly  
opened his mouth in sur-  
prise when....  
Hak. ahl. 61, 11

Hence their use, although infrequent, after كَانَ to give them a meaning of the past:

كَانَ لَا يَكَادُ يَرَى ابْنَهُ He almost did not see his  
son. Mah. qah. 38, 1

كَانَ كَزَوْجِهِ لَا يَكَادُ يَعْرِفُ  
الرَّاحَةَ He, like his wife, never  
knew any rest.  
Mah. qah. 38, 4

## § 250 WORD ORDER WITH AUXILIARY VERBS

As we have seen in preceding examples, the main (auxiliary) verb always precedes, usually immediately

before, the verb it governs. The subject in this construction is always the same for both verbs and in the normal word order follows the auxiliary, but precedes the subordinate, verb:

كُنْتُ أَنَا وَفَرِيقِي نَدْخُنْ ذَاتَ  
لَيْلَةٍ —

Two friends and I were  
smoking one night....  
Raih. mul. 80,16

أَلَا تَكُونُ جُورِيَّةً قَدْ حَلَّتْ مِنْ  
قَلْبِهِ مَحَلَّهَا

If only Juwariyya had not  
taken her place in his  
heart! Hai. sir. 359,1

كَانَتِ الْمَدَارِسُ وَالْكَتَاتِيبُ قَدْ  
أُقْلِتْ

The secondary and elementary  
schools had been closed.  
Hus. ayy. I,127,2

أَصْبَحْتَ أَحَابِيشَ لِكَ طِفْلَةٍ لَا  
تَلْدُ لِكَ آلَانَ

My stories to you when you  
were a child do not interest  
you now.  
Qal. (Zy.) 21,18

The subject may precede both verbs:

حَتَّى أَبُو بَكْرٍ — قَدْ بَقِيَ لَا  
يَعْرِفُ مِنَ الْأَمْرِ إِلَّا قَلِيلًا

Even Abu Bakr...knew only  
a little about the matter.  
Hai. sir. 210,9

هَمْ لَا يَكَادُونَ يُحِسُّونَ أَوْ  
يَعْقِلُونَ أَنَّ —

They hardly feel or under-  
stand that....  
Musa adab. 8,9

سَلِمَى كِرَامَهُ لَمْ تَكُنْ تَعْرِفُ  
أُمَّهَا —

Salma Kirama had not  
known her mother....  
Gibr. II,65,1

عَمْرُ مَا يَزَالُ يُكَلِّمُ النَّاسَ

Omar went on talking to  
the people.  
Hai. sir. 507,2

وَهُمْ لَا يَكَادُونَ يَشْعُرُونَ بِهَا

almost without their  
feeling her [weight].  
Hai. sir. 356,1

Both verbs may also be separated from each other by other parts of the construction:

مَا كُنْتُ بَعْدَ أَنْفَكُ فِي غَيْرِ غَنَى  
I still was thinking only  
of my sheep.  
Hak. ahl. 20,12

كُنْتُ فِي ذَلِكَ الْعَهْدِ تَسْفِكُ  
الدِّمَاءَ  
"You used to shed blood  
at that time."  
Hak. sheh. 47,9

صَرْتُ بِهِمُ الْأَطْفَهَمُ —  
I began to humor them....  
Hak. ahl. 74,14

لَسْتُ هُنَا أَقْدَحَ أَوْ أَمْدَحَ هَذِهِ  
الْوُجُودِيَّةَ  
Here I am not reproving  
or praising this  
Existentialism.  
Musa adab. 108,3

قَدْ ظَلَّ أَيَّامًا يَسْمَعُ هَذَا الصَّوْتِ  
He kept hearing this noise  
for several days.  
Hus. (Zy.) 25,9

A noun which actually belongs to the subordinate clause may be used as an anacoluthon (see Vol. II, § 180) placed before the subordinate clause and thus between both verbs. This word order may occasion a change in verbal agreement based on gender attraction:

ظَلَّ هَاشِمٌ تَتَقَدَّمُ بِهِ السِّنُّ  
Hashim was growing old.  
Hai. sir. 98,1

Both verbs —auxiliary and subordinate— are also frequently separated by a complete subordinate clause:

كَانَتْ وَهِيَ الْقَابِضَةُ عَلَى زَمَانِ  
الْحَدِيثِ تَدْخُنُ السِّيكَارَةَ تَلَوُ  
السِّيكَارَةَ  
She, since she was completely  
emancipated, smoked cigarette  
after cigarette.  
Raih. mul. 19,4

أَصْبَحُوا وَلَا عَمَلَ لَهُمْ يُفْنُونَ  
الْحَيَاةَ بِجَانِبِ الْمَوَاقِدِ  
Since they had nothing to  
do, they spent their time  
by the fireplaces.  
Gibr. I, 154,4

Hence, we quite often find that with the verb كَانَ the auxiliary verb at the beginning of the clause will govern its subordinate verb in a following clause, for which the auxiliary acts as a temporal exponent. This is especially common with temporal constructions:



مَعَ ذَلِكَ كُنْتُ عِنْدَمَا أَقُولُ نَجْدٌ هِيَ تَقُولُ الْعِرَاقُ	But whenever I said, "Nejed," she said, "Iraq." Raih. mul. 23,10
كَانَتْ أَكْثَرُ هَذِهِ الْحَوَانِيتِ إِنَّمَا تُدَارُ فِيهَا تِجَارَةُ الْبِنِّ وَالصَّابُونِ	In the majority of these ships there was really only trade in coffee and soap. Hus. ayy. II,11,14
كَانُوا إِذَا جَاءُوا بِأَنهَودِجٍ إِلَى بَابِهَا خَرَجَتْ إِلَيْهِ	When they brought the lit- ter to her door, she went out into it. Hai. sir. 355,23

(For more examples of this usage before temporal clauses, see the section on word order in temporal constructions, Vol. III, p. 300f.)

## § 251 THE SYNDETIICAL CIRCUMSTANTIAL CLAUSE

The difference between syndetrical and asyndetrical constructions is, in most cases, of stylistic nature. As we have stated, the asyndetrical expresses a closer relationship of the circumstances stated by the adverbial clause to the action of the main clause, which thus can be considered as a restrictive circumstance. The asyndetrical construction, on the other hand, uses the coordinating conjunction **وَ** to emphasize the simultaneity of both actions, but at the same time it also emphasizes their independence from each other with regard to the action occurring; thus we may call them nonrestrictive circumstances.

The subordinate function of the circumstance appears, in spite of the coordination implied by the conjunction, in the fact that it is impossible for the subordinate to precede the main clause, and it also appears in the polarity of tenses; this latter, however, is not always necessary (see Vol. III, p. 271). The conjunction usually also causes the inversion of the word order of the subject when the imperfect is used.

In some cases, however, the syndetrical construction becomes necessary: e.g., when both main and subor-

dinate clauses have no parts in common; when the subject of the subordinate clause is a personal pronoun; when the subordinate clause precedes the verb of the main clause; when the subordinate clause is separated from the main clause by a particle of temporal, modal, or similar adverbial meaning.

A A nominal sentence in the function of an adverbial modification is always used in syndetical constructions

a) when both main and subordinate clause have no common elements:

ثُمَّ هَلَكَ كِلَابٌ وَقَصِي طِفْلٌ فِي  
الْمَهْدِ      Then Kilab died when Qusay  
was still a child.  
Hai. sir. 95,5

تَتَابَعَتْ هِجْرَةُ الْمُسْلِمِينَ إِلَى  
يَثْرِبَ وَمُحَمَّدٌ مُقِيمٌ حَيْثُ هُوَ      The exodus of Muslims to  
Yathrib continued un-  
interruptedly while Mohammed  
remained where he was.  
Hai. sir. 208,10

b) or when the subject of the nominal sentence is a personal pronoun:

أَتَذْكُرُ نِلكَ الْأَيَّامَ الْمَاضِيَةِ الَّتِي  
قَضَيْنَا مَعًا وَنَعْنُ صُغِيرَانِ؟      "Do you remember those  
past days that we spent  
together when we were  
children?"  
Manf. sha'. 95,12

جَرَى كُلُّ ذَلِكَ وَأَنَا وَاقِفٌ هُنَاكَ      All this happened while  
I was standing there.  
Gibr. I, 130,9

أَلَمْ يَرْنِي أَحَدٌ وَأَنَا آتِيَةٌ هُنَا؟      "Didn't anyone see me  
when you came here?"  
Hak. ahl. 160,8

رَأَتْهُ وَهُوَ عَلَى بَعِيرِهِ      She saw him when he was  
still on his camel.  
Hai. sir. 121,21

مَاتَ وَالِدُهَا وَهِيَ فِي الْمَهْدِ      Her father died when she  
was a child.  
Gibr. I, 75,2

أَتَجْهَلُ ذَلِكَ وَأَنْتَ مِنْ عَشَاقِ  
هَذَا الْوَادِي؟

"Didn't you know that,  
being a lover of this  
valley?"  
Nu'. liq. 56,10

This syndetical construction is also frequently found in other instances of nominal sentences:

أَجَابَ وَعَيْنَاهُ مُطْرَقَتَانِ إِلَى الْأَرْضِ —

He answered, his eyes  
downcast....  
Gibr. I, 80,17

نَامَتْ هِيَ وَيَدَهَا مَرْسَلَةٌ عَلَى  
أَخِيهَا

She sleeps with her hand  
stretched out over her  
brother.  
Raf. wah. I, 87,4

وَلَكِنْ مَاذَا يُضِيرُهُ الْمَوْتُ وَحَيَاتُهُ  
نَوْمٌ مَتَّصِلٌ؟

But what harm could death  
do to him when his life  
was a continuous sleep?  
Mah. zuq. 6,20

However, when there is a personal pronoun in the predicate that refers to a noun in the main clause, inversion of the word order occurs:

يَنْصَرِفُونَ وَفِي عَيُونِهِمْ آثَارُ النَّعَاسِ

leaving, with traces of  
sleepiness in their eyes.  
Hus. (Zy.) 25,32

جَاءَ مَلَكٌ وَفِي يَدِهِ صَحِيفَةٌ

an angel came to him with  
a leaf in his hand.  
Hai. sir. 133,3

وَقَفْتُ هِيَ مِنَ الدَّهْشَةِ وَالْحَيْرَةِ  
مَا بِي

I stood there, perplexed  
and excited.  
Nu'. liq. 69,6

دَخَلَتْ وَفِي نَفْسِهَا حَنِينٌ وَأَمَلٌ

She entered it, with hope  
and longing.  
Ghur. (Zy.) 31,20

وَمَا حَاجَتَهَا إِلَى رَجُلٍ جَدِيدٍ  
وَفِي بَيْتِهَا رَجُلَانِ

What use could she have  
for another man when she  
already had two at home?  
Mah. qah. 162,23

This inversion does not take place when the subject is a demonstrative or a personal pronoun, not even in the instances in which the pronoun does not refer to any substantive in the main clause:

رَأَى أَهْلُهُ وَهَذِهِ حَالُهُ أَنْ —

His family thought, his condition being what it was, that....  
Hai. sir. 502,4

رَفَعَ رَجُلٌ نَجْدَ صَوْتِهِ فِي تِلْكَ  
الْأَرْجَاءِ الرُّطْبِيَّةِ وَهُوَ عَلَى ذُلُولِهِ

The man from Nejed, mounted on his camel, raised his voice in the desert.  
Raih. mul. 51,13

nor does inversion take place when the nominal sentence is modified by "لا" of general denial":

أَصْبَحُوا وَلَا عَمَلَ لَهُمْ يَفْنُونَ  
الْحَيَاءَ بِجَانِبِ الْمَوَاقِدِ

Since they had nothing to do, they spent their time by the fireplaces.  
Gibr. I,154,4

The use of لَيْسَ, however, does not prevent the inversion:

خَرَجَ الْعَرَبُ مِنْ جَزِيرَتِهِمْ إِلَى  
الْعَالَمِ — وَلَيْسَ فِي أَيْدِيهِمْ مِنْ  
الْكِتَابِ غَيْرُ الْقُرْآنِ الْكَرِيمِ

The Arabs spread out from their Peninsula into the world..., having no other book in their hands than the Precious Koran.  
Djir. tar. II,12,8

Note that at times the inversion of the word order is not felt necessary:

رَفَعَ رَجُلٌ نَجْدَ — وَهُوَ عَلَى ذُلُولِهِ  
وَالْخَيْرَانِ بِيَدِهِ

The man from Nejed... mounted on his camel with the stick in his hand.  
Raih. mul. 51,13

B A verbal sentence in the function of an adverbial subordinate clause generally takes the imperfect tense with a progressive meaning. The syndetical construction usually requires that the subject precede the verb:

أَجَابَ وَهُوَ يَهْتَسِمُ —

He answered, smiling....  
Ayy. (Br.) 31,17

يَنْظُرُ إِلَيْكَ لَحْظَةً وَأَنْتِ تَبْكِينَ

looking at you for a moment while you are weeping.  
Hak. sul. 125,14

ظَلَلْتُ سَائِرًا وَصَوْتُ السَّيِّدَةِ وَدَّةٍ  
يَتَمَوَّجُ فِي مَسَامِعِي

I went on walking with  
Madame Warde's words still  
sounding in my ears.  
Gibr. I, 125,8

التَقَّتْ عَيْنَاهُمَا وَهَمَا يُسَلِّمَانِ

Their eyes met while they  
greeted each other.  
Mah. qah. 132,8

قَالَ وَهُوَ يَزْدِرِدُ رِيْقَهُ —

He said, while catching  
his breath....  
Mah. qah. 103,7

عَلِقَ بَصْرُهُ بِالْأُسْرَةِ وَهِيَ تَخْضِي  
إِلَى مَقَاعِدِهَا مِنَ الصَّفِّ الْأَوَّلِ

He followed the family  
with his eyes while they  
went to their seats in  
the first row.  
Mah. qah. 92,13

*Note* the word order in the following example:

نَظَرَ نَحْوَ الْعَلَاءِ وَمِنْ عَيْنَيْهِ  
الدَّمْعُ تَسْتَدِرُّ الدَّمْعُ

He raised his eyes to the  
Most High, while from his  
eyes tears were flowing  
copiously.  
Gibr. I, 62,4

The same rules are observed in negative statements:

سَكَتَ عَلَيَّ لَحْظَةً وَمَعِينًا صَاحِبِهِ  
لَا تُفَارِقُ وَجْهَهُ التَّجَبُّمُ

'Ali remained silent for  
a moment while the eyes  
of his friend were intent  
on his gloomy face.  
Mah. qah. 88,19

سَقَطَ بَعْضُهُ عَلَى صَدْرِهِ وَهُوَ لَا  
يَدْرِي

Some of it fell on his  
chest without his noticing  
it. Hus. ayy. I, 20,12

رَدَّهَ إِلَيْهَا صَامِتًا وَهُوَ لَا  
يَدْرِي مَاذَا يَقُولُ

He silently gave it back  
to her without knowing  
what to say.  
Manf. mag. 29,16

تَسَاءَلَ لَا هِنًا وَهُوَ لَا يَصْدَقُ  
أُذُنِيْهِ

He asked, gasping, without believing his ears.  
Mah. qah. 103,16

*Note*, however, that the inversion of the word order is at times disregarded:

أَنْ يَقْبِضَهُ اللَّهُ إِلَيْهِ وَمَا تَزَالُ  
بَاقِيَةً عِنْدَهُ

that God could call him to Himself while he still possessed them.  
Hai. sir. 502,10

كَانَ كَشَارِعِ رِشَادٍ بَاشًا ضَخَامَةً  
وَسَكُونًا تَحْتَشِدُ عَلَى جَانِبَيْهِ  
الْأَشْجَارُ الْبَاسِقَةُ

It was like Rishad Pasha Street, broad and quiet, with tall trees aligned on either side.  
Mah. qah. 54,15

كَانَ مَحْجُوبٌ يَتَكَلَّمُ وَيَسْتَمِعُ وَيَسْتَرْقُ  
النَّظَرَ إِلَى بَابِ الْحُجْرَةِ الْمَوَارِبِ

Mahjub talked and listened, while glancing furtively at the open door.  
Mah. qah. 132,1

It is also disregarded in coordinated constructions:

تَذَكَّرْتُ ذَلِكَ الْمَوْقِفَ الْجَمِيلَ وَأَنْتَ  
تَخْرُجُ كَيْسَكَ مِنْ جَيْبِكَ وَتَرْمِي بِهِ —

"I remember this beautiful deed, you taking your purse out of your pocket and throwing it [to him]...."  
Manf. sha'. 60,11

The verb in the subordinate clause is also frequently in the perfect. It has a resultative meaning and, thus, is generally preceded by the particle **قَدْ** (see Vol. I, § 21). In this case, there is no inversion of the subject:

قَالَتِ الْفَتَاةُ وَقَدْ أَشْتَدَّ اهْتِمَامُهَا —

The girl asked, with increased concern....  
Mah. zuq. 32,20

لَوْ رَأَيْتُمَانِي وَقَدْ أَحَاطَتْ بِـ  
نَاسٍ —

"If you had seen me with the people around me...."  
Hak. ahl. 80,2

مَاذَا تَصْنَعُ قُرَيْشٌ بِتِجَارَتِهَا إِلَى  
الشَّامِ وَقَدْ أَخَذَ مُحَمَّدٌ عَلَيْهَا  
طَرِيقَهَا

What would the Koreish do with its trade after Mohammed had seized the routes?

Hai. sir. 284,12

حَدَّثَتْ فِيهِ خَدِيجَةُ وَقَدْ آمَلَتْ  
قَلْبَهَا إِشْفَاقًا وَأَمَلًا —

Khadija looked at him with a heart filled with tenderness and expectation for.... Hai. sir. 135,7

أَسْرَعَ إِلَى دَائِرَةِ الدَّكْتَرِ وَقَدْ  
أَعْمَاهُ الْغَضَبُ

He hurried to the doctor's office, blind with anger. Ayy. (Br.) 33,5

مَعَ أَنَّ تِلْكَ اللُّغَةَ قَدْ زَالَتْ  
وَأَنْقَرَضَتْ وَمَرَّتْ عَلَيْهَا الْقُرُونُ

However, this language had already become obsolete with the passing of the centuries.

Manf. sha'. 161,19

In negative statements, a perfect tense after **لَمْ** or a jussive after **لَمْ** may be used in a syndetical construction. In such instances, no inversion of the word order is found:

أَمَا أَذْهَبَكَ أَنْتَنِي عَوَفْتُكَ فِي  
الْحَالِ وَمَا رَأَيْتَكَ غَيْرَ مَرَّةٍ  
فِي حَيَاتِي؟

"Didn't it surprise you that I recognized you so quickly even though I had seen you only once in my life?"

Nu'. liq. 8,16

قَدْ مَرَّ بِي أَكْثَرَ مِنْ عَامٍ وَلَمْ أَرَكَ

"It has been more than a year since I saw you last." Nu'. liq. 23,9

مَاتَ سَقْرَاطُ وَلَمْ يَدْرِ شَيْئًا  
مِنْ تَعَالِيهِ

Socrates died without having recorded anything from his teachings.

Djir. tar. II, 26,30

The verb in the clause may be in the jussive governed by the particle **لَمْ** with a meaning of "not yet having," "without having." This particle is used only in syndetical constructions:

فَقَدْ أَتَمَّ حِفْظَهُ وَلَمَّا يُتِمُّ التَّاسِعَةَ  
مِنْ عُمْرِهِ

for he had fully memorized  
it when he had not yet  
completed his ninth year.  
Hus. ayy. I, 33, 11

وَإِذَا هُوَ يَرَى نَفْسَهُ فِي الْمَحْطَةِ  
وَلَمَّا تَشْرُقِ الشَّمْسُ

And there he actually was  
in the station before the  
sun had risen.  
Hus. ayy. I, 140, 1

أَنْ يَظْهَرَ سِرُّنَا لِلْمَلِكِ وَلَمَّا يَمُضِ  
يَوْمَانِ

that our secret became  
known to the king before  
two days had passed.  
Hak. ahl. 17, 1

As with asyndetical constructions, the main clause in the syndetical ones may be nominal or may have a verb in the imperfect:

يَظْهَرُ شَلِينِيَا وَقَدْ حَلَقَ لِحْيَتَهُ  
وَشَارِبَهُ

Mashliniya appears, after  
having shaved off his  
beard and his moustache.  
Hak. ahl. 73, 13

هَلْ يَمْنَعُونَكَ وَأَنْتَ أَمِيرِكِي؟

"Would they hinder you,  
since you are an American?"  
Raih. mul. 22, 4

سَتَنْتَقِلُ وَأَنْتَ فِي نَجْدٍ إِلَى الْقَرْنِ  
الْخَامِسِ

While you are in Nejed you  
will be transported back  
to the fifth century.  
Raih. mul. 29, 8

يَدْخُلُ سَلِيمَانٌ وَهُوَ يَضْحَكُ

Solomon enters, laughing.  
Hak. sul. 21, 9

تَذَكَّرْتُ ذَلِكَ الْمَوْقِفَ الْجَمِيلَ وَأَنْتَ  
تَخْرُجُ كَيْسَكَ مِنْ جَيْبِكَ وَتَرْمِي  
بِهِ —

"I remember this beautiful  
deed, you taking your  
purse out of your pocket  
and throwing it [to  
him]...."  
Manf. sha'. 60, 11

وَلَكِنْ مَاذَا يُضِرُّهُ الْمَوْتُ وَحَيَاتُهُ  
نَوْمٌ مُتَّصِلٌ؟

But what harm could death  
do to him when his life  
was a continuous sleep?  
Mah. zuq. 6, 20



وَكَيْفَ تَقَاتِلُونَنِي وَفِي عَسْكَرِي  
تَمَانُونَ أَلْفَ دَارِعٍ؟

"And will you oppose me  
now that I have 80,000  
armed men in my army?"  
Amin zuh. I, 6, 8

The main clause may also be optative or exclamatory:

مَا أَجْمَلَ أَنْ تَرَى الْفَلَاحَاتِ —  
وَقَدْ حَمَلْنَ عَلَى رُؤُوسِهِنَّ مَا  
جَمَعْنَهُ مِنْ فَوَاكِهٍ!  
لَوْ رَأَيْتُمَانِي وَقَدْ أَحَاطَتْ بِي  
نَاسٌ —

How beautiful to see the  
peasant women...carrying  
on their heads the fruits  
they had gathered!  
Sak. (Zy.) 13, 8

if you had seen me with  
the people around me....  
Hak. ahl. 80, 2

and the main clause may be a clause subordinated to  
a precedent statement:

أَنْ يُشْرِفَ عَلَيْهِ وَهُوَ يَأْكُلُ

to see him while he was  
eating.  
Hus. ayy. I, 22, 8

سَأَلَ أَبَاهُ كَيْفَ يَعْبُدُهَا وَهِيَ  
مِنْ صَنِيعِ يَدِهِ؟

He asked his father how  
he could worship them,  
since they were the work  
of his own hands.  
Hai. sir. 86, 3

C Arabic very frequently presents an action as  
a subordinate adverbial clause that, logically, may  
be understood as being the main idea. In this case,  
the main clause is usually a temporal determination  
given to the subordinate action, which is understood  
as the one of longer duration.

Because of this divergence between syntactical  
and logical value, it is usually better to give  
priority to the logical idea in the translation:

مَرَّتِ الْأَيَّامُ إِثْرَ اللَّيَالِي وَأَنَا  
أُجَاهِدُ النَّفْسَ مَفْكُورًا فِي سَاعَاتِ  
الْغُرَابِ —

Night followed day, and  
in the hours of solitude  
I fell to thinking....  
Gibr. I, 168, 7

انْقَضَى الشَّهْرُ وَأَنَا مَطْرُوحٌ فِي  
ذَلِكَ الْقَبْرِ

So I passed a month thrown  
in that dungeon.  
Gibr. I, 167, 20

جَرَى كُلُّ ذَلِكَ وَأَنَا وَقِفٌ هُنَاكَ  
وَقُوفُ الْبِرَاةِ أَمَامَ الْأَشْبَاحِ السَّائِرَةِ

While all this took place,  
I was there, standing like  
a mirror in front of  
passing ghosts.  
Gibr. I, 130, 9

انْقَضَتْ سِتُّ سَنَوَاتٍ مِّنْذُ الْهَجْرَةِ  
وَالْمُسْلِمُونَ يَتَحَرَّقُونَ شَوْقًا يُرِيدُونَ  
زِيَارَةَ الْكَعْبَةِ

Six years had passed since  
the Exodus, during which  
the Muslims had been longing  
to visit the Ka'aba.  
Hai. sir. 365, 14

Hence the use of adverbial subordinate clauses  
after temporal clauses:

مَنْذُ كَانَ فَتًى وَهُوَ يَسْقِي بِعَرَقِ  
جَبِينِهِ حُقُولَ الدَّيْرِ

Since the days of his youth  
has he watered the fields  
of the monastery with the  
sweat of his brow.  
Gibr. I, 136, 20

مَنْذُ قُدْتَنَا إِلَى هَذَا الْكَهْفِ  
وَأَنْتَ صَامِتٌ

Ever since you brought us  
to this cave, you have  
been silent.  
Hak. ahl. 11, 10

and also after temporal expressions:

مَنْذُ خَمْسٍ وَعِشْرِينَ سَنَةً وَأَنْتَ  
تَسِيرُ مُتَجَوِّلاً بَيْنَ قُرَى هَذَا الْجَبَلِ

For twenty years you have  
been wandering through  
the villages in these  
mountains.  
Gibr. III, 118, 19

مَنْذُ ابْتَدَأَ الدَّهْرُ إِلَى أَيَّامِنَا هَذِهِ  
الْفِئَةُ التَّمَسِّكَةُ بِالشَّرَفِ الْمَوْرُوثِ  
تَتَحَالَفُ وَتَتَفَقُّ مَعَ الْكَهَّانِ وَرُؤَسَاءِ  
الْأَدْيَانِ عَلَى الشَّعْبِ

From the very beginning  
up to our days, the privi-  
leged of society have ever  
allied themselves with the  
clergy and the religious  
leaders against the people.  
Gibr. I, 178, 1

هَٰذَا أَلَانَ وَلِحَيْتِي مَرْسَلَةً  
وَشَعْرِي يَتَدَلَّى

Here am I now with long  
grown beard and hanging  
hair. Hak. ahl. 35,14

We have seen that a qualitative adjective or a noun used as an adverbial accusative may present a temporal determination (Vol. II, § 93). In the same way, a circumstantial clause may have temporal meaning when the validity of the statement in the main clause is restricted to the time expressed by the subordinate clause. This is limited to circumstantial clauses in syndetical construction:

سَلِمَى كِرَامَهُ لَمْ تَكُنْ تَعْرِفُ أُمَّهَا  
لِأَنَّهَا مَاتَتْ وَهِيَ طِفْلَةٌ

Salma Kirama had not known  
her mother, for she had  
died when she was [still]  
a child. Gibr. II,65,1

كَانَ ذَلِكَ وَأَنَا فَتًى يَافِعٌ

That happened when I was  
still a growing boy.  
Maz. (Zy.) 10,1

أَحْسَ إِبْرَاهِيمُ أَنَّ الْعَيْشَ لَنْ  
يَطِيبَ وَهَاتَانِ الْفَرَأَتَانِ فِي  
مَكَانٍ وَاحِدٍ

Abraham felt that life  
would not be pleasant as  
long as those two women  
were in the same place.  
Hai. sir. 89,1

أَمَا لَمَحْنَا أَحَدٌ وَنَعْنُ خَارِجَانِ؟

"Did anyone see us when  
we came out?"  
Hak. sheh. 20,12

أَتَتْهُ خِلَافَةُ الرَّشِيدِ وَهُوَ شَابٌ

al-Rashid's caliphate oc-  
curred while he was still  
a young man.  
Amin duh. I,409,3

D The condition or circumstance expressed by the adverbial clause is frequently understood as the motivation—and therefore the reason—for the action of the main clause, thus having a causal, consecutive, or similar meaning:

هَلْ يَمْنَعُونَكَ وَأَنْتَ أَمِيرِكِي؟

Would they hinder you,  
since you are an American?  
Raih. mul. 22,4

وَلَمْ تَكُنْ قَرِيْشٌ فِي حَاجَةٍ اِلَى مَنْ  
يَسْتَنْفِرُهَا وَقَدْ كَانَ لِكُلِّ مِنْهَا فِي  
هَذِهِ الْعِيرِ نَصِيْبٌ

The Koreish did not need anyone to call them to war, for they all had a share in this caravan.  
Hai. sir. 256,20

سَأَلَ اَبَاهُ كَيْفَ يَبْعِدُهَا وَهِيَ  
مِنْ صَنْعِ يَدِهِ ؟ !

He asked his father how he could worship them, since they were the work of his own hands.  
Hai. sir. 86,3

اِنِّى وَقَدْ قَطَعْتُ السَّكَّةَ الْحَدِيْدِيَّةَ  
لَا اَسْتَطِيْعُ اَلْعَوْدَةَ اِلَى الْمَنْصُورِ

that I, since the rail-roads had been cut, could not return to Mansur.  
Hai. (Zy.) 14,21

وَلَكِنْ كَيْفَ اُصْفَحَ عَنْهَا وَقَدْ  
لَوِّتَ شَرَفِيْ ؟

"But how can I forgive her when she has dishonored me?"  
Tai. (Zy.) 34,11

Note the following:

خُصُوصًا وَاَنَّهُ يَعْلَمُ اَنْ —

Especially since we know that....

Mah. zuq. 183,17;

Mah. zuq. 185,12;

Mah. zuq. 200,18

This logical —causative— meaning may become, in some constructions, the usual one, e.g., after the elliptical construction كَيْفَ لَا :

اَتَذْكُرُ حَفْلَةَ اَفْتِتَاحِ فُنْدُقِ الْمَنَارَةِ  
كَيْفَ لَا وَقَدْ كَانَتْ فَاتِحَةً حَيَاتِيْ  
وَحَاثِمَتَهَا ؟

Do you recall the inauguration feast of the Light-house Inn? How shall I not recall it, when it was the beginning and the conclusion of my life?  
Nu'. liq. 13,2

قَدْ كَانَ سُرُورِيْ فِي خُرُوجِيْ مِنْ  
الْبَحْرَيْنِ يَحُلُّ سُرُورِيْ فِي الْوُصُولِ  
اِلَيْهَا . وَكَيْفَ لَا وَكُلَّ خُطْوَةٍ اَلَانَ  
تَذْنِيْبِيْ مِنَ الْبَغْيَةِ الْقَصْوَى

My joy on leaving Bahrein was as great as when I arrived there. And how could it be otherwise, since now every step brought me nearer to my ultimate desire.  
Raih. mul. 32,23

E In the majority of adverbial constructions, the distinction between syndetical and asyndetical is, as we have previously noted, stylistic. Nevertheless, the position of the subordinate clause may also influence the construction to be used. In fact, any distortion in the sequence of main-subordinate clause will require the use of the syndetical. The coordinative conjunction **وَ** in such cases has the function of a subordinating adverbial conjunction and, at the same time, serves to introduce the adverbial clause.

The adverbial clause cannot precede but must always follow the main clause. However, it may be and actually often is inserted as a parenthetical construction within the main clause immediately following the part which it most closely defines:

إِنَّ اللَّهَ وَقَدْ خَلَقَ لَنَا قُلُوبًا قَدْ  
نَزَلَ عَنْ بَعْضِ حَقِّهِ عَلَيْنَا

God, when He gave us hearts,  
renounced some of His  
rights to us.  
Hak. ahl. 25,11

سَافَرْتُ وَأَنَا فِي هَذِهِ الْحَالِ  
إِلَى الْبَحْرَيْنِ

I departed, still in this  
condition, for Bahrein.  
Raih. mul. 26,9

وَجَدَ نَفْسَهُ وَهُوَ لَا يَذَرِي يَقَارِنَ  
بَيْنَ زَوْجِهِ الْحَسَنَاءِ وَتَحْيَةَ  
حَمْدِيسَ

He found himself, without  
realizing it, comparing  
his wife, al-Hasna, and  
Tahya Hamdis.  
Mah. qah. 140,16

وَالآنَ وَقَدْ أَنْقَضَ نِصْفَ قَرْنٍ عَلَى  
هَذِهِ الْحَادِثَةِ — يَمُرُّ السَّافِرُ  
عَلَى طَرِيقِهِ إِلَى —

Now, when half a century  
has passed since that  
event, the wanderer goes  
his way toward....  
Gibr. I, 209,5

فَقِي يَوْمٍ وَقَدْ كُنْتُ غَائِبًا عَنْ  
الْمَدِينَةِ زَوْجَهَا وَالِدَهَا كَرَهَا  
مِنْ رَجُلٍ —

And one day, when I was  
away from the town, the  
girl's father forcibly  
married her to a man....  
Gibr. I, 15,1

يُمْكِنُنَا وَقَدْ أَنْقَضَ نَحْوُ خَمْسَةِ  
أَعْوَامٍ عَلَى قِيَامِ الثَّمَرَةِ أَنْ —

Five years after the out-  
break of the revolution  
we can....  
al-Raf. (Zy.) 19,43

سَتَنْتَقِلُ وَأَنْتَ فِي نَجْدٍ إِلَى الْقَرْنِ  
الْخَامِسِ

While you are in Nejed you  
will be transported back  
to the fifth century.  
Raih. mul. 29,8

The subordinate adverbial clauses may precede the main clause only when introduced by the particle **أَمَّا** (see Vol. III, p. 196f.):

أَمَّا وَقَدْ آنَقَضَى كُلَّ شَيْءٍ  
فَسَأَقْضِي إِلَيْكُمْ بِسِرٍّ مِنْ أَسْرَارِ  
الْحَرْبِ —

Since everything is over,  
I will tell you a war  
secret....  
Manf. sha'. 215,8

أَمَّا وَقَدْ رَأَيْتَ يَا صَاحِبِي مَا رَأَيْتَ  
وَسَمِعْتَ مَا سَمِعْتَ فَانْهَبْ إِلَى النَّاسِ  
وَقُلْ لَهُمْ إِنْ —

Now that you have seen and  
heard what you have, go  
back, my friend, and tell  
the people that....  
Nu'. liq. 77,12

An adverbial clause in syndetical construction is also frequently introduced by another subordinating particle (see Vol. III, p. 340f.):

هِيَ كَلِمَةٌ حَفِظْتُهَا وَلَمْ أَفْهَمْهَا إِلَّا  
وَأَنَا طَالِبٌ فِي مَدْرَسَةِ الْقَضَاءِ

That is a word I memorized  
but only understood when I  
was a student in Law School.  
Amin (Br.) 86,25

A hypothetical or contrary-to-fact circumstance may be introduced by **كَأَنَّ**:

بَدَا لَهُ وَكَأَنَّ شَيْئًا فِي الدُّنْيَا  
لَا يُسَاوِي مِثْقَالَ ذَرَّةٍ مِنَ الْكَأَبَةِ

It seemed to him as if  
nothing in this world was  
worth a dust speck of  
worry. Mah. qah. 150,1

## § 252 حَيْثُ

**حَيْثُ**, "where," introduces an adverbial clause primarily with a local meaning, either of rest in a place in which the action occurs, or the direction toward a place. Its function is that of introducing the adverbial modification of the main clause or an

aposition to an adverbial modification (usually local) within the main clause.

It may introduce a verbal sentence with normal word order and, therefore, be immediately followed by the verbal form upon which the particle has no governing function:

الْعَرَبُ هُمْ الَّذِينَ حَمَلُوا لُفْتَهُمْ  
مَعَهُمْ حَيْثُ يَسْكُنُونَ

The Arabs were the ones who brought their language with them wherever they settled.

Amin duh. I, 305, 7

أَنْ أَذْهَبَ مَعَكُمْ حَيْثُ تَذْهَبُونَ؟

to go with you where you are going?

Manf. sha'. 74, 17

وَجَدَ نَفْسَهُ حَيْثُ بَدَأَ فِي حَيَوَةٍ  
وَقَلْبِي

He found himself where he had started, confused and worried.

Mah. qah. 158, 14

هَذَا الْمَكَانُ حَيْثُ كُنْتُمْ  
تَتَلَقَّيَانِ

this place where you used to meet.

Hak. ahl. 129, 11

فِي الْفُنْدُقِ الْكَبِيرِ حَيْثُ كُنْتُ  
أُنْزِلُ وَحَيْثُ أَكْتُبُ الْآنَ هَذِهِ  
الْصَّفَحَاتِ

in the Grand Hotel, where I used to stay and where I am now writing these pages. Din (Zy.) 3, 22

حَيْثُ may also introduce a nominal sentence usually consisting of only a substantive functioning as the subject for which حَيْثُ is the adverbial predicate (see Vol. I, § 7):

وَسَيَسَافِرُ إِلَى الْقَاهِرَةِ حَيْثُ الْاَزْهَرُ

and he would go to Cairo, where al-Azhar is located. Hus. ayy. I, 64, 10

فَنَامَ حَيْثُ هُوَ

and he slept where he was. Hus. ayy. I, 90, 7

فِي الْأَعْمَاقِ حَيْثُ الدُّرُّ  
الْكَثِيرُ —

In the depths where the numerous pearls are.... Gibr. II, 107, 3

تَتَابَعَتْ هِجْرَةُ الْمُسْلِمِينَ إِلَى  
يَثْرِبَ وَمُحَمَّدٌ مُقِيمٌ حَيْثُ هُوَ

The exodus of the Muslims to Yathrib continued uninterrupted while Mohammed remained where he was.  
Hai. sir. 208,10

The indefinite meaning of the adverb may be determined by a prepositional phrase with مِنْ :

أَسَاسُ حَيَاةِ الْبَادِيَةِ حَيْثُ وَجَدَتْ  
مِنْ بَقَاعِ الْأَرْضِ إِنَّمَا هِيَ الْقَبِيلَةُ

The basis of Badouin life, in the parts of the earth where it is found, is the tribe. Hai. sir. 79,1

It may also be applied to temporal circumstances without any change in its construction:

أَتُرِيدُ أَنْ أَقُولَ لَا حَيْثُ يَجِبُ  
أَنْ أَقُولَ نَعَمْ؟

Do you want me to say "No" when I should say "Yes"? Nu'. liq. 19,16

(سَاعَةُ الظَّهِيرَةِ) حَيْثُ الْفَلَّاحُونَ  
فِي دُورِهِمْ يَسْتَرِيحُونَ

(Noon hour) when the peasants were resting in their houses.  
Hak. (Zy.) 11,1

and also to logical relationships expressing origin or cause (cf. the English "from here," "hence"). In Arabic, however, since the adverbial clause follows the main clause, the meaning is "since":

تَرَكَ لِقَدَمَيْهِ مَقُودَهُ حَيْثُ لَا دَارَ  
لَهُ وَلَا غَايَةَ

He let his feet lead him, since he had no home or aim. Mah. zuq. 18,10

(For more cases of logical relationships, see Vol. III, p.

The indefinite meaning of حَيْثُ may be understood as being of general validity: "wherever," "whenever." In these instances, حَيْثُ may be followed by a verb in the perfect tense without preterital meaning:

السَّعِيدُ مَنْ سَعِدَ حَيْثُ كَانَ

Happy is he who is happy wherever he is.  
Nu'. kan. 14,11



With this meaning, the adverbial clause may precede the subordinate:

حَيْثُ الْحَيَاةُ هُنَاكَ الرَّجَا  
Where there is life there is hope.  
Nu'. liq. 31,12

This general indefinite meaning of حَيْثُ may be emphasized by adding مَا :

الْعَدَاوَةُ الشَّخْصِيَّةُ الَّتِي تَلْسِسُهَا  
حَيْثُمَا دَبَّ الضَّعْفُ الْخَلْقِي  
الدِّهْنِيُّ إِلَى النَّفْسِ —  
The peculiar antagonism which one can perceive whenever moral and intellectual impotence invade the soul....  
Hai. sir. 69,10

(For more information on this use of مَا, see Vol. III, p. 353ff.)

حَيْثُ, with the subordinate clause it introduces, is frequently governed by a preposition that modifies or determines the meaning of the adverb:

إِلَى أَيْنَ؟ إِلَى حَيْثُ لَا حُدُودَ  
"Where? Where there are no boundaries."  
Hak. sheh. 79,9

سَتَذْهَبُ طَبْعًا بَعْدَ ذَلِكَ إِلَى  
حَيْثُ تَرَاهَا  
and, of course, you will go afterward where you can see her.  
Hak. ahl. 26,13

إِنْعَدَرَتْ تِلْكَ الشَّمْسُ الْعَشْرِقَةُ إِلَى  
مَقَرِّهَا مِنْ حَيْثُ لَا رَجْعَةَ لَهَا  
أَمْ أَتْرَكُهُ وَشَأْنَهُ وَأَعُودُ مِنْ حَيْثُ  
أَتَيْتُ؟  
This radiant sun set forever. Manf. sha'. 246,13  
Or should I leave him alone and return the same way I had come?  
Nu'. liq. 69,7

ثُمَّ رَأَتْ عَلَى خُوانٍ قَرِيبٍ مِنَ السَّرِيرِ  
مِفْتَاحَ الْبَابِ بِحَيْثُ تَرَكْتَهُ بِالْأَمْسِ  
Then she saw the door key on a table near the bed where she had put it the day before.  
Mah. zuq. 270,6

وَمَضَوْا بِهَا إِلَى حَيْثُ لَا تَعُودُ and they brought her from  
whence there is no return.  
Hus. ayy. I, 125, 7

Preceded by the prepositions مِنْ or بِ , حَيْثُ may become independent of the main clause preceding and be used in forming new adverbial compounds to express a logical relationship.

حَيْثُ is usually followed by a noun in the nominative case, originally the subject of a nominal sentence (see Vol. III, p. 280), and has the meaning of "as to," "from the point of view of," "because of":

شُعْرَاءُ الْجَاهِلِيَّةِ مِنْ حَيْثُ  
أَغْرَاضِهِمْ pre-Islamic poets from  
the point of view of their  
objectives.  
Djir. tar. I, 101, 18

أَنَّ التَّفَاصِيلَ الَّتِي — تَكْفِي  
لِإِظْهَارِ خَطْلِ هَذِهِ الْمُدَّعَيَاتِ مِنْ  
حَيْثُ الْأَسَاسِ The details which..., are  
sufficient to show the  
basic fallacy of these  
pretensions.  
Sat. (Br. II) 79, 20

هُوَ مِنْ حَيْثُ الْقُدْرَةِ الْبَدَنِيَّةِ  
يَكَادُ يَكُونُ رِيثَ وَالِدِهِ He was almost his father's  
equal in physical strength.  
Nu'. (Zy.) 33, 19

It may also introduce a noun clause preceded by  
أَنَّ and has the same meaning:

(الْعَرَكَةُ الوجودية) وَهِيَ سِيَاسِيَّةٌ  
مِنْ حَيْثُ أَنَّهَا تُعَاَصِمُ الْمَذْهَبَ  
الْإِشْتِرَاقِي الْمَارْكَسِي . وَهِيَ  
دِينِيَّةٌ مِنْ حَيْثُ أَنَّهَا تُلْغِي  
الْغَيْبِيَّاتِ الَّتِي يَرْتَكِرُ عَلَيْهَا الدِّينُ  
— ثُمَّ هِيَ فِلْسُفِيَّةٌ — مِنْ حَيْثُ  
أَنَّهَا تُعَالِجُ جَمِيعَ الْمَشْكِلاتِ الَّتِي  
تُعَالِجُهَا الْفَلَسَفَةُ (The Existentialist move-  
ment) is political insofar  
as it contradicts the  
Marxist Socialist ideology...  
it is religious, for it  
abolishes the secrets on  
which religion is based...  
it is philosophical..., for  
it is concerned with all  
the problems that concern  
philosophy.  
Musa adab. 107, 15ff.

مَعَ أَنَّهَا فِي صَمِيمِ الْأَدَبِ مِنْ  
حَيْثُ أَنَّ الْأَدَبَ هُوَ الْحَيَاةُ however, they are in Liter-  
ature, for Literature is  
Life. Musa adab. 179, 3

يَحَيْثُ is usually followed by a verbal sentence and means "inasmuch as," "in such a manner that," "so that":

أَنَّ هَذَا الْعَرْضَ ضَيْلٌ يَحَيْثُ  
يَسْتَطِيعُ الشَّابُّ التَّشِيْطُ أَنْ —  
that the width was [so]  
small that the spirited  
youngsters could....  
Hus. ayy. I,12,3

وَتَوَجَّ كُلُّ هَذِهِ التَّدَابِيرِ بِالسَّيْطَرَةِ  
عَلَى الْبَعَثَاتِ لِدِرَاسَةٍ فَنِ الزَّرَاعَةِ  
يَحَيْثُ لَا تَبْعَثُ الْحُكُومَةُ أَحَدًا  
لِهَذَا الدِّرَاسَةِ دُونَ إِذْنِهِ  
وَمَوَافَقَتِهِ  
He topped all these  
measures by gaining control  
over student exchange  
in agricultural studies,  
so that the government  
would not send anyone  
[abroad] for such study  
without his permission  
and consent.  
Ayy. (Br.) 31,6

يَحَيْثُ لَا تَتَمَكَّنُ مِنَ الشَّيْ  
so that she is not able  
to walk.  
Q. Amin (Zy.) 5,29

## § 253 إِنَّ

A إِنَّ is a demonstrative adverb with a temporal meaning. Its function is that of connecting two statements in which the first expresses the temporal sphere of the second.

In this function, إِنَّ does not have a subordinating value; on the contrary, it precedes the statement that can logically be considered as the main one, in which the particle reassumes a temporal circumstance that has already been mentioned: "at that moment," "at that time," "then," etc.

The preceding statement is frequently introduced by إِنَّ, and when it presents an action or situation expressing duration, إِنَّ may emphasize the occurrence following as being unexpected.

إِنَّ introduces a verbal sentence, usually with the verb in the perfect tense:

إِنِّي فِي بَعْضِ الطَّرِيقِ إِذْ ضَرَبْتُ  
يَدِي عَلَى مَكَانٍ جَبِيئٍ فَلَمْ أَحَسَّ  
مَحْفَظَةَ نَقْوَدِي

I was already on my way,  
then I touched my pocket  
with my hand and I could  
not feel my wallet.  
Din (Zy.) 3,22

إِنَّهُ لَكَذَلِكَ إِذْ لَحَّ رَجُلًا مُقْبِلًا  
عَلَى الْبَعْدِ

Such was the situation  
when, suddenly, he saw  
a man approaching in the  
distance.  
Manf. sha'. 28,8

إِنَّا لَنَتَحَدَّثُ إِذْ رَأَيْنَا مِنَ النَّافِذَةِ  
مَنْظَرًا يَأْخُذُ بِالْأَبْصَارِ

We were talking when we  
saw a spectacle that  
attracted our attention.  
Hai. (Zy.) 14,10

إِنِّهَا لَفِي ضَجَعَتِهَا إِذْ مَرَّ بِهَا  
صَقْوَانٌ —

She was reclining when  
Safwan...went by.  
Hai. sir. 356,14

إِنَّهُمْ بِالْجِعْلَانَةِ إِذْ جَاءَ وَفْدٌ  
مِنْ هِوَزَانَ

They were in al-Jirana  
when a faction from  
Hiwazan arrived.  
Hai. sir. 436,15

إِنَّهُ لَكَذَلِكَ إِذْ فُتِحَ الْبَابُ فُجَاءَةً

And so he was when, sud-  
denly, the door flew open.  
Manf. sha'. 81,12

(On the use of إِذَا, see Vol. III, p. 294f.)

Since *إِنْ*, with this function and meaning, does not imply any subordination of parts, it may be used to introduce the main clause after temporal expressions:

وَبَيْنَمَا هُوَ فِي جَلَسَتِهِ مُسْتَرْسِلٌ  
فِي تَفْكِيرِهِ إِذْ أَحَسَّ شَخْصًا  
يَقْتَرِبُ مِنْهُ

While he was thus sitting,  
lost in his thoughts, he  
suddenly noticed someone  
approaching him.  
Tai. (Br.) 126,26

أَذْكُرُ يَوْمَ كُنْتُ أَتَشَى بِأَبْنَتِي  
الصَّغِيرَةِ فِي الْبُولْغَارِ إِذْ مَرَّ  
بَائِعٌ بِالْوَنَاتِ —

I remember once when I was  
walking with my young  
daughter in Bulgaria and  
a vender of balloons...  
suddenly went by.  
S. Din (Br.) 64,17

وَمِمَّا النَّاسُ فِي ذَلِكَ إِذْ نَعَى  
سُقْرَاطَ الْحَكِيمِ

and while people were thus engaged, then Socrates the Wise appeared.  
Djir. tar. II, 26, 17

B *إِذْ* frequently loses its attachment to a preceding temporal circumstance and refers exclusively to a following one, for which it assumes the function of a subordinate temporal particle: "as," "when," "at the moment when." With this meaning and function, *إِذْ* is still followed by a verbal sentence the action of which is usually understood as already having taken place; the verb will thus be in the perfect tense:

جَنَّاها بِاتِّعَابِهِ إِذْ كَانَ خَادِمًا  
لِلدَّيْرِ

He had garnered it with his labor when he served the monastery.  
Gibr. I, 137, 18

كُلُّ ذَلِكَ لِأَنَّ غِشَاوَهُ قَدْ أُسْدِلَتْ  
عَلَى بَصَرِهِ إِذْ أُسْدِلَ السِّتَارُ  
عَلَى حَيَاةِ ابْنَتِهِ

All this, because a curtain was drawn between him and life at the very moment a curtain was drawn over his daughter's life. Nu'. liq. 28, 3

قَدْ اتَّخَذْتُ لِي مَثَابَةً مِنْذُ خَمْسَةِ  
أَعْوَامٍ إِذْ وَرِثْتُهُ عَنْ عَمِّي

I have taken it as my place ever since five years ago, when I inherited it from my uncle.  
Tai. (Br.) 132, 1

الآنَ فَهِنْتُ مَا رَمَيْتَ إِذْ قُلْتَ  
فِي شِعْرِكَ —

Now I understand what you were referring to when you said in your verse....  
Jabr. (Br.) 73, 1

كَانَ ذَلِكَ مِنْذُ خَمْسَةِ أَعْوَامٍ إِذْ  
بَلَغْتَ الثَّلَاثِينَ

All this happened five years ago, when I turned thirty. Hak. ahl. 20, 12

With this meaning, *إِذْ*, and the subordinate clause, which the particle introduces, are not bound to taking the second position in the construction:

لَكِنَّهُمْ إِذْ بَلَغُوهَا كَانَتْ قَافِلَةً  
أَبَى سَفْيَانَ قَدْ مَرَّتْ بِهَا

But when they arrived,  
Abu Sufyan's caravan had  
already gone by.  
Hai. sir. 255,18

إِذْ جَلَسَ وَضَعَ الْكَمَنَجَةَ عَلَى  
رُكْبَتَيْهِ

As he sat down, he put  
the violin across his  
knees. Nu'. liq. 8,6

إِذِ الْتَقَتْ عَيْنَاهُ بِعَيْنَيْهَا تَتَدَدَّ  
تَنْهِيدَةً مُعْرِقَةً

and when his eyes met  
hers, he sighed deeply.  
Gibr. I,176,5

It may introduce a verb in the imperfect indicative to express an action in the present or future:

سَتَلْقَى بِنَفْسِهَا فِي أَحْضَانِي  
إِذْ تَرَانِي

She will throw herself into  
my arms the moment she sees  
me. Hak. ahl. 142,5

إِنَّهَا سَتَدْهَشُ إِذْ تُبْصِرُ عَرْشَهَا

She will be amazed when  
she sees her throne.  
Hak. sul. 74,2

إِنَّكَ تَبَالِغُ إِذْ تَعَسَّبَ لِلْهَوَا  
الْجَهْلَاءِ ذَوْقًا

You are exaggerating when  
you concede taste to those  
ignoramuses.  
Hak. (Zy.) 11,15

إِنَّكَ لَسْتَ رَجُلًا لَطِيفًا وَلَا  
ظَرِيفًا إِذْ تُسَيِّ سَجْنًا وَجُودَكَ إِلَى  
جَانِبِ أَمْرَأَةٍ جَمِيلَةٍ

You are not polite when  
you call your being close  
to a beautiful woman,  
prison.  
Hak. sul. 45,5

Hence, it may have a conditional meaning, still retaining the same construction:

وَقَدْ لَبِثْتَ بَعْدَ ذَهَابِنَا تَرْقُبُ  
عَوْدَتَنَا وَتَقُولُ لِدَقِيَانُوسَ إِذْ يَسْأَلُ  
عَنْ ابْنَتِهِ —

and you remained after  
our departure to await  
our return and to tell  
Dacianus, if he asked  
for his daughter....  
Hak. ahl. 32,5

C The temporal relationship stated or introduced by *إِنْ* frequently fades to the point that the particle can be used to express a logical relationship instead.

It is then called **حَرْفُ التَّعْلِيلِ**, "particle of motivation," by Arab grammarians. The relationship it introduces is not a causative but an explicative one: it states the reason or motives for a preceding statement. However, at times this may be almost identical with a causative interpretation.

In this function, **إِنْ** introduces a subordinate clause usually following the main clause. The subordinate clause may be

a) a verbal sentence with the verb in the perfect or imperfect tense:

أَسْرَعْتُ فِي تَوْدِيْعِهِ إِنْ بَدَأْتُ  
أَشْعُرُ بِشَيْءٍ دَوَّارٍ فِي رَأْسِي

I hurried to say good-bye,  
for I began to feel a  
heaviness in my head.  
Nu'. liq. 96,14

وَلَكِنْ جَاءَتْ نَجْدَةُ السَّمَاءِ إِنْ  
دَخَلَ فِي تِلْكَ اللَّحْظَةِ رَجُلٌ —

But Heaven's help arrived,  
for, at that moment, a  
man came in....  
Mah. zuq. 8,14

قَدْ آتَقَلَبَتِ الْآيَةُ إِنْ لَا نَكَادُ  
نَجْدٌ —

The situation was reversed,  
for we hardly find....  
Far. (Br.II) 143,14

صَرَفْتُهُ أَنَا إِنْ لَمْ يَكُنْ مَعِيَ ثَمَنُ  
ذَلِكَ الْبَالُونِ

I sent him away, for I  
did not have the price  
of the balloon.  
S. Din (Br.) 64,18

أَنَّهُ سَرَقَ مِنِّي كَيْمَةً مِنَ النَّقُودِ إِنْ  
لَا يَصِحُّ اتِّهَامُهُ بِالسِّخْرِ

[claiming] that he had  
stolen a sum of money from  
me, since he could not ac-  
cuse him of witchcraft.  
Nu'. liq. 34,6

إِنْ قَدْ يَكُونُ الرَّجُلُ شَاعِرًا وَلَا  
يَحْسِنُ النَّظْمَ

since a man might some-  
times be a poet but still  
not versify well.  
Djir. tar. I,59,12

b) a nominal or inverted verbal sentence:

إِنْ نَحْنُ نَطْلُبُ مِنَ الْأَدِيبِ —

for we request of the  
writer....  
Musa adab. 5,3

لَا يَقَالُ إِنَّ حَالَ الرَّجُلِ فِي ذَلِكَ  
كَحَالِ الْمَرْأَةِ إِنْ هُوَ أَيْضًا لَا يَعْلَمُ  
مِنْ أَحْوَالِ خَطِيبَتِهِ شَيْئًا —

It cannot be said that man's position in this is like woman's, since he, as well, knows nothing about his bride...  
Q. Amin (Zy.) 5,23

لَيْسَ الْأَدَبُ مَعَ ذَلِكَ شَيْئًا خَالِدًا  
إِنْ هُوَ يَتَغَيَّرُ بِتَغْيِيرِ الظُّرُوفِ  
وَحَاجَاتِ الشُّعُوبِ

Nevertheless, Literature is not something eternal, since it changes with the needs of the peoples.  
Musa adab. 11,3

وَلَكِنَّ الرَّقَصَ الْأُورِيبِيَّ لَيْسَ كَذَلِكَ  
إِنْ هُوَ فَنٌّ جَمِيلٌ

But European dancing is not like that, for it is a fine art.  
Musa adab. 85,15

c) a noun in the accusative preceded by "لَا of general denial" (see Vol. II, § 108):

افْرَحُوا إِنْ لَا خَوْفٌ عَلَيْكُمْ وَلَا  
أَنْتُمْ تَحْزَنُونَ

Rejoice, for you have nothing to fear or be sad about.  
Gibr. II, 117,5

إِنْ لَا بُدَّ أَنْ يَقَعَ فِي الشَّدْوِ

for he will necessarily become eccentric.  
Musa adab. 83,17

d) and also an interrogative sentence introduced by an interrogative particle:

إِنَّا لَا نَسْتَطِيعُ أَنْ نَسَبِيَ أَشْعَارَهُ  
فَنَّا جَمِيلًا إِنْ كَيْفَ يَكُونُ اللَّيَاطُ  
جَمِيلًا؟

We cannot call his verses fine art, for how can sodomy be beautiful?  
Musa adab. 9,5

With the same meaning and function, إِنْ may also precede a complete clause; the main clause, however, may or may not precede the subordinate:

إِنْ بَعْدَ أَنْ خَرَجْنَا مِنْ مَيَاهِ  
الْمَنَامَةِ سَاءَ سَكَنَتِ الرِّيحُ

For after we left al-Manama's waters in the afternoon, the wind subsided.  
Raih. mul. 33,11



إِنْ لَا يُمْكِنُ لِأَيِّ عَاقِلٍ أَنْ يَتَصَوَّرَ  
حُصُولَ اتِّحَادٍ بَيْنَ الْقَاهِرَةِ  
وَمَغْدَادَ وَطَهْرَانَ وَكَابُلَ وَحَيْدَرَآبَادَ  
— دُونَ أَنْ يَحْصُلَ اتِّحَادٌ بَيْنَ  
الْقَاهِرَةِ وَمَغْدَادَ وَدِشْقَ —

For no intelligent person  
can imagine the realization  
of unity between Cairo,  
Bagdad, Teheran, Kabul,  
Hayderabad...without uni-  
fication between Cairo,  
Bagdad, Damascus....  
Sat. (Br.II) 76,1

إِنْ مَا الْفَاعِدَةُ لِئَلْيَبِي مِنْ رِحْلَةٍ  
عَرَبِيَّةٍ إِذَا كُنْتُ لَا أَسْلَمُ فِيهَا  
لَا خَبَرَ عَنْهَا — ؟

For what use was there  
for anyone like me to  
undertake an Arabian  
pilgrimage if I would  
not escape to tell about  
it...? Raih. mul. 24,16

إِنْ لَوْ أَنَّ الْأَدَبَ كَانَ فِي خِدْمَةِ  
الْمَجْتَمَعِ يُعَالِجُ مُشْكَلَاتِهِ — لَمَا  
وَقَعْنَا فِي هَذِهِ الْكَارِثَةِ الَّتِي  
نَتَخَبَّطُ فِيهَا هَذِهِ الْأَيَّامَ

For if literature had been  
at the service of society  
in order to deal with its  
problems..., we would not  
have incurred this disaster  
in which we are lost today.  
Musa adab. 14,8

And, again, with the same meaning, *إِنْ* may also  
introduce a noun clause preceded by *أَنْ* or *أَنَّ* :

إِنْ أَنَّ السَّفَرَ فِي تِلْكَ الْأَيَّامِ حَتَّى  
إِلَى الْعِرَاقِ كَانَ مَحْظُورًا عَلَى غَيْرِ  
الْإِنْكِلَابِ  
إِنْ أَنَّ مَنْ لَا يَعْرِفُ كَيْفَ يَسْتَعِطِفُ  
أَرْضَهُ لَا يَعْرِفُ كَيْفَ يَسْتَعِطِفُ  
سَوَاهَا

since in those days tra-  
vel even to Iraq was pro-  
hibited to the non-British.  
Raih. mul. 15,21

Then he who does not know  
how to win his own land  
will not know how to win  
any other.  
Nu'. kan. 13,8

إِنِّي آسَفُ أَنْ لَيْسَ فِي مَقْدُورِي  
أَنْ — إِذْ أَنَّكَ لَمْ تَأْتِنِي  
بِالْبُرْهَانِ الْقَاطِعِ  
إِنْ أَنَّ رُكْبَتَهُ عَلَتْ رُكْبَتِي بِنَحْوِ  
قِبَاطٍ

I am sorry not to be able  
to confirm..., since you  
did not bring proof posi-  
tive. S. Din (Br.) 62,8

for his knee was about  
one inch higher than mine.  
S. Din (Br.) 63,14

## § 254 إِذَا

A إِذَا is also an adverbial demonstrative particle and, as such, is always used to present a statement at a definite moment during a given action. As a result of this meaning and its demonstrative function, إِذَا must always follow another statement containing a temporal idea to which the particle refers.

With this function, إِذَا does not have a subordinating effect but is usually, although not necessarily, coordinated to the preceding sentence by the conjunction وَ and also, albeit less commonly, by فَ or ثُمَّ

Arab grammarians call this construction "إِذَا of surprise," or إِذَا أَلْفَجَاةً, "إِذَا for the unexpected." The "surprise," however, can be understood in different ways and is not, in fact, essential to the construction (see below).

The particle must—with very few exceptions—be followed by a noun which is usually expanded, if grammatically defined, into a complete nominal or verbal sentence with inverted word order.

This restriction in the construction, as well as the fact that the verbal sentence usually takes the verb in the imperfect or the perfect preceded by قَدْ—and is thus a resultative perfect (see Vol. I, § 18)—leads us to think that originally the noun alone with the particle was the nominal sentence, to which new elements, nominal or verbal, were added.

Therefore, the translation of, e.g., the following should not be: "Lo, he was sitting," but rather, "Lo [there] he was, sitting."

نَظَرْتُ إِلَيْهِ فَإِذَا هُوَ فِي مَجْلِسِهِ  
كَأَنَّهُ غَرَابٌ أَسْوَدُ

I looked at him, and there  
he was, sitting in his  
place like a black crow.  
Raf. wah. I, 115, 8

The extensive use that Arabic makes of this construction forces us to present this translation as basic but one which may or may not actually apply, as such, to all cases.

This interpretation also explains the use of the construction with a hypothetical meaning (see below, e.g., under بِ إِذَا).

B إِذَا may introduce a nominal statement which has as subject a noun that has already been mentioned,

and thus the statement is grammatically defined. The element of "surprise" in this case is caused by the new circumstances introduced into the sentence:

دَنَا الْقَادِمُ فَإِذَا هُوَ شَيْخٌ كَهْلٌ

The one approaching drew nearer, and it turned out to be an old man.  
Maz. (Zy.) 10,20

دَخَلْنَا فَإِذَا نَحْنُ فِي بَيْتٍ فِيهِ  
غُرَّتَانِ

We entered and found ourselves in a house with two rooms.  
Raih. mul. 211,16

رَأَيْتُ كُلَّ الْأَعْمَالِ الَّتِي عَمِلْتُ  
تَحْتَ الشَّمْسِ فَإِذَا الْكُلُّ بَاطِلٌ

I contemplated what was done under the sun, and lo, all was vanity.  
Gibr. II,153,3

أَقَلَّبُ الصَّفَحَاتِ وَإِذَا هِيَ بَيْضَاءُ  
خَالِيَةٌ

I turn the pages, and lo, they are white and empty.  
Jabr. (Br.) 75,14

نَظَرْتُ فَإِذَا السَّاعَةُ هِيَ الْحَادِيَةُ  
عَشْرَةٌ وَالنِّصْفُ

I looked [at the hour] and it was eleven-thirty.  
Din (Zy.) 3,41

فَإِذَا هُوَ أَحَدُ إِخْوَانِهِمُ السُّورِيِّينَ

and it turned out to be one of their Syrian friends.  
Idr. (Br.) 79,9

إِلْتَفَتَا إِلَى مَصْدَرِ الصَّوْتِ —  
فَإِذَا هُمَا فَتَاتَانِ تَنْتَحِيَانِ  
زَاوِيَةً مِنَ الْمَقْهَى

They looked toward the direction from which the voice came...and it turned out to be two girls, sitting apart in a corner of the coffee house.  
Idr. (Br.) 79,13

وَإِذَا هِيَ فِي جَزَعٍ وَهَلَعٍ يَنْطِقُ  
لِسَانُهَا بِالْفَاطِ لَا صَلَاةَ بَيْنَهَا

And there she was, anxious and afraid, speaking incoherently. Hus. ayy. I,124,8

Note in the following that the element of "surprise" requires a complete nominal sentence:

ثُمَّ رَاحَتْ أَيَّامٌ وَجَاءَتْ أَيَّامٌ وَإِذَا  
لِي وَلَدٌ

Days and more days have passed, and now I, myself, have a child.  
Amin (Br.) 88,9

or it may introduce a verbal statement, with the word order always inverted and thus preceded by the subject, which is also grammatically defined. The verb frequently is in the imperfect tense:

أَقْبَلَ يَوْمَ الْخَمِيسِ إِذَا الصَّبِيِّ  
بَوَى نَفْسَهُ يَتَأَهَّبُ لِلسَّفَرِ

Thursday arrived, and [lo,] the boy saw himself actually getting ready for the journey.  
Hus. ayy. I,138,13

وَكَانَ يَوْمَ الْجُمُعَةِ إِذَا الصَّبِيِّ  
بَوَى نَفْسَهُ فِي الْأَزْهَرِ لِلصَّلَاةِ وَإِذَا  
هُوَ يَسْمَعُ الْخَطِيبَ شَيْخًا ضَخْمَ  
الصَّوْتِ عَلَيْهِ —

Friday arrived, and [lo,] the boy saw himself in al-Azhar for the prayer and, there, he heard the preacher, an old man with a powerful and high voice....  
Hus. ayy. I,141,1

وَقَفْتُ أَرَى الطِّفْلَيْنِ رُؤْيَا فِكْرٍ  
رُؤْيَا شِعْرِ مَعًا فَإِذَا الْفِكْرُ  
وَالشَّعْرُ يَمْتَدَّانِ بَيْنِي وَبَيْنَ  
أَحْلَامِهِمَا

I stood [there] looking at the two children with a vision of meditation and poetry and, suddenly, meditation and poetry linked me with their dreams. Raf. wah. I,89,4

The verb may also be in the perfect tense usually preceded by the particle **قَدْ** and thus with a resultative meaning:

ذَهَبَ يَلْتَمِسُهَا فَإِذَا هِيَ قَدْ  
سُرِقَتْ

He went to look for them and, behold, they had been stolen.  
Hus. ayy. I,56,10

وَإِذَا الشَّبَّانُ وَالصَّبِيَّانُ قَدْ فَرَعُوا  
إِلَى أُمَّهَاتِهِمْ

and, suddenly, the boys and youngsters were seeking refuge with their mother.  
Hus. ayy. 124,7

ثُمَّ رَأَى أَنَّهُ قَدْ أَفَاقَ مِنَ الْإِعْمَاءِ  
فَإِذَا هُوَ قَدْ اسْتَيْقَظَ مِنْ نَوْمِهِ  
عَلَى فِرَاشِهِ الْوَشِيرِ

Then he thought he had regained consciousness, but, all of a sudden, he awakened from sleep on his comfortable bed.  
Raf. wah. I, 100, 8

وَإِذَا الْجَارَاتُ وَالْجِيرَانُ قَدْ سَمِعُوا  
هَذَا الصَّيْحَ فَأَقْبَلُوا مُسْرِعِينَ

The neighbors had heard the cry and rushed in.  
Hus. ayy. 124, 12

C إِذَا is very frequently followed by the preposition بِ, which, according to Arab grammarians, is used to emphasize the idea of surprise; hence they call it بَاءُ التَّعَجُّبِ, "ب of surprise." The preposition must follow immediately after إِذَا; therefore, it introduces the subject either of the nominal or of the verbal sentence.

The noun governed by the preposition is grammatically defined with the same meaning and construction as in the nominal statement presented above:

ظَنَنْتُ يَوْمًا أَنَّهَا نَسِيتَ الزَّوْجَ  
فَإِذَا بِالزَّوْجِ أُمُّهَا الْمَنْشُودُ

She thought once she had forgotten marriage, but no, marriage was her dearest hope.  
Mah. zuq. 26, 7

فَإِذَا بِهِ أُمَامَ كَرِيمٍ الْحُلْوَانِي

And there he was, facing Karim al-Hulwani.  
'Aww. (Br.) 14, 17

or in the inverted verbal statement:

شَقَقْتُ صَدْرَهَا فَإِذَا بِى أَجْدُ  
فِيهِ جَوْهَرَةٌ !

I slit its body open and, suddenly, I found in it a pearl.  
Hak. sul. 84, 9

تَطَلَّعْتُ فَإِذَا بِالْأَسْوَدِ الْبَاسِمِ ذِي  
الْقَرْنَيْنِ وَالذَّيْلِ الطَّوِيلِ يُمَاشِينِي

I looked, and lo, [I saw] the Black One, smiling, with two horns and a long tail, accompanying me.  
Din (Br.) 59, 7

وَإِذَا بِهَذَا الشَّيْءِ لَا يَزَالُ حَيًّا  
فِي صَدْرِي .. يَتَحَرَّكُ ..

Lo, this "thing" is still living in my mind... moving....  
Qud. (Br.) 51, 26

فَإِذَا بِهِ يَغْعُ فِي حَفْرَةٍ حَفَرَهَا أَبُو  
عَامِرٍ لِيَقَعَنَّ فِيهَا الْمُسْلِمُونَ

He suddenly fell in a pit, which Abu Amir had excavated so that the Muslims would fall into it. Hai. sir. 299,12

With the preposition **بِ** governing the noun subject, this is frequently undefined grammatically, and the element of "surprise" will actually begin with the presentation of the noun itself.

The undefined noun may only be followed by a circumstantial modification:

a) nominal, i.e., an adverb or a prepositional phrase; a noun should be considered as an apposition and will thus agree in case with it:

الْتَفَتْتُ فَإِذَا بَغْتَاةٍ وَاقِفَةٍ عَلَى  
مَقْرَبَةٍ مِنِّي

I turned, and there was a maiden standing near me. Gibr. II,135,6

الْتَفَتْتُ وَإِذَا بِرَجُلٍ جَالِسٍ بِقُرْبِي  
عَلَى الْمَقْعَدِ

I turned around, and there I saw a man sitting on the bench near me. Gibr. III,80,6

وَبَعْدَ هُنَيْهَةٍ الْتَفَتْتُ فَإِذَا بِثَلَاثَةِ  
أَشْبَاحٍ جَالِسِينَ عَلَى صَخْرٍ قَرِيبٍ

A short while later I turned around, and there I saw three figures sitting on a rock near by. Gibr. III,71,10

فَإِذَا بِرَجُلٍ عَارِي الْجِسْمِ

and there was a naked man. Gibr. III,115,12

وَإِذَا بِرَجُلٍ مَمْتَطٍ رُكُوءَةً مَطْهَمَةً —

Suddenly, a man appeared, mounted on an excellent camel.... Tai. (Br.) 125,25

Note the following (see also Vol. II, § 126):

وَإِذَا بِي كَأَنِّي آنَقَلَبْتُ إِنْسَانًا آخَرَ

I suddenly felt as if I had become a different man. Hak. ahl. 21,2

b) or verbal, with the verb in the imperfect or resultative perfect:

وَإِذَا بِأَرْبَعَةٍ غُلَمَانٍ حَفَاةٍ نَصْفِ عَوَاةٍ  
نُبَعَثَرَى الشَّعْرِ بَارِزَى الصُّدُورِ مِنْ  
شُقُوقِ قَصَانِهِمِ الْمَهْلِكَةِ يَنْهَجُونَ  
عَلَيْهِ

and there four youths,  
barefooted, half naked,  
with their hair in dis-  
order, with their chests  
showing through the tears  
of their shabby shirts,  
assailed him.

'Aww. (Br.) 16,20

وَأَنَا كَذَلِكَ إِذَا بِسَيَّارَةٍ فَخْمَةٍ  
تَعَفَّ بِالقُرْبِ مِنْ بَيْتِي

Thus I was, when suddenly  
an elegant car stopped  
near my house.

Nu'. liq. 22,10

وَإِذَا بِرَجُلٍ يَصِيحُ بِهِمْ مَهْدِدًا

Suddenly a man appeared,  
shouting threats at them.

'Aww. (Br.) 14,16

At times, the preposition may also introduce a noun anacoluthon (see Vol. II, § 180):

نَقَلْتُ نَظْرِي إِلَى وَجْهِ بَهَاءٍ وَإِذَا  
بِهِ تَصَفُّوْ عَلَيْهِ سَحَابَةٌ كَالَّتِي عَلَى  
وَجْهِ لِيُونَارْدُو

I glanced at Baha's face  
and was amazed to see  
the same aura [of light]  
over it as over Leonardo's.

Nu'. liq. 108,3

The noun introduced by the expression *إِذَا بِ* is frequently separated from the rest of the sentence by a parenthetical construction:

وَأَنَا كَذَلِكَ إِذَا بِشَيْءٍ كَأَنَّ  
الْحَجَرَ يَنْقُضُ مِنْ عَلَ

So I was when suddenly  
something like a stone  
fell down from above.

Nu'. liq. 54,1

وَإِذَا بِي وَعَيْنَايَ عَالِقَتَانِ بِلِيُونَارْدُو  
وَكُنَّجَتِهِ وَأَصَابِعِهِ أَحْسَ عُنُقَ بَهَاءٍ  
يَلْتَوِي كَعُنُقِ زَهْرَةٍ تَذَوِي

As my eyes were glued on  
Leonardo's violin and  
fingers, I suddenly felt  
Baha's head droop as the  
stalk of a flower wilts.

Nu'. liq. 30,11

Since *إِذَا بِ* does not imply subordination of parts, it may be used after a temporal clause to in-

dicates that the action or situation introduced by the main clause is unexpected:

فِيمَا هُوَ فِي هَذِهِ نَوْمٍ إِذَا بِهِ أَهْتَزَّ وَثَقَلَ تَنَفُّسُهُ	While he was peacefully sleeping, he suddenly began to shiver and his breathing became difficult. Hai. sir. 136,4
--	--

D إِذَا, as a subordinate temporal particle, has completely lost its demonstrative adverbial character and thus does not necessarily follow the main event to which it refers, but frequently precedes the main clause, together with the action it introduces.

Although إِذَا is used in a very broad range of meanings (see Vol. III, p. 302), it has remained primarily a temporal adverbial particle with a past meaning. Hence, إِذَا is in this function followed by a verbal sentence with the verb most often in the past tense. This construction remains as the most common one even in the cases when إِذَا has a different meaning or does not directly refer to a past action. Thus its actual meaning can frequently be ascertained only through the correct understanding of the context.

إِذَا is usually followed by a verb in the perfect tense or the jussive after كَيْ as its negation.

With a preterital meaning, إِذَا refers to a single action in the past or to an action that is repeated continually. With a nonpreterital meaning, إِذَا usually still retains a connotation of past, since it refers to actions about the future occurrence of which there can be no doubt, either because the action is always repetitive as a natural or logical event, or because experience dictates our certainty of the repetition. When إِذَا refers to a future action, only the time is uncertain, not its actual occurrence. (However, see Vol. III, p. 302 in reference to its conditional meaning, and also compare with إِنَّ, Vol. I p. 312ff).

When the main clause precedes the temporal subordinate clause, the temporal sphere of the action in the subordinate will be determined by the main clause.

The perfect following إِذَا may have

a) preterital meaning:



قَدْ ظَلَّ أَيَّامًا يَسْمَعُ هَذَا الصَّوْتَ  
إِذَا عَادَ مِنَ الْأَزْهَرِ مَصْبَحًا وَإِذَا  
عَادَ مِنْهُ مُمْسِيًا

For many days he continued  
to hear this noise when  
he returned in the evening  
from al-Azhar.  
Hus. ayy. II,3,11

كُنَّا نَتَّقِسُ الصَّعْدَاءَ إِذَا خَرَجَ  
وَنَصَابُ بِالرَّغْشَةِ إِذَا حَضَرَ

We used to be greatly  
relieved when he left  
and stricken with fear  
when he was present.  
Amin (Br.) 86,22

إِذَا is sometimes used to refer to single actions  
in the past:

لَقَدْ أَرَادَ اللَّهُ بِى خَيْرًا إِذَا  
أَرْسَلَكَ إِلَيَّ فِي هَذَا الْيَوْمِ

God wished me well when  
He sent you to me today.  
Manf. mag. 22,10

b) nonpreterital meaning:

أَحَبُّ شَيْءٍ إِلَى نِسَاءِ الْقُرَى إِذَا  
خَلَوْنَ إِلَى أَنْفُسِهِنَّ أَنْ يَذْكُرْنَ  
الْأَمَهْنَ وَمَوْتَاهُنَّ

The thing dearest to  
peasant women when they  
are alone is for them to  
remember their sufferings  
and their dead.  
Hus. ayy. I,26,1

وَلَمْ يَكَدْ عَمَّى الْحَاجُّ عَلَى يَسْتَقَرُّ  
فِي غُرْفَتِهِ تِلْكَ فِي آخِرِ الرَّبْعِ عَنْ  
شِمَالٍ إِذَا صَعَدَتْ السَّلَمُ حَتَّى —

Uncle 'Ali al-Hajj had  
hardly entered this room  
at the end of the house  
to the left when you go  
up the stairs....  
Hus. ayy. II,45,1

كَانَ مَجْلِسُهُ عَنْ شِمَالِهِ إِذَا دَخَلَ  
الْغُرْفَةَ

His seat was on his left  
when he entered the room.  
Hus. (Zy.) 25,18

The perfect after إِذَا may also refer to a single  
action in the future:

مَا عَسَى أَنْ يَفْعَلَ عَلَى إِذَا عَلِمَ  
غَدًا أَنْ إِحْسَانَ صَارَتْ زَوْجَهُ؟

What would 'Ali do when  
he learned that Ihsan had  
become his wife?  
Mah. qah. 123,9

E When the subordinate temporal clause precedes the main clause, only through the general context or logical meaning can one ascertain the temporal sphere of the action in both main and subordinate clauses. Since إِذَا in this position usually causes a parallelism in tenses, the main clause generally also takes the perfect tense, with or without a preterital meaning.

a) With preterital meaning:

إِذَا غَضِبَ لَمْ يَظْهَرْ عَلَيْهِ مِنْ  
أَثَرِ الْغَضَبِ إِلَّا — Whenever he was angry, he  
never showed any sign of  
it except....  
Hai. sir. 124,12

إِذَا جَالَ فِي الْقَرْيَةِ لَمْ يَرِ إِلَّا  
مَنْفَرِدًا Whenever he roamed through  
the village, he was always  
seen alone.  
Tai. (Br.) 124,7

إِذَا حَانَ وَقْتُ الظَّهِيرِ أَوْ  
الْعَصْرِ خَرَجَ مِنَ الْكُتَّابِ — Whenever midday or evening  
drew near, he left the  
school to....  
Amin (Br.) 86,20

إِذَا حَدَثَ شَيْءٌ مِنْ ذَلِكَ  
أَغْلَقَ الْبَابَ Whenever anything of this  
sort happened, [the door-  
keeper] would lock the  
gate. Amin (Zy.) 26,16

b) With nonpreterital meaning:

إِذَا اتَّصَلْتُ بِأَحَدٍ رَدَّ عَلَيَّ  
فِي جَفَافٍ Whenever I get in touch  
with any [of them,] they  
answer me coldly.  
Qud. (Br.) 55,4

هَذِهِ الْعَيُونُ الْحَالِمَةُ الَّتِي إِذَا  
بَكَتْ بَكَتْ بِدُمُوعٍ لَا تُثْقَلُ لَهَا these dreaming eyes which  
weep weightless tears when-  
ever they cry.  
Raf. wah. I,31,5

إِذَا لَمْ يَجِدْ بَعْدَ الْبَحْثِ  
أَسْمَاءَ عَرَبِيَّةً لَهَا وَضَعَ أَسْمَاءَ  
جَدِيدَةً — Whenever he cannot find  
any Arabic names for them,  
after his research, he  
may give [them] new ones....  
Khal. (Br.II) 7,11

At times **إِذَا** introducing a nonpreterital perfect may also refer to a single action. In such instances, the temporal meaning of the particle **إِذَا** fades, remaining only the assertion of the fact:

وَإِذَا كَانَ الْمُسْلِمُونَ يَعْتَبِرُونَ مُحَمَّدًا  
رَسُولَ اللَّهِ الْأَعْظَمَ وَخَاتِمَ النَّبِيِّينَ  
فَإِنَّ الْعَرَبَ يَعْتَبِرُونَهُ بَطْلَهُمُ الْقَوِي  
— وَإِذَا كَانَ الْمُسْلِمُونَ يَقْدِسُونَ  
الْقُرْآنَ الْكَرِيمَ — فَإِنَّ الْعَرَبَ  
يَعْتَبِرُونَهُ مِثَالِ الْبَلَاغَةِ الْعَرَبِيَّةِ  
الْأَعْلَى

Just as the Muslims consider Mohammed the Great Messenger of God and the last of the Prophets, so the Arabs consider him as their national hero.... And just as the Muslims consider the Precious Koran holy..., so the Arabs also consider it the ideal of Arabic eloquence. Zur. (Zy.) 17,6

F In this position, when the perfect in the clause or when the whole construction is to have a preterital meaning, **كَانَ** will precede the clause, agreeing in person with the subject of the subordinate clause in case of diversity of subjects:

لِذَلِكَ كَانَتْ إِذَا دَخَلَتْ عَلَى  
النَّبِيِّ قَامَ إِلَيْهَا وَقَبَّلَهَا وَأَجْلَسَهَا  
فِي مَجْلِسِهِ

For this reason, when she went in to the Prophet, he stood up, kissed her, and let her sit down in his own place.  
Hai. sir. 500,21

كَانُوا إِذَا جَاءُوا بِالْهَوْدَجِ إِلَى  
بَابِهَا خَرَجَتْ إِلَيْهِ

When they came to her door with the litter, she went out into it.  
Hai. sir. 355,23

The subject of the subordinate clause may be placed following the verb **كَانَ**, thus not within the clause but preceding it:

لَقَدْ كَانَ زَيْدٌ إِذَا اخْتَلَفَ مَعَ  
زُمَلَائِهِ رَجَحَ صَوْتَ هَؤُلَاءِ

Whenever Zaid was not in agreement with the Koreish, their opinion was given priority.  
Hai. sir. 34,18

وَلَكِنْ لَمْ يَكُنِ الْعَرَبِيُّ الْبَدَوِيَّ  
إِذَا دَخَلَ عَلَى مُعَاوِيَةَ أَوْ عُبَيْدِ  
الْمَلِكِ يَشْعُرُ بِأَنْ —

But when the Badouin Arab entered Mu'awiya or Abd al-Malik, he never felt that....  
Amin duh. I, 104, 15

The verb of the main clause is usually, as we have seen, in the perfect tense, but it may also be in the imperfect:

لَا تَكُمُ إِذَا فَعَلْتُمْ تَكُونُونَ كَافِرِينَ  
بِالْعَدْلِ الْإِلَهِيِّ

for in doing this, you would be denying God's justice. Gibr. I, 195, 4

إِذَا فَقَدَ الرَّءُفَ صَدِيقًا عَزِيزًا  
وَالْتَفَتَ يَجِدُ الْأَصْدِقَاءَ الْكَثِيرِينَ

When a man loses a dear friend and looks around, he will find many others. Gibr. I, 109, 7

إِذَا طَرَقَهُمْ غَرِيبٌ لَا يُوصِدُونَ  
أَبْوَابَهُمْ فِي وَجْهِهِ

When a stranger knocks at their door, they do not deny him entrance. Nu'. kan. 10, 9

إِذَا جَاءَ أَجْلُهُمْ لَا يَسْتَأْخِرُونَ  
سَاعَةً وَلَا يَسْتَقْدِمُونَ

When their appointed time arrives, they cannot postpone or hurry it an instant. Hai. sir. 556, 17

إِذَا تَقَدَّمَ مِنْهُ رَجُلٌ قَوِيٌّ الْجَانِبِ  
يَطْلُبُ خِدْمَةَ خَطَرٍ فِيهَا عَلَى —  
يَكْلِفُ أَحَدَ مَرْؤُسِيهِ ب —

Whenever any influential person should come requesting a service involving some danger for..., he would assign to any of his subordinates....  
Ayy. (Br.) 33, 15

إِذَا دَخَلَ الْغُرْفَةَ يَضِي خُطْوَةً  
أَوْ خُطْوَتَيْنِ —

Whenever entering the room, he takes one or two steps....  
Hus. ayy. II, 7, 3

إِذَا كُنَّا لَا نَدَاوِمُ الرِّقَابَةَ لَا  
نَكُونُ عَالِمِينَ بِكُلِّ مَا يَتَعَلَّقُ  
بِشُؤُنِنَا

If we did not keep watching steadily, we would not be aware of all that concerns us. Raih. mul. 56, 4

It is also possible for the main clause to be an interrogative:

وَإِذَا نَقَصَ مَاذَا يَقُولُ لَهُ؟ And if there should be something missing, what would he say?  
'Aww. (Br.) 17,25

G In Arabic, as in other languages, temporal and conditional clauses are very closely related. This is especially true when a temporal circumstance is understood as being essential or necessary for the actual occurrence of the action expressed by the main clause. Hence إِذَا is also frequently found with a meaning equivalent to that of a conditional particle.

The basic conditional significance of إِذَا normally remains so closely related to its temporal one that even in its conditional use, it generally introduces only a statement of something which is known through experience and about the eventual occurrence of which there can, therefore, be no doubt. إِذَا leaves uncertain the time, not the fact, of the actual event. (Compare with إِنَّ, Vol. III, p. 312ff.)

In its conditional usage, إِذَا retains the same patterns of construction as above with the only difference being that the particle with this meaning also often introduces a verbal sentence with inverted word order; thus it is followed by the noun subject of the verb. This construction is not found with إِذَا as a temporal particle.

We very frequently find that when the main clause follows the subordinate, it is introduced by a conjunctive فَ (see Vol. III, p. 360 and p. 361ff.)

إِذَا used with a conditional meaning generally introduces conditions which are not contrary to fact

a) followed by a verbal sentence with normal word order:

— إِذَا مَاتَ فَلَا تَقُلْ إِنَّ — If he dies, do not tell that....  
Raf. wah. I,79,4

كَانَ فِي نِيَّتِي إِذَا كَانَ الْجَوَابُ — It was my intention, if the answer was in the affirmative, to....  
Raih. mul. 14,18

إِذَنْ أَيْ شَيْءٍ جَعَلَ ذَلِكَ الرَّجُلَ  
تَعِسًا إِذَا لَمْ يَكُنْ هَذَا الْوَجْهَ  
الْجَمِيلَ؟

What then has caused that  
man his misery if not this  
comely face?  
Gibr. I, 112, 9

وَلَنَأْتِيَنَّكُمْ بِجُنُودٍ لَا قِبَلَ لَكُمْ بِهَا  
إِذَا لَمْ تَأْتِ هَذِهِ الْمَلِكَةُ إِلَيَّ

We shall oppose you with  
an army that you can never  
defeat if this queen will  
not come to [see] me.  
Hak. sul. 39, 8

إِذَا نَظَرْتَ إِلَى الْخَرِيطَةِ الْيَوْمَ  
رَأَيْتَ النَّاطِقِينَ بِالْعَرَبِيَّةِ مُنْتَشِرِينَ  
فِي —

If you look now at a map,  
you will see the Arabic-  
speaking peoples spread....  
Djir. tar. I, 47, 17

وَمَنْ يَرْضِيهَا إِذَا لَمْ يَرْضِهَا هَذَا  
الْفَتَى الْوَدِيعَ الطَّيِّبُ؟

And who could content her,  
if she does not like this  
good, gentle young man?  
Mah. zuq. 56, 15

b) and also followed by one with inverted  
word order:

وَإِذَا هُمْ لَمْ يُؤْمِنُوا بِهِ فَمَاذَا  
عَسَى أَنْ يَفْعَلَ؟  
إِذَا نَحْنُ نَظَرْنَا نَظْرَةً عَامَّةً —  
وَجَدْنَا —

And should they not be-  
lieve in him, what could  
he do? Hai. sir. 137, 23

مَا تَرَيْنَهُ يَفْعَلُ إِذَا هُوَ دَخَلَ  
عَلَيْنَا السَّاعَةَ؟

If we examine it compre-  
hensively...we shall  
find.... Amin duh. I, 104, 9

وَيَطُولُ بِي الْقَوْلُ إِذَا أَنَا عَوِضْتُ  
لِمَا فِي كِتَابِ الدُّكْتُورِ هَيْكَلٍ مِنْ  
حَسَنَاتِ

What do you think he would  
do if he should enter here  
at this moment?  
Hak. sheh. 103, 9

It would take too long to  
show in detail the merits  
of Dr. Haikal's book.  
Hai. sir. 9, 9

Hence it is frequently used as a particle to introduce  
expressions of formal politeness: "if you please,"  
"if you will allow...."

اِذْهَبِ إِلَيْهَا إِذَا شِئْتَ

Go to her, if you wish.  
Manf. mag. 250, 8

الآن أَرَانِي فِي حَاجَةٍ إِلَى الْهَوَاءِ  
الطَّلَقِ النَّقِيِّ إِذَا أَزِنْتَ لِي فِي  
الخُرُوجِ إِلَى الْحَقِيقَةِ لَحْظَةً  
إِنِّي ذَاهِبٌ أَتَجَهَّزُ لِلسَّفَرِ إِذَا  
أَزِنْتَ

Now I think I need some fresh air, if you will allow me to go into the garden for a moment.  
Hak. sul. 46,14

I'll go to get ready for the journey, if you will allow me to.  
Hak. sul. 57,2

إِذَا may also be used to introduce hypothetical conditions and even conditions contrary to fact:

إِذَا كَانَ فَرِيقٌ مِنَ النَّاسِ يَنْقَرِضُ  
شَيْئًا فَشَيْئًا فَأَهْلُ الْمَدَنِ

If a part of humankind were to perish little by little, it would be the people of the cities.  
Sak. (Zy.) 13,31

الزَّعَةُ الْإِنْسَانِيَّةُ هِيَ الشَّيْءُ الْخَالِدُ  
فِي الْأَدَبِ إِذَا كَانَ تَمَّ خُلُودُ فِي  
هَذَا الْعَالَمِ

Human attitude is the eternal in literature, if there is eternity in this world.  
Musa adab. 11,16

The relationship between the subordinate and main clauses may also be causal, consecutive, concessive, etc.

لَمْ أَفْهَمْ — إِذَا كُنْتُ غَرِيبًا عَنْ  
هَذِهِ الدِّيَارِ

I did not understand it... since I was a stranger in those places.  
Maz. (Zy.) 1,14

إِذَا جَلَبَتْ لَنَا الطَّرِيقُ قَتَى قَوِي  
السَّاعِدِينَ نَسْتَرْضِيهِ

Since the road has brought us a strong young man, we shall accept him.  
Gibr. I, 179,20

إِنْ نَحْنُ عَلَى يَقِينٍ بِأَنَّهُ إِذَا  
كَانَتِ الشَّمْسُ تَشْرِقُ مِنَ الشَّرْقِ  
فَإِنَّ النُّورَ يَأْتِي إِلَيْنَا مِنَ الْغَرْبِ

for we are convinced that although the sun rises from the East, light will come to us from the West.  
Musa adab. 11,9

With this logical meaning, إِذَا may introduce a nominal sentence:

يَسْحَرُونَ الْعِيدَ فَإِذَا هُوَ يَوْمٌ  
صَغِيرٌ مِنْهُمْ جَاءَ يَدْعُوهُمْ إِلَى  
الَلَّعِبِ

They enchant the feast,  
for it is a day as young  
as they, which has come  
to invite them to play.  
Raf. wah. I, 31, 18

H إِذَا may be followed by the adverbial relative particle مَا; the expression then at times has a general and indefinite meaning: "whenever." (On the nature of مَا, see Vol. III, p. 210f.):

فَإِذَا مَا بَعَثُوا وَأَرَادُوا الْغَرْجَ  
— ضَرَبُوا ضَرْبَتَيْنِ بِالْمَعَاوِلِ

So whenever they return  
to life and want to come  
out...they will strike a  
few blows with the picks.  
Hak. ahl. 176, 8

وَإِذَا مَا ذَهَبَ إِلَى الْكَنِيسَةِ  
عَادَ مُكْتَبِبًا

After each visit to the  
church, he returned de-  
pressed in spirit.  
Gibr. I, 90, 9

فَإِذَا مَا كَانَ فَوْقَ الْكُرُومِ كَسَرَ  
وَقَطَعَ وَكَلَّ وَأَفْسَدَ

And whenever he was up  
on the vines, he broke,  
cut, ate [the fruits],  
and engaged in [all kinds  
of] mischief.  
Qal. (Zy.) 21, 34

تِلْكَ الْحَيَاةُ الَّتِي إِذَا مَا تَأَمَّلْنَاهَا  
وَجَدْنَاهَا مُبْتَسِمَةً فِي الرَّبِيعِ

This life which we, when  
we contemplate it, find  
smiling during spring....  
Gibr. I, 76, 14

This general meaning is not necessary and, therefore, the particle may refer to a single action:

مَاذَا تَفْعَلُ يَا تَرَى إِذَا مَا دَرَتْ  
بِأَنَّ الشَّابَّ الَّذِي — يُرِيدَانُ ؟  
وَمَاذَا يَقُولُ سُكَّانُ هَذِهِ الْقَرْيَةِ  
الْبُسْطَاءِ إِذَا مَا عَلِمُوا أَنَّ — ؟

What do you think she  
would do if she discovers  
that the young man whom...,  
is trying to...and what  
would the simple villagers  
say if they knew that...?  
Gibr. I, 175, 9

أَفَلَا يُخَلِّقُونَ آذَانَهُمْ إِذَا مَا  
قُلْتُ لَهُمْ إِنَّ —

Would they not close their  
ears to me if I told them  
that...? Gibr. I, 175, 13



مَاذَا يَقُولُ الشَّيْخُ عَبَّاسٌ — إِذَا  
مَا سَمِعَ حِكَايَتِي؟ وَمَاذَا يَفْعَلُ  
كَاهِنُ الْقَرْيَةِ إِذَا مَا رَدَدُوا عَلَى  
سَامِعِهِ تِلْكَ الْأَقْوَالِ الَّتِي سَبَّبَتْ  
طَرْدِي مِنَ الدَّيْرِ؟

What will Sheikh Abbas... say when he hears my story? And what will the priest of the village say when those words which caused my expulsion from the convent come to his ears? Gibr. I, 175, 15

I إِذَا, with the clause it introduces, is frequently used — in combination with different particles — more or less structurally independent from a given main clause in order to introduce conditional or temporal modifications to other statements:

أَمَّا إِذَا انفصلَ الاثنانِ فإِنَّ  
الفسادَ ينشأ

when both are separated, then corruption spreads. Musa adab. 83, 9

أَمَّا إِذَا أَحْسَسْنَا الْغَسَّةَ وَالْإِنْحِطَاطَ  
فإِنَّ الْأَغْنِيَةَ أَوْ اللَّحْنَ أَوْ الرَّقَصَ  
لَنْ يَحُدَّ أَحَدُهَا مِنَ الْفُنُونِ

but when we feel baseness and decadence, then songs, melody, and dance are not numbered among the arts. Musa adab. 9, 3

خُصُوصًا إِذَا كَانَ حَالُهُ كَحَالِ  
مَحْبُوبٍ

especially if his situation was like Mahbuh's. Mah. qah. 79, 8

وَإِنِّي عَصِيٌّ الْعِزَّاجِ لَا أَقْوَى عَلَى  
كَيْحِ غَضَبِي مَتَى تَارَ لَا سِيَّمَا إِذَا  
كَانَ خَصَمِي وَضِيعَ الْحَالِ —

Being high-strung, I cannot control my anger when aroused, especially when my opponent is a plebeian.... Din (Br.) 58, 21

لَنْ يَنْهَضَ الْأَدَبُ إِلَّا إِذَا كَانَ  
الْأَدَبَاءُ أَنْفُسَهُمْ نَاهِضِينَ

There will be no literary renaissance until authors become stimulated. Musa adab. 13, 11

إِنَّمَا لَنْ نَسْتَطِيعَ أَنْ نَرْفَعَهُ إِلَيْنَا  
إِلَّا إِذَا نَزَلْنَا إِلَيْهِ

We shall not be able to elevate them [people] until we have descended to their level. Musa adab. 27, 12

لَا يَضْحُو إِلَّا إِذَا نَادَاهُ زَبُونُ

He would not wake up unless Zabun called him. Mah. zuq. 6, 10

(On the use of *حَتَّى إِذَا*, see Vol. III, 90f.)

# § 255 لَمَّا

لَمَّا "when," "after," introduces an action which is understood as completed at the beginning of that expressed by the main clause.

It introduces a verbal sentence with normal word order and with the verb in the past tense. The main clause, which always follows the subordinate, usually also takes the verb in the perfect tense of *لَمْ* with the jussive as the negation of the perfect:

لَمَّا رَجَعْتُ إِلَيْهَا ذَهَبْتُ لِرِشَادَةِ رَشِيدٍ  
When I returned, I went to visit Rashid.  
Gibr. I, 108, 15

لَمَّا رَأَوْا مُحَمَّدًا أَوَّلَ مَنْ دَخَلَ قَالُوا —  
When they saw that Mohammed was the first to enter, they said....  
Hai. sir. 126, 1

لَمَّا فَقَدْتُكَ لَمْ أَجِدْ مِنْكَ عِوَضًا وَلَا بَدَلًا  
When I lost you, I could find neither compensation nor substitution for you.  
Manf. mag. 169, 7

لَمَّا خَرَجَ إِلَى الدَّرْسِ قَالَ لَهُ بَعْضُ تَلَامِيذِهِ —  
When he went to his lesson, some of the pupils asked him....  
Hus. ayy. I, 20, 13

The imperfect may also be used in the main clause:

لَمَّا أَعَدَدْتُ لَكَ الْكَفْنَ تَرِيدُ أَنْ يَنْتَفِعَ بِشَيْئِهِ  
After I have prepared the shroud for you, you want to make a profit from it.  
Mah. zuq. 39, 13

The imperfect following *لَمَّا* is not common, and can be considered as an influence from the spoken dialect<sup>30</sup>:

30. Also see Mainz, *Zur. Gram.*, p. 40.

لَمَّا نَسَأَلُ الشَّاهِدَ الْمَهْمَ

when we shall have interrogated the important witnesses.

Hak. yaum. 49,1

The clause following لَمَّا may also be introduced by أَنْ, without any apparent change in meaning:

وَلَمَّا أَنْ أَجَابَا إِنْهُمَا لَا يَعْرِفَانِ  
عِدَّةَ قُرَيْشٍ سَأَلَهُمَا مُحَمَّدٌ —

When they answered that they did not know how numerous the Koreish were, Mohammed asked them....

Hai. sir. 259,16

لَمَّا أَنْ أَنْصَتَ مَدَارِسُ الْأَوْقَافِ  
إِلَى وَزَارَةِ الْمَعَارِفِ سَوِيَتْ حَالَتُهُ  
لَكَ —

When the religious schools were annexed to the Ministry of Education, his situation became the same as....

Mah. zuq. 18,14

لَمَّا أَنْ سَأَلَ كَامِلٌ أَجَابَهُ —

When he asked Kamil, he answered him....

Mah. zuq. 191,7

لَمَّا أَنْ طَهِّرَتِ الْكَعْبَةُ مِنْ أَصْنَامِهَا  
أَمَرَ النَّبِيُّ بِ —

When the Ka'aba was purged of its idols, the Prophet ordered....

Hai. sir. 424,6

وَلَمَّا أَنْ أَنْتَصَفَ النَّهَارَ ذَاعَ  
نَبَأُ فِي الزُّقَاقِ بِأَنَّ —

and at noon the news spread in al-Zuqaq that....

Mah. zuq. 183,1

Because of its temporal significance, a logical relationship has been derived from لَمَّا :

وَلَمَّا كُنْتُ سَائِعًا — فَقَدْ وَجِبَ  
— أَنْ أَرْكَبَ عَرَبَةً

Since I was a tourist... it was necessary for me to take a carriage.

Maz. (Zy.) 1,9

وَلَمَّا لَمْ أَعْرِفِ الْيَأْسَ كَانَتْ  
الْمَطَالَعَةُ مَصْدَرُ قُوَّةٍ لِي وَفَرَحٍ  
لَا يَنْتَهِي

Since I had never felt desperation, reading was for me a source of endless strength and joy.

Jabr. (Br.) 72,9

## § 256 THE PARTICLE كَي AND ITS DERIVATIVES

The particle كَي and its derivatives introduce circumstances that represent the aim or goal of the action expressed in the main clause. The action of the subordinate is always future in regard to that of the main clause.

Arab grammarians call these particles حُرُوفُ التَّعْلِيلِ, "particles of motivation," a name which does not necessarily always express the actual meaning and value of the construction.

The particles directly govern the verb. Therefore, they introduce a verbal sentence with normal word order. The verb is in the subjunctive and follows immediately after the particle.

A كَي "so that," "in order that," "(in order) to":

أَلَمْ نَصَلِّ لَهُ؟ — نَعَمْ كَي  
تَسْأَلَهُ الْخَيْرَ لَا مَرَاتِكَ وَوَلَدِكَ

"Didn't we pray to Him?"...  
"Yes, (but you did) to ask Him for the well-being of your wife and child."  
Hak. ahl. 24,14

وَلِمَاذَا فَعَلَ بِهِ هَذَا؟ —  
كَي يُجِيبَ بَعْدَئِهِ عَنْ كُلِّ مَا يَسْأَلُ

"Why is he doing that with it"..."In order for it to answer concerning everything he asks."  
Hak. sheh. 18,10

بَعَثَ إِلَى كِسْرَى وَإِلَى هِرَقْلَ  
وَإِلَى غَيْرِهِمَا مِنْ الْمُلُوكِ وَالْأَمْرَاءِ  
كَي يَسْلَمُوا

He sent [messengers] to Chosroes and Heraclius and other kings and princes so that they would embrace Islam.  
Hai. sir. 1,17

لَكَي with the same meaning as the preceding:

ابْعَثْهُمْ إِلَيْنَا لَكَي يَأْخُذُوا  
مَكَانَكَ فِي الْحَقْلِ

Send them to us to take your place in the field.  
Gibr. I,137,2

The negation of كَي is expressed by adding the negative adverb لَا after the particle (written as لَا كَي or كَيْلَا, without any apparent difference in meaning between either one). The use of the negation

does not change the governing function of the particle; the verb is, therefore, also in the subjunctive:

أَغْمَضْتُ عَيْنَيَّ كَيْلَا أَرَى ذَلِكَ  
الشَّعَاعَ

I closed my eyes so that  
I might not see those  
rays. Gibr. I, 115, 3

لَكِنِّي بَقِيتُ صَامِتًا كَيْلَا أَوْفَعَهَا  
عَنِ الْكَلَامِ

but I remained silent lest  
I stop her from speaking.  
Gibr. I, 116, 17

أُصِدِّى النَّافِذَةَ كَيْلَا تُطْفِئَ الرِّيحَ  
السَّرَاجَ

Close the window, lest the  
wind put out the lamp.  
Gibr. I, 157, 11

لَا يَأْخُذُونَ مِنْ أَنْفُسِهِمْ لِلْأَشْيَاءِ  
كَيْلَا يَوْجَدُوا لَهَا أَلْهَمَ

They don't give themselves  
to anything, lest they ex-  
perience anxiety about it.  
Raf. wah. I, 32, 9

أَلَيْسَ ذَلِكَ كَيْ لَا تُؤْذِي حَرَارَتَهَا  
أَبْدَانَنَا ؟

Isn't it in order that its  
heat will not harm our  
bodies? Hak. ahl. 37, 11

In cases of two correlative clauses, one affirmative and the other negative, the particle does not have to be repeated in the second member:

يَجَادِلُ بَعْضُهُمُ النَّبِيَّ كَيْ يَعُودُوا  
إِلَى الْمَدِينَةِ وَلَا يَلْقُوا الْقَوْمَ  
الَّذِينَ جَاءُوا مِنْ مَكَّةَ لِقِتَالِهِمْ

Some of them argued with  
the Prophet that they  
should return to Medina  
so that they would not  
encounter those who had  
left Mecca to fight them.  
Hai. sir. 260, 12

B كَيْما "so that," "in order that," etc. — a particle equivalent in meaning to the preceding ones. It is a compound of كَيْ and مَا (مَا النَّصْرِيَّةُ), "infinitival," according to Arab grammarians, and thus an adverbial مَا; see Vol. III, p. 210f.

It is used, as كَيْ, followed by a verbal sentence with normal word order, the verb being in the imperfect. However, there has always been disagreement as to the mood of the verb, whether it is in the indicative or in the subjunctive. In vocalized texts, unless the

verb is given in the plural, there is no possibility of ascertaining the mood intended by the writer<sup>31</sup>:

الَّذِي يُحَرِّثُ الْأَرْضَ وَيَسْتَفْلِحُهَا  
كَيْمَا يَحْيِيَ جَسَدَهُ مِنْ —

Who tills the soil and gets from it what he can to protect his body from.... Gibr. I, 178, 14

كَيْمَا تَتَحَقَّقُ الْمَسَاوَاةُ بَيْنَ الَّذِينَ  
يَقْتَنُونَ أَيًّا مِنَ الطَّبْعَتَيْنِ

so that there would be no difference between those who have either of the two editions.  
Hai. sir. 25, 12

سَكَتَتْ دَقِيقَةً كَيْمَا تَسْتَرْجِعَ أَنْفَاسَهَا

She remained silent for a moment to recover her breath. Gibr. II, 47, 9

أَرْسَلَ مُحَمَّدٌ فِي الْقَبَائِلِ جَمِيعًا  
يَدْعُوهَا لِلتَّهَيُّؤِ كَيْمَا تُعَدُّ أَكْبَرُ  
الْجَيْشِ بِمَكْنٍ إِعْدَادُهُ <sup>32</sup>

Mohammed sent [messengers] to all the tribes summoning them to [military] preparation in order to gather an army as great as possible. Hai. sir. 455, 14

Note the following example:

لَا أُرِيدُ أَنْ أَنْعِمَ جَسَدِي بِهَذِهِ  
الْعَلَائِشِ الْحَقِيرَةِ كَيْمَا تَبْقَى نَفْسِي  
مُتَعَذِّبَةً فِي مَنَزِلٍ سَفَاكِ الدِّمَاءِ

I don't want to adorn my body with those contemptible clothes, lest my spirit remain in torment in this place of bloodshed. Gibr. I, 199, 20

## § 257 CONDITIONAL CLAUSES

Under the heading of "Conditional Clauses," we shall study a series of constructions in which the

31. Reck., Synt. Verh., p. 459 only mentions examples with the subjunctive. However, see Wright, II, p. 29, B and Munjid under كَيْمَا.

32. The vowel ending of the imperfect indicative is given in the text.

actual validity of a given statement is "conditioned" by another statement presented along with it.

Hence, the essential feature here is the very fact that the statement presented by the main clause has no validity in itself without the restriction imposed by the subordinate clause. The main clause is, in all cases, structurally complete in all its essential parts, as is the subordinate.

These clauses are always syndetical, since the conditional subordinate clause is always introduced by one of the two Arabic conditional conjunctions **إِنْ** or **لَوْ**. These, however, do not necessarily place the subordinate clause in a secondary position; in fact, they very frequently precede the main clause, upon which they have a definite syntactical influence in verbal mood and tense as well as word order, unless this influence is nullified by means of the coordinating conjunction **وَ** (see Vol. III, p. 260ff.).

Arabic has always been extremely rich in its different uses and meanings of the basic conditional constructions. In the modern language, the same trend has been continued to such an extent that, in some instances, the conditional particles have lost their essential conditional characteristic—the validity of the main clause being based on the subordinate clause—and have taken on various meanings: exceptive, adversative, etc.

In the following chapters we shall attempt a presentation of all the uses of the two conditional particles regardless of their meaning, since a change in meaning does not occasion a change in their syntactical structure.

On the other hand, we shall also try to enumerate the most important semantic uses of Arabic conditional constructions in general.

#### § 258 **إِنْ**

A **إِنْ**, "if," basically states a fact or an event, the eventual occurrence of which one cannot be sure of, but which is always possible. Contrary to **إِنَّا**, which presents through its conditional meaning uncertainty only about the time when the action will take place, **إِنْ** questions whether or not the action itself as stated will occur.

A classical distinction is given in: **إِذَا مَاتَ**, "when he dies (when that comes to happen)" **إِنْ مَاتَ**, "if he dies (today, of this present illness)."

As we have stated above (see Vol. III, p. 302), **إِذَا** often takes on a conditional meaning and may even be used in hypothetical constructions; that is to say, as an equivalent of **إِنْ**. The opposite, however, cannot be said about **إِنْ**, which never is used when the construction has a temporal meaning and thus it can never be equivalent to a temporal **إِذَا**.

Frequently, the use of either one will be determined only by stylistic appreciation, since the constructions with **إِذَا** still seem to give a greater degree of certainty to the statement presented in the clause.

Some examples might help to clarify the difference still existing between the two particles:

أَمْ هُمْ خَافُوا إِنْ بَقِيَ هَؤُلَاءِ فِي  
الْحَبْشَةِ أَنْ تَشْتَدَّ شَوْكَتُهُمْ فَإِذَا  
عَادُوا بَعْدَ ذَلِكَ لِمَعُونَةٍ مَعْتَدٍ  
عَادُوا أَقْوَى بِالْمَالِ وَالرِّجَالِ؟

Or were they afraid that if they remained in Abyssinia they would become more courageous, and thus when they came to the help of Mohammed, they would return richer and in greater number?

Hai. sir. 154,12

إِذَا خَلَتْ إِحَدَاهُنَّ إِلَى نَفْسِهَا وَلَمْ  
تَجِدْ مَنْ تَتَحَدَّثُ إِلَيْهِ تَتَحَدَّثُ إِلَى  
نَفْسِهَا أَلْوَانًا مِنَ الْحَدِيثِ فَعِنَتْ  
إِنْ كَانَتْ فَرِحَةً وَعَدَدَتْ إِنْ كَانَتْ  
مَحْزُونَةً

Whenever one of them is alone and does not find anyone to talk to, she tells herself all kinds of stories, sings if she feels happy, or praises the dead if she is sad.

Hus. ayy. I, 25, 12

B **إِنْ** is usually followed by a verbal sentence with normal word order and, therefore, immediately precedes a verb. The verb is most often in the perfect or the jussive after **لَمْ** as its negation, with nonpreterital meaning.

The subordinate clause very frequently is precedent to the main clause and usually occasions a parallelism of tenses whereby the latter also takes the perfect tense with or without preterital meaning. The actual temporal sphere of the action is given exclusively by the context, e.g.,



## a) with preterital meaning:

إِنْ تَكَلَّمَ الشَّيْخُ عَبَّاسُ بَيْنَ أَوْلَئِكَ  
الْفَلَاحِينَ أَحَنَّا رُؤُوسَهُمْ إِجَابًا  
— وَإِنْ غَضِبَ ارْتَجَفُوا جَزْأً —  
وَإِنْ صَفَعَ خَدَّ رَجُلٍ مِنْهُمْ ظَلَّ  
ذَلِكَ الرَّجُلُ جَائِدًا صَامِتًا —  
وَإِنْ تَبَسَّمَ لِرَجُلٍ آخَرَ قَالَ  
الْجَمِيعُ —

If Sheikh 'Abbas spoke to the villagers, they bent their heads in assent..., and if he was angry, they trembled with fear..., and if he slapped anyone's face, that person remained motionless, silent..., and if he smiled at anyone, they all said....

Gibr. I, 152, 7

إِنْ حَاوَلَ ذَلِكَ مِنْهُمْ مُحَاوَلٍ  
دَافَعَتْ عَنْهَا بِرِقَّةٍ وَأَدَبٍ

If any of them tried it, she defended herself gently and politely.

Manf. sha'. 30, 5

## b) with nonpreterital meaning:

إِنْ لَمْ يَكُنْ لَهُ مَا يَقْضُ فَضَحَ  
أَسْرَارَ نَفْسِهِ

if he has nothing to expose, he discloses the secrets of his own soul.

Nu'. kan. 10, 6

إِنْ فَعَلْتَ ضَرْبَتَكَ بِعَصَايَ هَذِهِ

If you do [it], I'll beat you with this stick.

Manf. sha'. 39, 1

The jussive after *إِنْ*, or in the main clause, is also used, although not commonly found:

وَإِنْ سَأَلَ أَحَدُ سُكَّانِهَا عَنْ تَارِيخِ  
الشَّيْخِ عَبَّاسٍ يُجِبُهُ —

And should he ask a villager about the story of Sheikh 'Abbas, he would answer....

Gibr. I, 209, 9

إِنْ يَكُونُوا مِنْ إِخْوَانِنَا الْأَوْسِ  
نَكْفِيهِمْ

If they belong to our brothers of al-Aus, we shall protect you from them. Hai. sir. 359, 10

إِنْ أَعْجَبَ لَشْيٍ فَإِنَّمَا أَعْجَبَ  
لِهَذَا وَكَذَا

If anything surprised me, it would be your tranquillity, Hus. 'ala. III, 207, 5

Parallelism of tenses, however, is not necessary. The imperfect tense may be used in the main clause and it gives the construction a greater degree of certainty:

إِنْ صَرَعْنَا نَمُوتُ كَالشَّهَدَاءِ وَإِنْ  
تَغَلَّبْنَا نَعِيشُ كَالْأَبْطَالِ

If we fall, we shall die  
as martyrs; if we triumph,  
we shall live as heroes.  
Gibr. II, 61, 15

وَلَيْنِ أَنَا أَنْكَرْتُ لَا تَصَدِّقُونَنِي

and if I should deny it,  
you certainly will not  
believe me.  
Hai. sir. 361, 4

C However, the use of the main clause in this position generally is, as we have seen, restricted by the influence of the subordinate clause, and only under special circumstances does the main clause take a different structure, e.g., in the form of an interrogative sentence, but only when the interrogative is introduced by the particle *أ*, which must be in the absolute beginning of the sentence (see Vol. I, § 41):

فَإِنْ كُنَيْتَ ذَلِكَ وَدَعَيْتَ إِلَى  
الْجَمَالِ وَالْمَالِ وَالشَّرَفِ وَالْكَفَاءَةِ  
أَلَا تُجِيبُ؟

and if you were considered  
sufficient as you are and  
were called [to receive]  
beauty, wealth, and honor,  
wouldn't you accept?  
Hai. sir. 122, 8

or when the emphatic particle *ل* precedes the conditional particle, the former may introduce the main clause and the verb may then also be in the energetic:

لَئِنْ أَقَرَّرْتُ بِمَا يَقُولُ النَّاسُ —  
لَأَقُولَنَّ مَا لَمْ يَكُنْ

If I would admit to what  
people say..., I would  
be confirming what did  
not occur.  
Hai. sir. 361, 3

إِنَّا وَاللَّهِ لَيُنَّ حَارِبُنَاكَ لَتَعْلَمَنَّ  
أَنَّا نَعْنُ النَّاسُ

By God, if we should  
fight you, you would  
certainly learn that we  
are men!  
Hai. sir. 279, 23

لَئِنْ فَعَلْنَا لَا زَادُوا جُرْأَةً      If we did [it], they will surely become more insolent. Hai. sir. 290,18

*Note* that the particle **لَ** may also introduce a verb in the imperfect:

لَقَدْ كَانَ ظِلُّهُ عَلَى الصَّبِيِّ ثَقِيلًا  
وَإِنْ ذَكَرَهُ لَيَمَلَأْ قَلْبَهُ بَعْدَ ذَلِكَ  
رَحْمَةً وَحَنَانًا      His prestige was great in the boy's eyes, and when he remembered him, his heart was filled with compassion and affection ever after. Hus. ayy. II,52,16

D Otherwise, the main clause following the subordinate conditional clause may be given greater syntactical independence by using the coordinating conjunction **فَ**, which nullifies any influence the subordinate clause might have upon the main clause (see Vol. III, p. 360ff.).

E When the subordinate conditional clause is to have a preterital meaning, the perfect of **كَانَ**, or its jussive after **لَمْ**, is used before the perfect in the subordinate:

إِنْ كَانَ اللَّهُ قَدْ أَمَرَ بِذَلِكَ  
فَلْيَطِيعْ أَمْرَ رَبِّهِ      If God has ordered him [to do] this, let him obey God's command. Hai. sir. 88,3

إِنْ كَانَ فَهَمَ ذَلِكَ كَانَ خَطَأً      If he thought so, he was mistaken. Amin duh. I,119,16

إِنْ كَانَ الَّذِي ذَهَبَ بِالرَّحْمَةِ  
مِنْ قَلْبِكَ أَبْقَى لَكَ مِنْهَا رَحْمَةً  
الْأَبْوَةَ فَعُدَّهَا إِلَيْكَ      If the one who erased pity from your heart left you a father's compassion, do take her with you. Manf. (Zy.) 30,40

إِنْ كَانَ وَالِدُكَ قَدْ أَسْمَعَكَ تِلْكَ  
الْوَقَائِعَ فَلَا يَكُونُ هَذَا الْإِلْقَاءُ  
هُوَ الْأَوَّلَ بَيْنَنَا      If your father told you of those events, then this meeting is not the first one between us. Gibr. II,21,17

*Note*, however, that كَانْ governing an imperfect does not necessarily have preterital meaning:

إِنْ كُنْتَ تُرِيدُ الْحَيَاةَ فَاهْرَبْ  
فِي ظَلَامٍ If you want to stay alive  
flee in the darkness.  
Hak. sheh. 15,7

إِنْ كُنْتَ تُرِيدُ أَنْ نَصَدِّقَكَ  
فَأَقْصِصْ عَلَيْنَا أَمْرَكَ if you want us to believe  
you, tell us your affairs  
Hus. 'ala. II,72,4

F When the main clause precedes the conditional subordinate clause, the construction after إِنْ remains the same. The temporal sphere of the action is determined by the main clause, although it usually is nonpreterital.

In this instance, the subordinate does not influence the main clause, nor is the use of فِ required:

كُلُّ هَذَا يَكُونُ عَبَثًا إِنْ لَمْ يَكُنْ  
رَجَالُ الْأَزْهَرِ — All this will be in vain  
if the people of al-Azhar  
Raf. wah. III,45,21

إِنِّي أَمُوتُ إِنْ كُنْتُ هُنَا  
Hak. ahl. 70,2 I'll die if I stay here.

وَمَاذَا عَلَيَّ إِنْ بَدَأَ لِي غَيْرُ مَا  
بَدَأَ لَكَ؟ And why should it bother  
me if I have a different  
opinion?  
Manf. mag. 21,17

لِأَيِّ سَبَبٍ يَدْعُوهُ إِنْ لَمْ يَكُنْ  
لِهَذَا؟ For what reason would he  
summon him if not for  
this? Mah. qah.

هُوَ فَاضِلٌ إِنْ أَرَدْتَ، وَوَلِيٌّ إِنْ  
أَوَّلَيْتَ، وَنَبِيٌّ إِنْ شِئْتَ، وَنَبِيٌّ أَيْضًا  
إِنْ أَحْبَبْتَ He is excellent, if you  
will; a saint, if you  
wish; and also a prophet,  
if you like.  
Mah. zuq. 180,19

The subordinate conditional clause is also frequently placed within the main clause in a parenthetical construction (see. Vol. III, p. 375). In this case, as in the preceding, the subordinate has no influence upon the main clause, nor is the use of فِ required:

- (هُوَ) مُشْفِقٌ إِنْ تَحَرَّكَ أَنْ يَنْبَهَ أَخَاهُ (He was) afraid he would wake him up if he moved.  
Hus. ayy. II, 43, 2
- أَمْ هُمْ خَافُوا إِنْ بَقِيَ هَؤُلَاءِ فِي الْحَبَشَةِ أَنْ تَشْتَدَّ شَوْكَتُهُمْ —؟ Or were they afraid that if they remained in Abyssinia they would become more courageous...?  
Hai. sir. 154, 12
- لَكِنَّ قُرَيْشًا خَافَتْ إِنْ جَاءَ مُحَمَّدٌ وَمَنْ حَوْلَهُ الْمُؤْمِنُونَ بِاللَّهِ وَبِرِسَالَتِهِ أَنْ — But the Koreish were afraid, if Mohammed arrived and with him those who believed in God and His mission..., that.... Hai. sir. 365, 7

A noun or pronoun which is, at the same time, the subject of both the main and subordinate clauses, will also frequently be placed before the conditional clause:

- هُوَ إِنْ لَمْ يَكُنْ مَحَبَّةً وَرَحْمَةً لَمْ يَكُنْ شَيْئًا He is nothing if He is not love and mercy.  
Gibr. II, 136, 7

*Note* that the noun or pronoun preceding the subordinate clause may not necessarily belong to the main clause but may also be a part of the subordinate clause, usually as its subject (see Vol. II, § 180 on anacoluthon).

- لِيَكْتُمَهُمْ إِنْ قَتَلُوهُ طَالِبُ بَنُو هَاشِمٍ وَمَنْ أَلْمَطَلِبُ بِدِيهِ but if they should kill him, the Banu Hashim and the Banu al-Muttalib would seek revenge.  
Hai. sir. 209, 1
- كَانَ وَاقِعًا أَنَّهُ إِنْ تَرَكَ ثَغْرَةً فِي لِحَافِهِ فَلَا بُدَّ مِنْ أَنْ تَمْتَدَّ مِنْهَا يَدُ عَفْرِيتٍ إِلَى جِسْمِهِ He was convinced that, if he ever left an opening in his blanket, it would be inevitable that the hand of an *Ifrit* would reach through it to him.  
Hus. ayy. I, 8, 14

G In modern Arabic, *إِنْ* is also frequently used to introduce a verbal sentence with inverted word order and is thus followed immediately by a noun:

فَإِنِّي أَخْشَىٰ إِنَّ أَنْتَ نَظَرْتَ إِلَيَّ  
وَجِئْتَنِي أَنْ تَذَرِكَ الرَّقَّةَ

for I fear that compassion  
will overwhelm you if you  
look into my face.  
Hai. sir. 88,13

إِنْ هُمْ خَالَفُونِي قُلْتُ لَهُمْ —

If they contradict me,  
I'll tell them....  
Raf. wah. I,58,5

لَقَدْ خَشِيَ إِنْ هُوَ أَنْتَظَرَهُمَا  
أَنْ —

He was afraid that if he  
waited for them....  
Hai. sir. 256,3

وَهِيَ تَرَى الْخَطَرَ مُحْدَثًا بِهَا إِنْ  
هِيَ لَمْ تَذَرِكْ مُحَمَّدًا وَلَمْ تَحُلْ  
بَيْنَهُ وَبَيْنَ يَثْرِبَ

seeing the imminent danger  
if they did not overtake  
Mohammed and prevent him  
from reaching Yathrib.  
Hai. sir. 211,11

خَافَتْ إِنْ هِيَ لَا زَمَتِ الصَّمْتَ مَعَ  
هَذَا الْخَطَرِ الْحَثِيثِ أَنْ يَنْتَهِيَا  
إِلَى الْمَعْدَانِ الْمَأْهُولِ قَبْلَ أَنْ  
يَقُولَ مَا يُرِيدُ

She was afraid if she  
kept silent that, with  
such a quick pace, they  
would reach al-Ma'hul  
Square before he would  
say what he wanted to.  
Mah. zuq. 54,15

H Strictly speaking, إِنْ often does not intro-  
duce a condition but, rather, a hypothetically accepted  
situation: "if that is the case":

فِي شَارِعِ بَطْرُسُوسَ إِنْ كَانَتْ هَذِهِ  
بَعْدَ مَدِينَةِ طَرُسُوسَ

In a street in Tarsus, if  
that is still Tarsus.  
Hak. ahl. 80,1

هَدَّدَهُ بِأَلَمَوْتٍ إِنْ هُوَ خَالَفَ  
أَمْرَهُ

He threatened him with  
death if he should dis-  
obey him.  
Manf. sha'. 24,10

لَعَلَّهُ كَذَلِكَ مَا يَزَالُ إِنْ لَمْ يَكْ  
أَشَدَّ

Perhaps it has remained  
the same, if it is not  
worse. Hai. sir. 3,8

هُوَ إِنْ لَمْ يَكُنْ مَعْبَةً وَوَحْمَةً لَمْ  
يَكُنْ شَيْئًا

He is nothing if He is  
not love and mercy.  
Gibr. II,136,7

It is also at times used to introduce an indirect question. (Note the similarities in the uses of the English "whether" and "if.")

قُولِي إِنَّ هَذَا صَحِيحٌ

Tell me whether that is true. Hak. sheh. 67,15

لَسْتُ أَدْرِي بَعْدَ إِنْ كَانَ هَذَا  
لِخَيْرٍ أَوْ لِشَرٍّ

I still don't know whether that was good or bad for me. Hak. ahl. 125,5

قُلْ إِنْ هَذَا كُلُّهُ كَانَ أَمْرًا عَادِيًّا

Tell me whether or not such things are common. Din (Zy.) 3,33

لَمْ يَكُنْ مَأْمُونٌ رِضْوَانٌ يَدْرِي إِنْ  
كَانَ يَبْعَثُ إِلَى فَرَنْسَا أَمْ يَبْقَى  
فِي مِصْرَ

Ma'mun Ridwan did not know whether he would be sent to France or would remain in Egypt. Mah. qah. 79,15

لِيَرَى إِنْ كَانَ هُنَاكَ عَيْبٌ

to see whether there was any imperfection in it. Amin (Zy.) 26,24

(Also see the chapter on indirect questions, Vol. III, p. 97ff.)

#### § 259 . لَوْ

A The conditional clause introduced by **لَوْ** is a verbal sentence with normal word order and with the verb most often in the perfect tense (or the jussive after **لَمْ** as its negation) with nonpreterital meaning in order to express a hypothetical condition, or with preterital meaning when the statement involves a condition contrary to fact. The actual meaning of the perfect tense, and thus of the condition, is given by the context.

a) The main clause following the subordinate conditional clause is also a verbal sentence with the verb in the perfect tense, most often introduced by the emphatic particle **لَ** ; otherwise, the main clause

is preceded by **فَ** (see Vol. III, p. 361). The verbs in both clauses may have a preterital or nonpreterital meaning.

1) With the nonpreterital perfect, **لَوْ** can be used as equivalent to **إِنْ** :

لَوْ شِئْتَ أَنْ أَقُولَ لَكَ لَقُلْتُ — If you want me to tell you, I'll say....  
Manf. mag. 295,12

رَبَّمَا لَوْ دَرَى لَنْ فُؤَادُهُ قَلِيلًا Perhaps if he knew [that], his heart would soften a little. Hak. sul. 48,5

لَوْ لَمْ يَكُنْ مَبَالُ التِّجَارَةِ فِيهَا مَتَسِعًا لَأَنْتَرَحَ عَنْهَا نِصْفُ سُكَّانِهَا If the extent of trade there were not large, half of the population would emigrate.  
Raih. mul. 224,17

although it usually gives the condition a connotation of impossibility:

لَوْ فَهِمَ النَّاسُ مَا تَقُولُهُ السَّكِينَةُ لَكَانُوا أَقْرَبَ إِلَى آلِ اللَّهِ مِنْهُمْ إِلَى كَوَاسِ الْغَابِ If people understood the language of silence, then they would be nearer to the gods than to the wild beasts of the forest.  
Gibr. I,138,7

لَوْ عَقَلَ الْبَشَرُ لَوَقَفُوا الْيَوْمَ فَرِحِينَ — If Humanity were wise, she would stand up today rejoicing....  
Gibr. III,26,4

لَوْ تَصَفَّحْتَهُ لَرَأَيْتَ حِسَابِي غَيْرَ الْمَدْفُوعِ If you could leaf through it, you would find my account still unpaid.  
S. Din (Br.) 61,26

2) With a verb having preterital meaning, **لَوْ** introduces a condition contrary to fact:

لَوْ كَانَ نَبِيًّا لَمَا مَاتَ Had he been a prophet, he would not have died.  
Raih. mul. 230,5



لَوْ سَأَلْتَ ذَلِكَ لِبَعِيدٍ بَغِيضٍ  
فَعَلْنَا

If you had asked it on behalf of a stranger, we surely would have done it. Hai. sir. 121,5

وَلَوْ بَقِيَ أَكْثَرُ مِنْ ذَلِكَ لَأَكَلَهُ  
أَيْضًا

and if there had been any more left, he would have eaten them also. 'Aww. (Br.) 18,22

لَوْ كَانَ ذَلِكَ لَمَا كُنْتُ وَجَدْتُكَ

If it had been thus, I would not have found you. Hak. ahl. 132,5

b) The preterital idea can be emphasized with the particle *لَوْ* placed before the perfect in the subordinate clause:

لَوْ قَدْ أَرْسَلَ نَفْسَهُ مَعَ طَبِيعَتِهَا  
لَبَكَى

If he had let himself go, he would have cried. Hus. ayy. I,140,13

لَوْ قَدْ فَعَلَ يَوْمًا مِنَ الْأَيَّامِ  
لَكَانَتْ لِلصَّبِيِّ قِصَّةٌ كَقِصَّتِهِ مَعَ  
سُورَةِ الشُّعْرَاءِ

If he ever did [it], the same thing the boy experienced with the Sura of *The Poets* would have happened again. Hus. ayy. I,76,16

c) Since *لَوْ* cannot be followed by a noun, when it introduces a nominal or an inverted verbal sentence, *أَنَّ* is used after the conditional particle<sup>33</sup>:

فَلَوْ أَنَّ إِنْسَانًا غَيْرَ وَاقِفٍ عَلَى  
حِكَايَتِهَا نَظَرَهَا فِي تِلْكَ الْحَالَةِ  
لَمَا ظَنَّهَا غَيْرَ نَائِمَةٍ أَهْنَأَ نَوْمٍ

Had one knowing nothing of her situation seen her in such positions, he would have thought her sleeping restfully. Nu'. liq. 37,2

لَوْ أَنَّ الرَّاعِيَ هُنَا لَأَخْبَرَكَ  
— أَنَّ

If the shepherd were here, he would tell you.... Hak. ahl. 28,10

33. The resulting compound particle could perhaps be literally translated as "if (it is a fact) that."

لَوْ أَتَيْتَنِي أَرَدْتَنِي أَنْ — لَا حَتَّاجَ  
الْأَمْرِ إِلَيَّ —

If I had wanted to..., it would have been necessary to.... Hai. sir. 20,8

لَوْ أَنَّ الرَّافِعِيَّ كَانَ قَدْ دَرَسَ  
الْآدَابَ الْأَرْبَعَةَ — لَعَرَفَ —

Had al-Rafi'i learned European literatures..., he would have known.... Musa adab. 58,20

لَوْ أَتَيْتَنِي فَعَلْتَ لَكَانَتْ هَذِهِ  
الطَّبَعَةُ فِي أَيْدِي الْقُرَّاءِ  
مُنْذُ أَشْهُرٍ

If I had done [so], this edition would have been in the hands of the readers months ago. Hai. sir. 25,14

لَوْ أَنَّ حَظَّهُ كَانَ جَمَعَهُ بِغَيْرِ  
إِحْسَانٍ لَرُبَّمَا كَانَ الْحَالُ غَيْرَ  
الْحَالِ

Had fate brought him together with someone other than Ihsan, perhaps the situation would have been different. Mah. qah. 156,5

فَلَوْ أَنَّ إِحْدَى مَوْجُودَاتِ الْكَوْنِ  
تَحَوَّلَتْ أَوْ تَبَدَّلَتْ لَتَبَدَّلَ مَا  
فِي الْكَوْنِ

and if any part of Creation changed, everything created would become different. Hai. sir. 151,3

d) The conditional subordinate clause frequently follows the main clause. In this position, the temporal meaning of the construction is determined by the main clause:

مَا كُنَّا لِنُخْدَعَ فِيهَا لَوْ عَرَفْنَا مُنْذُ  
الْيَوْمِ الْأَوَّلِ قَادَتِهَا الْحَقِيقِيَّينَ

We could not have been deceived by it had we known the true leaders from the beginning. Qud. (Br.) 51,8

فَمَاذَا يَكُونُ شَأْنُكَ غَدًا لَوْ أَنَّ  
ذَلِكَ الْفَتَى — كَانَ بَلِيدًا؟

And what would become of you in the future if this young man...should turn out to be stupid? Manf. sha'. 103,4

لِمَ لَا تَعْدِثْنِي عَنْ حُبِّكَ لَوْ  
أَنَّكَ تُحِبُّنِي قَلِيلًا؟

Why don't you speak to me of your love, if it is true that you love me a little? Hak. sheh. 68,3

أَنْ تَكُونَ أَمْرَأَةً لَوْ أَنَّهَا اسْتَطَاعَتْ to be a woman if she could.  
Hak. ahl. 44,16

مَا أَسْعَدَ حَظِّي لَوْ أَنَّ مَا  
تَقُولُ صَحِيحٌ How lucky my lot would be  
if what you say were true!  
Hak. ahl. 49,8

كَأَنَّ يَدْهَشَنِي لَوْ أَنَّكَ لَمْ تَعْرِفْنِي It would have surprised me  
if you had not recognized  
me. Nu'. liq. 11,1

e) **لَوْ** is frequently used after **كَمَا** to give this particle a hypothetical meaning, or even one contrary to fact, which is otherwise not permitted (see Vol. III, p. 236):

كَمَا لَوْ كُنْتَ تَنْظُرُ إِلَيْهَا مِنْ سَمَاءٍ  
أُخْرَى لَا مِنْ الْأَرْضِ as if you would be looking  
at it from another firmament, not from the earth.  
Raf. wah. I, 51,10

كَمَا لَوْ كَانَ مِنَ الْمُوسِرِينَ الْمُثْقَلِينَ as if he were wealthy with  
money and property, although  
يَالْمَالِ وَالْمَتَاعِ وَإِنْ كَانَ فِي الْوَقْعِ he actually only owned the  
house.... Mah. zuq. 13,8  
لَا يَمْلِكُ إِلَّا الْبَيْتُ —

تَقَلَّبَتِ الْحَدِيثُ كَمَا لَوْ كَانَ عَنِ  
الطَّقِسِ She took the matter [as  
lightly] as if it were  
about the weather.  
Nu'. liq. 33,4

إِنَّكَ تَتَغَاطِبُنِي كَمَا لَوْ كُنْتَ تَعْرِفْنِي You talk to me as though  
you had known me before  
مِنْ قَبْلُ أَوْ كَمَا لَوْ أَنَّكَ لِي بَعْلٌ or as if you were my  
master. Hak. ahl. 106,2

B **لَوْ** is also used to introduce a clause that expresses a condition whose actual realization is desirable but is not likely to happen or is even impossible. In such instances, **لَوْ** often becomes equivalent to an exclamatory particle for contrary-to-fact wishes.

The particle **لَوْ** is followed by a verbal sentence with the verb in the perfect or imperfect tense. The perfect, however, may or may not have preterital meaning. It may also be followed by a noun clause introduced by **أَنَّ**.

a) after verbs of wishing and the like:

- وَكَمْ أَحَبُّ لَوْ تَعْرِفَنِيهِ كَمَا عَرَفْتُهُ  
How I wish you knew him as I do.  
Hus. ayy. I, 149, 9
- أَتَمَنَّى لَوْ كُنْتُ أَعْرِفُ مِثْلَ هَذَا الْحَبِّ  
I wish I knew a love like that. Jabr. (Br.) 70, 16
- وَدِدْتُ لَوْ أَنَّهَا جَلَسَتْ عَلَى عَرْشِهَا  
I wish she could sit on her throne.  
Hak. sul. 62, 13
- كَمْ كَانَ يَتَمَنَّى طِفْلاً لَوْ اسْتَطَاعَ أَنْ يَخْلُوَ إِلَى طَعَامِهِ  
How he wished as a child to be able to eat alone!  
Hus. ayy. I, 21, 15
- وَدَّ لَوْ وَجَدَ السَّبِيلَ إِلَى الْهَرَبِ مِنْهُمْ  
He wanted to avoid them....  
Manf. mag. 13, 1
- تَمَنَّتْ لَوْ تَسْتَطِيعُ أَنْ تَجُوبَ بُلْدَانَ الْأَرْضِ جَمِيعًا  
She wished she could travel everywhere on earth.  
Mah. qah. 163, 9
- b) after an interjectional particle or an exclamatory expression:
- أَوْ لَوْ تَعْلَمِينَ كَمْ أَحَبُّكَ  
Ah, if you knew how much I love you!  
Manf. sha'. 165, 13
- أَوْ لَوْ تَعْلَمَانِ — مَا رَأَيْتَ  
Ah, if you knew... what I have just seen in a street!  
Hak. ahl. 79, 16
- أَوْ لَوْ اسْتَطَعْتُ ... !  
Ah, if I could just...!  
Hak. sul. 77, 2
- أَوْ لَوْ صِرْتُ مُدِيرًا ! أَتَدْرِينَ مَاذَا أَصْنَعُ؟  
Ah, if only I were a director! Do you know what I would do?  
Raf. wah. I, 92, 10
- كَمْ تَحْسِنُ صَنْعًا لَوْ شَرَيْتَ لَنَا مَا —  
It would be very kind of you if you bought for us what....  
Hak. ahl. 23, 15
- مَا أَسْعَدَ حَظِّي لَوْ أَنَّ مَا تَقُولُ صَحِيحٌ  
How lucky my fate would be if what you say were true!  
Hak. ahl. 49, 8

أَمَّا وَاللَّهِ لَوْ جَعَلَ الشَّيْطَانُ فِي  
يَمِينِي رَجُلًا فَحَلًّا — وَفِي شِمَالِي  
أَمْرًا جَمِيلَةً —

By God, if only Satan  
would place a perfect  
man on his right hand...  
and on his left a beauti-  
ful woman...!

Raf. wah. I, 122, 17

c) also as an independent exclamatory particle:

كَلِمَةً لَوْ لَمْ أَخْطُهَا ..

One word, if only I had  
not written it!

Hak. ahl. 16, 3

لَوْ تَعْلَمَانِ مَا رَأَيْتَ وَمَا سَمِعْتَ

If you only knew what I  
have seen and heard!

Hak. ahl. 34, 8

لَوْ أُعْطِينَا الْقُدْرَةَ عَلَى سَمَاعِ  
كُلِّ مَا فِي هَذَا الْكَوْنِ مِنْ أَصْوَاتٍ

If we could just hear  
every sound that exists!

Hak. sul. 28, 8

لَوْ رَأَيْتُمَانِي وَقَدْ أَحَاطَتْ  
بِي نَاسٌ —

If you had only seen me  
surrounded by people...!

Hak. ahl. 80, 2

## § 260 لَوْلَا

A لَوْلَا, "if not," always introduces a single member and hypothetically negates its existence: "if it were not for...."

It may be followed by a single noun in the nominative case as a statement of the noun's existence which the particle hypothetically denies. The noun should be considered a nominal sentence with a single component (see Vol. I, § 2).

In this construction, the main clause is usually subsequent to the subordinate clause and is frequently, but not necessarily, introduced by the emphatic particle لَوْ or, at times, by ف. The verbal tenses in the main clause have their usual meaning and give a temporal aspect to the nominal sentence introduced by لَوْلَا :

لَوْلَا أَمْرُكَ الْمَسِيحِيَّةَ لَمَا كُنْتُ  
أَعْتَنَقْتُ دِينَ الْمَسِيحِ

If it were not for your Christian wife, you would not have embraced Christianity. Hak. ahl. 30,10

لَوْلَا خَوْفُهَا مِنْكَ لَجَاءَتْ إِلَيْكَ

Were it not for her fear of you, she would have come to you.

Tai. (Zy.) 34,31

كَانَ أَمْرُ الْقَيْسِ قَوَى الشَّاعِرِيَّةِ  
وَلَوْلَا ذَلِكَ لَمْ يَقْلِ الشُّعْرَ

Imru' l-Qais had great poetic talent; had it not been for this, he would not have composed verses.

Djir. tar. I,108,25

لَوْلَا خَوْفُهُ عَاقِبَةَ الْجَرِيْمَةِ فَاسْتَخَذَى

Had it not been for his fear of the consequences of the crime, he would have yielded.

Raf. wah. I,99,15

When لَوْلَا is followed by a personal pronoun, it is suffixed to the particle:

لَوْلَاكَ أَنْتَ لَمَا أَعْتَنَقْتُ الْأَمِيرَةَ  
بَرِيْسَكَ دِينَ الْمَسِيحِ

Had it not been for you, Princess Prisca would not have embraced Christianity. Hak. ahl. 30,13

لَوْلَاكَ مَا كُنْتُ أَسْتَطِيعُ أَنْ ...

Had it not been for you, I could not have....

Hak. ahl. 29,8

لَوْلَا نَا لَمَا أَصْبَتُوهَا

If it had not been for us, you would not have gotten it. Hai. sir. 268,16

لَوْلَاهُ لَمْتُ فِي عَزْلَتِي هَذِهِ  
هَمًّا وَكَمْدًا

Had it not been for him, I would have died of sorrow and sadness in this isolation in which I live. Manf. sha'. 255,16

B When the main clause expresses the existence of a noun which is hypothetically denied, it may

also take the same form as the conditional subordinate clause, resulting in the following parallelism:

لَوْلَا — وَلَوْلَا, "were it not for...neither would there be...":

لَوْلَا أَلَّلَوْلُو كَمَا قُلْتَ وَلَوْلَا أَسَوَاقُ  
نَجْدٍ وَالْحَسَا  
Were it not for the pearls,  
as I have said, neither  
would there be markets in  
Nejed and al-Hasa.  
Raih. mul. 225,13

C لَوْلَا, with the noun it introduces, may follow the main clause:

لَكَانَ اللَّطْفُ وَالتَّوَضُّعُ أَجْمَلَ مَا  
فِي الْكِتَابِ لَوْلَا دُرَّةُ الْإِخْلَاصِ  
Kindness and humility would  
have been the most beautiful  
aspect of the letter,  
had it not been for the  
pearl of sincere affection.  
Raih. mul. 31,6

تَرَى مَاذَا كُنْتُ أَفْعَلُ بِحَيَاتِي  
لَوْلَاكَ أَنْتَ؟  
What could I ever do if it  
were not for you?  
Mah. zuq. 215,12

مَا كُنَّا نَبْطِئُ بِالرَّجُوعِ لَوْلَا  
الْمَنْدُوبُ السَّامِيُّ  
We would not have delayed  
our return, had it not  
been for the High Com-  
missioner. Raih. mul. 68,6

Hence, لَوْلَا may be used to introduce an exception to a given statement, equivalent to the English "except":

تَكَادُ تَحْصِرُهُ لَوْلَا مَنَافِذُ ثَلَاثَةٍ  
They almost enclose it  
completely but for three  
passes. Hai. sir. 85,10

D لَوْلَا may also introduce a noun clause preceded by *أَنَّ* or *أَنْ*. In both cases, the particles present a statement of fact hypothetically negated by لَوْلَا: "had it not been (for the fact) that....," "if it were not (for the fact) that...." The main clause frequently precedes the subordinate:

مَا كُنْتُ أَظُنُّ أَنَّ — لَوْلَا أَنَّكَ  
أَقْسَمْتَ لِي عَلَى ذَلِكَ  
I never would have be-  
lieved that...., had you  
not sworn it to me.  
Manf. sha'. 254,13

لَوْلَا أَنِّي خَرَجْتُ الْيَوْمَ مِنَ الْكُتَّابِ  
قَبْلَ أَنْصِرَافِ الصَّبْيَانِ لَمَا رَجَعْتُ  
حَافِيًا

If I had not left the school today before the boys were dismissed, he would not have returned barefooted.

Hus. ayy. I, 61, 6

كَادَتْ تَعُثُّ بَيْنَهُمُ الْفِتْنَةُ لَوْلَا أَنَّ  
نَهَضَ الْإِمَامُ فَقَطَّبَهُمْ

There would almost have been a revolt, had it not been for the fact that the imam stood up and said the *khutba*.

Hus. ayy. I, 83, 2

لَمْ أَكُنْ لِأَصْدَقَ لَوْلَا أَنَّهُ حَدَّثَنِي  
بِنَفْسِهِ

I could not possibly have believed it, were it not for the fact that he himself told me. Mah. zuq. 175, 19

لَوْلَا أَنَّ أُمَّهُ شَفَعَتْ فِيهِ لَكَانَ لَهُ  
مَعَ أَبِيهِ مَوْقِفٌ مَشْهُورٌ

If his mother had not interfered on his behalf, he would have had a scene to remember with his father.

Hus. ayy. I, 77, 2

لَكُنْتُ قَبَلْتُ السَّيِّدَ هَاشِمَ بَيْنَ  
عَيْنَيْهِ لَوْ أَنَّ الرُّسُمِيَّاتِ —  
تَسْمَحُ بِذَلِكَ

I would have kissed Mr. Hashim on his forehead had the rules...allowed it. Raih. mul. 26, 6

This construction often loses its conditional meaning to such a degree that لَوْلَا does not introduce a hypothetically negated event or action, but simply an opposition of two sentences in a function very much like that of an adversative opposition:

أَوْشَكَ أَنْ يَذْرَكَ الْقُتُوبُ لَوْلَا أَنَّ  
ذَكَرَ قَرِيبَ وَالِدَتِهِ

He was almost desperate, but he remembered his mother's relative.

Mah. qah. 53, 3

وَدَّ لَوْ وَجَدَ السَّبِيلَ إِلَى الْهَرَبِ  
مِنْهُمَا لَوْلَا أَنَّهُمَا اعْتَرَصَا طَرِيقَهُ

He wanted to avoid them, but they blocked his way. Manf. mag. 13, 1



لَقَدْ كَانَ لَكَ فِي هَذَا الزَّوْجِ —  
حَظُّكَ مِنْ سَعَادَةِ الْعَيْشِ وَهَنَاءِهِ  
لَوْلَا أَنَّكَ شَاعِرٌ وَالشُّعْرَاءُ يَفْهَمُونَ  
مِنْ مَعْنَى السَّعَادَةِ غَيْرَ مَا يَفْهَمُهُ  
النَّاسُ جَمِيعًا

You certainly could find  
in this marriage...your  
portion of happiness, but  
you are a poet, and poets  
understand happiness in  
a different way from the  
rest of the people.  
Manf. mag. 9,1

## § 261 THE CONCESSIVE CLAUSE

A Concessive clauses are actually conditional constructions in which the relationship between main clause and condition has evolved from its original meaning to such a degree that it presents a completely new aspect.

In a conditional construction, the validity of the main clause is restricted, as we have seen, to the actual fulfillment of the condition: "I'll talk to him if I see him."

With concessive constructions, on the other hand, the subordinate clause does not limit the validity of the main clause but extends it even in the event of the fulfillment of the special conditions or situations stated by the subordinate clause. Compare the following examples: "I'll let him know (only) if he does not come" and "I'll let him know (even) if he does not come." The condition as stated in this category does not have to be a real one, but it is always possible to achieve a rhetorical effect by using a hypothetical event and even one contrary to fact as a means of emphasizing the validity of the statement of the main clause: "Let justice be done, though the heavens fall."

From the structural point of view, the subordinate clause is introduced by the conditional particles *إِنْ* or *لَوْ* with the same construction they have in conditional clauses (see the chapter immediately preceding). The concession *per se*, however, should follow the main clause, with which it is, in addition, usually connected by the conjunction *و*, which, in this instance, has the basic meaning of "and still," "and also" (see Vol. III, p. 11ff.).

The temporal sphere of the subordinate clause is determined by the temporal meaning of the verbal tense in the main clause:

أَسْتَطِيبُ طَعَامِي وَلَوْ كَانَ خُبْرًا  
وَزَيْتُونًا

I would find my food delicious, even if it were just bread and olives.  
Sak. (Zy.) 13,43

أَنْ تُؤْمِنَ وَلَوْ أَلْحَدَ النَّاسُ

that you believe even if the people apostatize.  
Amin (Zy.) 7,28

وَلَكِنَّ أُمَّهُ هِيَ أَجْمَلُهُنَّ وَإِنْ  
كَانَتْ شَوْهَاءَ

But his mother would be the most beautiful of all, even if she were the ugliest.  
Raf. wah. I,33,11

B The subordinate clause may precede the main clause; the conditional particles **إِنْ** or **لَوْ** are always preceded by the conjunction **وَ**, which, in this position, also refers to the following main clause and not to any prior statement:

وَإِنْ أَعْطَيْتَنِي ثِقْلَ رَمَالِ الْبَادِيَةِ  
نَهَبًا لَا أَخْطُو خُطْوَةً إِلَيْهَا

Even if you gave me the weight of the desert's sand in gold, I would not go a single step in that direction.  
Raih. mul. 73,10

or it may also be used as a parenthetical construction:

هَذِهِ أَوَّلُ جَلْسَةٍ وَإِنْ كَانَتْ غَيْرَ  
رَسْمِيَّةٍ فِي مُؤْتَمَرِ الْعَقِيرِ

This was the first —though unofficial— session of the conference of al-Aqir.  
Raih. mul. 71,6

بَيَّدَ أَنَّهُ ضَايِقُهَا وَإِنْ لَمْ تَدْرِ  
لِمَاذَا حَمَّاسُهُ لِرَأْيِهِ

But his enthusiasm for his [own] ideas vexed her, though she did not know why. Mah. qah. 19,20

Note that a simple conditional construction —without the use of the coordinate conjunction **وَ**— may have a concessive meaning:

إِنَّكَ إِنْ أَلْحَحْتَ عِشْرِينَ قَرْنًا فَلَنْ  
تَظْفَرَ مِنِّي بِكَلِمَةٍ

that you, even if you  
implored for twenty cen-  
turies, would never win  
a word from me.

Hak. sheh. 61,5

C In normal concessive constructions, as we have seen, the subordinate clause expresses a hypothetical situation and even one that is contrary to fact. Both are used as a means to stress the validity of the statement of the main clause. Very frequently, however, the subordinate clause refers to a present or to a past event whose actual occurrence has not nullified the content of the main clause. Because of this, the meaning of the construction becomes more adversative than concessive.

Structurally, the adversatives cannot be considered in any way different from the concessives, since they are introduced by the same particles that are also used, in the same way, in conditional clauses. The particles are always preceded by the conjunction وَ :

أَلَتْ كَفَالَةَ مُحَمَّدٍ إِلَى أَبِي طَالِبٍ  
وَإِنْ لَمْ يَكُنْ أَكْبَرَ إِخْوَتِهِ سِنًا

The custody of Mohammed  
went to Abu Talib, al-  
though he was not the  
eldest brother.

Hai. sir. 114,12

نَحْنُ مَا بَرَزْنَا إِلَى الْوُجُودِ فِي  
لَحْظَةٍ وَاحِدَةٍ وَلَا سَلَكْنَا طَرِيقًا  
وَاحِدًا وَإِنْ يَكُنْ مَصْدَرُنَا وَاحِدًا  
وَمَرَجِعُنَا وَاحِدًا

We have not come into the  
world at the same moment,  
nor have we walked the  
same path, even though our  
origin and goal be the  
same. Nu'. liq. 79,1

مَا هِيَ أَلَمْرَةُ الْأُولَى أَصَافَحَكَ  
فِيهَا وَإِنْ تَكُنْ يَدَانَا مَا تَلَأَسْتَا  
مِنْ قَبْلُ

That is not the first time  
we have shaken hands, al-  
though our hands have  
never touched before.

Nu'. liq. 32,10

قَدْ عَكَفُوا عَلَى الشِّعْرِ الْجَاهِلِيِّ  
— وَإِنْ كَانَ قَائِلُوهُ مِنَ الْمُشْرِكِينَ  
الْكَفَّارِ

They were busily engaged  
with pre-Islamic poetry...  
although their creators  
were idolatrous unbelievers.  
Far. (Zy.) 17,17

مَعَ ذَلِكَ كَانَتْ تُحِبُّهَا كَثِيرًا وَإِنْ  
كَانَتْ فِي الْحَقِيقَةِ أُمًّا بِالتَّبْنَى

In spite of that, she  
loved her dearly even  
though she had only  
adopted her.

Mah. zuq. 31,10

قَالَ بِبَقِينٍ وَإِنْ كَانَ فِي الْحَقِيقَةِ  
يَذْهَبُ إِلَى هُنَاكَ أَوَّلَ مَرَّةٍ

He spoke with assurance,  
although he was actually  
going there for the first  
time. Mah. qah. 70,18

إِنَّمَا هِيَ عَامَةٌ تَشْمِلُ الْمَجْتَمَعَاتِ  
الْإِنْسَانِيَّةَ كُلَّهَا وَإِنْ كَانَتْ تَخْتَلِفُ  
بِاخْتِلَافِ الْعَوَامِلِ وَالظُّرُوفِ

It is a general [crisis]  
which affects all human  
societies, although it  
varies according to the  
different factors and  
circumstances surrounding  
them. al-Hus. (Br.II) 3,1

ذَلِكَ دَوْرٌ حَصَى هَرَّاحٌ وَإِنْ بَقِيَتْ  
آثَارُهُ

That is a period that has  
definitely gone by even  
though its effects still  
remain. Sak. (Zy.) 13,47

سَاهَمَ فِيهِ الشَّابُّ كَمَا يَنْبَغِي  
وَإِنْ وَدَّ لَوْ يُغَادِرُ الْبَيْتَ فِي  
أَقْرَبِ وَقْتٍ

The young man took part  
[in the conversation] as  
was seeming, although he  
wanted to leave the house  
as soon as possible.  
Mah. qah. 131,5

D In the instances in which the subordinate precedes the main clause, the latter may be introduced by particles which emphasize the adversative meaning characteristic of this construction:

أَنَا وَإِنْ لَمْ أَكُنْ رَاهِبًا وَلَا قَسِيصًا  
وَلَكِنِّي صَهْرُ الْكَرْدِ بَيْتَالٍ

Although I am neither monk  
nor priest, I am the  
Cardinal's relative.  
Manf. sha'. 158,5

إِنْ, in concessive constructions, may also be modified by the emphatic particle لَ , which is prefixed to إِنْ , thus following the conjunction وَ . In this case, the main clause, when subsequent to the subordinate, is usually also introduced by the same emphatic particle, although it may instead be preceded by the conjunction فَ (see Vol. III, p. 360ff.):

وَلَيْنَ لَمْ أَسَلْ أَلَمَوْتُ وَلَا نَقَضْتُ  
لَهُ عَهْدًا فَإِنِّي صِرْتُ أَحِبَّ الْحَيَاةَ  
أَيْضًا

Although I have not forgotten death or renounced my allegiance to it, I love life also.  
Gibr. II, 195, 1

هِيَ ثَوْرَةٌ عَامَّةٌ — وَلَيْنَ كَانَ  
الْقَائِمُونَ بِهَا مِنْ ضَبَاطِ الْجَيْشِ

This is a revolution of the masses..., although the ones who carried it out were army officers.  
al-Raf. (Zy.) 19, 44

وَلَيْنَ كَانَ بَعْدُ فِي الثَّانِيَةِ عَشْرَةَ  
مِنْ سِنِّهِ لَقَدْ كَانَ لَهُ مِنْ عَظَمَةِ  
الرَّحِ

Although he was only twelve years of age, he already possessed a spiritual greatness.  
Hai. sir. 115, 11

## § 262 INCOMPLETE CONDITIONAL CLAUSES

A In conditional constructions in which the subordinate clause precedes the main clause, the latter may undergo ellipsis of some of its parts, e.g.,

a) After a subordinate clause introduced by **لَوْ**, the complete main clause may be omitted; the construction, in this case, has the value of an invitation or a polite request:

لَوْ أَنِّي وَجَّهْتَهُ إِلَى بَيْتِي فِي  
طَرِيقِهِ بَيْنَ زَوْجِي وَوَلَدِي؟

May I direct him to my house to see my wife and children on his way?  
Hak. ahl. 26, 7

b) Frequently, the main clause only introduces new elements which offer a complement to the idea expressed —although conditionally— in the subordinate. All the other elements of the main clause being omitted are easily understood or have already been mentioned in the subordinate clause. The elements presented as the main clause are introduced by **فَ** (see Vol. III, p. 361ff.):

لَئِنْ دَلَّ هَذَا آتَمَعَتْ عَلَى شَيْءٍ  
لَعَلَى شِدَّةٍ جَرَّصَ أَصْحَابِهِ عَلَى  
التَّشْكِكِ فِي الْإِسْلَامِ

If this obstinacy shows anything, it is their great desire to cast suspicion on Islam.  
Hai. sir. 43,5

إِنْ أَلْفَوْا أَوْ شَعَرُوا أَوْ كَتَبُوا  
فَبِالْعَرَبِيَّةِ

If they composed or wrote poetry or books, [it was] in Arabic.  
Amin duh. I, 310,5

أَنْ كُلَّ أَمْرٍ يَوْمَ الْقِيَامَةِ مَجْزِي  
بِأَعْمَالِهِ إِنْ خَيْرًا فَخَيْرٌ وَإِنْ شَرًّا  
فَشَرٌّ

that every human being will be rewarded on the Day of Resurrection according to his deeds, good or bad.  
Hai. sir. 8,15

إِنْ كَانَ هُنَاكَ أَحَدٌ يَشْكُ  
فَهُوَ دَائِمًا أَنْتَ

If there is going to be anyone who will doubt, it will be you.  
Hak. sul. 94,2

c) When the subordinate clause precedes the main clause, only seldom are there any cases of ellipsis in the subordinate clause:

أَنْ كُلَّ أَمْرٍ يَوْمَ الْقِيَامَةِ مَجْزِي  
بِأَعْمَالِهِ إِنْ خَيْرًا فَخَيْرٌ وَإِنْ شَرًّا  
فَشَرٌّ

that every human being will be rewarded on the Day of Resurrection according to his deeds, good or bad. Hai. sir. 8,15

B When the main clause precedes the subordinate, a complete sentence is not necessary after the particle **لَوْ**. In concessive constructions, **وَلَوْ** very frequently introduces new elements that, although only hypothetically presented, modify or complete the statement of the main clause. In such cases, the elements following the particle will take the function required by the main clause and, if necessary, the grammatical case. The elliptical construction usually follows the main clause, but it also may be placed as a parenthetical construction immediately after the part of the main clause it modifies:

لَأَنَّا لَمْ نَعْرِفِ الطَّمَأِينَةَ وَلَوْ  
مِنْ بَعِيدٍ

For we never had even the remotest experience of tranquility.  
Jabr. (Br.) 70,22

شَعَرْتُ لِتَرْكِهَا بِشَيْءٍ وَلَوْ قَلِيلٍ  
مِنَ الضِّيقِ

I felt some uneasiness on leaving her, even if only a little.

Qal. (Zy.) 21,13

أَمَلًا بِأَنْ يَحُودَ كَاتِبُهَا وَيَذْكُرَنِي  
وَلَوْ بِسَطْرٍ أَوْ سَطْرَيْنِ

hoping that its author would remember me again, even if with just a few lines. Nu'. kan. 7,8

أَوَإِنِّي أَنتَ مِنْ أَنْ مَن رَّاكَ وَلَوْ  
مَرَّةً لَا يَنْسَاكَ؟

Are you so confident of the fact that whoever sees you, even if only once, will never forget you?

Nu'. liq. 11,2

رُمْتُ إِلَّا سِتْغَدَامَ وَلَوْ بِكَفَافٍ يَوْمِي

I sought any occupation, even if only for my daily livelihood.

Gibr. II,164,9

مُسْكِينُ الْمُتَعَدِّنِ الَّذِي لَا يَسْتَطِيعُ  
أَنْ يَسْتَعْنِيَ عَنِ الْمَدَنِيَّةِ وَلَوْ يَوْمًا  
وَاحِدًا

Poor is the educated man who cannot do without civilization, not even for a single day.

Raih. mul. 73,13

C Of special interest are the cases of ellipsis in alternative conditional constructions when so confronted that the second is the negative counterpart of the first (i.e., "if A, then..., if not A, then...").

This is actually never expressed complete in all its members, which theoretically include two conditions with their respective main clauses.

In these cases of ellipsis, an introductory element or a new statement may replace the original first member of the alternative conditional construction. The second part is introduced by the compound **وَلَا**, still with a meaning equivalent to the original of "if not." The conditional nature of **إِلَّا** retains its influence on the statement following (which was originally the main clause) so that, consequently, it is syntactically equivalent to any main clause in a conditional construction; thus it usually takes a perfect, with or without preterital meaning, or is otherwise usually introduced by **فَ**, following the same patterns as the conditional constructions:

قَلْبُهُ يَحْدِثُهُ بِأَنَّهَا جَمِيلَةٌ وَإِلَّا مَا  
جَذَبَتْ شَخْصًا كَقَاسِمٍ بِكَ

He assumed that she must be beautiful, otherwise she would not have attracted a man like Qasim Bey. Mah. qah. 112,12

قَدْ أَعْجَبْتَهُ وَإِلَّا فَفِيمَ هَذَا الْإِهْتِمَامُ  
الشَّدِيدِ

He certainly liked her, otherwise why this great interest?

Mah. zuq. 196,20

وَإِلَّا is also frequently used following an imperative, still retaining its equivalence to "if not" (and thus conditional) but also having the meaning of "otherwise":

إِنْصَرِفْ بِهِ عَنِّي وَإِلَّا فَأَنَا قَاتِلُهُ  
لَا مَحَالَةَ

Take him away from me, [if not] otherwise I surely would kill him.

Nu'. liq. 110,11

قُلْ مَنْ أَنْتَ وَإِلَّا تَرَكْتُكَ يَمُوتُ

Tell me who you are; if not, I shall leave you to die. Gibr. III,117,4

أَتْرَكُ الْمَسْرَحَ حَالًا — وَإِلَّا  
فَأَنْتَ أَعْلَمُ بِمَا يَكُونُ

Leave the stage immediately..., otherwise you know what will happen.

Manf. sha'. 38,5

دَعْنِي وَإِلَّا فَضَحْتَنِي أَمَامَ  
الْخَلْقِ

Leave me [alone], otherwise you will disgrace me in the eyes of the people.

Mah. zuq. 56,6

أَخْرِجْنِي مِنْ أَمَامِي يَا أَمْرَأَةً وَإِلَّا  
حَطَمْتُ عَصَايَ فَوْقَ رَأْسِكَ

Go away from my presence, woman, otherwise I'll break my stick on your head. Tai. (Zy.) 34,7

D In its development from these elliptical constructions and others with a meaning still related to the conditional, *إِلَّا* has also become a particle which expresses a simple opposition to a preceding statement or situation, completely equivalent to the English "otherwise." In such cases, not even a tentative translation of "if not" is any longer possible.



The statement following **إِلَّا** is still used according to the patterns given above for main clauses in conditional constructions and thus will be nonpreterital perfect or introduced by **فَ** :

لَا تَتْرُكْنِي وَإِلَّا سَقَطْتُ فِي  
الْجَحِيمِ ! Don't abandon me, other-  
wise I shall perish in  
the Eternal Fire.  
Hak. ahl. 134,15

وَلَا فَمَا يَقُولُ عَنْهُمْ الْعَالَمُ ؟ Otherwise, what would  
people say about them?  
Nu'. kan. 62,11

لَا أُحِبُّ أَنْ أَسْمَعَ مِنْكُمْ هَذِهِ لَا أَتَشْوَدُّ مَرَّةً أُخْرَى وَإِلَّا حَطَّمْتُكُمْ  
جَمِيعًا I don't want to hear this  
song from you any more,  
otherwise I'll break all  
of your bones.  
Manf. sha'. 40,7

## § 263 EXCEPTIVE CONSTRUCTIONS

Of all the elliptical usages derived from conditional constructions, the most important are those with an exceptive meaning.

In spite of their similarity, **إِلَّا** as an exceptive particle is historically and structurally different from **وَإِلَّا** as an equivalent to the disjunctive "otherwise," as mentioned above. In this latter case, as we have shown, it is the subordinate clause originally following **وَإِلَّا** that has been omitted; hence, its peculiarities in construction and meaning. Moreover, **وَإِلَّا** is either a member of an alternative conditional construction, or has been derived from one.

On the other hand, **إِلَّا** as an exceptive particle has been derived from a simple conditional construction with a negative meaning in both the main and subordinate clauses from which the parts common to both have been omitted in the subordinate clause.

**إِلَّا** may still be used as a negative conditional particle. In this case, it introduces a verbal sentence with inverted word order. The perfect in the clause takes its temporal aspect in accordance with

the main clause, which is always a negative sentence and precedes the conditional subordinate.

حَتَّىٰ إِنَّهُ لَمْ يَعْرِفْ أَحَدًا إِلَّا أَخَتَهُ  
عَوَّقَهُ مِنْ بَنَانِهِ

so that no one would have recognized him had his sister not done so by the tips of his fingers.  
Hai. sir. 299,18

After a negative statement, the use of another one subordinated by the conditional particle *إِلَّا* may be understood to imply that the events of the first will not occur "if not" accompanied by the second:

لَا أَقُولُ فِيهِ شَيْئًا إِلَّا فَعَلْتُ

I will not say a word in it without [at the same time] turning it into fact. (*Of course not: I will not say anything if I did not do it, or: unless I did it.*)  
Manf. sha'. 56,5

وَلَمْ يَكُنْ هَذَا الشَّيْخُ يَسْتَطِيعُ  
أَنْ يَجْلِسَ فِي مَجْلِسٍ إِلَّا فَخَرُ  
بِأَخِيهِ

This sheikh could not attend a reunion without bragging of his brother.  
Hus. ayy. I,80,12

مَا تَكَلَّمَ إِلَّا خَمِلَ إِلَى النَّاسِ  
أَنْ —

He never spoke without people's thinking that....  
Raf. wah. I,114,18

The use of *إِلَّا* as an exceptive particle is derived from conditional constructions in which the subordinate conditional clause would simply be a repetition of the main clause with some new elements added and in which all parts common to both the main and subordinate clauses, have been omitted. (See the first example mentioned after the introduction above.)

According to the different forms in which this ellipsis of common parts appears in either or both members of the exception, exceptive constructions may be divided into three main groups. All three, however, are not in equally frequent use.

A *إِلَّا* as an exceptive particle primarily introduces a noun that represents an exception to another

noun of a more general meaning already mentioned in the preceding negative sentence.

The grammatical case of the noun following *إِلَّا* is, in this construction, the same as the noun in the sentence which the exception modifies<sup>34</sup>:

لَيْسَ مَنْ يَعْرِفُهُ فِي الْقَرْيَةِ حَتَّى  
الْيَوْمِ إِلَّا أَنَا

There is no one in the village who knew him but me. Nu'. kan. 10,1

لَيْسَ لِي نَصِيبٌ مِنَ الدُّنْيَا إِلَّا  
هَذِهِ الْمَسَاحَةُ الضَّيِّقَةُ الْجَامِدَةُ

I have no other property on earth than this narrow, dry patch of land. Qud. (Br.) 54,24

لَسْتُ أَرْجُو شَيْئًا إِلَّا هَذَا

I expect only this. Hak. sul. 49,1

أَصْبَحْتُ أَحَابِيشَ لَكَ طِفْلَةً لَا  
تَلَدُّ لَكَ الْآنَ إِلَّا أَقْلَهَا

Of the stories I used to tell you as a child, only a few interest you now. Qal. (Zy.) 21,18

B The first member of the exceptive construction may also introduce a noun that, structurally, belongs to the second member—in this case a complete sentence—in which the noun is represented in its proper function and case by a personal pronoun:

مَا مِنْ قَرْيَةٍ إِلَّا مَوْضِعُهَا جَمِيلٌ  
وَمَا مِنْ مَوْضِعٍ جَمِيلٍ إِلَّا فِيهِ قَرْيَةٌ

There is no village that does not have a beautiful location, nor is there a beautiful location without a village on it. Sak. (Zy.) 13,4

C The most common construction is that in which *إِلَّا* introduces a part which is a necessary component of the sentence. The noun introduced by *إِلَّا* then

34. According to Arab grammarians and also to Western scholars (see, e.g., Wright, II, 336 B and Reck., *Arab. Synt.*, p. 503), the accusative case is also found following the particle, but not as frequently. In unvocalized texts it is not possible to ascertain in most of the instances the case intended.

assumes the case required by its function within the sentence.

a) Thus the noun following **إِلَّا** may be

1) in the nominative case

(a) as subject of a verbal sentence:

لَا يَعْلَمُ إِلَّا اللَّهُ أَيْنَ تَذْهَبُ Only God knows where she went. Manf. mag. 248,5

أَلَّا يَفْرِقَ بَيْنَنَا إِلَّا الْمَوْتُ that only death would separate us. Manf. mag. 157,3

وَلَا يَكَادُ يَشْكُو الزَّوْجَ إِلَّا الْمُتَزَوِّجُونَ Almost no one complains about marriage except married men. Mah. zuq. 28,8

لَمْ يَبْقَ عَلَى السَّابِعَةِ إِلَّا الْقَلِيلُ It is shortly before seven o'clock. Manf. sha'. 83,4

لَيْسَ بَيْنَهَا مِنَ اللُّغَاتِ الْمَعْرَبَةِ إِلَّا ثَلَاثٌ Of all the languages originally declined, there are only three extant. Djir. tar. I,51,6

الَّذِي لَمْ يَكُنْ يَسْكُنُهُ مِنْ غَيْرِ الْمَجَارِيْنِ إِلَّا هَذَا الرَّجُلُ وَهَذَانِ الْفَارْسِيَانِ الَّذِينَ — in which, other than the neighbors, this man and these two Persians who... lived. Hus. ayy. II,44,19

لَيْسَ عَلَى الْقُرْدِ إِلَّا السَّمْعُ وَالطَّاعَةُ A monkey must only obey. Sib. (Br.) 112,28

(b) as subject or predicate of a nominal sentence.

Of special interest under this category are the cases in which **إِلَّا** introduces a necessary part of a nominal sentence, usually the predicate; but it can also introduce the subject if the word order has been inverted. In both cases, the noun will be in the nominative case. The nominal sentence is always a negative statement introduced by a negative adverb:

مَا عَلَيْكَ إِلَّا تَجْدِيدُ مَلَابِسِكَ      You have only to change.  
Mah. qah. 109,12

مَا أَنَا إِلَّا مَاءٌ      I am only water.  
Hak. sheh. 149,5

فَمَا هَذِهِ الْكَوَاكِبُ إِلَّا أَفْلَاقٌ      for these stars are planets  
كَالْأَرْضِ سِوَاةٍ      exactly like the Earth.  
Hai. sir. 131,5

(c) after "لَا" of general denial.  
The exceptive particle may then introduce a noun in the nominative as an exception to the general denial of existence; cf. لَا إِلَهَ إِلَّا اللَّهُ, "There is no god but Allah":

لَا شَيْءٌ إِلَّا الْفِكْرُ وَالنَّظَرُ      There is nothing but  
وَالْحَكْمُ      thought, contemplation,  
judgment.  
Raf. wah. I,15,11

## 2) in the accusative case

(a) as object of the verb in the sentence:

مَا كُنْتَ تُحِبُّ إِلَّا نَفْسَكَ      You only loved yourself.  
Manf. (Zy.) 30,33

(الْمَرْأَةُ الَّتِي) يَجِبُ أَنْ لَا      [The woman who] is allowed  
تَتَعَلَّمَ إِلَّا بِمَقْدَارٍ مَعْدُودٍ مِنْ مَبَارِئِ      to learn only a certain  
بَعْضِ الْعُلُومِ تُحَسَّبُ رَقِيقَةً      amount of the principles  
of some sciences is con-  
sidered [to be] a slave.  
Q. Amin (Zy.) 5,27

Note in the following the use of a pronominal relative clause in the function of an accusative case (see Vol. III, p. 18):

مَنْ النَّاسِ مَنْ لَا يُصَدِّقُونَ إِلَّا      There are people who be-  
مَا يَقْرَأُ الْعَقْلُ      lieve only what intelli-  
gence determines.  
Hai. sir. 55,18

(b) or as an adverbial determination:

لَمْ يَرِ إِلَّا مُنْفَرِدًا

He was only seen alone.  
Tai. (Br.) 124,7

مَعَ أَنْ تُؤَيِّبَهُ لَمْ تَرْضِعْهُ إِلَّا  
أَيَّامًا قَلِيلًا

Although Thuwayba only  
nursed him a few days....  
Hai. sir. 109,20

أَنْ لَا تَخْرُجَ الْوَرَاءَ مِنْ بَيْتِهَا  
إِلَّا مَحْمُولَةً إِلَى قَبْرِهَا

that women leave their  
houses only when they are  
carried to their graves.  
Q. Amin (Zy.) 5,17

إِنِّي لَمْ أَرَكَ إِلَّا الْيَوْمَ

Today I saw you for the  
first time.  
Hak. ahl. 65,16

3) in the genitive case, but only after  
a preposition:

أَنَّهَا مَا كُتِبَتْ إِلَّا لَهَا

that it was written only  
for her.  
Manf. sha'. 140,14

خَلَّتِ الدَّارُ تَقْرِيًا إِلَّا مِنْهُ

The house was deserted  
except for him.  
Mah. qah. 24,16

لَا أَمَلٌ لَنَا آلَانَ فِي الْحَيَاةِ إِلَّا  
فِي الْكَهْفِ

Our only hope in life is  
in the cave.  
Hak. ahl. 69,15

لَمْ يَكُنْ مَعْنِيًا إِلَّا بِأَخْبَارِ  
الْمَغَارِ وَالْفَتْحِ

He was interested only in  
stories of battles and  
conquests.  
Raf. wah. I,17,11

لَمْ نَتَخَاطَبْ إِلَّا بِالْعَيْنِ

We have only conversed  
with our eyes.  
Manf. sha'. 102,1

لَا حَوْلَ وَلَا قُوَّةَ إِلَّا بِاللَّهِ

There is no power and no  
strength save in God.  
Hai. sir. ع ,6

by <sup>b)</sup> أَنْ or <sup>الْأَمْرَ</sup> أَنْ in place of and in the function of a  
noun:

فَلَمْ يَكُنْ لَهُ إِلَّا أَنْ يَنْزِلَ عَلَى  
رَأْيِهِمْ

Thus he had to give in to  
their opinion.

Hai. sir. 291,15

أَمَّا الْقَاسِمُ وَعَبْدُ اللَّهِ فَلَمْ يَعْرِفْ  
عَنْهُمَا إِلَّا أَنَّهُمَا مَاتَا طِفْلَيْنِ فِي  
الْجَاهِلِيَّةِ

With regard to al-Qasim  
and 'Abdallah, the only  
thing known about them is  
that they died while they  
were still children be-  
fore Islam.

Hai. sir. 128,7

مَا أَحْسَبُ إِلَّا أَنَّهُ عَمِلَ عَمَلًا غَيْرَ  
قَلِيلٍ فِي تَكْوِينِ عَقْلِهِ

I cannot but think that  
it had a great part in  
the development of his  
intelligence.

Hus. ayy. I,87,13

مَا أَحْسَبُ إِلَّا أَنَّكَ الَّذِي —

I do think that you are  
the one who....

Manf. mag. 188,4

لَمْ يَبْقَ إِلَّا أَنْ يَقْتُلُوهُ

The only thing left was  
for them to kill him.

Hai. sir. 208,23

مَا أَحْسَبُ إِلَّا أَنَّهُ سَيَحْدُثُ  
الْلَّيْلَةَ فِي هَذِهِ الْقَاعَةِ حَادِثٌ  
عَظِيمٌ

I believe that tonight  
something important will  
happen in this hall.

Manf. sha'. 24,5

c) *إِلَّا* may also introduce an adverbial sub-  
ordinate clause instead of an adverbial determination.  
In such cases, the meaning of the construction will  
depend on the nature of the subordinate clause which  
*إِلَّا* precedes:

هِيَ كَلِمَةٌ حَفِظْتُهَا وَلَمْ أَفْهَمْهَا  
إِلَّا وَأَنَا طَالِبٌ فِي مَدْرَسَةِ الْقَضَاءِ

That is a word I memor-  
ized but which I only  
understood when I was a  
student in Law School.  
Amin (Br.) 86,25

حَتَّى إِنَّهُ لَمْ يَقْتُلْ إِلَّا بَعْدَ أَنْ  
ضُرِبَ سِتِّعِينَ ضَرْبَةً

so that he was killed  
only after having been  
struck sixty times.

Hai. sir. 299,17

أَنَّهَا مَا أَقَامَتْ هُنَاكَ بَعْضَ أَيَّامِ  
الْعُطْلَةِ إِلَّا وَتَأْتِ إِلَى أَنْتِهَائِهَا

that she had never stayed there for more than a few days of [her] vacation without longing for it to end. Ghur. (Zy.) 31,31

وَلَا يَذْهَبُ رَجُلٌ أَوْ فَتًى إِلَى  
الْمَقْبَرَةِ إِلَّا وَفِي يَدِهِ فَنَوسٌ

But no man or boy would go into the cemetery unless carrying a lantern in his hand. Mub. (Zy.) 22,26

لَا أُعْطِيهَا الْكِتَابَ إِلَّا إِذَا رَأَيْتُ  
فِي وَجْهِهَا بَارِقَةَ أَمَلٍ

I will not give her the letter unless I see a spark of hope in her face. Manf. sha'. 92,6

إِنَّمَا لَنْ نَسْتَطِيعَ أَنْ نَرْفَعَهُ إِلَيْنَا  
إِلَّا إِذَا نَزَلْنَا إِلَيْهِ

We shall be able to raise them [the people] only after we have descended to their level. Musa (Zy.) 2,36

لَا تَعُودِي إِلَّا إِذَا دَعَوْتُكَ

Don't come back until I have called you. Manf. sha'. 102,17

لَا يُكَبَّرُ أَنْ يُكْتَبَ إِلَّا إِذَا ذُكِرَتْ  
هَذِهِ الْغُرْفَةُ

It cannot be written unless this Chamber is mentioned. Kam. (Zy.) 4,2

لَيْسَ بَيْنَ الرَّجُلِ وَوَطَنِهِ وَلَا بَيْنَ  
الْوَلَدِ وَوَالِدِهِ إِلَّا كَمَا يَكُونُ بَيْنَ  
الْقَطْعَانِ وَالرَّعَى

[The relationship] between man and his country or father and son is different from that between flocks and their pasture. Zayy. (Br.II) 156,12

d) The exceptive construction, which we have seen usually modifying a main clause, may also modify a subordinate:

أَلَا تَزُورُنِي عِنْدَمَا يَصِيرُ هَذَا  
الْمَكَانُ خَالِيًا إِلَّا مِنَ الشَّيْخُوخَةِ  
الْمُعَزَّةِ؟

Won't you visit me when this place will be empty but for a sad old age? Gibr. II,38,8



e) In an exceptive construction (see Vol. III, p. 338), a nominal sentence quite often refers to a temporal circumstance. The exceptive expression is generally used to introduce a coordinated or subordinated statement preceded most often by **حَتَّى** but also by **وَأَمَّا**. This statement, though syntactically subordinate, logically represents the main idea of the construction (see examples in the paragraphs following).

The subject of the nominal sentence—in the first member subsequent to the negative adverb—is a personal pronoun in gender agreement with the predicate—the substantive following the exceptive particle **إِلَّا**—which usually is a word of temporal significance, such as "day," "moment," etc.

وَمَا هِيَ إِلَّا لَحَظَةٌ حَتَّى قَالَ — Just a moment later, he said.... Manf. sha'. 23,13

وَمَا هِيَ إِلَّا هَنِيئَةٌ حَتَّى — Just a short time had gone by when....  
Manf. sha'. 108,7

مَا هِيَ إِلَّا أَيَّامٌ حَتَّى سَمِعَ لَقَبَ الشَّيْخِ — Only a few days had passed when he became tired of the name "sheikh."  
Hus. ayy. I, 38,6

In addition, the temporal-exceptive construction very frequently introduces a noun clause which functions as the predicate in the nominal sentence. The word expressing the temporal sphere is also missing. In this instance, the personal pronoun may be either

in the masculine:

مَا هُوَ إِلَّا أَنْ عَلِمَتْ بِمَا حَدَثَ فِي غَيَابِهَا حَتَّى — No sooner had she learned what had happened in her absence....  
'Aqq. (Zy.) 15,47

مَا هُوَ إِلَّا أَنْ بَلَغْتُ مَأْمِنِي حَتَّى جَمَعْتُ رِجَالِي وَ — No sooner had I arrived at a safe place then I gathered my men and....  
Manf. sha'. 214,1

or in the feminine:

وَمَا هِيَ إِلَّا أَنْ يَحْضُرَ الدَّرْسَ  
الْأَوَّلَ وَيَسْمَعَ — حَتَّى يَفْتَنَ بِهَذَا  
اللَّوْنِ مِنَ الْعِلْمِ

No sooner had he attended the first lesson and heard...then he was fascinated by this aspect of learning.

Hus. ayy. II, 114, 13

In some instances, the personal pronoun in question could be understood as being either in agreement with the subject of the following noun clause or with the logical subject of the complete construction introduced by the statement following the exceptive construction:

وَمَا هِيَ إِلَّا أَنْ أَنْهَلَتْ عَلَيْهِ شَتْمًا  
وَتَأْنِيًا — حَتَّى أَنْتَهَتْ بِهِ إِلَى —

As soon as she had poured a shower of insults and reproof over him..., she brought him to....

Hus. ayy. I, 60, 4

مَا هِيَ إِلَّا أَنْ أَقْبَلْتُ بَوَارِدُ عِيدِ  
الْأَضْحَى فِي سَنَةِ مِنَ السَّنِينَ  
وَأَخَذَتْ أُمُّ الصَّبِيِّ تَسْتَعِدُّ لِهَذَا  
الْعِيدِ

One year, no sooner had the Feast of the Immolation drawn near when the boy's mother began to make preparations for it.

Hus. ayy. I, 119, 9

f) The negative adverb *إِنْ*, already obsolescent in older times, is still frequently used in this construction to introduce a nominal sentence (see Vol. I, § 36):

إِنْ هِيَ إِلَّا لَحْظَةً حَتَّى —

A moment later....

Idr. (Br.) 79, 10

إِنْ هِيَ إِلَّا بِضْعَةُ قُرُوشٍ

It was only a few piasters.

Maz. (Br.) 10, 15

It is also used to emphasize the negative meaning of *مَا* in the negation of verbal sentences:

مَا إِنْ بَلَّغْنَا آتِيَابَ حَتَّى أَبْصَرْنَا  
بَهَا جَالِسَةً فِي فِرَاشِهَا

We had hardly reached the door when we saw Baha sitting on her bed.

Nu'. liq. 110, 17

وَمَا إِنْ دَخَلَ آتَيْنَهُ حُسَيْنَ الْمَخْزَنِ  
وَالْتَقَى يَدَهُ عَلَى الصُّنْدُوقِ حَتَّى  
وَضَبَ وَالِدُهُ مِنْ مَرَبُضِهِ عَلَى الْعَمْتَةِ

No sooner did his son, Husain, enter the store and lay his hand on the case then his father jumped up from where he was sitting near the threshold.

Nu'. (Zy.) 33,20

وَمَا إِنْ هَمَّ بِالنُّزُولِ حَتَّى لَمَحَهُ  
الْبَسْتَانِي

He had hardly started to climb down when the gardener saw him.

Qal. (Zy.) 21,35

مَا إِنْ قَرَعْتَ مِنْ ذَلِكَ — حَتَّى  
سَمِعْتُ —

I had barely finished that...when I heard....

Hak. yaum. 40,7

مَا إِنْ سَقَطَ الْأَسْوَدُ حَتَّى خَرَجَ  
عَتَبَةُ بْنُ رَبِيعَةَ

al-Aswad had hardly fallen when 'Utba ibn Rabia went out. Hai. sir. 263,11

g) إِلَّا, as we have seen, is generally used in the construction following a negation; however, it may also be found

1) after verbs or nouns that have a meaning in some way related to a negation:

أَبَوْا مَعَ ذَلِكَ إِلَّا الْخُرُوجَ

However, they insisted on coming out.

Hai. sir. 291,15

يَأْبَى إِلَّا أَنْ أَعِيشَ عَيْشَ الْمُقْلِينَ  
وَأَبَى إِلَّا أَنْ أَتَمْنَعَ بِمَالِي  
الَّذِي —

He does not want me to live destitute, and I refuse to use my wealth, which....

Manf. mag. 82,16

لِغَيْرِ شَيْءٍ إِلَّا أَنْ —

For no other reason than....

Hai. sir. 313,13

ذَلِكَ مُسْتَحِيلٌ إِلَّا إِذَا آسْتَطَاعَتْ  
كَلِمَتُكَ هَذِهِ أَنْ تَمَحُو قُبْحِي

That is impossible, unless your words could wipe out my ugliness.

Manf. sha'. 281,4

2) and after interrogatives or rhetorical questions which may imply a negative answer:

وَهَلِ الْعَمِيشُ إِلَّا مَغَامَرَةٌ دَائِمَةٌ؟ What is life...but a continuous risk?  
Nu'. liq. 62,3

مَا السِّيَاسِيَّةُ إِلَّا هَذِهِ What else is politics!  
Hak. sul. 40,13

فَمَا هُوَ إِلَّا تَسْمٍ! What is that but [just] a name?  
Mah. qah. 111,20

هَلْ لِهَذَا مِنْ سَبَبٍ إِلَّا أَنَّهُ مُغْرِفٌ أَحْمَقُ؟ Is there any reason for this except that he is a damn fool?  
Hak. ahl. 77,16

هَلْ أَنَا إِلَّا جَسَدٌ جَمِيلٌ I am just a beautiful body!  
Hak. sheh. 50,4

h) **إِلَّا** is also often used following affirmative sentences and after those in which the conditional meaning of "if not" is completely excluded. In such constructions, **إِلَّا** functions as a particle introducing an adverbial modification; thus it is followed by a noun in the accusative case and has a meaning equivalent to the English "except":

كُلُّهُمْ عَرَبٌ إِلَّا وَاحِدًا All of them were Arabs, with one exception.  
Djir. tar. I,101,25

كُلُّهُمْ نَكَلَ عَنِ الشِّرَاءِ إِلَّا أَخَا الصَّبِيِّ All of them refrained from buying, except the boy's brother.  
Hus. ayy. II,89,13

نَهَضَ الْجَمِيعُ لِلرَّقْصِ إِلَّا إِحْسَانَ وَمَعْجُوبَ الَّذِينَ يَجْهَلَانِ Everyone stood up to dance, except Ihsan and Mahjub, who did not know how.  
Mah. qah. 186,22

مَضَى اللَّيْلُ إِلَّا أَقَلَّهُ Almost the entire night had passed.  
Manf. mag. 9,7

الشَّقةَ وَمَا تَحْوِي لَكَ — لَكُمَا —  
إِلَّا صَوَانًا صَغِيرًا فِي حُجْرَةِ النَّوْمِ

The apartment and what it contains belong to you, to both of you, with the exception of a small closet in the bedroom.  
Mah. qah. 129,9

وَجَدَ الظَّلَامَ يُوشِكُ أَنْ يَسْتَلِغَ  
الْحُجْرَةَ إِلَّا نُورًا خَافِيًا آتِيًا مِنْ  
نَاحِيَةِ الشَّرْفَةِ

He found the room almost dark, with the only exception of a faint light coming from the balcony.  
Mah. qah. 134,15

كَانَتِ الْمَقَاصِيرُ فِي ذَلِكَ التَّارِيخِ  
خَاصَّةً بِالنِّسَاءِ — إِلَّا مَقْصُورَةً  
وَاحِدَةً بِجَانِبِ التَّسْرِحِ كَانَ يَجْلِسُ  
فِيهَا الْكَرْدِيَّانَ

At that time, the loges were reserved for women, except only one near the stage in which the Cardinal sat. Manf. sha'. 21,13

In modifying numerals, equivalent to "less":

إِلَّا may have a meaning

مَنْذُ أَرْبَعِمِائَةٍ وَأَلْفِ سَنَةٍ إِلَّا  
خَمْسِينَ —

For one thousand three hundred and fifty years....  
Hai. sir. 1,4

However, when the noun following **إِلَّا** is a personal pronoun, it is in the nominative case:

كُلُّ شَيْءٍ سَائِرٍ فِي طَرِيقِ التَّطَوُّرِ  
وَالْتَقَدُّمِ إِلَّا نَحْنُ

Everything follows the course of development and progress but us.  
Sib. (Br.) 113,3

كُلُّ شَيْءٍ قَدْ تَغَيَّرَ وَتَبَدَّلَ  
إِلَّا نَحْنُ

Everything has changed except us.  
Sib. (Br.) 113,5

Note the following:

هِيَ الطَّبِيعَةُ بِجَبَرُوتِهَا وَعَسْفِهَا  
وَتَعَنُّتِهَا . إِذَا اسْتَرَّاحَ النَّاسُ  
جَمِيعًا قَالَتْ لِلْعَاشِقِ: إِلَّا أَنْتَ...!  
إِذَا عَقَلَ النَّاسُ جَمِيعًا قَالَتْ فِي  
الْعَاشِقِ: إِلَّا هَذَا...! إِذَا بَرَأَتْ  
جِرَاحَ الْحَيَاةِ كُلَّهَا قَالَتْ: إِلَّا جَرَحَ  
الْحُبِّ...! — إِذَا تَغَيَّرَ النَّاسُ فِي  
الْحَالَةِ بَعْدَ الْحَالَةِ قَالَتْ فِي  
الْحَبِيبِ: إِلَّا هُوَ...!

It is nature with its omnipotence, its tyranny, and its obduracy. When everyone is at ease, it says to the lover: except you...! When everyone is endowed with reason, it says about the lover: except this...! When all wounds of life are being healed, it says: except the wound of love...! When everyone changes continually, but it says about the beloved one: except him...! Raf. wah. I,111,3

i) When **إِلَّا** introduces a noun clause, preceded by **أَنَّ**, which is structurally independent from the precedent sentence, it has an adversative meaning: "but," "yet." The sentence preceding it in this construction is usually an affirmative statement:

كَانَ فَتًى جَمِيلَ الصُّوَةِ — إِلَّا أَنَّهُ  
كَانَ أَقْرَبَ إِلَى الْبَلَادَةِ مِنْهُ إِلَى  
الذَّكَاءِ

He was a youth of handsome appearance..., but he was closer to simplicity than to brightness.  
Manf. sha'. 13,5

رَحَّتْ أَخْشَى أَصْطِدَامًا بَيْنَهُ وَبَيْنَ  
شَقِيقَتِهِ إِلَّا أَنَّهُ لَمْ تَقَعْ بِكَلِمَةٍ  
وَاحِدَةٍ

I began to fear a bitter scene between him and his sister, but he did not say a single word.  
Nu'. liq. 49,3

وَقَعْنَ فِي حُبِّهِ إِلَّا أَنَّ كُلَّ وَاحِدَةٍ  
مِنْهُنَّ كَانَتْ تَكْتُمُ حُبَّهَا

They fell in love with him, but each kept her love and secret.  
Nu'. liq. 59,8

لَبِثَا بَعْدَ ذَلِكَ سَاعَةً صَامَتَيْنِ  
لَا يَنْطَقَانِ إِلَّا أَنَّ فِي الْجَبِينِ  
لُغَةً لَا تَقْرَأُهَا إِلَّا الْعَيْنُونَ

After this, they remained silent a while without speaking, but in [their] faces was a language that only eyes could read.  
Manf. mag. 30,4

لَكُنْتُ قَبَلْتُ أَلْسِدَ هَاشِمَ بَيْنَ  
عَيْنَيْهِ لَوْ — إِلَّا أَنَّ الْقَلْبَ رَقَصَ  
طَرَبًا دُونَ أَنْ يَشِينَ أَدْبِي

I could have kissed Mr.  
Hashim on his forehead  
if..., but my heart danced  
with joy without disgracing  
my good manners.  
Raih. mul. 26,6

ثُمَّ اجْتَمَعْتُ فِي الْبَحْرَيْنِ بِرَجُلٍ  
يَرَى غَيْرَ مَا يَرَاهُ الْفَرِيقَانِ — إِلَّا  
أَنَّهُ قَلِيلُ الْكَلَامِ فِيهِ

Later I met a man in Bahren  
who differed from the two  
factions in his opinion of  
him.... However, he was  
very reticent in talking  
about him.  
Raih. mul. 29,1

It may also be used after a negative statement:

مَا وَفَعْتُ لَهُمَا عَلَى أَثَرٍ إِلَّا أَنَّنِي  
أُبْصَرْتُ الشَّبَابَةَ مَلْقَاةً عَلَى الْأَرْضِ

I did not find a trace of  
them; instead, I saw the  
flute lying on the ground.  
Nu'. liq. 68,16

لَا عَيْبَ فِيهَا إِلَّا أَنَّهَا مِنْ فَرِيقِ  
الْأَدَبِيَّاتِ الْمُتَحَدِّقَاتِ —

She had no faults, except  
that she belonged to a  
group of pseudo-literary  
women....  
Manf. sha'. 30,7

لَا هُوَ يَحْمِلُ شَيْئًا فِي جَنْبِهِ لَا  
سَاعَةً وَلَا — إِلَّا أَنَّهُ يَحْمِلُ سَاعَةً  
فِي خُرْجٍ عِنْدَ السَّفَرِ

He did not carry a thing  
in his pocket, neither a  
watch nor..., but he car-  
ried a watch in a saddle-  
bag on trips.  
Raih. mul. 55,20

Note in the following the use of **إِلَّا** following a conditional subordinate clause:

وَإِنْ أَتَى كُلُّ مَنْ — بِمَآثِمٍ —  
إِلَّا أَنَّ الْوَاقِعَ يَبْتُ أَنْ —

Even if every one of...  
should have produced a  
memorable contribution  
which..., yet the fact  
remains that....  
Batt. (Zy.) 12,18

## § 264 THE INDEFINITE-CONDITIONAL CLAUSE

A In Arabic, as in other languages, sentences introduced by a relative pronoun or adverb may become very closely related to some conditional constructions.

The specific function of the indefinite-conditional clause is that of presenting an event or its circumstances, which, with an indefinite or repeated fulfillment, also gives to the statement expressed by the main clause an indefinite or repeated validity.

Structurally, they are very close to conditional constructions. When the subordinate clause precedes the main clause, it has the same influence upon it as the subordinate conditional does on its main clause. That is to say, the subordinate indefinite is a verbal sentence with the verb in the perfect or the jussive, usually nonpreterital. The main clause has the same parallelism of verbal tenses and meaning —perfect or jussive, nonpreterital— as we have seen in other conditional constructions (see Vol. III, p. 311f.).

In addition, with indefinite constructions, the influence of the subordinate on the main clause may be nullified by using the conjunction **وَ** (see Vol. III, p. 360ff.).

It will be of interest to point out that the use of the jussive, which is no longer common in conditional constructions (see Vol. III, p. 314), is very frequently found in indefinite clauses.

The main difference between such constructions and the relative ones consists in the structural changes undergone by both main and subordinate clauses in the indefinite construction. These changes are based on the fact that the indefinite-conditional clauses have become, although subordinate, structurally independent from the main clause, while the pronominal or adverbial relative sentence is still a necessary component of the main clause.

These differences are: parallelism of tenses (with nonpreterital meaning); use of the jussive in either subordinate or main clause, or both; use of **وَ** to introduce the main clause.

That, however, still leaves cases (perfect in both clauses with preterital meaning) which will be undifferentiated and to which the assigning of an indefinite meaning will depend on one's interpretation of the context involved.



B مَنْ is very frequently used in indefinite-conditional constructions, usually preceding the main clause:

مَنْ فَقَدَهَا فَقَدْ عَنَصْرًا هَامًا مِنْ  
عُنَاصِرِهِ  
Whoever loses it, loses  
an important component.  
Amin (Zy.) 7,21

مَنْ تَوَاضَعَ لِلَّهِ رَفَعَهُ  
He who humbles himself  
to God will be exalted  
[by Him].  
Hus. ayy. I,74,13

مَنْ حَفِظَ الْقُرْآنَ فَهُوَ شَيْخٌ  
whoever memorizes the Koran  
is a sheikh.  
Hus. ayy. I,37,2

مَنْ حَاوَلَ الْوُقُوفَ فِي سَبِيلِ هَذَا  
التَّغْيِيرِ فَقَدْ عَارَضَ الطَّبِيعَةَ  
Whoever tries to stand  
still in this transfor-  
mation sets himself  
against Nature.  
Djir. tar. II,6,10

مَنْ يَبْقَى مِنْكُمْ هَهُنَا يَكُنْ مَحْرُومًا  
وَرَدًّا وَلَا  
Whoever of you remains  
here shall be cursed and  
excommunicated.  
Gibr. I,151,1

مَنْ يَرِ عَيْهَرَهَا يَكْرَهُ جَمَالَهَا  
Whoever sees its prosti-  
tution will loathe its  
beauty. Gibr. III,40,6

مَنْ يُرِيدُهَا إِرَادَةً تَأْتِيهِ طَوْعًا  
أَوْ كَرْهًا  
Whenever anyone really  
wants it, it comes to  
him, willingly or unwill-  
ingly. Mah. qah. 138,22

مَنْ دَعَا إِلَى التَّيْسِيرِ فِي اللُّغَةِ  
— يُعَدُّ عَدُوًّا  
Whoever advocates the  
simplification of the  
languages...is considered  
an enemy. Musa adab. 42,11

C However, مَا as an indefinite-conditional seems to be used almost exclusively as the compound particle مَهْمَا (see Vol. III, p. 207f.).

مَهْمَا usually precedes the main clause, but it can at times follow it.

The particle may fulfill a nominal function — generally that of an object — within the clause "(no matter) what":

مَهْمَا قِيلَ فِي ابْنِ سَعُودَ فَهُوَ  
رَجُلٌ قَبْلَ كُلِّ شَيْءٍ

No matter what is said  
about Ibn Sa'ud, he is,  
above all, a man.  
Raih. mul. 58,1

مَهْمَا يَنْسَ الصَّبِيُّ فَلَنْ يَنْسَى  
تَأْثِيرَ —

No matter what the boy  
forgets, he never will  
forget the impression....  
Hus. ayy. I,92,8

إِنَّ الْمَرْأَةَ لَا تَرَى فِي زَوْجِهَا —  
عَيْبًا وَاحِدًا مَهْمَا كَثُرَتْ عَيْبُهُ

A woman will not see any  
defect in her husband...,  
however numerous they  
might be.  
Manf. mag. 134,18

لَنْ تَعُودَ أَبَدًا مَهْمَا كَانَ الثَّمَنُ

They never should return,  
no matter what it costs.  
Mah. qah. 122,18

but it may also function as an adverbial "(no matter) how":

أُولَئِكَ الَّذِينَ يَبْقَوْنَ عَلَى شَيْءٍ مِنْ  
الْفِطْرَةِ مَهْمَا عَظُمُوا أَوْ تَعَاظَمَتْ  
شُؤْنُهُمْ —

Those who keep some of  
their natural disposition,  
no matter how great or im-  
portant they become....  
Raih. mul. 31,15

وَلَكِنْ إِسْمَاعِيلَ إِذَا أَرَادَ لَعِبًا  
أَوْ فَسَادًا فَلَنْ يَعْوقَهُ شَيْءٌ  
مَهْمَا عَظُمَ

But Isma'il, when he wanted  
to play or be mischievous,  
would be stopped by nothing,  
no matter how insurmountable.  
Qal. (Zy.) 21,33

إِنَّ هِنْرَى الرَّابِعَ يَا سَيِّدِي مَا  
كَانَ يَرْضَى لِنَفْسِهِ مَهْمَا كَانَ الْخَطَرُ  
الْمَحْدِقُ بِهِ عَظِيمًا أَنْ يَتَنَازَلَ عَنْ  
رِيشَتِهِ الْبَيْضَاءِ لِأَعْدَائِهِ

Henry the Fourth, My Lord,  
never would have allowed  
himself, no matter how  
great was the danger  
threatening him, to sur-  
render his white plume  
to his enemies.  
Manf. sha'. 214,7

مَهْمَا يَكُنْ أَيْدًا قَوِيًّا

no matter how strong he may be. Hus. (Br.) 93,8

تَعْتَبِرُ الْمُسْلِمِينَ أُمَّةً وَاحِدَةً مَهْمَا  
اِخْتَلَفَتْ أَجْنَسُهُمْ

They consider Muslims as only one people, no matter how diverse their races might be.  
Far. (Zy.) 17,31

مَهْمَا, being a compound of relative character, may take on a specification by means of a prepositional phrase with مِنْ :

مَهْمَا يَكُنْ لِلصَّوْرَةِ الْمَسِيحِيَّةِ فِي  
التَّثْلِيثِ مِنْ صِلَةِ تَأْرِيخِيَّةٍ بَعْضُ  
الْأَدْيَانِ الْقَدِيمَةِ فَهِيَ لَيْسَتْ مِنْ  
الْحَقِّ عِنْدَ مُحَمَّدٍ فِي شَيْءٍ

No matter what the historical relationship with old religions in the representation of the Christian Trinity, this is absolutely not true with Mohammed.  
Hai. sir. 8,3

مَهْمَا يَكُنْ مِنْ شَيْءٍ فَقَدْ تَرَدَّدْتُ  
بَيْنَ هَذَيْنِ الْعُنَوَانَيْنِ

Whatever the case may be, I hesitated between these two titles.  
Hus. (Br.) 94,26

مَهْمَا is frequently used after a conditional construction or a construction with an absolute or indefinite meaning functioning as an emphatic indefinite specification:

مَنْ حَفِظَ الْقُرْآنَ فَهُوَ شَيْخٌ مَهْمَا  
تَكُنْ سِنُهُ

Whoever memorizes the Koran is a sheikh, regardless of his age. Hus. ayy. I,37,2

وَأَنْ فَرَنْسَا لَا تَتَنَازَلُ عَنْ سُورِيَا  
مَهْمَا كَانَ مِنْ أُمُورِهَا فِي الْمَقَاوِصِ

and that France would not give up Syria, no matter how many negotiations on the subject.  
Raih. mul. 346,6

At times, the compound equivalent to that of مَهْمَا :

مَاذَا كَانَ بَعْدَ رَجُوعِهِ الرَّبَّةِ الثَّانِيَةِ  
مِنْ بَارِيسِ هَاكُمُ الْخَوَادِثِ

مَاذَا is used with a meaning No matter what happened after his return from Paris the second time, here you have the events.  
Raih. mul. 346,16

D أَيّ may also be used in this indefinite-conditional construction, but only as an indefinite pronoun and, thus, not with a partitive meaning (see Vol. I, § 45). The tense used in the perfect, with or without preterital significance:

أَيَّا كَانَ السَّبَبُ فَقَدْ سَأَلْتُ  
نَفْسِي — No matter what the reason,  
I asked myself....  
Hai. sir. 25,8

أَيّ, as a particle of emphatic indetermination, may also be followed by مَا (see Vol. III, p. 207ff.):

أَيَّا مَا كَانَتْ الْحَقِيقَةُ فَهَذِهِ الْهَجْرَةُ  
هِيَ السَّبَبُ فِي — Whatever the facts might  
be, this emigration was  
the reason for....  
Hai. sir. 78,12

وَأَيَّا مَا كَانَ فَإِنَّ الْقِيَاسَ — لَعَبَ  
دَوًّا كَبِيرًا فِي اللُّغَةِ  
Whatever it might have  
been, analogy...played  
an important role in the  
[development of the]  
language.  
Amin duh. II, 278,16

وَأَيَّا مَا كَانَ فِيمَا يُلْفَتُ النَّظَرُ حَقًّا  
جِدُّ الْعُلَمَاءِ فِي ذَلِكَ الْعَصْرِ  
فِي — No matter what it was,  
what really attracts one's  
attention is the eagerness  
of learned men at that  
time.... Amin duh. II, 318,5

Note that أَيَّمَا, "whichever," may be followed by a determinative apposition in the same case:

أَيَّمَا كَاتِبٍ يَخْرُجُ عَلَيْهَا إِنَّمَا  
يَخْرُجُ عَلَى الْعَرْشِ — Whichever writer rebels  
against them, rebels  
against the throne.  
Musa adab. 42,8

أَيَّمَا أَدِيبٍ لَمْ يَثْرَ عَلَى الْإِسْتِعْمَارِ  
وَالْإِسْتِبْدَادِ وَأَيَّمَا أَدِيبٍ لَمْ يَحْسِ  
النَّارَ تَأْكُلُ أَحْشَاءَهُ بَلْ أَكَادَ أَقْوَلَ  
أَيَّمَا أَدِيبٍ — لَا يَمَكِّنُ أَنْ يُوَصَفَ  
بِالشَّرَفِ — And whichever writer does  
not rise against imperialism  
and despotism, and which-  
ever writer does not feel  
fire burning his heart, and,  
I could even say, whichever  
writer..., he cannot be  
attributed any honor.  
Musa adab. 53,8

E Adverbs are also often found with the indefinite-conditional construction, usually preceding the main clause and introducing a verbal sentence whose verb is generally in the perfect with a nonpreterital meaning:

كَيْفَ آتَفَتِ رَأَيْتَ أَنْفَاحًا بَعِيدَ  
الْمَدَى

Wherever you turn, you see  
wide-open spaces.  
Sak. (Zy.) 13,5

حَوْلَ رَسُولِ اللَّهِ حَيْثُ أَقَامَ  
وَحَيْثُ ذَهَبَ

surrounding the Prophet  
wherever he was or where-  
ever he went.  
Hai. sir. 428,13

وَمَتَى كَانَ النَّبِيُّ قِسْمًا مِنَ الْحَيَاةِ  
بَلْ مَادَّةٌ لِمَعَانِيهَا الْجَدِيدَةُ فَلَنْ  
يَكُونَ بَيَانُهُ إِلَّا عَلَى مَا وَصَفْنَا لَكَ  
جَمِيلًا

And whenever the Prophet  
becomes a part of life or,  
rather, an element of its  
new meaning, its clarifi-  
cation cannot be but  
beautiful as we have de-  
scribed it to you.  
Raf. wah. III,22,3

Note in the following the use of وَ to express simultaneity (see Vol. III, p. 12f.):

أَيْنَ ذَهَبَتْ وَذَهَبَ اسْتِعْمَارُهَا

Wherever it went, its im-  
perialism accompanied it.  
Khalid (Br.II) 93,24

Adverbs are, however, usually followed by the indefinite particle مَا (see Vol. III, p. 207), which emphasizes their indefinite meaning:

كَيْفَمَا كَانَ الْأَمْرُ فَإِنِّي أَسْتَطِيعُ  
أَنْ أَقُولَ لَكَ —

However that may be, I  
can tell you....  
Manf. sha'. 28,1

كَمَا فِي مَجْلِسِ النَّوَابِ لَيْسَ بِالْمُهَمِّ  
أَنْ تَفْهَمَ مَا يُقَالُ وَلَكِنَّ الْمُهَمَّ  
أَنْ تَتَكَلَّمَ .. كَيْفَمَا آتَفَقَ ؟ !  
وَكَيْفَمَا أُحِبِّبَتْ .. !

"As in Parliament, it is  
not important to under-  
stand what is said but  
[the important thing is]  
to talk...." "No matter  
how it comes about?" "Any  
way you will...."  
Mah. qah. 147,10

- أَيْنَمَا سِرْتُ فَهُمْ فِيَّ أَثَرِي Wherever I went, they were behind me. Hak. ahl. 80,5
- أَيْنَمَا ذَهَبْنَا فَلَيْسَ غَيْرُنَا وَغَيْرُ ظِلِّنَا وَغَيَالِنَا Wherever we might go, there are only the two of us, and our shadows and chimeras. Hak. sheh. 151,1

(For the use of **فَ** preceding the main clause, see Vol. III, p. 360ff.)

F The main clause frequently precedes the subordinate clause. In those cases, with the only exception of the constructions with **مَنْ** (see Vol. III, p. 353ff. the constructions may be understood as an indefinite conditional one, which will thus take a perfect following the particle, with or without preterital meaning according to the tense of the main clause:

- وَفِي يَدِهِ نَبْتُ يَجْلِدُهَا بِهِ كَيْفَمَا تَحَرَّكَتْ in his hand a club with which he struck it each time it moved. Gibr. I,92,15
- يَضْرِبُهُ دُونَ نِظَامٍ أَيْنَمَا جَاءَتِ الضَّرْبَةُ striking him blindly, regardless of where the blows went. 'Aww. (Br.) 18,16
- (كَانُوا) يَنْتَقِلُونَ مِنْ مَوْضِعٍ كَيْفَمَا شَاءُوا [They were] changing subjects as they wished. Mah. qah. 51,2
- يَقْتُلُونَ وَيَسْفِكُونَ الدِّمَاءَ أَيْنَمَا حَلَّوْا؟ killing and shedding blood wherever they halt? Gibr. I,133,1
- إِنِّي عَصِيٌّ الْمَزَاجِ لَا أَقْوَى عَلَيَّ كَبَحِ غَضَبِي مَتَى تَارَ I have a nervous temperament; I cannot curb my anger when it is aroused. Din (Br.) 58,20

G Contrary to indefinite relatives, indefinite adverbs may take the tense of the verb in the subordinate clause in the imperfect indicative:

- تَسْتَطِيعُ أَنْ تَسِدَّنِي أَيْنَمَا تَذْهَبِينَ They can drag me wherever you go. Hak. sul. 52,8

- يَجْلِسُونَ حَيْثُمَا يَجِدُونَ مَقْعَدًا      They sit down whenever  
they find a place.  
Gibr. III, 169, 11
- فَلَنَدَعِ الْآوَاقَ تَتَسَاقَطُ كَيْفَمَا تَشَاءُ      Let the leaves fall as  
they will.  
Manf. sha'. 268, 17
- فِي إِمْسَاكِهَا وَتَسْرِحِهَا كَيْفَ يَشَاءُ      in retaining or dismissing  
her as he pleases.  
Q. Amin (Zy.) 5, 26

#### § 265 NULLIFICATION OF A SUBORDINATE'S INFLUENCE ON ITS MAIN CLAUSE

As we have seen in the pertinent chapters, in some conditional constructions —especially those introduced by **إِنْ** and also others related in meaning (e.g., temporal-conditional with **إِذَا** and indefinite-conditional) — the subordinate, when preceding its main clause, has a definite influence on it.

Under this influence, the main clause takes the verb in the perfect or the jussive (or the jussive after **لَمْ** in negative constructions) with or without preterital meaning.

This parallelism is not often broken, and even then only with a very few structural patterns, e.g., when there is an imperfect in the clause; when the main clause is an interrogative statement introduced by the particle **أ**; or when **ج** introduces an energetic.

Otherwise, whenever the main clause is to take a structural form other than that required by the parallelism we have indicated, it is most often introduced by the connective conjunction **فَ**.

On other occasions, for example with the particle of emphasis, **ج**, there is also a nullification of the influence of the subordinate. It usually acts in a different way, however; e.g., the particle, if prefixed to the imperfect of a verb, has a governing function of its own (see below).

Both particles emphasize the statement in the main clause as a consequence, in time, or as an effect of the condition, contrary to **و**, for example, which may be used when the construction allows simultaneity of actions:

أَيْنَ ذَهَبَتْ وَذَهَبَ اسْتِعْمَارُهَا ۚ

Wherever it went, its imperialism accompanied it! Khalid (Br.II) 93,24

§ 266 USE OF THE PARTICLE فَ

In the following paragraphs we shall try to present the most important instances in which فَ appears introducing the main clause.

فَ, e.g., introduces the main clause when it is

a) a complete nominal sentence:

مَنْ حَفِظَ الْقُرْآنَ فَهُوَ شَيْخٌ

Whoever memorizes the Koran is a sheikh.  
Hus. ayy. I,37,2

وَإِنْ هَبَطْتُ مَكَانًا فَالْكُلُّ هَارِبُونَ  
وَتَارَكُونِي

If I settled down in a place, everyone would flee and abandon it to me. Hak. ahl. 80,11

فَإِذَا اسْتَطَاعَ هَذَا الْكِتَابُ أَنْ  
— فَأَنَا سَعِيدٌ حَقًّا

and if this book could..., I would be truly happy.  
Hus. 'ala. I, ط, 14

أَيْنَمَا سِرْتُ فَهُمْ فِي أَثَرِي بِنَظَرَاتِهِمْ  
الْمُسْتَطَلَعَةِ الْحَذِرَةِ

Wherever I went, they followed me with their curious and cautious glances.  
Hak. ahl. 80,5

كَيْفَمَا كَانَ الْأَمْرُ فَحَسْبِي مِنْهَا  
أَنِّي خَطَرْتُ بِهَا

No matter what the case might be, it is enough for me that I have occupied her mind.  
Manf. sha'. 71,6

مَهْمَا قِيلَ فِي ابْنِ سَعْدٍ فَهُوَ  
رَجُلٌ قَبْلَ كُلِّ شَيْءٍ

No matter what is said about Ibn Sa'ud, he is, above all, a man.  
Raih. mul. 58,1



وَإِذَا لَمْ تَنْجَحْ فَحَسْبُكَ أَنْتَ أَذَيْتَ  
وَاجِبَكَ

but if you don't succeed,  
your recompense is in  
having performed your  
duty. Hak. sul. 19,3

لَئِنْ كُنْتُ رَفِيعَةً الْمَكَانِ فِي قَوْمِي  
فَمَا مَكَانَةُ مُحَمَّدٍ مِنْ قُرَيْشٍ دُونَ  
مَكَانَتِي

If I have a high standing  
among my people, Mohammed's  
position in the Koreish is  
not lower than mine.  
Hus. 'ala. II,140,5

Note the following:

أَيُّ مَا كَانَ فِيمَا يُلْفِتُ النَّظَرَ حَقًّا  
جَدُّ الْعُلَمَاءِ فِي ذَلِكَ الْعَصْرِ  
فِي —

No matter what it was,  
what really attracts at-  
tention is the eagerness  
of learned men during  
that period....  
Amin duh. II,318,5

b) an elliptical nominal or verbal sentence:

إِنْ لَمْ يَكُنِ الْيَوْمَ فَقَدَا

If it was not today, it  
will be tomorrow.  
Nu'. liq. 79,5

إِذَا عَجَزَتِ السِّيَاسَةُ فَالْحَرْبُ

Whenever politics fail,  
then war [follows].  
Raih. mul. 100,18

إِذَا كَانَ فَرِيقٌ مِنَ النَّاسِ يَنْقَرِضُ  
شَيْئًا فَشَيْئًا فَأَهْلُ الْمَدِينِ

If a part of mankind should  
perish little by little,  
it would be the city  
dwellers. Sak. (Zy.) 13,31

c) or an inverted verbal sentence:

إِنْ كَانَ غَيْرَ مَوْجُودٍ فَسَتَقْبِلُهَا  
سَيَكُونُ —

If that does not exist,  
its future will be....  
Gibr. III,239,8

إِذَا كَانَ الْحُبُّ لَا يُوجِعُكَ إِلَيَّ  
فِي هَذِهِ الْحَيَاةِ فَالْحُبُّ يَضُمُنِي  
إِلَيْكَ فِي الْحَيَاةِ الْآتِيَةِ

If love should not restore  
you to me in this life,  
then it will surely unite  
us in the coming life.  
Gibr. II,109,1

Note that the nominal sentence, and also the verbal sentence with inverted word order, is frequently introduced by **إِنَّ**, which emphasizes its validity:

كَيْفَمَا كَانَ الْأَمْرُ فَإِنِّي أَسْتَطِيعُ  
أَنْ أَقُولَ لَكَ —

However the matter might be, I can tell you....  
Manf. sha'. 28,1

إِذَا قَتَلَ فَإِنَّهُ يَقْتُلُنَا مَعًا —  
وَإِذَا عَفَا فَإِنَّهُ يَعْفُو عَنْكَ وَحْدَكَ

"If he should kill, he will kill us together."...  
"And if he should forgive, he will forgive only you."  
Hak. sheh. 141,9

إِذَا نَدِمْتُ عَلَى شَيْءٍ فَإِنِّي أُنَدِمُ  
أَنْ كُنْتُ مِنْ أَهْلِ الْمَدِينِ وَإِذَا  
مُتُّ فِي الْمَدِينَةِ فَإِنِّي سَأَمُوتُ  
وَفِي نَفْسِي حَسْرَةٌ

If I should feel sorry for something, it would be for my having been a city dweller. And if I should die in the city, I would die with grief in my heart.  
Sak. (Zy.) 13,33

إِذَا نَجَحَ سَعْيُكَ فَإِنِّي أُعْطِيكَ  
مَا تَشْتَهِي نَفْسُكَ

and if you succeed, I shall give you anything you want.  
Hak. sul. 19,2

إِذَا أَرَدْتُمْ رَأْيِي.. فَإِنِّي أَقُولُ  
لَكُمْ —

If you want my opinion...  
I'll tell you....  
Hak. sul. 41,2

The main clause may be introduced by **كَأَنَّ**, which gives to the statement a value contrary to fact:

إِذَا تَحَدَّثَتْ فَكَأَنَّهُا تَزَعَقُ

When she talked, it sounded as though she were yelling.  
Mah. zuq. 22,5

d) when it is an interrogative sentence:

إِذَا كَانَ هَذَا هُوَ الْأَدَبُ فَمَا  
الْفَرْقُ بَيْنَ الْمَقَالِ الْأَدَبِيِّ  
وَالْمَقَالِ الْاجْتِمَاعِيِّ؟

If that is literature, what, then is the difference between literary and social writing?  
Musa adab. 105,15

إِنْ لَمْ نَعِشْ لِنَعْلَمْ فَلِمَ نَاحِدَا  
نَعِشْ إِنْ؟

If we do not live to learn, then what do we live for?  
Hak. sheh. 75,12

وَإِذَا هُمْ لَمْ يُؤْمِنُوا بِهِ فَمَاذَا عَسَى  
أَنْ يَفْعَلَ؟

If they did not believe  
in him, what could he do?  
Hai. sir. 138,23

إِذَا كُنَّا لَا نَبْدَأُ بِأَنْفُسِنَا فَكَيْفَ  
نَعْدِلُ فِي غَيْرِنَا؟

If we did not begin with  
ourselves, how could we  
be just to others?  
Raih. mul. 79,2

وَإِذَا ظَلَّ مُمْلَقًا فَهَلْ يَلْبَثُ  
مَكَانَهُ حَتَّى الصَّبَاحِ؟

and if it remained closed,  
should he stay where he  
was until the following  
morning?  
Mah. qah. 134,13

*Note*, however, that the main clause in this position,  
if introduced by the interrogative particle **أَ**, is  
not preceded by **فَ**:

فَإِنْ كَيْفَيْتَ ذَلِكَ وَدُعَيْتَ إِلَى الْجَمَالِ  
وَالْمَالِ وَالشَّرَفِ وَالْكَفَاءَةِ أَلَا تُجِيبُ؟

and if you were considered  
sufficient as you are and  
were called [to receive]  
beauty, wealth, and honor,  
wouldn't you accept?  
Hai. sir. 122,8

e) or an exclamatory sentence:

إِذَا صَحَّ ذَلِكَ فَمَا أَجْهَلَ النَّاسُ

If that is true, how ig-  
norant all men are!  
Nu'. liq. 102,13

وَمَنْ كَانَ هَذَا هَمُّهُ مِنْ حَيَاتِهِ  
قَوِيلَ لِرُزُوجَتِهِ مِنْهُ

Unlucky the wife of the  
one who has such a purpose  
in life!  
Manf. mag. 161,19

إِذَا أَفْتَضَحَتْ قَالِيلٌ لِلْمَرْوُوسِ  
الْمَقْصَرِ

but if it became known,  
woe unto the neglectful  
subordinate!  
Ayy. (Br.) 33,18

f) or introduced by the negative adverb "لَا  
of general denial" (see Vol. II, § 108):

إِذَا أَرَدْنَا الْحَقَّ فَلَا مَفْرَ مِنْ  
الْإِعْتِرَافِ —

If we want the truth, we  
must recognize....  
Sa'. (Zy.) 6,10

مَهْمَا يَكُنْ مِنْ أَمْرِ فَلَا رَيْبَ أَنَّ  
الْأَيَّامَ الثَّلَاثَةَ قَدْ انْقَضَتْ

No matter what it might  
be, there is no doubt that  
the three days have passed.  
Hak. ahl. 38,3

إِذَا أَرَادَ أَنْ — فَلَا مَعْدَى  
عَنْ —

If he wanted to..., it was  
inevitable that....  
Mah. zuq. 48,9

إِذَا قَوَّعْتَ مِنْهَا فَلَا جُنَاحَ عَلَيْكَ  
أَنْ تَلْهُو وَتَلْعَبَ

When you have finished it,  
there is nothing wrong  
in your relaxing and  
playing. Hus. ayy. I,46,12

g) when the verb in the main clause is in  
the perfect tense and preceded by the particle قَدْ :

مَهْمَا يَكُنْ مِنْ تَارِيخِ اللَّغَةِ  
الْعَرَبِيَّةِ الْقَدِيمِ فَقَدْ عَرَفْنَاهَا عِنْدَ  
ظُهُورِ الْإِسْلَامِ نَاضِجَةً

Whatever might have been  
the ancient history of the  
language, we do know it  
fully developed at the  
emergence of Islam.  
Djir. tar. 47,13

مَنْ حَاوَلَ الْوُقُوفَ فِي سَبِيلِ هَذَا  
التَّغْيِيرِ فَقَدْ عَارَضَ الطَّبِيعَةَ

Whoever tries to stand  
still in this transfor-  
mation goes against Nature.  
Djir. tar. II,6,10

جَوَابِي أَنَّهُ إِذَا غَابَ الشَّرْفُ  
عَنِ الْأَدَبِ فَقَدْ غَابَ كُلُّ شَيْءٍ

My answer is that if liter-  
ature lacks honor, it lacks  
everything.  
Musa adab. 47,15

مَهْمَا يَكُنْ مِنْ شَيْءٍ فَقَدْ تَرَدَّدْتُ  
بَيْنَ هَذَيْنِ الْعُتُونَيْنِ

Whatever the case may be,  
I hesitated between these  
two titles.  
Hus. (Br.) 94,26

أَيُّمَا كَانَ السَّبَبُ فَقَدْ سَأَلْتُ  
نَفْسِي —

No matter what the reason  
is, I ask myself....  
Hai. sir. 25,8

h) or a perfect preceded by the negative  
adverb مَا :

وَلَوْ كُنْتُ كَثِيرَةَ أَمْوَالٍ ضَخْمَةٍ  
 الثَّرْوَةِ فَمَا عَرَفْتُ قَطُّ أَنَّ الْمَالَ يَزِنُ  
 إِلَى جَانِبِ الْحُبِّ شَيْئًا

and even if I am wealthy,  
 I never knew that wealth  
 bears any weight in love.  
 Hus. 'ala. II,140,6

i) or an imperfect preceded by the particle  
 س :

إِذَا قَوَّعْتُ مِنْ دَرَسِي فَسَأَعُودُ  
 إِلَيْكَ

When I have finished with  
 my class, I shall return  
 to you.  
 Hus. ayy. II,19,14

وَلَكِنَّهُ إِذَا وَاجَّهَهَا فَسَيَعْرِفُ  
 كَيْفَ يَقْهَرُهَا

But he will know how to  
 overcome them when he comes  
 to face them.  
 Mah. qah. 112,20

j) or by the negative adverb لَا :

وَأِنْ فَعَلْتَ فَلَا أَحْسِبُنِي أَحَدًا  
 مُجِيبًا

And if I did so, I do not  
 think I would find anyone  
 to answer me.  
 Hak. ahl. 80,7

وَإِذَا كَانَ صَغِيرًا فَلَا يَكُونُ لَهُ  
 عَرْشَةٌ

and if it is small, then  
 it does not have an 'arsha.  
 Raih. mul. 33,22

k) or a subjunctive governed by the negative  
 particle لَنْ :

أَتَلَكَ إِنْ أَلَحَّحَتْ عِشْرِينَ قَرْنًا فَلَنْ  
 تَظْفَرَنِي بِكَلِمَةٍ

that you, even if you im-  
 plored for twenty centuries,  
 would never win a word from  
 me. Hak. sheh. 61,5

وَمَتَى كَانَ النَّبِيُّ قِسْمًا مِنَ الْحَيَاةِ  
 بَلْ مَادَّةٌ لِمَعَانِيهَا الْجَدِيدَةِ فَلَنْ  
 يَكُونُ بَيَانُهُ إِلَّا عَلَى مَا وَصَفْنَا لَكَ  
 جَمَالًا

And whenever the Prophet  
 becomes a part of life or,  
 rather, an element of its  
 new meaning, its clarifi-  
 cation cannot be but  
 beautiful as we have de-  
 scribed it to you.  
 Raf. wah. III,22,3

مَهْمَا يَنْسَ الصَّبِيَّ فَلَنْ يَنْسَى  
لَيْلَةً —

No matter how much the boy forgets, he never will forget the night when.... Hus. ayy. I, 92, 3

إِنِّي إِنْ أَرَدْتُ سَكَنًا فَلَنْ يُسْكِنَنِي  
أَحَدٌ بِجَوَارِهِ

If I wanted to settle down, no one would accept me as his neighbor. Hak. ahl. 80, 10

وَلَكِنَّ إِسْمَاعِيلَ إِذَا أَرَادَ لَعِبًا  
أَوْ فَسَادًا فَلَنْ يَعْقُوهُ شَيْءٌ —

But Isma'il, when he wanted to play or be mischievous, would be stopped by nothing.... Qal. (Zy.) 21, 33

verb لَيْسَ<sup>l)</sup> or when it is introduced by the defective

إِذَا قُلْتُ آلْعَرَبَ فَلَسْتُ أَعْنِي  
جَمِيعَهُمْ

When I said the Arabs, I did not mean all of them. Amin duh. I, 23, 14

إِنْ سَأَلْتَ كَيْفَ أُنْتَقَلَ مِنْ تِلْكَ  
الْحَالِ إِلَى هَذِهِ الْحَالِ فَلَسْتُ  
أَسْتَطِيعُ أَنْ أَجِيبَكَ

If you asked how he changed from that condition to this, I would not know what to answer. Hus. ayy. I, 151, 13

أَيْنَمَا ذَهَبْنَا فَلَيْسَ غَيْرُنَا وَغَيْرُ  
ظِلِّنَا وَخَيَالِنَا

Wherever we go, there are only the two of us, and our shadows and chimeras. Hak. sheh. 151, 1

m) or by the particle ل governing the jussive (see Vol. I, § 26):

وَإِذَا تَرَكَهُ فَلَيْمَشِ حَافِيَا أُسْبُوعًا أَوْ  
أَسَابِيعَ

And if [the sandals] gave out on him, he would go barefooted for a week or more. Hus. ayy. I, 39, 2

لَوْ كُنْتُمْ تَوَدُّونَ بِمَا تَقُولُونَ حَقًّا  
فَلْيَتَقَدَّمْ مِنْكُمْ مَنْ يُقَاتِلَنِي

If you truly believed what you say, one of you would step forward to fight against me. Hai. sir. 296, 15

مَنْ شَاءَ فَلْيَشْكْ وَمَنْ شَاءَ  
فَلْيَتَيَقَّنْ  
Let him doubt who will,  
and let him be convinced  
who will.  
Hus. 'ala. II,71,1

إِنْ كَانَ اللَّهُ قَدْ أَمَرَ بِذَلِكَ  
فَلْيَطِيعْ أَمْرَ رَبِّهِ  
If God ordered him [to do]  
that, let him obey his  
Lord's command.  
Hai. sir. 88,3

n) when the verb expresses a command or a prohibition:

إِذَا مَاتَ فَلَا تَقُلْ إِنَّ —  
If he died, don't tell  
that.... Raf. wah. I,79,4

إِنْ قُلْتَ لَكَ ذَلِكَ فَصَدِّقْنِي  
If I told you that, believe  
me. Nu'. kan. 8,18

إِنْ شِئْتَ فَقُلْ —  
If you want to, say....  
Nu'. liq. 43,16

مَهْمَا يَقُلْ لَكَ فَلَا تَقْبِلْ أَكْثَرَ  
مِنْ قَوْشٍ  
No matter what he says,  
don't agree to over a  
piaster.  
Hus. ayy. I,31,1

إِذَا جَاءَ إِلَيْكَ الْآلَاءُ لَوْنٌ مَرَّةً أُخْرَى  
فَاجْمَعْ كَفَّكَ مِثْلَ الْآنَ  
If the boys oppose you  
again, make a fist as  
[you're doing] now.  
'Aww. (Br.) 15,17

Note that فِ is also used before a verb in the jussive when it expresses an indirect command:

إِذَا كَانَ الْإِنْكِلِيزُ مَعِيَ فَيُعْطُونِي  
حَقِّي وَزِيَادَةً وَإِذَا كَانُوا عَلَيَّ  
فَيُعْطُونِي فِ الْآقَلِ بَعْضَ مَا أَطْلُبُهُ  
If the British are with  
me, let them grant me what  
is mine and even more. If  
they are against me, let  
them give me at least some  
of what I request.  
Raih. mul. 65,11

#### § 267 THE OMISSION OF فِ

There are frequent instances in which the con-

junction **فَ** is not used, contrary to the more general rules that require its presence:

مَهْمَا تَقُلْ لِلْمَلِكِ لَا يُصَدِّقُكَ      Whatever you might tell  
the king, he will not be-  
lieve you. Hak. ahl. 19,6

إِنْ كُنَّا نُرِيدُ أَنْ — عَلَيْنَا أَنْ —      If we want to..., we have  
to.... Gibr. I,179,14

إِنْ قَاوَمْتُمْ بِنْتُكَ الْوَرَاءَ أَقْبَضُوا      If that woman opposes you,  
seize her.  
عَلَيْهَا      Gibr. I,180,17

إِنْ شِئْتَ أَنْ تَتَحَرَّرَ طَلِّقِ امْرَأَتَكَ      If you want to become free,  
forsake your wife and you  
عِشْ خَالِيًا      will live free.  
Gibr. III,11,15

أَيُّمَا كَاتِبٍ يَخْرُجُ عَلَيْهَا إِنَّمَا      Whichever writer rebels  
يَخْرُجُ عَلَى الْعَرْشِ      against them rebels against  
the throne.  
Musa adab. 42,8

إِذَا مَرَرْتُمْ بِبَنِيكَ الْمَقْبَرَةِ الْقَرِيبَةِ      If you go by this tomb  
near the pine woods, enter  
مِنْ غَابَةِ الصَّنَوْبَرِ ادْخُلُوهَا صَامِتِينَ      into it silently.  
Gibr. II,11,3

## § 268 USE OF THE PARTICLE **لَ**

The emphatic particle **لَ** is used to emphasize the statement expressed in the main clause.

When it is prefixed to the imperfect in the main clause, the verb will always be in the energetic under the emphatic effect of the particle (see Vol. I, § 27).

**لَ** is generally used, e.g., to introduce the main clause, when the same particle introduces the subordinate:

لَئِنْ ظَهَرَ أَنَّهُ لَا يَحْفَظُ الْقُرْآنَ      and if it should appear  
لَأَخْلِقَنَّ لِحْيَتِي هَذِهِ      that he has not memorized  
the Koran, I shall shave  
off this beard of mine.  
Hus. ayy. I,43,10



لَئِنْ أَقَرَّتْ بِمَا يَقُولُ النَّاسُ —  
لَأَقُولَنَّ مَا لَمْ يَكُنْ

If I should admit to what people say..., I would be saying what did not happen.  
Hai. sir. 361,3

لَئِنْ أَصْبَحْتُ لَأَتِيَنَّ الْكَاهِنَ

In the morning I shall go to the priest.  
Hus. 'ala. I,6,6

وَلَئِنْ كَانَ بَعْدُ فِي الثَّانِيَةِ عَشْرَةَ  
مِنْ سِنِّهِ لَقَدْ كَانَ لَهُ مِنْ عَظَمَةِ  
الرَّحْمَنِ

Although he was still twelve years of age, he already possessed a spiritual greatness.  
Hai. sir. 115,11

وَاللَّهِ لَئِنْ أَمَرَنِي بِضَرْبِ عُنُقِهَا  
لَأَضْرِبَنَّ عُنُقَهَا

and, by God, if he told me to cut off her head, I would do it.  
Hai. sir. 449,17

لَئِنْ دَلَّ هَذَا التَّعَنُّتُ عَلَى شَيْءٍ  
لَعَلَى شِدَّةِ حِرْصِ أَصْحَابِهِ عَلَى  
التَّشْكِيكِ فِي الْإِسْلَامِ

If this obstinacy proves something, then it is their great desire to cast doubt on Islam.  
Hai. sir. 43,5

*Note* that the use of لَ in the subordinate does not make necessary its employment in the main clause. The main clause may be introduced by فَ according to the patterns shown in the preceding paragraphs.

On the other hand, لَ may also be used in cases when it does not introduce the subordinate. This is especially frequent after a subordinate clause introduced by لَوْ or لَوْلَا :

لَوْ تَرَكَ لِي الْخِيَارَ لَأَخْتَرْتُ  
مَسْكَنًا بِصُرِيَا

If he had given me the choice, I would have chosen the Egyptian home.  
Mah. qah. 110,6

وَلَوْلَا لَضَاعَ أَسْمَاءُ كَثِيرٍ مِنَ  
الْكَتُبِ النَّفِيسَةِ

Had it not been for him, the titles of many a precious book would have been lost.  
Djir. tar. I,8,15

لَوْ فَهِمُوا مَعْنَى الْحَرِيَّةِ لَمَا آخْتَلَفُوا  
مَعْنَا فِي الرَّأْيِ

If they understood the meaning of freedom, they would not oppose me in that opinion.

Q. Amin (Zy.) 5,2

لَوْلَا أَنِّي شَغُولٌ لَّاسْتَطَعْتُ أَنْ  
أَقْرَأَ ابْنَكَ الْقُرْآنَ —

Were it not for the fact that I am busy, I could teach your son how to recite the Koran....

Hus. ayy. I,114,1

وَلَوْ بَقِيَ أَكْثَرُ مِنْ ذَلِكَ لَأَكَلَهُ أَيُّضًا

And if more of it had remained, he would have eaten it also.

'Aww. (Br.) 18,22

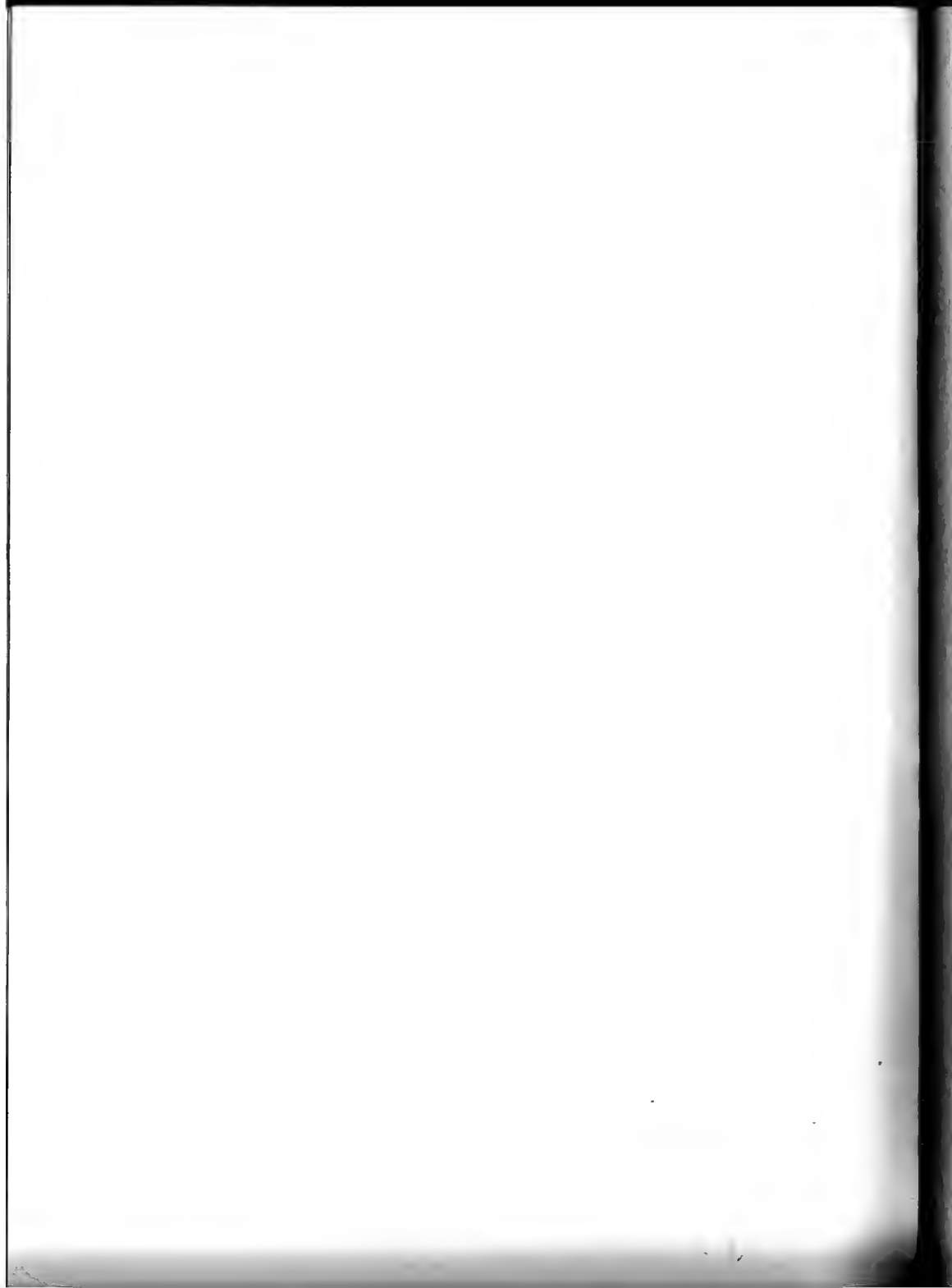
لَوْ عَاشَ لَكَانَ أَفْضَلَ مَثَالٍ —

Had he lived, he would have been the best example for....

Manf. mag. 170,3



XVIII PARENTHETICAL CONSTRUCTIONS



## § 269 PARENTHETICAL CONSTRUCTIONS

The need for a more lively and less restrained style on the one hand and for a more precise expression of ideas on the other has caused the frequent insertion in Arabic of one statement within another in order to let it follow as closely as possible the part it most closely defines or modifies and also in order to give preference to ideas which are logically more important than would be indicated if they were placed in their normal position within the construction.

This insertion, which we call "parenthesis" or "a parenthetical construction," was already in use in Arabic in the Koran. In the modern language, it has become, as expected, much more flexible and common.

A parenthesis divides a sentence usually without influencing it in any manner better than the fact of the separation. In certain parenthetical constructions, however, the proximity of new syntactical elements, as well as the separation of the elements belonging to the statement, may cause some structural changes.

A Parenthetical constructions in the function of an accusative are very frequently used between a verb and a noun clause. They are always restrictive statements, generally, although not necessarily, of a conditional nature:

يُخَيَّلُ إِلَيَّ وَإِنْ لَمْ أَجْلِسْ إِلَيْهِ  
وَلَمْ أَسْمَعْ حَدِيثَهُ أَنَّهُ أَرْقَى النَّاسِ  
حَدِيثًا وَأَعَدُّهُمْ سَمَرًا

I believe, although I  
never sat with him nor  
heard him talking, that  
his conversation is the  
most courteous of that  
of any man.

Manf. sha'. 103,10

فَإِنِّي أَخْشَىٰ إِنْ أَنْتَ نَظَرْتَ إِلَيَّ  
وَجِبِي أَنْ تُدْرِكَكَ الرَّقَّةُ

For I fear if you look  
into my face compassion  
will overwhelm you.

Hai. sir. 88,13

أَخَافُ إِنْ أَنَا لَقِيتُهَا وَحْدِي  
أَنْ أَضْعَفُ أَمَامَهَا

I am afraid if I meet  
her alone I will become  
weak in her presence.

Manf. sha'. 23,4

نَسْتَطِيعُ بَعْدَ الَّذِي ذَكَرْنَا فِي  
الْفَصْلِ السَّابِقِ أَنْ نَقُولَ —

We can, after what we  
have mentioned in the  
preceding section, say  
that....

Amin duh. I,50,3

وَكَانَ فِي نِيَّتِي إِذَا كَانَ الْجَوَابُ  
بِإِلَاجٍ أَنْ —

It was my intention, if  
the answer were affirma-  
tive, to....

Raih. mul. 14,18

هَمَّ بِحَاوِلُونَ حَيْثَمَا مَرُّوا أَنْ  
يَقِفُوا عَلَىٰ أَخْبَارِهِ

They tried, wherever they  
passed by, to learn news  
of him. Hai. sir. 258,5

إِنِّي لِأَخْشَىٰ لَوْ حَدَّثْتُكَ بِمَا عَرَفْتُ  
مِنْ أَمْرِ أَبِيكَ حِينَئِذٍ أَنْ يَمْلِكَ  
الْإِشْفَاقُ وَتَأْخُذَكَ الرَّأْفَةُ فَتَجْهَشِي  
بِالْبَيْكَاءِ

I am afraid that if I  
tell you what I know about  
the condition of your  
father at that time, pity  
and compassion will over-  
whelm you and you will  
start crying.

Hus. ayy. I,146,14

لَكِنَّ مُحَمَّدًا مَا لَبِثَ حِينَ أَتَمَّ  
دُعَاءَهُ أَنْ سَأَلَهُمْ —

But Mohammed, as soon as  
he ended his prayer,  
asked them....

Hai. sir. 424,1

B Also very common is the use of a circumstantial clause as a parenthetical construction following immediately after the part in the main clause it more closely defines:

وَأَنَا كَذَلِكَ وَإِذَا بَشِيَ كَأَنَّهُ  
الْحَجَرُ يَنْقُصُ مِنْ عَلَ

So I was, when suddenly  
as if a stone had fallen.  
Nu. liq. 54,1

وَإِذَا بِي وَعَيْنَايَ عَالِقَتَانِ يَلْيُونَارِدُو  
وَكَمَنْجَتِهِ وَأَصَابِعِهِ أَحْسَ عُنُقُ بَهَا  
يَلْتَوِي كَعُنُقِ زَهْرَةٍ تَدْوِي

While my eyes were glued  
on Leonardo's violin and  
fingers, I suddenly felt  
Baha's head droop as the  
stalk of a flower wilts.  
Nu'. liq. 30,11

إِنَّ اللَّهَ وَقَدْ خَلَقَ لَنَا قُلُوبًا قَدْ  
نَزَلَ عَنْ بَعْضِ حَقِّهِ عَلَيْنَا

God, when He gave us  
hearts, renounced some  
of His right to us.  
Hak. ahl. 25,11

سَتَنْتَقِلُ وَأَنْتَ فِي نَجْدٍ إِلَى  
الْقُرُونِ الْخَامِسِ

While in Nejed, you will  
be transported back to  
the fifth century.  
Raih. mul. 29,8

(For more examples, see Vol. II, p. 317f.)

C A parenthetical expression is not often found between the main clause and a relative specification, e.g.,

with an asyndetical relative clause:

هُوَ كَلَامٌ كَلَّمَا زِدْتَهُ فِكْرًا زَادَكَ  
مَعْنَى

That is a word that be-  
comes more meaningful  
the more you think about  
it. Raf. wah. III,8,3

or with a syndetical construction:

تِلْكَ الْحَيَاةُ الَّتِي إِذَا مَا تَأَمَّلْنَاهَا  
وَجَدْنَاهَا مُبْتَسِمَةً فِي الرَّبِّيعِ —

That life which we, when  
we contemplate it, find  
smiling during the  
spring....  
Gibr. I,76,14

D A parenthetical construction is also frequently used between كَانَ, in its auxiliary function, and the verb it governs. In this instance, whenever the subject of the verb كَانَ is mentioned before the parenthesis, the verb is in agreement with it; otherwise, in cases of diversity of subjects between subordinate parenthetical and main clause, the verb may be in agreement with either of the two subjects:



لَقَدْ كُنْتُ كَلَّمَا زَدَدْتُ تَوَسُّعًا فِي  
الْبَحْثِ أَرَى سَائِلَ تَنْجُمِ أُمَامِي

The more I increased my research, the more I saw questions rising before me. Hai. sir. 20,3

مَعَ ذَلِكَ كُنْتُ عِنْدَ مَا أَقُولُ نَجْدُ  
تَقُولُ هِيَ الْعِرَاقُ  
وَلَكِنْ لَمْ يَكُنِ الْعَرَبِيُّ الْبَدَوِيُّ  
إِذَا دَخَلَ عَلَى مُعَاوِيَةَ أَوْ عَبْدِ  
الْمَلِكِ يَشْعُرُ بِأَنَّهُ —

Nevertheless, whenever I said Nejed, she would say Iraq. Raih. mul. 23,10

But when the Badouin Arab entered Mu'awiya or Abd al-Malik, he never felt that....  
Amin duh. I, 104,15

In this construction, the main clause following the subordinate may be introduced by the coordinate conjunctions **وَ** or **فَ** :

هِيَ الْفُصْحَى الَّتِي ظَهَرَ الْإِسْلَامُ  
فَوَجَدَهَا كَامِلَةً النُّمُو

It is the classical [language] which Islam, at its appearance, found fully developed.  
Kahl. (Br. II) 6,4

تَابِكَ الْعَيْنَانِ اللَّتَانِ طَالَمَا  
تَأَمَّلْتَهُمَا وَلَمْ أَرْ فِيهِمَا غَيْرَ  
الْعُنْفِ وَالْقَسَاوَةِ —

those two eyes in which I, as frequently as I have contemplated them, never saw anything except severity and austerity....  
Gibr. II, 140,19

*Note* that in this position the relative clause after the parenthesis may, at times, be omitted; the subordinating particle then has an adverbial function:

إِنِّي لَنْ أُنْسِيَ تِلْكَ اللَّيْلَةَ الَّتِي  
طَالَمَا حَدَّثْتُكَ عَنْهَا

I never will forget that night about which I told you so often.  
Hak. ahl. 31,4

عَنْ يَمِينِهِ هَذِهِ الْحَوَانِيتُ  
الصَّغِيرَةُ الَّتِي طَالَمَا وَقَفَ عِنْدَ  
بَعْضِهَا حِينَ تَقَدَّمَتْ بِهِ الْأَيَّامُ

to his right were these small shops, at some of which he so often stood as the days passed.  
Hus. ayy. II, 13,5

E Another frequently used type of parenthetical expression is placed between the subject and its verb when the main and the subordinate clause have the same subject. The subject may be represented by a personal pronoun when it has already been mentioned. Both -noun or personal pronoun- are often in the accusative case after **لَكِنَّ** , **أَنَّ** , or **إِنَّ** :

إِنَّكَ لَوْ عَرَفْتَهُ مَعْرِفَتِي إِيَّاهُ  
لَأَمَلَّاتْ نَفْسَكَ إِعْجَابًا بِهِ وَإِعْظَامًا  
لَهُ

If you knew him as I do,  
you would be filled with  
admiration and respect  
for him.

Manf. sha'. 254,15

مَعَ أَنَّا لَوْ رَقَقْنَا النَّظَرَ فِي  
أَصْلِهَا لَوَجَدْنَاهُ سِيَاسِيًّا

But we, if we closely  
examine its cause, shall  
find [that it is] politi-  
tical. Amin duh. III,6,6

نَحْنُ إِذَا تَتَبَعْنَا تَارِيخَ الدَّوْلَةِ  
الْعَبَّاسِيَّةِ فِي هَذَا الْبَابِ وَجَدْنَا  
أَنَّ —

If we follow the history  
of the Abbasid dynasty  
in this chapter, we will  
find that....

Amin duh. I,107,3

فَلَيْتَ اللَّهَ إِذَا خَلَقَنِي عَلَى هَذِهِ  
الصُّورَةِ الدَّمِيمَةِ الْبَشِيعَةِ لَمْ يَخْلُقْ  
لِي قَلْبًا خَفَانًا

If only God, since He  
created me with this ugly  
appearance, had not given  
me a tender heart.

Manf. sha'. 68,1

أَنَّكَ إِنْ أَلَحَّحْتَ عَشْرِينَ قَرْنًا  
فَلَنْ تَظْفَرَ مِنِّي بِكَلِمَةٍ

that you, even if you im-  
plored for twenty centu-  
ries, would not win a  
word from me.

Hak. sheh. 61,5

هَمَّ حِينَ يَبْحَثُونَ فِي فَلَسَفَةِ  
أَفْلَاطُونٍ أَوْ سَرَحِيَّاتِ شَكْسْبِيرٍ أَوْ  
فَنِّ رَفَائِيلَ لَا يَتَلَمَّسُونَ الْمَطَاعِينَ  
فِي حَيَاةِ هَؤُلَاءِ الْعَظَمَاءِ

They, when they study Plato's  
philosophy or Shakespeare's  
plays or the art of Raphael,  
do not look for invectives  
against the lives of these  
great [men].

Hai. sir. 43,14

Note that under certain circumstances the main clause following the parenthesis is introduced by the

coordinate conjunction **فَ**, leaving the noun or pronoun subject isolated —an anacoluthon— preceding the compound (see immediately below and also Vol. II, § 180):

وَأَنَا وَإِنْ كُنْتُ أَعْلَمُ أَنَّكَ غَيْرَ رَاضِيَةٍ  
عَنْ هَذَا الزَّوْجِ وَأَنَّكَ لَا تُحِبِّينِ  
هَذَا الْفَتَى — فَإِنِّي أَرَى لَكَ أَنْ  
تَخْضَعِي لِأَمْرِ الْكَاهِنِ الْأَعْظَمِ  
وَتَدْعِينِي لِرُغْبَتِهِ

and I, though I know that this marriage does not please you and that you don't love this young man..., I think that you should obey this great priest and surrender to his wishes.  
Manf. sha'. 190,5

In the frequent cases in which the main clause and the parenthesis have different subjects, that of the parenthesis has priority and is the subject of the parenthesis itself or of a personal pronoun in agreement with it and which appears at the beginning of the construction. The actual main clause, under certain circumstances, may then be introduced by **فَ** (see Vol. III, p. 361ff.).

These cases could be considered as examples of anacoluthon:

الْخُلَفَاءُ الْأُمَوِيُّونَ إِذَا وَهَبُوا  
فَإِنَّمَا كَانَتْ أَكْثَرُ جَوَائِزِهِمِ الْإِبِلَ

The Umayyad caliphs, whenever they gave presents, most often rewarded camels.  
Amin duh. I, 106,7

لَكِنَّمْهُمْ إِذْ بَلَغُوهَا كَانَتْ قَافِلَةً  
أَبَى سَفْيَانَ قَدْ مَرَّتْ بِهَا

But when they reached it, Abu Sufyan's caravan had already gone by.  
Hai. sir. 255,18

لَكِنَّمْهُمْ إِنْ قَتَلُوهُ طَالِبَ بَنُو  
هَاشِمٍ وَبَنُو الْمُطَّلِبِ بِدَمِهِ

But if they should kill him, the Banu Hashim and the Banu al-Muttalib would seek revenge.  
Hai. sir. 209,1

Consequently, a noun anacoluthon may introduce the construction in which the parenthesis is inserted:

إِنَّ الدَّوْلَةَ الْأُمَوِيَّةَ لَوْ قُدِّرَ لَهَا  
أَنْ تَسْتَعْرِ فِي الْحُكْمِ الزَّمَنَ الَّذِي  
حَكَمَتْهُ الدَّوْلَةُ الْعَبَّاسِيَّةُ لَظَهَرَ عَلَى  
يَدَيْهَا مِنْ الْحَرَكَاتِ الْعِلْمِيَّةِ وَ—  
قَرِيبٌ مِمَّا ظَهَرَ عَلَى يَدِ الْعَبَّاسِيِّينَ

The Umayyad dynasty, if it had been given to it to remain in power during the time which the Abbasids reigned [and instead of them], scientific movements and...would have appeared under them very much like it was under the Abbasids.

Amin duh. I, 2, 14

Very often the pronoun introducing the construction will not refer to any specific part of either main or subordinate clause but will be in the masculine singular as a "pronoun of general reference" (see Vol. II, § 178):

إِنَّهُ إِذَا كَانَتْ حَيَاةُ الْآدِيبِ  
رَفِيعَةً فَإِنَّ أَسْلُوبَ أَفْكَارِهِ وَأَسْلُوبَ  
عِبَارَاتِهِ يَكُونُ أَيْضًا رَفِيعًا

Indeed, if the writer's life is noble, his way of thinking and of expression will also be noble. Musa adab. 10, 7

أَظُنُّ أَنَّهُ لَوْلَا وَجُودُكَ مَعَنَا مَا  
كَانَتْ إِرَادَةُ اللَّهِ وَالْمَسِيحِ شَاءَتْ  
لَنَا آيَةً أُعْجَبِيَّةً ! !

I believe that had you not been with us, God's will and Christ's would not have granted us any miracle.

Hak. ahl. 37, 15

(On the use of وَ introducing a parenthetical construction, see Vol. III, p. 16f.)

(On the use of a parenthetical إِذَا after حَتَّى , see Vol. III, p. 90f.)



XIX EXPANDED COMPOUNDS



§ 270 EXPANDED COMPOUNDS

Midway between syntax and purely stylistic considerations are those cases which we call expanded compounds. In such constructions, an expanded sentence or a compound is further expanded by adding to the basic construction new elements, in coordination or subordination, which, in their turn, are also expanded sentences or compounds.

Modern Arabic in general has changed from its previous Semitic complicity into allowing a much greater flexibility in the language, and freedom in using such expanded constructions can now be considered characteristic of present-day literary Arabic. The excessive use of them by some authors contributes to the creation of rather long and complicated styles.

In the following paragraphs, without even attempting to pursue any analysis of the style involved, we shall present only what we consider to be the most representative forms:

هِيَ الَّتِي رَدَّتْ مِنْ قَبْلُ أَعْظَمَ  
قَرَيْشٍ شَرَفًا وَنِسَبًا تَوَدُّ أَنْ تَتَزَوَّجَ  
مِنْ هَذَا الشَّابِّ الَّذِي نَفَذَتْ  
نَظَرَاتِهِ وَنَفَذَتْ كَلِمَاتَهُ إِلَى أَعْمَاقِ  
قَلْبِهَا

She, who had previously rejected the nobles of the Koreish, wanted to marry this young man, whose glances and words penetrated to the depths of her heart.

Hai. sir. 122,3

مَا الْفَائِدَةُ لِيَتَلَيَّ مِنْ رِحْلَةٍ عَرَبِيَّةٍ  
إِذَا كُنْتُ لَا أَسْلَمُ فِيهَا لِأَخْبَرِ عَنْهَا  
وَلَوْ فِي كِتَابٍ وَاحِدٍ؟

What was the use for someone like me to undertake an Arabic pilgrimage if I would not escape to tell about it, not even in a single book?

Raih. mul. 24,16



إِذَا غَضِبَ لَمْ يَظْهَرْ عَلَيْهِ مِنْ أَثَرِ  
الْغَضَبِ إِلَّا نَفْرَةٌ عَرِقَ بَيْنَ حَاجِبَيْهِ

When he was angry, it only showed in some drops of sweat on his forehead.  
Hai. sir. 124,12

(قَرَيْشٍ) لَكِنَّهَا لَمْ تَكُنْ تَقْدِرُ عَلَى  
أَكْثَرِ مِنْ ذَلِكَ حَتَّى لَا تَكُونَ حَرْبَ  
أَهْلِيَّةٍ بَيْنَ مُخْتَلِفِ قَبَائِلِهَا إِذَا هِيَ  
هَمَّتْ بِقَتْلِ وَاحِدٍ مِنْ أَهْلِ هَذِهِ  
الْقَبَائِلِ

But the Koreish could not do any more than that in order to avoid a civil war with the various tribes if they tried to kill any of the people of these tribes. Hai. sir. 208,8

وَلَكِنِّي إِذَا تَرَكْتُهَا يَوْمًا شَعَرْتُ  
لِتَرْكِهَا بِشَيْءٍ وَلَوْ قَلِيلٍ مِنَ  
الْضِّيقِ

But whenever I had to leave her for a day, I felt some uneasiness on doing so, even if only a little. Qal. (Zy.) 21,13

مَنْذُ هَذَا الْيَوْمِ أَصْبَحَ صَبِيحًا شَيْخًا  
وَإِنْ لَمْ يَتَجَاوَزِ التَّاسِعَةَ لِأَنَّهُ  
حَفِظَ الْقُرْآنَ وَمَنْ حَفِظَ الْقُرْآنَ  
فَهُوَ شَيْخٌ مَهْمَا تَكُنْ سِنُهُ

Since that day our friend had been a sheikh, although he was no more than nine, for he had memorized the Koran, and whoever memorizes the Koran is a sheikh regardless of his age.  
Hus. ayy. I,37,1

مَا هُوَ إِلَّا أَنْ عَلِمَتْ بِمَا حَدَثَ فِي  
غِيَابِهَا حَتَّى كَانَ أَوَّلُ مَا خَطَرَ لَهَا  
أَنْ أُرْسِلَتْ إِلَى شَعْرَاوِي بِأَشَا  
تَبْلُغُهُ أَنْ مَكْتَبَ سَعْدٍ مَفْتُوحٌ لَهُ  
وَلِزَمَلَائِهِ فِي غِيَابِ سَعْدٍ كَمَا كَانَ  
فِي حُضْرِهِ وَتَرْجُوهُ وَزَمَلَاةُ أَنْ  
يَقْبَلُوا دَعْوَتَهَا إِلَى الْعِشَاءِ فِي  
ذَلِكَ الْمَسَاءِ وَأَنْ يَعْقدُوا

The first thing that occurred to her, as soon as she learned what had happened during her absence, was to send for Sha'rawi Pasha to let him know that Sa'ad's office would remain open for him and his associates during Sa'ad's absence as it had been while he was present, and to ask him and his associates to accept her invitation for dinner that evening and that they could hold their

جَلَسَتْهُمْ الْأُولَى فِي مَكَانٍ أَنْعَادَهَا  
الْمَالُوفُ لَكِنِّي لَا يَطْرَأُ عَلَى سَنِيْرِ  
الدَّعْوَةِ أَقَلُّ تَغْيِيرٍ بَعْدَ ذَلِكَ  
الْحَادِثِ الَّذِي أُرِيدُ بِهِ الْقَضَاءُ  
عَلَيْهَا

first meeting in place of the usual one so that not the slightest change should befall the advancement of the cause after this event which was intended to destroy it. 'Aqq. (Zy.) 15,43

هَلِ ابْنُ سَعُودٍ مِنْ أَوْلِيكَ الْأَفْرَادِ  
الْقَلِيلِ عَدَدُهُمْ فِي الْبِلَادِ الْعَرَبِيَّةِ  
بَلْ فِي الْعَالَمِ أَجْمَعِ، أَوْلِيكَ الَّذِينَ  
يَبْقَوْنَ عَلَى شَيْءٍ مِنَ الْفِطْرَةِ مَهْمَا  
عَظُمُوا أَوْ تَعَاظَمَتْ شُؤُونُهُمْ، أَوْلِيكَ  
الَّذِينَ يَسِيرُونَ إِلَى مَحَجَّتِهِمْ فِي  
الصِّرَاطِ الْمُسْتَقِيمِ فَيَأْخُذُونَ الْحِكْمَةَ  
مِنْ لَوْحِ الْوُجُودِ لَا مِنْ الْكُتُبِ  
يَنْبَغُونَ وَلَا يَتَفَوَّقُونَ وَيَكْرَهُونَ وَلَا  
يَخَافُونَ، وَيُحِبُّونَ وَلَا يَمْلِكُونَ  
وَيَسُودُونَ وَلَا يَظْلِمُونَ وَيَعْدِلُونَ  
وَلَا يَخَافُونَ غَيْرَ اللَّهِ ؟

Is Ibn Sa'ud perhaps one of those individuals so scarce not only in the Arab world, but even in the whole world, of those who retain some of their natural dispositions regardless of how great they become or important their affairs, of those who follow the "Straight Path" on their journey and thus learn from the Book of Life, rather than from printed books, always outstanding but never expressing superiority, hating but not double-crossing, loving but not flattering, ruling but not doing evil, treating everyone justly and fearing only God?

Raih. mul. 31,15

إِذَا لَوْ أَنَّ الْأَدَبَ كَانَ فِي خِدْمَةِ  
الْمَجْتَمَعِ يُعَالِجُ مُشْكِلاتِهِ وَيَدْعُو إِلَى  
الْإِصْلَاحِ الْإِجْتِمَاعِيِّ، وَيُدَافِعُ عَنْ  
حُرِّيَةِ الضَّمِيرِ وَيَطْلُبُ الْمَسَاوَاةَ  
بَيْنَ الرَّجُلِ وَالْمَرْأَةِ وَيُنَادِي  
بِالْإِنْسَانِيَّةِ بَيْنَ أُمَّةٍ وَأُخْرَى عَلَى  
أَخْتِلَافِ أَدْيَانِهِمْ وَمَذَاهِبِهِمْ، وَلَوْ  
أَنَّ الْأَدَبَاءَ كَانُوا عَلَى وَجْدَانٍ

For if literature serves society, he will deal with its problems and will ask for social reform and will defend freedom of conscience and request equality between men and women and proclaim humanity among all humankind in spite of their differences in religions and sects, and if writers are aware of

بِمَعْنَى الْحَضَارَةِ الْعَصْرِيَّةِ الَّتِي  
تَعْتَمِدُ عَلَى حَقَائِقِ الْعِلْمِ وَلَيْسَ  
عَلَى التَّقَالِيدِ وَالْعَادَاتِ وَلَوْ أَنَّهُمْ  
كَانُوا يَعْرِفُونَ عِبَارَةَ "الْأَدَبِ"  
الْمُرْتَبِطِ \* أَيْ الَّذِي يَرْتَبِطُ بِالْمَجْتَمَعِ  
فَيَحْسُ الْأَرِيْبُ أَنَّهُ سَسْئُولٌ عَنْ  
مَجْتَمَعِهِ وَأَنَّهُ إِمَامُهُ الَّذِي يَقُودُهُ  
وَيُشَدُّ وَيَنْشُدُ صِلَاةَ وَخَيْرَهُ ،  
أَقُولُ لَوْ أَنَّ أَدَبَاءَ بَصْرَ كَانُوا  
يُرْتَبِطُونَ أَدَبَهُمْ بِالْمَجْتَمَعِ الْبَصْرِيِّ  
لَمَا وَقَعْنَا فِي هَذِهِ الْكَارِثَةِ الَّتِي  
نَتَخَبَّطُ فِيهَا هَذِهِ الْأَيَّامَ

the meaning of contemporary culture, which is based on scientific truths, not on traditions and customs, and if they know the expression *litterature engagée*, that is to say, that which is committed to society, so that the writer feels himself responsible for his society and that he is its leader who must direct it and guide and look after its integrity and welfare, I say if Egypt's writers had linked their literature with Egyptian society, we certainly would not have fallen into the disaster in which we struggle in our time.

Musa adab. 14,8

# INDEX

## I

### ARABIC WORDS

#### ا

أه II, 203.

أ interrogative, I, 137-9.

أَجَل I, 166.

أَحَد II, 361.

أَخْت II, 124.

إِنْ temporal, III, 284-90; "of motivation," III, 288-90.

إِنْ أَنْ (أَنَّ) III, 290.

إِنْ ذَاكَ II, 40.

إِذَا III, 291-307; 312-3.

إِذَا أَلْفَعَاةِ III, 291-4.

إِذَا بِ II, 301, 456n; III, 253, 294-7.

إِذَا مَا III, 305-6.

ال article, II, 10-21.

أَلَا interrogative, I, 139.

أَلَا interrogative, I, 139.

أَلَا ف I, 139.

إِلَى II, 290-5.

أُم II, 500; III, 50-3.

أُم II, 124.

أَمَّا III, 196-202.

إِمَّا II, 501-2; III, 53-4.

أَنْ with subjunctive, I, 78; introducing a noun clause, III, 106-16, 122-45.

أَنْ لَا (أَلَا) I, 78; III, 114.

بَعْدَ أَنْ III, 142.

قَبْلَ أَنْ III, 142-3.

كَأَنَّ III, 144.

لِأَنَّ III, 82, 144.

لَيْتَ III, 83.

مِنْ غَيْرِ أَنْ III,137-8.

إِنْ السَّخَفَةُ II,233-4.

إِنْ negative, I,128-9; III, 88,347.

إِنْ — إِلَّا I,128-9.

إِنْ indirect interrogative, III,101.

إِنْ conditional, III,312-20.

إِنْ لَمْ III,313.

لِئِنْ III,315.

وَإِنْ III,330-4.

إِلَّا (و) alternative conditional, III,336-52.

إِلَّا أَنْ III,367.

أَنْ governing an accusative, II,227-32, 234-5; introducing an anacoluthon, II, 455-63; with a noun clause, III,106-7, 116-45.

بِمَا أَنْ III,242.

بَيِّدَ أَنْ III,141-2.

عَلَى أَنْ III,141.

غَيْرَ أَنْ III,137-8.

كَأَنَّ III,143.

لَا لِأَنَّ III,83, 144-5.

مَعَ أَنْ III,140-1.

إِنَّ II,227-34.

إِنَّ وَأَخَوَاتُهَا II,227, III,105.

خَبَرَ إِنَّ II,227.

إِنَّ with an accusative, II, 227-34; with an anacoluthon, II,455-63.

إِنَّمَا III,202-7.

أَهْلٌ II,120.

أَوْ with subjunctive, I,79; alternative II,499, 501; disjunctive, III,49-50.

أَوَّلٌ numeral, II,389-91; in adverbial accusative, II,390.

أَوَّلُ مَا III,221-2.

أَيَّ II,70.

أَيَّ interrogative, I,150-3; indefinite pronoun, I,153-6; exclamatory, I,156; indefinite-conditional, III,357.

أَيَّمَا indefinite conditional, III,357.

أَيَّمَا emphatic exclamatory, I,155-6, III,228-9.

إِنَّمَا II,168-9.

أَيَّهَا II, 219-20. ( يَا )

ب

بِ II, 298-309.

بَاءُ التَّعَجُّبِ III, 294.

إِذَا بِ II, 300-1, 456n, III, 253, 294-7.

مَبْتَدَأُ بِهِ I, 28.

مَبْتَدَأُ فِي مَعْنَى I, 28n.

مَبْتَدَأُ مُؤَخَّرٍ I, 28n.

بَدَلُ substitution, II, 72-7.

بَدَلُ الْبَعْضِ مِنَ الْكُلِّ II, 72-7.

بَدَلُ الْكُلِّ مِنَ الْكُلِّ II, 72-7.

بَرَحَ II, 201.

بَضِعَ II, 379-81.

بَعَدَ II, 340-3.

بَعْدَ أَنْ III, 142.

بَغْضٍ II, 134-8; in correlative repetition, II, 137.

بَقِيَ with an accusative, II, 201; as auxiliary verb, III, 256.

بِمَا أَنْ III, 242.

بَلَى III, 46-8.

بَلَى I, 165-7.

إِبْنٌ، ابْنَةٌ II, 123.

بَاتَ II, 201.

بَيْنَ II, 332-8.

بَيْنَ بَيْنَ II, 335.

(فِي) مَا بَيْنَ II, 337.

بَيْنَمَا (بَيْنَا) II, 232-4.

بَيَّانٌ II, 115.

ت

إِتِّبَاعٌ II, 494-5.

تَحَتَ II, 350-2.

ث

ثَلَّثَ II, 383.

ثُمَّ in word union, II, 495, 498-9; conjunctive, III, 35-9.

ج

جَمِيعٌ II, 132-3; in adverbial accusative, II, 189.

أَجْمَعُ II, 133-4; preceded by

بِ II, 134; in adverbial accusative, II, 189.

جُمْلَةٌ تَفْسِيرِيَّةٌ III, 65.

جَمْلَةٌ حَالِيَّةٌ III,242-4.

## ح

حَتَّى preposition, II,296-8;  
conjunctive with subjunctive,  
I,78; with a dependent  
clause, III,84-97; subjunc-  
tive III,85; perfect, III,  
86; imperfect indicative,  
III,87; adverbial, III,  
93-5.

حَتَّى مَا (لَمْ) — III,87.

حَتَّى مَا إِنْ — III,88.

حَتَّى كَأَنَّ — III,88.

حَتَّى (لَ) قَدْ III,89.

حَتَّى لَ III,89.

حَتَّى إِذَا III,90-2.

حَتَّى إِذَا مَا III,92.

حَتَّى أَنْ III,95-6.

حَتَّى إِنْ III,95-6.

حَتَّى إِلَّا — III,346-7.

حَتَّى إِنْ — إِلَّا — III,347.

حَتَّى لِلْعَظْفِ II,296-8.

حَابٍ in compound numerals,  
II,389.

حُرُوفُ التَّعْلِيلِ III,309.

حَسَبَ I,32-3, III,21n.

حَالٌ adverbial circumstantial  
accusative, II,186, 490;  
adverbial clause, III,242-4.

ذُو الْحَالِ III,242-4.

الْحَالُ الْقَدَرُ III,153n.

حَيْثُ with a circumstantial  
clause, III,279-84.

حِينَ with a noun clause, III,  
76-7.

حِينَمَا III,224.

## خ

خَبَرٌ in a nominal sentence, I,  
18-21.

خَبَرٌ إِنْ II,227.

خَبَرٌ كَأَنَّ I,36, II,196.

خَبَرٌ مَقْدَمٌ I,28n.

خَبَرٌ (مِنْ) II,485.

مَا خَلَا III,192-4.

دَامَ III,257.

دُونَ II,347-50.

دُونَ أَنْ III,145.

## ذ

ذَا demonstrative, II, 32-3;  
after a personal pronoun,  
II, 32; after an interroga-  
tive, II, 33.

ذَاكَ II, 39-40.

ذَلِكَ II, 37-9.

كَذَلِكَ II, 39.

ذُو II, 120-3.

## ر

رَأَى (يَا) I, 136n.

رَبِّ II, 207-9.

رَبِّمَا III, 208-9, 225-7.

رَابِطٌ II, 455.

رَاحَ III, 259.

رَيْشَمَا III, 223-4.

## ز

زَالَ with an accusative, II,  
200; as auxiliary verb,  
III, 259.

زَانَ with approximate numer-  
als, II, 379n.

## س

سَ I, 75-6.

سَرَّعَانَ مَا II, 209, III, 217-8.

اسْمُ الْإِشَارَةِ II, 29.

اسْمُ مَرَّةٍ II, 444.

اسْمُ صِفَةٍ III, 148.

اسْمُ صِلَةٍ III, 148.

سَوْفَ I, 76-7.

سَوْفَ لَا I, 76.

سِوَى II, 354-7.

سَوَاءٌ II, 500, III, 103-4

سَوَاءٌ disjunctive, II, 500.

لَا سِيَمًا III, 195.

## ش

شَتَّانَ (مَا) بَيْنَ II, 209-10,  
III, 194.

شَدَّ مَا III, 217.

شَرٌّ (مِنْ) II, 485.

## ص

أَصْبَحَ impersonal subject,  
I, 49; with an accusative,



- II,200; as auxiliary verb,  
III,255.
- صَاحِبٌ II,119-20.
- صَارَ with an accusative, II,  
201; as auxiliary verb, III,  
257.
- ض
- ضَمِيرُ الشَّانِ II,430.
- الضَّمِيرُ الْعَائِدُ III,147.
- ضَمِيرُ الْفَصْلِ I,34.
- إِضَافَةُ التَّفْسِيرِ II,115.
- ط
- إِطْلَقَ III,259.
- طَالَمَا III,211-3.
- ظ
- ظَلَّ with an accusative, II,  
200; as auxiliary verb,  
III,257.
- ع
- مَا عَدَا III,192-4.
- عَسَى II,243-5.
- عَنْ II,276-82.
- عِنْدَ II,318-21.
- عِنْدَ مَا III,235-6.
- عَلَى (لَعَلَّ) II,238-41.
- عَلَى II,321-2.
- عَلَى أَنْ III,141.
- عَادَ as auxiliary verb, III,  
258.
- عَيْنَ II,142-3.
- غ
- غَيْرَ II,147-53.
- لَيْسَ غَيْرَ II,6.
- لَا غَيْرَ II,6, 147.
- مِنْ غَيْرِ II,152.
- غَيْرَ أَنْ II,151, III,137-8.
- مِنْ غَيْرِ أَنْ II,153, III,137-8.
- ف
- فَ with subjunctive, I,79;  
union of words, II,495,  
497-9; conjunctive, III,  
20-34; in conditional main  
clause, III,360-9.
- ، الْأَفْعَالُ الْمُتَعَدِّيَةُ بِغَيْرِهَا

## الْأَفْعَالُ الْمُتَعَدِّيَةُ بِأَنْفُسِهَا

II, 161-2.

فَاعِلٌ subject of a verbal sentence, I, 41-2; ordinal, II, 387-93.

الْمَفْعُولُ الْأَوَّلُ II, 169.

الْمَفْعُولُ الثَّانِي II, 169.

الْمَفْعُولُ لِلتَّأَكِيدِ II, 444.

الْمَفْعُولُ الْمَطْلُوقُ II, 170, 444.

الْمَفْعُولُ لِلتَّعْظِيمِ II, 444.

الْمَفْعُولُ مَعَهُ II, 214.

الْمَفْعُولُ فِيهِ II, 173n, 180.

الْمَفْعُولُ لَهُ II, 172.

أَفْعَلٌ relative, II, 467-86.

(مَا) أَفْعَلُ مِنْ II, 478-9.

فَوْقُ II, 352-4.

فَوْقَ مَا III, 241.

فِي II, 309-15.

فِيمَا III, 234-5.

## ق

قَبْلُ II, 343-4.

قَبْلَ أَنْ III, 142-3.

قَدْ before perfect, I, 68-70,

with correlative perfects,

II, 69; before imperfect,

I, 70-1; with لَا before imperfect, I, 71; with pre-fixed لُ I, 69.

قَدَرُ III, 222-3.

قَلَمًا III, 213-4.

قَلِيلًا III, 216.

## ك

كَ II, 338-40.

كَانَ بَ II, 301.

كَانَمَا III, 240.

كَمَا III, 236-40.

كَمَا أَنَّ III, 259.

كُلُّ II, 124-30.

كُلَّمَا III, 219-21.

كَلَّا II, 130-1.

كَلَّا I, 167.

كَمْ interrogative, I, 156-8; exclamatory, I, 158-60.

كَانَ النَّاسُ verb of existence, II, 197.

كَانَ النَّاصِصُ verbal copula, II, 199; in a nominal sentence, I, 36; modifying a

verb, I,71-5; with a perfect, I,71; with **لَمْ** and the jussive, I,71; impersonal subject with **كَانَ**, I,49; with an anacoluthon, II,457.

**كَانَ وَأَخَوَاتُهَا** II,196.

**خَبَرَ كَان** I,36, II,196.

**كَيْلَا** with subjunctive, I,79; with subordinate clause, 309-11.

**كَيْمَا** III,310-1.

**كَادَ** as auxiliary verb, III, 258.

**كَادَ - حَتَّى** III,88.

## ل

**لَ** prefixed to **قَدَّ**, I,69; with energetic, I,82-3; after **إِنْ** II,233-4; with hypothetical conditional, III, 320-6; with main clause in conditional clauses, III, 260, 269-71.

**لَيْتَ** III,315.

**لِ** II, 282-90; with the subjunctive, I,78; with the jussive, I,80; after infinitives and participles

introducing the object, II, 88; after infinitives, II, 404; after participles, II, 413, in interjectional phrases, II,205; with **وَ** or **فَ** prefixed, I,80.

**يَا لَهُ مِنْ** II,205.

**الَلَامُ النَّاصِبَةُ** III,80.

**لِ** introducing a subordinate clause, III,80-3.

**لَإِنَّ** III,82.

**لَإِنَّ** III,83.

**لَيْلًا** I,78, III,83.

**لَا** negative, I,111-8; negative answer, I,167; with the jussive, I,81; in correlative constructions, I,104-5; in coordinate negatives, I,107-8.

**لَا** of "general denial," I,114, II,220-7.

**نَفَى عَامٌّ** II,220.

**نَفَى الْجِنْسِ** II,220.

**لَا شَيْءَ** I,169.

**لَا غَيْرَ** II,6,147.

**لَا زَالَ** see **زَالَ**.

**لَا سَيِّمًا** see **سَيِّمًا**.

عَلَّ see لَعَلَّ .

لَبَّ as auxiliary verb, III, 259.

لَكِنَّ II, 236; adversative, III, 43-6.

لَكِنَّ with an accusative, II, 235-38; with an anacoluthon, II, 455-63; adversative, III, 40-42.

يَكْنِ see يَكْنِ .

لَمْ with the jussive, I, 81, 127-8.

لَمَّا "not yet," with the jussive, I, 81, 129-31.

لَمَّا "when, after," III, 307-8.

لَنْ with the subjunctive, I, 79, 126.

لَوْ hypothetical condition, III, 320-6; optative, III, 324-6; concessive, III, 330-4; incomplete, III, 334-6.

لَوْكَ III, 324.

لَوْ أَنَّ III, 324-6.

لَوْلَا hypothetical negative, III, 326-30; with a single noun, I, 7.

لَوْلَا أَنَّ (أَنَّ) III, 328-9.

لَيْسَ negative of nominal sentence, I, 36-7; negative verb, I, 119-25; as auxiliary verb, III, 255.

لَيْتَ II, 241-3.

يَا لَيْتَ II, 243.

## م

مَا interrogative, I, 142-50.

مَاذَا I, 144, II, 33.

مَا بَالُكَ III, 251; followed by an accusative, II, 187-8.

مَا لَكَ III, 251; followed by an accusative, II, 187-8.

مَا negative, I, 108-11.

مَا إِنْ I, 131.

مَا إِنْ — حَتَّى III, 88.

مَا exclamatory, I, 150.

مَا relative, III, 170-3, 177-9.

مَا — مِنْ III, 179-82; resumptive pronoun, III, 182-6.

مَا آَلَدَيْمَوْمَ III, 229-31.

مَا آَلَصَّدْرِمَ III, 211, 310.

مَا indefinite particle, III, 207-9.

- مَهْمَا indefinite conditional,  
 III,208-9, 353-6.  
 مَا adverbial, III,210-28.  
 أَمَّا III,196-202.  
 إِنَّمَا III,202-7.  
 أَوَّلُ مَا III,221-2.  
 مَهْمَا III,228-9.  
 حَالَمَا III,222.  
 حِينَمَا III,224.  
 مَا خَلَا III,192.  
 رُبَّمَا III,225-7.  
 رُبَّمَا III,223-4.  
 سُرْعَانِ مَا III,217-8.  
 سِيمَا (لَا) III,195.  
 شَتَّانِ مَا بَيْنَ III,194.  
 شَدَّ مَا III,217.  
 أَشَدَّ مَا III,227.  
 طَالَمَا III,211-3.  
 مَا عَدَا III,192.  
 قَدَّرَ مَا III,222-3.  
 قَلَّمَا III,213-4.  
 قَلِيلًا مَا III,216.  
 كَثِيرًا مَا III,214-6.  
 أَكْثَرَ مَا III,227.  
 كَلَّمَا III,219.  
 مَثَلَمَا III,218-9.  
 نَادِرًا مَا III,216.  
 نَعِيمًا III,194.  
 مِثْلُ II,144-6.  
 اسْتَمَرَّ as auxiliary verb, III,  
 257.  
 أَمْسَى impersonal subject, I,  
 49; as auxiliary verb, III,  
 255.  
 مَضَى as auxiliary verb, III,  
 256.  
 مَعَ II,315-8.  
 مَنْ interrogative, I,142-50.  
 مَنْ ذَا I,144, II,33.  
 مَنْ relative, III,173-5; re-  
 sumptive pronoun, III,182-  
 91.  
 مَنْ — مَنْ III,179-82.  
 مَنْ indefinite conditional,  
 III,353-4.  
 مِنْ II,262-76; with elatives,  
 II,468, 471-2, 474, 480.  
 مِّنْذُ, مِّنْذُ II,344-7; with a sub-  
 ordinate clause, III,78-9.  
 مِّنْذُ أَنْ III,79.

تَمَيِّزُ II,184.

ن

نَحَوُ II,357-8.

نَضَفُ II,382.

نَظِيرُ II,146-7.

نَعَمَ I,163-5.

نِعِمَّا III,194.

نَفْسُ II,138-42, 424; reflexive, II,140.

نَيْفُ II,381.

هـ

هَآ II,30-1.

هَذَا II,33-6.

هَآ هُوَذَا II,36.

هَآ أَنَا ذَا (هَئَانَا) II,36.

هَكَذَا II,36.

هَلْ I,139,41.

هَلَّا I,141.

هَوَ، هِيَ II,426-36.

هُوَذَا II,32.

هُوَ هُوَ، هِيَ هِيَ II,440.

و

وَ in word union, II,490, 495-9, 501; conjunctive, III, 11-20; in circumstantial clauses, III,266-79.

وَ with an accusative, II, 214-6.

وَآلْمَعِيَّةُ II,214.

وُجِدَ verb of existence, I,8, 54; verbal copula, II,202.

وَاحِدٌ II,363-4.

إِسْمُ صِفَةٍ III,148.

إِسْمُ صَلَةٍ III,148.

وَيْلٌ II,204-6.

أَلْوَيْلٌ II,204.

وَيْلَى II,204.

يَا لِلْوَيْلِ II,205.

ي

يَا vocative, II,216-9; before exclamations, II,212.

يَا أَيُّهَا II,219.

يَا لَهُ مِنْ II,205.

## II

### ENGLISH TERMS

ACCUSATIVE CASE, II,161-250;  
 direct object, II,163-71;  
 second object, II,169-70;  
 cognate (or absolute), II,  
 170, II,444-5; adverbial  
 accusative, II,171-2; ad-  
 verbial accusative or rea-  
 son, II,172-3; of time, II,  
 173-80; correlative repe-  
 tition, II,179-80; of place,  
 II,180-2; paronomastic, II,  
 182; of measure, II,183-4;  
 of specification (restric-  
 tive), II,184-6; after  
 nouns, II,185; after nu-  
 merals, II,185, 367, 368;  
 after relatives, II,186, 479;  
 circumstantial, II,186-96;  
 in a nominal sentence, II,  
 187-9; in independent po-  
 sition, II,190; defined by

a genitive, II,191; position,  
 II,192-3; with copulative  
 verbs, II,196-202; of ex-  
 clamation, II,202-20; inter-  
 jectinal phrases, II,203-6;  
 vocative, II,216-9; general  
 denial, II,220-6; accusative  
 after particles, II,227-44;  
 after *¿*, II,213-6; adver-  
 bials, substantive, II,248-  
 50; adjectives, II,245-8;  
 after active participle,  
 II,410-4; after infinitive,  
 II,403-4.

#### ADJECTIVAL-RELATIVE CLAUSE,

III,147-70; definition, III,  
 147-8; asyndetical, III,  
 148-62; resumptive pronoun,  
 III,154-8; omission of re-  
 sumptive pronoun, III,150-60;

- attraction of the antecedent, ADVERBIAL CLAUSES, III,242-311; III,160-1; pronominal use, circumstantial, III,242-79; III,161-2; syndetical, III, asyndetical, III,244-66; 162-70; resumptive pronoun, verbs in auxiliary function, III,255-63; word order with III,165-8; pronominal use, auxiliary verbs, III,263-66; syndetical, III,266-79; local, "where," III,279-84; temporal, "when," III,284-308; final, III,309-11.
- ADJECTIVES: as subject in a nominal sentence, I,16; as predicate, I,18-9; in apposition, II,47-67; attributive apposition, II,48-53; gender and number agreement, II,53-61; substantival use, II,61-2; apparent, II,62-4; real, II,64-7; position in a genitive construction, II,101-2; genitive construction of adjectives, II,105-7; adjectival annexation, II, 107-11; determination by a genitive, II,109-10; as adverbials, II,245-8; governed by a preposition, II,254.
- ADVERBIALS: adverbial interrogative sentence, I,160-3; adverbials, substantives, II,248-50; adjectives, II, 245-8; see accusative, adverbial.
- ADVERSATIVE CONSTRUCTIONS, III, 39-48.
- AGREEMENT: in a nominal sentence, gender, I,22-3; number, I,23-7; of verbs with phrases as subject, I,94-5; with a genitive phrase, II, 153-5; within a genitive construction, II,155-7; with numerals, II,384-5.
- ANACOLUTHON, II,455-63; definition, II,455; patterns of — in a simple sentence, II, 455-62; "pronoun of emphasis," II,456; with compound tenses, II,462; from a subordinate clause, II,462-3.



- ANNEXATION: "improper annexation," II,109-10; see genitive case.
- ANSWERS TO A QUESTION, I,163-8; affirmative, I,163-6; negative, I,167-8.
- APPOSITION: adjectives in, II, 47-8, 53-61; substantives in, II,67-77; nonrestrictive (parenthetical), II,68-72; restrictive (determinative), II,72-7; agreement, II,74-7; personal pronouns in, II,77-81; appositive in the accusative case, II,80; numerals in, II,372-3.
- ARTICLE, II,5-21; general remarks, II,5-10; demonstrative character, II,10; uses, II,11-21; before an adjective, II,21; with cardinal numbers, II,374-77.
- CIRCUMSTANTIAL CLAUSES: see adverbial circumstantial.
- COMPARISON, II,480-4; see relative.
- CONDITIONAL CLAUSES, III,311-71; real conditional, III, 312-20; hypothetical conditional, III,320-6; optative, III,324-6; negative, III, 326-30; concessive, III, 330-4; incomplete, III,334-8; exceptive, III,338-53; indefinite conditional, III, 353-60; nullification of a subordinate's influence on its main clause, III,360-71; use of the particle **فَ**, III, 361-8; omission of **فَ**, III, 368-9; use of the particle **لَ**, III,369-71.
- CONJUNCTIONS: conjunctive, III, 11-39; disjunctive, III, 49-54; adversative constructions, III,39-48; use of **وَ** in syndetical circumstantial clauses, III,266-79; use of **فَ** in conditional clauses, III,361-9.
- CONSTRUCT STATE, II,92-107; see genitive, substantive.
- COORDINATE CLAUSES, III,7-59; asyndetical, III,7-11;

syndetical, III,11-54; conjunctive, III,11-39; adverbative, III,39-48; disjunctive, III,48-54; elliptical, III,54-9.

COPULATIVE VERBS, II,196-202;  
verbs of existence, II,197-8;  
verbal copula, II,198-202.

DATES, II,393-5.

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS, II,29-47; nature of, II,29; correlative construction of, II,41-3; position, II,43-5; agreement, II,46-7; position in a genitive construction, II,102.

DISJUNCTIVE CONJUNCTIONS, III, 48-54.

RELATIVES, II,467-86; categories, II,468-79; as substantive, II,469; as comparative, II, 480-2; as relative (comparative) attributive, II,471; as simple attributive, II, 472; as superlative, II, 475-6; determined by the definite article, II,472-4;

in isolated position, II, 468-71; governing a genitive, II,474-7; followed by a prepositional phrase, II,478-9; uses, II,479-86; followed by a noun clause, II,482-3; by a pronominal relative, II,483; two or more — governing one noun, II,484-5.

ELLIPSIS: in a nominal sentence, I, 32-4; of prepositional phrase, II,89-90; of preposition, II,261; elliptical coordinate sentence, III,54-9; of preposition in syndetical noun clauses, III,145-7; of resumptive pronoun in relative clauses, III,158-60; in pronominal relative clauses, III,182-5; incomplete conditional clauses, III,334-8.

ENERGETIC, I,82-3; in conditional constructions, III, 369-71.

EXCLAMATIONS, II,202-13.

- IMPERFECT, I,63-7; temporal aspects, present, I,63-4; past, I,65-6; future, I,66-7.
- INDETERMINATION: of nouns, II, 5-10; nunnation, II,7; uses, II,21-9; semantic indetermination, II,21-4; grammatical indetermination, II, 24-9.
- INDIRECT QUESTIONS, III,97-104; correlative, III,101; alternative, III,101, 103-4; introduced by **إِنْ**, III,101-2.
- INFINITIVE, II,401-5; subject in a nominal sentence, I,15; predicate in a nominal sentence, I,18; subject of a verbal sentence, I,46; governing a genitive, II, 401-2; governing an accusative, II,403-4; object introduced by **ج**, II,404.
- INTERROGATIVE SENTENCES, I, 135-68; questions about the validity of a statement, I,136-41; concerning a fact, I,142-60; adverbial, I,160-3;
- answers, affirmative, I, 163-6; negative, I,167; see indirect questions.
- INTERJECTIONAL PHRASES, II, 203-6.
- JUSSIVE, I,80-2; after particles, I,127-31; after imperatives, III,10; after **ج**, III,29; in conditional clauses, III,311-5; in indefinite conditional, III, 353-60.
- LOGICAL SUBJECT: see anacoluthon.
- MERISMUS, II,502-3.
- NEGATIVE PARTICLES, I,101-32; in a nominal sentence, I, 102; in a verbal sentence, I,104; correlative, I,104-6; coordinate, I,106-8; emphasis, I,131-2.
- NEGATIVE SENTENCE: correlatives, I,104-6; coordinate, I,106-8.
- NOMINAL SENTENCE, I,5-37;

definition, I,2; with a single member, I,5-9; with two members, I,9-34; categories of meaning, I,10-2; temporal aspects, I,13-4; subject, I,15-7; predicate, I,18-21; agreement, I,22-7; in gender, I,22-3; in number, I,23-7; word order, I,27-32; inverted, I,28-31; normal, I,31-2; ellipsis in, I,32-4; with three members, I,34-7; "pronoun of separation," I,34-6; with verb "to be," I,36; with verb "not to be," I,36; negation, I,102.

NOUNS: determination of, II, 5-10; indetermination of, II,5-10; uses of the indetermination, II,21-9.

NOUN CLAUSES, III,64-147; asyndetical, III,64-104; after noun in construct state, III,74-7; after preposition, III,77-97; after مِّنْذُ , III,78-80; after لِّ , III,80-4; after حَتَّى , III,84-97; indirect questions, III,97-104; synde-

tical, III,105-47; function of, III,130-8; after preposition, III,138-45; temporal, III,142-3; ad-versative, III,140-3; comparative, III,143-4; other prepositional compounds, III,144-5; ellipsis of the preposition, III,145-7.

NUMERALS, II,361-98; cardinal numbers, II,361-87; one, II,361-64; nunnation, II, 362-3; in reciprocal cor-relatives, II,364; two, II,365; three-ten, II,366; followed by a genitive plural, II,366; polarity agreement, II,366; eleven-nine-teen, II,367; followed by accusative of specification, II,367; twenty through ninety-nine, II, 367-8; followed by accusative of specification, II,368; one hundred, II, 368-9; two hundred, II, 369; three hundred through nine hundred, II,369; one thousand, II,370; two thousand, II,370-1; one million, II,371; hundreds,

- thousands, millions, II,371-2; as appositives, II,372-3; agreement, II,372; prepositional construction, II,373-4; defined cardinal numbers, II,374-7; compound numbers, II,377-9; approximate numbers, II,379-81; between eleven and nineteen, II,381; from twenty on, II,381; fractions, II,382-4; one half, II,382; one third through one tenth, II,383; agreement, II,384,5; omission of the numbered noun, II,385-7; ordinal numbers, II,387-95; first, II,389-91; second through tenth, II,391-2; eleventh through nineteenth, II,392; twentieth, thirtieth, etc., II,392; twenty-first, thirty-second, etc., II,393; dates, II,393-5; time of day, II,395-6; book references, II,396-8.
- NUNNATION, II,7-8; for cardinal number one, II,362-3.
- PARENTHETICAL CONSTRUCTIONS, III,375-81.
- PARONOMASIA, II,439-52; definition, II,439; in nominal sentence, II,440-1; expression of indefinite subject in verbal sentences, II,441; between subject and verb, II,441; between verb and object, II,442-4; expression of indefinite object, II,442-4; "absolute" accusative, II,444-5; relative sentence after paronomastic accusative, II,447; after verbal nouns, II,448; between subject and object, II,449; between substantive and adjective, II,449-50; in a genitive construction, II,450; paronomastic repetition of a substantive, II,451-2; in pronominal relative clauses, III,209-10.
- PASSIVE VOICE, I,52-8; prepositional phrase as subject, I,53; indefinite constructions, I,55; passive principles, see particles passive.
- PARTICIPLES, II,406-19; deter-

- mination by a genitive, II, 109-10; as adverbial accusative of time, II, 178; active participles, II, 406-14; nominal construction, II, 408-9; paraphrased by prepositional construction, II, 274, 413; verbal function, II, 407-8; with suffixed personal pronoun, II, 409-10; verbal construction, II, 410-4; passive participles, II, 414-9; with an accusative, II, 416; prepositional phrase introducing the agent, PLEONASM: imitative, II, 494-5. II, 416-7; genitive of the agent, II, 417; substantival use, II, 418; impersonal use, II, 418-9.
- PERFECT, I, 59-63; in conditional constructions, III, 311-5; in indefinite conditional constructions, III, 353-60.
- PERSONAL PRONOUNS, II, 423-36; in apposition, II, 77-81; after an active participle, II, 409-10; reflexive use, II, 424; agreement, II, 425-8; uses of the third person, II, 426-36; omission, II, 429; "pronoun of the fact," II, 430-2; "of separation," I, 34-6, II, 434-4; emphatic apposition, II, 434-6; resumptive pronoun in asyndetical relative, III, 154-8; omission, III, 158-60; resumptive pronoun in syndetical relative, III, 165-7; resumptive pronoun in pronominal relative, III, 182-6.
- PREPOSITIONS, II, 253-358; nominal character, II, 253-4; general remarks on the use of, II, 254-62; with two substantives, II, 256; correlative compounds, II, 258-9; prepositional compounds, II, 559-60; omission of, II, 261; prepositional construction of numerals, II, 373-74; asyndetical noun clauses after, III, 77-97; syndetical noun clauses after, III, 138-45; ellipsis, III, 145-7; see prepositional phrase.

- PREPOSITIONAL PHRASES, II,81-353-60.  
 90; subject of a nominal sentence, I,15; predicate, I,20; subject of a verbal sentence, I,47; restrictive, II,81; nonrestrictive (parenthetical), II,81-2; determination by, II,82-3; position of, II,84-6; use, II,86-9; adverbial, II,86; omission of, II,89-90; as paraphrase of a genitive construction, II,100.
- PRONOMINAL-RELATIVE CLAUSE, III,170-242; use of **مَا**, III,177-9; use of **مَنْ**, III,173-6; determined by **مَنْ**, III,179-82; resumptive pronoun, III,182-6; function, III,186-91; formulaic expressions with **مَا**, III,192-207; **مَا** as an indefinite particle, III,207-9; paronomasia, III,209-10; adverbial uses of **مَا**, III,210-1; adverbial relative clause as a nominative, III,211-8; as a genitive, III,218-29; as an accusative, III,229-31; after preposition, III,231-42; as indefinite conditional, III,235-60.
- PROPER NAMES: undeclined, II,27.
- RECIPROCAL EXPRESSIONS, II,137.
- REFERENCES: book, II,396-8.
- REFLEXIVE EXPRESSIONS, II,140,424.
- RELATIVE CLAUSES: see adjectival relative and pronominal relative clauses.
- SENTENCE: simple, I,2; expanded, II,2; compound, III,2-3; negative, I,101-32; interrogative, I,135-68; expanded compounds, III,385-8; see nominal sentence and verbal sentence.
- SUBJUNCTIVE, I,78-80; after **لَنْ**, I,126; after **فَ**, III,33-5; in noun clauses after **لِ**, III,80-4; after **حَتَّى**, III,85-6; after **أَنْ**, III,108-12.

SUBORDINATE CLAUSES, III,63-371.

TIME OF DAY, II,395-6.

VERB, I,41-97; subject, I,45-50; passive voice, I,52-8; agent, I,52; intransitive verb, I,55; tenses, I,58-67; perfect, I,59-63; imperfect, I,63-7; modal and temporal categories, I,67-7; particle **قَدْ**, I,67-71; verb **كَانَ**, I,71-5; particles **سَوْفَ** and **سَ**, I,75-7; moods, I,77-83; subjunctive, I,78-80; jussive, I,80-2; energetic, I,82-3; copulative verb, II,196-7; verb of existence, II,197-8; verbal copula, II,198-202; in a nominal sentence, I,36-7; verbs in auxiliary function, III,255-63; word order with auxiliary verbs, III,263-6; agreement of verb with subject, see verbal sentence.

VERBAL SENTENCE, I,41-97; definition, I,2, 41; struc-

ture, I,41-5; word order, normal, I,42; inverted, I,42-5; subject, I,45-8; impersonal subject, I,48-50; indefinite subject, I,50-2; paronomastic, I,51-2; agreement, I,83-97; normal word order, gender, I,84-7; number, I,83-4; inverted word order, gender, I,87; number, I,87-94; phrases as subject, I,94-6; multiple subject, I,96-7; negation of the verbal sentence, I,102-4.

VOCATIVE, II,216-9; in the nominative after **يَا**, II,217-8; after **أَيُّهَا**, II,219; in the accusative after **يَا**, II,218; **يَا** with personal titles, II,219.

WORD ORDER, II,507-21; in expanded nominal sentence, II,507-10; verbal sentence, II,510-21; prepositional phrase, II,515; adverbial expressions, II,516-9; temporal-local, II,519-20; local-temporal, II,520-1, auxiliary verbs, III,263-6.



WORD UNION, II,489-503; asyn-  
detical, II,489-95; adjectives,  
II,489; adverbial  
modifications, II,490; repetition  
of same word, II,492-4; adjectives  
of opposite meaning, II,492; syn-

detical, II,495-503; conjunctive  
particles 496-9; alternate or  
exclusively meaning, II,499-  
disjunctive, II,500-2  
negative disjunction,  
501-2.

---

3; with  
les, II,  
r exclu-  
99-501;  
0-2;  
on, II,